

# Orthodox Survival Course

By

Fr. Seraphim Rose

“Rejoice, Holy Father Blessed Seraphim, radiant  
lamp of Christ illuminating the last times!”

**Samizdat Press**  
**Second Edition (Draft Copy) – 7529 AM**  
**A Product of Samizdat Press Sold at Manufacturing Cost**  
**Visit us at: <https://samizdatprint.blogspot.com/>**

# Table of Contents

Editor's Note.....	i
Introduction: The Orthodox Worldview.....	1
The Middle Ages.....	13
Scholasticism.....	21
Romance.....	27
New Concept of Sanctity.....	31
Joachim of Floris.....	39
Medieval Art.....	44
Politics.....	47
The Renaissance.....	50
Fame.....	54
Superstition.....	57
Protestant Reformation.....	59
Science.....	60
The Copernican Revolution.....	65
Chiliasm.....	68
Renaissance Art.....	78
Summary.....	91
The Enlightenment Part 1.....	93
Faith in Progress.....	102
The Enlightenment: Part 2.....	106
Enlightenment in England.....	108
Deism.....	111
Against Miracles.....	113
Attacking and Defending Religion.....	115
Art and Music.....	117
Progress.....	121
The French Revolution.....	123

Voltaire.....	133
Rousseau.....	135
Secret Societies.....	138
The Revolution.....	149
Religion.....	163
Napoleon.....	169
The Revolution in the Nineteenth Century.....	177
German Romantic Poet: Novalis.....	184
Chiliasm in Early Socialist Prophets the Utopian Socialists.....	185
Meaning of Revolution:.....	197
Metternich.....	199
Donoso Cortes.....	202
DeMaistre.....	205
Tsar Nicholas I.....	209
Alexander III:.....	223
St. John of Kronstadt.....	227
Pobedonostsev.....	231
Dostoyevsky.....	232
Revolutions.....	263
Revolution of 1848.....	263
Workers Were Idealistic.....	267
Marx and Engels.....	273
Bakunin.....	275
Proudhon.....	284
The Protocols of Zion.....	287
Bolshevism.....	296
Hitler.....	299
New Religion.....	306
Crisis of Knowledge – End of Rationalism.....	306
Kant.....	313



Fichte.....	318
Nietzsche.....	322
Kafka.....	327
A New Age.....	330
Evolution.....	335
The Orthodox Perspective.....	350
Dobzhansky.....	370
Teilhard de Chardin.....	372
Modern Art & Spiritualism.....	388
Art: Decline from Humanism to Subhumanism.....	388
Music.....	406
Thomas Mann.....	408
Spiritualism.....	413
Leads to “Scientific” Approach to Religion.....	416
Antichrist.....	426
Solovyov.....	443
Summary: Doctrines of the New Theology.....	455

# Editor's Note

The following document is taken from a lecture series given primarily by Blessed Fr. Seraphim Rose of Platina and secondarily by Fr. (Gleb) Herman Podmoshensky<sup>1</sup> through the 1970's.<sup>2</sup> After his death in 1982, much of Fr. Seraphim's unpublished material began to be circulated around as samizdat.<sup>3</sup> This document was compiled from transcripts from tapes of the lectures, notes, and parts of other lectures in order to provide citations, annotations, and to fill in whatever gaps exist in the tapes and has been circulating as samizdat since the 1980's. The series of lectures continues to be taught and used by priests around the world.

The person of Fr. Seraphim Rose is clearly observable in this document to anyone acquainted with his writings. These lectures carry with them pastoral authority and compassion for the edification of a flock. The lectures are, indeed, edifying to those who have eyes to see and ears to hear. With the humility to take the text *for what it is* – and not more than it is or less than it is – will provide you, the reader, with invaluable lessons.

It is recommended that this be read in conjunction with the following books by Fr. Seraphim Rose; *Nihilism: The Root of the Revolution in the Modern Age*, *The Apocalypse: In the Teachings of Ancient Christianity*,<sup>4</sup> and *Orthodoxy and the Religion of the Future*<sup>5</sup>. These books deal with the

---

<sup>1</sup> It should be noted that Podmoshensky was defrocked in 1988 by ROCOR for serious ascetic, canonical, and moral violations committed after the death of Fr. Seraphim Rose in 1982. "Fr. Seraphim had been the stronger one, the true monastic, and when he departed, Herman was like a ship with no rudder or captain at the wheel... We need to avoid false elders, and false prophets, in these terrible End Times. Gleb Podmoshensky, was among these false elders. May God have mercy upon his soul!" No further comment will be made here on the controversies around Podmoshensky. Podmoshensky gave a variant of this lecture series up until at least 1998 and reposed in 2014.

<sup>2</sup> Others have taken up the course from Fr. Seraphim. Fr. Damascene Christensen presented these lectures around the world. As a result, many were converted to Orthodoxy. Fr. Steven Allen also has an ongoing podcast of his rendition of the *Orthodox Survival Course*, which may be listened to on [Spreaker.com](https://www.speaker.com). The text on the back cover, I should note, is taken straight from Fr. Steven Allen's Introduction to his version of the *Orthodox Survival Course*. Fr. Peter Heers began his rendition of the *Orthodox Survival Course* shortly before the publication of this edition

<sup>3</sup> Samizdat: An activity in which individuals reproduce censored and underground publications by hand and pass the documents from reader to reader.

<sup>4</sup> Archbishop Averky Taushev is the primary author of this work.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. Spyridon Bailey's *Orthodoxy and the Kindgom of Satan* is a worthwhile follow-up to *Orthodoxy and the Religion of the Future*.

same issues as this volume, differing only in scope and specialization. The relation between these four texts will be immediately understood to the discerning.

This publication has attempted to present the document which has circulated online for years into a printed format and a more readable E-Book format. The thousands of transcription errors have been painstakingly fixed, though it is possible that some still remain. Here I will attempt to outline the edits. The letter ‘A’ seemed to be randomly inserted throughout the document and these extra ‘A’s have been removed wherever found. The ‘?’ also seemed to be placed randomly and in place of the apostrophe – these have been fixed wherever found. Various special characters have been removed. Endnotes and in-line notes have been converted to more than 500 footnotes. Lecture 6, *The French Revolution*, should be noted to suffer from scattered footnoting. The document’s formatting had to be overhauled from scratch, including the formatting required for a table of contents.

### **Notes for the Second Edition**

In this second edition, the table of contents has been overhauled and corrected. Headings have been made more distinctive and the delineation of sections have been improved. First line indenting has been corrected. A few footnotes have been corrected – Lecture 6 still suffers from misplaced footnotes. New footnotes have been added to this edition which are my own. My notes have been clearly marked, beginning with “Tikhon.”

I would additionally like to thank a friend who has taken the time to do some much needed proofreading for this edition.

Your Servant,  
Tikhon

– The Editor

“The pious work of faith can be recognized as approaching the decisive end. [...] We do not expect the revival of Christianity. Vessels of the Holy Spirit forever dried up everywhere, even in monasteries, these treasures of piety and gracious gifts. However, the substance can be renewed only through His divine Spirit. The long-suffering and merciful God allows the end to be delayed for the sake of those last ones that remain to be saved. Meanwhile, those who are rotting or have rotted will reach full decay. Those who want to be saved should understand this well and use the extra time given for salvation, for the time is short and eternity is getting close to each of us.”

– *St. Ignatius Brianchaninov*<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>6</sup> See Samizdat Press’s publication of *On Signs and Miracles*, which is available on Lulu.



# Lecture 1

## Introduction: The Orthodox Worldview

*We must not artificially isolate ourselves from the reality of today's world; rather, we must learn to use the best things the world has to offer, for everything good in the world—if we are only wise enough to see it—points to God, and we must make use of it. Too many people make the mistake of limiting Orthodoxy to church services, set prayers, and the occasional reading of a spiritual book. True Orthodoxy, however, requires a commitment that involves every aspect of our lives. One is Orthodox all the time every day, in every situation of life—or one is not really Orthodox at all. For this reason we must develop an Orthodox worldview and live it.*

*- Fr. Seraphim Rose<sup>7</sup>*

This course is to give one a perspective on those things which are happening in the world today which we come across in our daily experience, everyone of which has a philosophical undercurrent. If one goes to any big city one will find that there are churches of every description and they all offer a different view, a different doctrine. The Catholics will tell you one thing, and the Mormons will give you something else; the Seventh-Day Adventists will give you something else quite definite; the Fundamentalists will say something else; the liberal Protestants will give you another current; the Theosophists will give you something else. And a person in search of truth goes perhaps from one to the other looking for the truth. Quite often people find, aha, I found it! -- something clicks. They find that Mormonism has the answer; or else they are very impressed by a speaker who knows how to get in touch with, well, the contemporary people.

There was one, for example, Alan Watts, who died just recently [1973]. I was a student of his. In fact, I was extremely impressed because I was an undergraduate looking for some kind of truth in philosophy, not finding it. I was very bored by Western philosophy, and all of a sudden he comes and gives a lecture on Zen

---

<sup>7</sup> *Living an Orthodox Worldview*; A lecture given at the St. Herman Summer Pilgrimage, Platina, CA, 1980

Buddhism. And at the time I thought that is the answer because it's not a philosophy; it's just the way things are. He said it's not the looking at the glass of water and defining it but -- and he takes the glass of water and pours it out on the stage, very dramatic -- that's what Zen Buddhism is, it's the answer; it's IT.

Of course throughout the perspective of many years, we can see that this poor man is simply a very clever man. He was very much in contact with the way people were thinking; and he got onto one little sort of channel and followed it all the way and made his career out of it, made lots of money, got people as his sort of followers; and simply taught them. There were lots of things he said which were true, especially the negative part about what's wrong with contemporary civilization. But in the end he just gave them some pitiful little shred of truth combined with a lot of his own opinions and in the end a great system of lies; and he destroyed souls including his own undoubtedly.

But Orthodoxy is not like one of these currents, systems of thought; it is not simply one among many. And that is why some might think, especially the newly converted will say, why haven't I heard of Orthodoxy before, why isn't it on television? Why can't I hear it? Why aren't there radio programs and newspaper articles and everything like that? Well, if you look at the newspaper articles which there are about Orthodoxy, which happened occasionally -- like when the weeping icons came to some cities, there were articles; or when even when Archbishop John died in San Francisco there was an article, various sort of events which stand out, become a part of the history, the whole event in the city, and look at what kind of newspaper articles are written -- the view of Orthodoxy there is adapted to the readers. That is, this is a sect which is very colorful; it is like the Mormons or the Seventh-Day Adventists or something else. It's different, it's colorful. And if you read descriptions of the Pascha services, they will always say something like ... amid clouds of incense and flowing robes and long beards... and everything which is exotic and different from what the ordinary the American sees; that's about what Orthodoxy is for them. That is, in that kind of view Orthodoxy is some kind of a Christian philosophy which is mainly characterized by some kind of exoticness. If you want the exotic, you go there. But that is not what Orthodoxy is.

If you give your heart and soul to one of these teachings, the various Christian or non-Christian teachings, you will get from your sect -- because all of them are sects, including Roman Catholicism -- you will

get from your sect what they think probably is a philosophy of life, they will give you the answers to many questions. They will give you answers which you will accept if you are on their wave-length -- usually depends upon your background, your psychological strivings, how much education you've had. There are all kinds of factors which enter in, which make you click, respond to the particular sect.

Once you give your heart and soul there, or at least part of them, you will begin to accept whatever they teach you, and form yourself on that basis. And then when somebody comes to you and asks why you believe, you give answers the way you've learned them. And a person from outside will look at those answers and be astonished at how a person can give such answers. It's obvious they are a party line. They will quote you Scriptures in accordance with a interpretation which seems very far-fetched, and they will think that this is logical, the ordinary explanation. You talk to the Seventh Day Adventists who are our neighbors here, and you begin to ask them what they believe, and why they believe, and it turns out that the commandment about Saturday is the most important of all the commandments, the one that distinguishes the real people, the real church from everybody else. How can they get that, and how can they explain the fact that Christ always appears on Sunday, the first day of the week? He rose from the dead on Sunday. After His Resurrection, it was early on Sunday -- how it is that the Church didn't believe this for two thousand years? And they will even tell you that there were Adventists and the Seventh Day people all the time. And they can even build up some kind of tradition for it, saying something like, well, maybe this sect did exist throughout the centuries. But what they will give you will not be a world-view, a philosophy. What they will give you will be a sectarian view.

A sectarian view is, like the name implies, sect: it is something which is cut off. They will give you a piece of reality according to their interpretation. When it comes to any complicated issue, they will give you a very simple answer which is not satisfying to somebody who's capable of thinking very much. They will, if anything comes up which seems to disprove their position or make it foggy, they will say, Devil's work or that's evil, or if you ask them how they interpret the Scriptures literally. They will give you extremely simple answers to questions which are very complicated. And you have to already be in that channel in order to accept it. And you will become -- as we indeed associate with sectarians -- some kind of group cut off from the rest of



society, keeping your own little view point, preserving yourself from everybody else, having your own schools and thinking that you are in the truth. But you will not have some kind of philosophy, world-view, which will enable you really to understand what goes on in the world, to explain those phenomena around you in a way which does not do violence to reason, is not just an interpretation according to a very whimsical interpretation of Scripture, but is something which is solidly based, and is perhaps not convincing right off to everybody, but at least respects reason which God gave us, and does not have an overly-simplified view of whatever is happening in the world, that whoever does not agree with my philosophy is either a devil or a person who's completely deceived.

On the contrary, many things which happen in the world have their power: ideas have their power, political systems have their power, even art movements have their power because there is some seed of truth in them. And if you don't understand what that seed of truth is and how it got mixed up with error, what in it is genuine, what in it is fake, you will not be able to be living in the world today; and a Christian lives in the world. You must understand, that a sectarian saves himself, and he saves anybody he can keep away from reality, keep in his little corner some place. But if that person goes out in the world and starts asking questions, he loses his sectarian views because it's not plausible. He has to keep his sectarian faith in a little corner someplace, a piece of society.

An Orthodox world-view is not like that. Today, the true Orthodox Christians are very few. And therefore we are called by some, like Schmemann and the people who are up-to-date and want to be in step with Catholics and Protestants and contemporary thought -- they will say we are a sect. Therefore we should know, are we a sect or not? If we have our Orthodoxy as something like Mormonism, that is, if we know the catechism, know the dogmas, and can expound the official teaching of faith, and everything outside of that is something hazy or given an over-simplified answer, then we are in danger of this very sectarianism. Because then Orthodoxy will be for us something which is very narrow. The path of salvation is very narrow, but Orthodoxy alone of all the religions is God's religion; and therefore it does not deny those faculties which God gave us, especially reason which is the faculty by which we understand Truth.

And so it is that Orthodoxy is the one religion because it is the true religion, God's religion, which has the answer to all, which understands

everything which happens in the world. That does not mean that we have necessarily an absolute answer to everything, because that's also a characteristic of sectarian mentality: they have an instant answer and they give it to you very simplified and there's no argument. With Orthodoxy, rather, we open our minds because since we have the truth we are not afraid of whatever science may say, or philosophy or writers, artists. We are not afraid of them; we can look at them with our Orthodox understanding and with an open mind and with an open heart to see what really is positive and understand whether they are valuable or not valuable, whether they are beneficial, whether they are harmful.

And so we can look around us at any phenomenon. The sectarian will look around him and say that's evil - cut it off. And with many things, of course, you have to do that, because there are things which, now especially, are flagrantly inciting to sin. But even in turning away from them and not exposing ourselves to temptation as much as possible, we have to understand why they are that way, why, what is happening.

There are things which do not have an immediate answer to a person who has a Orthodox world-view. There are certain things which you cannot explain immediately just on the basis of knowing about God, the Holy Trinity and the basic teaching of the Church. For example, it's characteristic now that our times is called post-Christian times; it's also post-philosophical times, because there was a time when philosophy was very much alive in the West. In fact, [Ivan] Kireyevsky the nineteenth-century Russian writer says that up until the early to middle nineteenth century, philosophy was the current, the main current of European thought, because what the philosophers were thinking was the thing which was most exciting, most interesting, and was the thing which then went into the people. In a very short time, whatever one person had thought through in his cabinet some place in a city in Germany would, within a few years, already become the property of the whole people -- until philosophy came to the end of its rope, which was in about the middle of the nineteenth century when Kireyevsky was alive. Because it so happened that after destroying the outer universe with the philosophy of Hume and Berkeley and so forth, the philosophy, in order to find some foundation on which to base itself, finally settled on Kant who said that all there is, is the individual, and I make my own universe; we don't know what the thing in itself is, what is out there; but I am the one who puts everything in order, and if I understand myself, I can make sense of the universe. But this amounts to a very

dangerous subjectivism, because in this system there's no room for truth any more. There's just room for some kind of conventional view of things. And after him there came fantastic people, Fichte and this Max Stirner and others who said that there's nothing in the world but me, the "I" alone in the universe.<sup>8</sup> And even Stirner came to the point where he said I am alone in the universe trampling on the tomb of humanity, something to that effect. Which is sort of the logical conclusion of people who released thought from any kind of restraints and decided to find where they could think things through to. And when you think things through without any kind of traditional basis, you come to a dead end.

After that, as Kireyevsky says, the main current of the West entered politics. And that's why especially after 1848, and beginning in the French Revolution, and especially strong after 1848, the main thing that was happening in European and world history is the progress of the revolution, which we will discuss later on.<sup>9</sup>

So, a person who wants to have an Orthodox understanding must be prepared to look with an open mind and heart at what goes on in the world and use his mind to find out what is responsible for it, what underlies this. And we must do that now that the age of philosophy is passed and the views are very practically oriented. It's amazing how even in universities, the mind is not used at all. Art criticism becomes just an excuse for your subjective taste; there's no objective criteria left at all. In this kind of world, new philosophical beliefs and very dangerous ideas are presented no longer as some kind of truth which you can easily understand as being false, but they are presented as something else.

For example, people who take drugs will tell you they are uncovering new areas of reality. Are you against new areas of reality? Are you against the deeper area of the mind? Actually, Holy Fathers talk about the deeper area of the mind -- and what are you going to say to that? He's not giving you some kind of new truth to which you can say that's false; he's giving you some kind of new outlook. And you have to stop and think, well, what does this

---

<sup>8</sup>*The Ego and His Own*, Max Stirner, "My concern is neither the Godly nor the Human, is not the True, the Good, the Right, the Free, etc., but simply my own self, and it is not general, it is individual. For me there is nothing above myself. Quoted in *The Great Quotations*, comp. by Georges Seldes, Pocket Books, 1967, p. 8"59.

<sup>9</sup> See Lecture 6: The French Revolution; starting on page 125

mean? What is the deeper area of the mind? Who is there, what's going on? You have to be able to evaluate what is behind this kind of statement and whether, in fact, it's a very practical thing because a person might come to you and say should I stop this or go on with it? or is this evil? And you have to know why. If you just say no, drugs are evil, that's out, then he very likely will not be convinced, because somebody else will give him a very plausible excuse. You have to tell him -- 'course you have to tell him you better stop because that's very dangerous; but you also have to be able to say, if you have a complete philosophy of life, why this is not right and where it's going to lead you.

There are also many kinds of advances in science to which there are hooked up philosophical views. For example, evolution, of course, is a big one; and it's a very complicated thing to which you do not immediately get an answer. A sectarian will say well, it's against Genesis; it's against the literal interpretation. And that's very easy to just pick to pieces because if you interpret Genesis absolutely literally, like they would like to, you come to ridiculous absurdities.

Or, also there's such a thing as the idea that now we are able to govern our own future. Therefore, we will determine in test-tubes whether a child is going to be male or female and give him the brains of Einstein or something like that. You have to know if this is good or bad. What's going on? On what basis can I criticize this?

And, of course, it's very important to be able to see through what goes on in the political world because in free societies people go and vote. You have to know what value is voting or what is the whole thing behind politics. Is it worth while taking part in this? Is this good, evil? Let's have some kind of view of it. The same way with music and art -- music especially since it's so all-pervading in society; you go to supermarket and you get music. There's a whole philosophy in back of why you get the kind of music you do in the supermarket; and you have to understand what this music is trying to do to you, what is back of it. There's a whole philosophy to it.

If you ask a sectarian to give you a world-view, a whole overview of what's happening in the world, they will, again, give you a very narrow thing which has lots of points of truth in it because they read the Scriptures; and they can tell you about the end of the world, the Apocalypse, Antichrist, and give you even a plausible view of what's going on in the world. And they can tell you that....

There's this thing called The Plain Truth, this magazine which -- he says it's plain truth.<sup>10</sup> I discovered the plain truth which was hidden for two thousand years. I discovered it, sitting down in my closet and thinking it through, and nobody else thinks these thing through except me. And here it is. This is where it is, just plain and simple. And he gives you a lot of hogwash, having his subjective view of things, where he can present this where it's just "plain and simple," and that's the way it is.<sup>11</sup> And millions of people follow him; not all of them are his actual followers, part of his cult, but many people take it very seriously and think it makes very great sense. And he will tell you all kinds of things: that Christ died on Wednesday and was resurrected on Saturday, according to deductions from everything -- even though it says in the Scripture early on the first day of the week.<sup>12</sup> He has an explanation to explain that away, and how it was really not Friday, but Wednesday, and how to account for three days -- not the third day, but three days, seventy-two hours.<sup>13</sup> And, well, he gives you all kinds of fantastic things like that, mixed in with all kinds of true things. And if you are not capable of discerning, you can get into all kinds of trouble. Even our sectarians look very much to him because they have a very similar outlook, they are the Seventh Day Adventists. And they will tell you that he talks about the -- I forget what he calls it -- but after the first sixty years or something of this era, some thirty years after the Resurrection of Christ, there is the "missing century" or something like that. All of a sudden truth went out, underground or away or something. It didn't come back again until this Armstrong appeared.

And the same thing is true with other sectarians: Ellen White has the same kind of philosophy. There are different varieties of it. Some will

---

<sup>10</sup> Armstrong, Herbert W., *The Early Writings of Herbert W. Armstrong*, Richard C. Nickels, ed., Giving and Sharing, Neck City, Missouri, 1996, p. 140, quoting from *The United States in Prophecy*, 1945: Whether skeptic, atheist, church member or Spirit-filled Christian, you will find here an amazing truth, long hidden. It is startling revelation. While condensed and brief, it is plain and simple, understandable, and a truth that stands PROVED. No story of fiction was so strange, so absorbing, so packed with suspense, as this gripping story of the Bible. P. 163: This disclosure is so amazing, so different from the common conception, you probably did not really grasp it all the first reading. Much in the early pages will take on a different light when reread.... It will become twice as interesting, twice and REAL!

<sup>11</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 179, quoting from *The Plain Truth* 1934 editorial: The real TRUTH is simple and plain, not hard and difficult.

<sup>12</sup> Mark 16:2,9; Luke 24:1; John 20:1.

<sup>13</sup> Armstrong, *Early Writings*, Which Day is the Sabbath of the New Testament? p. 49.

say that it was Constantine who did the bad things. Usually they date it much earlier so they don't have to accept anything that comes after that. And they can't explain very well how it is that it was a Council of the Church in the second, early third century that determined the canon of Scripture. So you have to get people to understand how a Council could determine that, if the Council was already in an apostate state. But they accept that decree of the Council. It's very interesting, you can find it very illogical about that.

But for us, this is not some kind of very two-dimensional, simple thing to understand what goes on in the world. So, we must understand first of all what is world history, what are the forces that shape world history. And that is very simple, basically, because there is a God and there is the devil; and world history goes on between these two adversaries. And man, man's heart is the field on which it is played out.

If you read the Old Testament, you will find a remarkable history which is different from the history of any other country. In other countries there are rulers who rise and fall: there is tyranny, there are democratic paradises, there are wars, sometimes the righteous triumph, sometimes the unrighteous triumph; and the whole of history is extremely skeptical. Historians will tell you their chronicle of crimes and savagery -- and no meaning. And what happens to come out is some chance event which no one can see any meaning for. But in the history of Israel we see a very deep thing which is the history of the chosen people of God which is now following God's commandments, and now falling away; and its history depends upon how it is, whether it's following God or falling away from Him. It becomes very complicated when they are taken away from Egypt into the wilderness, and they are going at a very short distance away -- which now you can do in a day and about a week, and then you could do it in a week or two -- and they spent forty years in the wilderness and went through all kinds of adventures because they were wavering between right belief in God and falling away from Him, to such an extent that when Moses was gone for a short time to the mount to receive the commandments of God and meet God Himself, the people were worshipping a golden calf.

The whole history of Israel is this history between belief and unbelief, between following God and turning away from God. And the history of Israel becomes in the New Testament the history of the Church, the new Israel. And the history of humanity from the time Christ came to earth until now is the history of the Church and of those peoples who either come to the Church or fight against the Church, or

come to the Church and fall away from it. World history, from that time to this, makes sense only if you understand there is some plan going on, which is the plan of God for the salvation of men. And you have to have a clear understanding of Christianity, of what Orthodoxy is, what salvation is in order to understand how this plan is manifested in history.

The history of mankind for the first millennium of the Christian era is the history of the spread of the Gospel to various lands. Some of them accepted, some with great readiness, some less readily. Usually the simple peoples accept much more readily. And sometimes temptations come, heresies come, which are the tares sown by the devil to upset people, bring them away from the truth. And therefore we have the Ecumenical Councils and the writings of the Fathers to teach us what is the right approach to truth and what is the wrong. And when there came dangerous errors, heresies, the Church condemned them. And those who were clinging to those errors against the Church were anathematized, and they went out from the Church. So very early there are groups, heresies which broke away from the Church, but the Church itself was the main group which survived even though at times it was reduced to very small numbers because of heresies. Always it came back, and for the first millennium it was the dominant belief in peoples from Byzantium all the way to Britain, and eastern -- not so strong. In the East the peoples are more sophisticated, more philosophical; they had their own beliefs; it's much more difficult to get through to them. The simple peoples accepted much more readily.

And then there was a very important event happening which determines the history of the next thousand years, but it gives a direction to it. Because, well, to understand what this is, we should look at our situation today.

Orthodoxy, according to an objective observer looking at it, is one view among many; it's a minority view and it is very much against the spirit of the times. That's why these Schmemanns and so forth are trying to update it, bring it back into the main current so they will not be laughed at. It is something which is very much out-of-date, it makes no sense in terms of pluralism or being at home with other faiths, and simply, it is not credible. There are many other faiths which, because they are more adapted to the times, seem much more credible, when a Catholic can get along with a up-to-date Lutheran or a Baptist or even a fundamentalist much better than he can with a genuine Orthodox Christian because they have much more in common. Kalomiros notes

that Orthodoxy is distinguished from all these Westerners because they all have the same background, the same formation. But Orthodoxy is different from all of them. It stands against all of them, because all the rest of them -- even though they are opposed to each other -- stand together because they are formed from the same mentality, the Western mentality.

The Western mentality was once Orthodox. And therefore we look at the whole history of the West of the last thousand years, which seems not to have contact with Orthodoxy. We look at art and from the very beginning, there's a remnant of iconographic style, especially in Italy, but then very quickly it's lost. And Western art is something quite autonomous, and we have no contact with it in Orthodoxy, and we can't understand ...<sup>14</sup> that there seems to be anything in common. Or, music, well, we Orthodox know our Church music. The West had a great development of secular music, sometimes religious music, but it's not that same thing as we would call religious music.

We have the history of the rise and fall of nations, of monarchies, of the principle of monarchy, of the principle of democracy, all different political institutions, the history of Western philosophy from one system to the other. And all these manifestations of the life of Western man for a thousand years seem to have no common point with Orthodoxy. And therefore, how can we understand those things on the basis of an Orthodox point of view? What is in back of them? And this is where this important thing comes in that happened a thousand years ago, which is the Schism of the Church of Rome.

Many people in analyzing what goes on in the world today will go back to the Enlightenment period, to the French Revolution. And beyond that you can go back to the rise of science, the Renaissance, the Reformation. That seems to be more the beginning of modern times. People who think a little more deeply will go back further than that; and they will find that even at the end of the Middle Ages there are many currents and anomalies and so forth that were leading away from the Catholic synthesis, the Scholastic synthesis of the thirteenth century. But we have to go back further than that because, if you go back even then to the thirteenth century or even the twelfth century, you see something which is still quite foreign to Orthodoxy.

These Scholastic philosophers are quite different from Orthodox theologians. The art even of that time, Giotto, if you look at the paintings of Giotto who is supposed to be really primitive, as primitive

---

<sup>14</sup> Tape unclear



as you can get almost in the West, you will see that the principles by which he paints are totally foreign to Orthodoxy, he introduces.... He paints many pictures of Francis of Assisi and introduces a element of drama, of quaintness, of cuteness, which, of course, a person educated by icons will look at it and say this is not serious; this is some kind of folk art or something, it's not serious. But Giotto is an artist in the best Western tradition, very much appreciated for his primitivity and closeness to Byzantium tradition and everything else. But already this anecdotal, unserious feeling of his makes him totally foreign to Orthodox icons.

And, of course, the same way with Saints; they already -- the "Western Saints" they're called -- are very different from Orthodox Saints. Already there's something entered in. It's very interesting, there's a Catholic ecumenist, Dominican, Yves Congar, who wrote a book in 1954 called *Nine Hundred Years After* about the Schism of 1054<sup>15</sup>; and he said it is really unfortunate that the Orthodox Church broke away from Rome at that time<sup>16</sup>, or vice versa, however he says...<sup>17</sup> the writings of Kireyevsky, who himself went through Western wisdom, rejected it, found Orthodoxy, and then came back, not to be Orthodox as against the world without understanding, but he found in Orthodoxy the key to understand the history of the West, and the understanding of what is happening in the West.

---

<sup>15</sup> Congar, Yves, *Nine Hundred Years After*, Greenwood Press, Westport, Connecticut, 1959.

<sup>16</sup> Not an exact quote, but a paraphrase of the whole theme of Congar's book.

<sup>17</sup> Tape break

# Lecture 2

## The Middle Ages

Now begins a series of lectures on the intellectual history of the modern age, that is, from the time of the Schism of Rome. This will not actually be a history of the intellectual currents. It will be a noting of the tendencies and movements which are of historical significance, which are symptomatic of the spirit of the age and point to future developments. We will try to distinguish the essential points from incidental ones, that is, the features which are characteristic of the underlying philosophy of the times which endure from age to age, from other views which simply depend on passing events. For example, we are not interested that some of the Franciscan spirituals thought that Frederick II was Antichrist or the world would end in 1260, or that in the nineteenth century William Miller thought the end of the world would occur on a certain day in 1844; but the chiliastic views which underlie these very foolish views are what we will be discussing and talking about, because these are the views which help to determine our outlook today.

I will repeat something I said in the introductory lecture that the reason we are doing this is not just to have a view of what is true and what is false, and throw out everything which is false and keep everything which is true, because everything I'm going to be talking about is false. But it will be extremely important for us to understand why it is false and how it went away from the truth. If we understand that, we have some idea of what goes on in the world today, and what is the intellectual structure against which we must fight.

Although, while saying that everything I'm going to talk about is false, I mean it's false from the strictly Orthodox point of view. There, the whole, of course, is relative compared with what happens in the world today. All of these movements we talk about – Thomas Aquinas to Medieval art, to European Renaissance art and so forth – they all are very much more valuable than anything that has been happening in the world today. Nonetheless, there is a whole underlying world-view which produced these things, and we can see how it was departing from Orthodoxy.

The history of the West from the Schism of Rome is a logical and coherent whole, and the views which govern mankind today are a direct result of the views held in the thirteenth century. And now that the Western philosophy dominates the entire world, there is no other philosophy except the Orthodox Christian philosophy which has any strength to it, because all civilizations have been overwhelmed by the West, this means that what happened in the West in these last nine hundred years is the key to understanding what is happening in the whole world today.

The very term “Middle Ages” is an interesting one because it exists only in the West. All other civilizations, whether Christian, such as Byzantium or Russian, or non-Christian, such as the Chinese or Indian, can be divided into two periods, that is, the ancient period when these civilizations were governed by their own native philosophy, world-view, tradition, and the modern period when they became overwhelmed by the West. And there’s no noticeable shading from one to the other. It’s merely a matter of one being overwhelmed by the other.

But in the West, something special happened in the period called the Middle Ages, which is the transition between antiquity, that is, Christian antiquity, and the modern age. And the study of what happened when these changes were occurring, especially around the twelfth to thirteenth centuries, gives the key to what is happening in the present time. And we will try to see now how the modern world-view developed out of Orthodoxy, out of Christianity.

The root of the whole of modern history lies, as we have said, in the Schism of the Church of Rome, about which Ivan Kireyevsky speaks very nicely because, having himself been a son of the West and gone to Germany to study with the most advanced philosophers, Hegel and Schelling, he was thoroughly penetrated with the Western spirit, and then became thoroughly converted to Orthodoxy, and therefore saw that these two things cannot be put together. And he wanted to find out why they are different and what is the answer in one’s soul, what one has to choose.<sup>18</sup>

---

<sup>18</sup> OW #52, Sept.-Oct. 1973, p. 205. Review of *European and Muscovite: Ivan Kireyevsky and the Origin of Slavophilism*, by Abbott Gleason, Harvard Univ. Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1972. The mature Orthodox philosophy of Kireyevsky is contained chiefly in his three major essays: *In Reply to A.S. Khomiakov* (1838), *On the Character of the Enlightenment of Europe and Its Relation to the Enlightenment of Russia* (1852), and *On the Necessity and Possibility of New Principles for Philosophy* (1856).

So he says, first of all, that of course Rome was once a part of the universal Church of Christ, and throughout the early centuries there's no doubt the Roman Patriarchate is a perfectly legitimate Orthodox patriarchate, and even has a primacy of honor which is the same as the Patriarch of Constantinople had until recent times, and would have today if he were still Orthodox, which does not mean that he is some kind of Pope, but only that he is the chief among equals; that is, he presides over meetings of bishops and so forth.

But, as Kireyevsky says, now I quote: "Each patriarchate, each tribe, each country in the Christian world has not ceased to preserve its own characteristic features while at the same time participating in the common unity of the whole Church. Each people, as a result of local, tribal or historical circumstances, has developed in itself some one aspect of mental activity, so that it is quite natural that in its spiritual life and in the writings of its theologians it should hold to this same special characteristic, however enlightened by a higher consciousness, that is, the world-view of Orthodoxy. Thus the theological writers of the Syrian lands turn their attention chiefly it seems to the inward contemplative life detached from this world. The Roman theologians, on the other hand, were especially occupied with aspects of practical activity and the logical connection of concepts. But the spiritual writers of enlightened Byzantium, more than the others, were interested in the relationship of Christianity to the separate sciences which flourished around it, and at first made war against it, but then submitted to it."

And now he speaks, in particular, of the West: "It seems that the distinguishing feature of the Roman mind is precisely a conviction that outward rationalism outweighs the inward essence of things. Among all the features of the Roman man and all of the windings of his activities of intellect and soul, we see a single common feature, that the outward order of his logical concepts was for him more real than reality itself, and that the inward balance of his existence was known by him only in the balance of his rational conceptions or outward formal activity."<sup>19</sup>

Then he speaks, in particular, of Blessed Augustine: "No single ancient or modern Father of the Church showed such love for the logical chain of truths as Blessed Augustine.... Certain of his works are, as it were, a single iron chain of syllogisms, inseparably joined link to link. Perhaps because of this he is sometimes carried too far away, not

---

<sup>19</sup> Kireyevsky, I.V., *On the Character of European Civilization*, in *Complete Works of I.V. Kireyevsky*, Moscow, 1911, in Russian, vol. 1, pp. 188-189; quoted in *The Orthodox Word*, No. 79, Mar.-Apr. 1978, p. 69.

noticing the inward one-sidedness of this thinking because of its outward order; so much so that, in the last years of his life, he himself had to write refutations of some of his earlier statements.”

And we know, of course, that Augustine did go off on the question of free will because he himself felt so strongly the action of grace in his conversion that he did not fully appreciate the Orthodox Fathers’ patristic teaching on free will which John Cassian in the West did appreciate and taught.

Again Kireyevsky says: “Since the Roman mind’s special attachment to the outward chain of concepts was not without danger to the Roman theologians, even when the Roman Church was still a living part of the Ecumenical Church, when the common consciousness of the whole Orthodox world restrained each special characteristic in a lawful balance, it is understandable that after Rome separated from the Orthodox Church, this particular trait became decisive and dominant in the quality of the teachings of Roman theologians. It may even be that this attachment to rationality, this excessive inclination towards the outward thinking of concepts, was one of the chief reasons for the very falling away of Rome. In any case, the pretext for the falling away is not subject to doubt. The Latin Church added a dogma to the original symbol of faith, the Creed: an addition which was contrary to ancient tradition in the common consciousness of the Church and was justified solely by the logical deductions of Western theologians.”

And, again, he says, “It is quite clear to us why Western theologians with all of their logical scrupulousness could not see the unity of the Church in any other way but through the outward unity of the episcopate.” End of the quote from him.

Now again, he talks about another point: “And this also explains why they could assign an essential worthiness to the outward works of a man; why, when a soul was inwardly prepared but had an insufficiency of outward works, they could conceive of no other means of his salvation than a definite period of purgatory; why, finally, they could assign to certain men even an excess of worthy outward deeds and give this worthiness to those who had insufficient outward deeds.” This means the whole Latin system of indulgences and the supererogatory works of the saints of which there is a whole treasury of good deeds, which are added up like in a bank, and when they have too many for their salvation, they spill them out and the Pope distributes to other people, in a very legalistic way.

“When Rome separated from the Ecumenical Church, the Christianity of the West received into itself the embryo of that principle which was the common feature of the whole of Greco-pagan development: the principle of rationalism. The Roman Church separated from the Eastern Church by changing certain dogmas which had existed in the tradition of all of Christianity, for other dogmas which were the result of mere logical deductions.”

The result is the Middle Ages, that is, Scholasticism. And about this Kireyevsky says, “Such an endless wearying play of conceptions for the duration of seven hundred years. This useless kaleidoscope of abstract categories which ceaselessly whirled before the mental gaze inevitably had to produce a general blindness towards those living convictions which lie above the sphere of reason and logic. For a man ascends to convictions not by the path of syllogisms; but, on the contrary, when he strives to found his convictions upon syllogistic deductions, he only distorts their truth if he does not annihilate them altogether. And thus, the Western Church, even in the ninth century sowed within itself the inevitable seed of the Reformation which placed this same Church before the judgment of this same logical reason which the Roman Church had itself exalted. Even a thinking man could already see Luther behind Pope Nicholas I,” the Pope who was excommunicating St. Photius, and pretending to be the head of the Church in the later sense of the Popes. “Just as in the words of Roman Catholics, a thinking man of the sixteenth century could foresee behind Luther the Protestant rationalists of the nineteenth century.”<sup>20</sup>

“The Roman Church fell away from the truth only because it wished to introduce into the faith new dogmas unknown to Church tradition and begotten by the accidental conclusions of Western logic. From this there developed Scholastic philosophy within the framework of faith, then a reformation in the faith, and finally philosophy outside the faith. The first rationalists were the Scholastics; one might say the ninth and the last rationalists are the Hegelians of his day, one might say that nineteenth century Europe finished the cycle of its development which had begun in the ninth.”

That gives a very precise view which is a very plausible explanation of the mechanism by which Rome left the Church and developed the whole of the modern worldview which is so anti-Orthodox.

It’s very difficult to go deeper than that, to find any sort of deeper reasons because those things are hidden to us. The devil is constantly

---

<sup>20</sup> Part of this appears with no footnote on p. 205 OW #52

working. It may well be that the devil was trying time after time and when he found the Egyptians ready to go into the Monophysite Schism, perhaps he had plans to make them into the instrument he would use to form the apostasy, or maybe the Armenian mentality, and so forth; but it happened that it was the Roman mentality which worked, because once having taken it away from Orthodoxy, free to develop according to its own principles, it became a source of a whole new philosophy which had a power to overwhelm the world, which it did finally in our time.

So, with the Schism which became final about, we say, with 1054, the excommunications of Rome and Constantinople, Roman logicalness is placed above the unity of the Church, above the consciousness of the Church, so that the Holy Spirit no longer guides it, as in the Orthodox Church, but now there is an outward authority, the Pope. And the Western historians themselves make it quite clear that at this time something new entered into the Church, into the West. Before this there were temporary estrangements between East and West, [which] we see the time of St. Photius and Pope Nicholas I; there were even excommunications, but then a restoration of communion. Charlemagne himself, in making a rival empire in the West, also was the cause of friction; but it wasn't until this eleventh century that the estrangement became now a separation.

And at that same time, there entered into the West this new principle which is described in the book by a Dominican ecumenist, Yves Congar, *After Nine Hundred Years*,<sup>21</sup> talking about the possibilities of uniting with the East. He mentions precisely this as one of the things which will have to be overcome before there can be union. He says: "A Christian of the Fourth or Fifth Century would have felt less bewildered by the forms of piety current in the Eleventh Century than would his counterpart of the Eleventh Century in the forms of the Twelfth," that is, in the West. There was such a change already in this one century, the eleventh century, the century of the Schism and the twelfth, the height of the Middle Ages." The great break occurred in the transition period from the one to the other century. This change took place only in the West, whereas sometime between the end of the Eleventh and the end of the Twelfth Century, everything was somehow transformed. This profound alteration of view did not take place in the East where, in some respects, Christian matters are still today what they

---

<sup>21</sup> Congar, Yves, *After Nine Hundred Years*, Fordham University Press, 1959, p. 39. Here Congar is quoting Dom Wilmart.

were then – and what they were in the West before the end of the Eleventh Century.”<sup>22</sup>

And here he thinks we have come to the very core of our subject. “In the period between the end of the Eleventh Century and the end of the Twelfth, a decisive turning point was reached in the West. It was a time characterized by several transitions. There was first, the transition from a predominantly essential and exemplarist outlook to a naturalistic one, an interest in existence. This is a transition from a universe of exemplary causality, in which the expressions of thought or of act receive their truth from the transcendent model which material things imitate, to a universe of efficient causality in which the mind seeks for the truth in things and in their empirical formulations. Secondly, there was the transition ‘from symbol to dialectic,’ or, as one might say with a greater precision, from a synthetic perception to an inclination for analysis and ‘questions.’ Here we have the beginning of Scholasticism... The difference between the two worlds is the difference between the attitude of synthetic perception in quest of the relation of the parts to the whole, and an analytical attitude,” that is, which takes things apart and analyses them. “Basically,” he says, “was it not against this analytical attitude of Catholics that the Slavophile religious philosophy aimed its criticism of Catholicism in the Nineteenth Century?” And here he means precisely Khomiakov and Kireyevsky.<sup>23</sup>

“Another transition was that from a culture where tradition reigned and the habit of synthesis became ingrained, to an academic milieu where continual questioning and research was the norm, and analysis the normal result of study. The East followed the road of tradition, and we have shown how one of the principle differences among the various peoples of the Orthodox faith is in fact that they are not trained, as are the Latins, by the schools. The Latin theologians, inured to Scholasticism, have often been baffled at seeing the Greeks refuse to yield to their compelling arguments from reason, but instead taking refuge in the realm of Patristic texts and conciliar canons...” which was the way all Christians reasoned before the Schism. “But this remained foreign to the East which knew no Scholasticism of its own and was to experience neither the Reformation or the 16th-18th-century rationalism.” In other words, the East remained foreign to the three

---

<sup>22</sup> Ibid. p. 39.

<sup>23</sup> Ibid.



influences that shaped modern Catholicism. And that's scholasticism, reformation and rationalism.<sup>24</sup>

In "the first half of the Thirteenth Century, a new kind of theological teaching and study appeared and established itself in the West. Until this time, the dominant type of teaching or study had been of a contemplative or monastic nature, linked with the liturgical life of the abbeys or cathedrals. Now, there was added a new type of teaching and study, of an academic and rational nature which was soon to take the place of the former... In the East, on the other hand, the teaching and studying of theology, and even of philosophy, kept its religious status."<sup>25</sup>

Now we will now try to examine now some examples of what he means. He speaks about a new spirit: a new spirit of interest in the world, of wanting to analyze, a whole new technique of study, dependence upon human reason, which the East never had. So, we will examine now first of all the question of Scholasticism.<sup>26</sup>

---

<sup>24</sup> Ibid. p. 40

<sup>25</sup> Ibid. p. 41

<sup>26</sup> Ibid.

# Scholasticism

And poor Thomas Aquinas has been so much beaten by us Orthodox that we should really read him to see what he has to say in particular, because just reading a little bit of him reveals quite clearly the underlying world-view he has, what kind of questions he asks, how he answers them, and the way he reasons. He, of course, has a tremendous big book, of which I think the whole thing now is in English, in twenty volumes or something: the *Summa Theologica*, in which everything is supposed to be put: about God, about man, about the devil, the world, the end of the world, the beginning of the world, everything about which man has to know. And he has it all divided up into different questions, in categories.

And here is an example of how he reasons. For example, he asks the question whether the devil is directly the cause of man's sinning. We know that the devil acts on us and a man goes into sin, and he's asking all kinds of questions about how this happens. And, therefore, he asks the specific question whether the devil is directly the cause of man's sinning. Of course, an Orthodox writer would say, of course, we have to fight; the devil tries to tempt us, but we can't be tempted against our power. We have many texts which can show that: Holy Fathers, the Scriptures and so forth. We know we are going to have now a systematic approach to this question.<sup>27</sup>

First of all, in the Scholastic method you have to have objections, just like in canonizing saints, you have to have a devil's advocate, who gets all the dirty, the news he can get about the saint, makes up things and tries to overwhelm the evidence. And that way supposedly by having both the positive and negative, you'll be objective and come finally to the truth.

So, we have "Objection One: It would seem that the devil is directly the cause of man's sinning." We have this objection because that's exactly the opposite of the answer he wants to give. "For sin consists directly in an act of the appetite, but Augustine says that the devil inspires his friends with evil desires; and Bede, commenting on that, says that the devil draws the mind to evil desires. And Isidore says that the devil fills men's hearts with secret lusts. Therefore, the devil is directly the cause of sin."<sup>28</sup>

---

<sup>27</sup> Aquinas, Thomas, *Summa Theologica* of St. Thomas Aquinas, Christian Classics, Westminster, Maryland, 1981, Vol. II, p. 498.

<sup>28</sup> Ibid.

Of course, this evidence can get thrown out because he's quoting these people who said it didn't even intend to mean what this objector wants to say. So already you see that you have to twist yourself and make a one-sided reasoning. And he allows it; he puts that in there as an argument, in order to refute it.

Then we have another objection: "Objection Two: Further Jerome says that as God is the Perfecter of good, so is the devil the perfecter of evil. But God is directly the cause of our good; therefore, the devil is directly the cause of our sins." It's very logical: you have God on one hand; but, of course, we do good of our own besides having the help of God. So, this is ridiculous.

But we'll go on to a third objection: "Further, the philosopher says," [the] philosopher is the great authority, Aristotle, "in a chapter of *The Ethics*: 'There must needs be some extrinsic principle of human counsel.' Now human counsel is not only about good things, but also about evil things. Therefore, as God moves man to take good counsel and so directly is the cause of good, so the devil moves him to take evil counsel and consequently is directly the cause of sin."<sup>29</sup>

And now he is going to sweep everything aside and show what the truth is. So, he says, On the contrary, Augustine proves that nothing else than his own will makes man's mind a slave of his desire. Now man does not become a slave to his desire except through sin; therefore, the cause of sin cannot be the devil, but man's own will alone."

And then he gives his answer: "I answer that sin is an action and so a thing can be directly the cause of sin in the same way that anyone is directly the cause of an action, and this can happen only by moving that action's proper principle to act. Now the proper principle of a sinful action is the will, since every sin is voluntary. Consequently, nothing can be directly the cause of sin except that which can move the will to act."<sup>30</sup>

All this is not, there's no sort of Holy Father; this is his logical proving to you on ABC, syllogistic reasoning. "Now the will, as we have stated above, can be moved by two things: first, by its object in as much as the apprehended appetible is said to move the appetite; second, by that agent which moves the will inwardly to will, and this is not other than either the will itself or God, as we've shown above. Now God cannot be the cause of sin as was stated above. Therefore, it

---

<sup>29</sup> Ibid.

<sup>30</sup> Ibid.

follows that in this respect, a man's will alone is directly the cause of his sin," and so forth.

He goes on and then answers objections, all showing that he's tried to split apart this question which is a very simple one about how sin acts in us. And the Holy Fathers will give you not, they won't chop it up like that; they will tell you in general the question of how a man sins, and you will not have to divide it up like that because it's a whole question; it's a very existential question. We have to know about how sin acts, and whether, how the devil works on us. But when you chop it up, then you sit back very content that you've reasoned things through and it's quite different from the Orthodox Patristic approach. You've already asked questions which begin to split hairs quite a bit.

For example, there's a question: "Whether if Eve, and not Adam, had sinned, their children would have contracted original sin?" You know, if Eve had sinned and then Adam had not followed her, would we have fallen? Would we have original sin? Would man be immortal? It's very sort of, well, an abstract question which who would ever think about? And we have the objection: "It would seem that if Eve and not Adam had sinned, then children would have contracted original sin anyway. For we contract original sin from our parents, in so far as we were once in them according to the word of the Apostle when he says, 'in whom all have sinned.' Now a man pre-exists in his mother as well as in his father, therefore a man would have contracted original sin from his mother's sin as well as from his father's."<sup>31</sup>

Again, second objection, if Eve and not Adam had sinned, their children would have been born liable to suffering and death, since it is the mother that provides the matter in generation as the Philosopher states, Aristotle. And death and liability to suffering are the necessary results of matter. Now liability to suffering and the necessity of dying are punishments of original sin. Therefore, if Eve and not Adam had sinned, their children would contract original sin.<sup>32</sup>

"Objection Three: Further, Damascene," St. John Damascene, "says that the Holy Spirit came upon the Virgin, of whom Christ was to be born without original sin, purifying her. But this purification would not have been necessary if the infection of original sin were not contracted from the mother. Therefore, the infection of original sin was contracted

---

<sup>31</sup> Summa, Vol. II, p. 55.

<sup>32</sup> Ibid.

from the mother, so that if Eve had sinned, her children would have contracted original sin even if Adam had not sinned.”<sup>33</sup>

Thomas Aquinas is going to teach the contrary, so he says, “On the contrary, the Apostle says, ‘By one man sin entered into this world.’ Now if woman would have transmitted original sin to her children, he would have said that it entered by two, since both of them sinned, or rather that it entered by a woman, since she sinned first. Therefore, original sin is transmitted to the children not by the mother, but by the father. I answer that the solution of this question is made clear by what has been said, for it has been stated that original sin is transmitted by the first parent insofar as he is the mover in the begetting of his children, and so it has been said that if anyone were begotten only materially of human flesh, they would not contract original sin. Now, it is evident that in the opinion of philosophers, the active principle of generation is from the father, while the mother provides the matter. Therefore, original sin is contracted not from the mother but from the father, so that if Eve and not Adam had sinned, their children would not contract original sin. Whereas, if Adam and not Eve had sinned, they *would* contract it.”<sup>34</sup>

And then he answers the objections in a question which is obviously beyond our say, because God made it that way, that’s the way it is; it is not for us to speculate on these questions which are not for our salvation, which only show that you have time to sit in your university chairs and discuss idle questions. It’s a totally useless question, and he solves it and thinks he has the answer. In the way he reasons you can see that obviously this is very, very different from the spirit of Holy Fathers who do not go from one logical chain of reasoning. It’s all logic, and he comes sometimes to ridiculous conclusions simply by following logic.

So, we can see that here – and he’s the pinnacle of Scholasticism – this is a systematization of Christian teaching, and actually subordinates Christian teaching to logic. But logic itself, of course, depends on the starting point. And they thought they were starting with basic Christian revelation. We’ll see soon that there are all kinds of other things entering in, which affect reason. In this Scholastic system logicalness becomes the first test of truth, and the living source of faith is placed in a secondary place. And that’s why later people hated it so much because they felt it to be a completely dead framework in which

---

<sup>33</sup> Ibid.

<sup>34</sup> Ibid.

there's no life left, idly discussing questions which no one is concerned about, and when you do discuss true questions, you flatten them out and deaden them. And a Western man, under this influence, begins to lose his living relation to the Truth. And thus, Christianity is reduced to a system, to the human level. And this is one of the chief roots of the later errors in the West, which can actually be summed up as the attempt to make by human efforts something better than Christianity.

Dostoyevsky has a little story about this in the legend of the Grand Inquisitor, *Brothers Karamazov*, in which he very acutely describes what the Popes did, that is, the whole Western Church making something better than Orthodoxy, by their own powers.

You can see this, for example, in the celebrated "Proof of the Existence of God" in Anselm, who invented the new proof of the existence of God, which, as you can see, is extremely clever and doesn't prove a thing. He says, "What is God? God must be that than which nothing greater can be conceived." And even an atheist will say, "Well, if there is a God, yes, He must be that greater than which nothing exists or can be conceived, because there's nothing greater than God, according to those who believe in Him." So, aha! you take the first point.<sup>35</sup>

Secondly, existence is certainly a positive characteristic and something which must be possessed by something which is greater than anything else that can be conceived, isn't it? And you think, well, of course, if a thing is really greater than anything else, it must have existence because that is a positive thing, and something which is non-existent will not be greater than something which is existent. Then he says, therefore, since that than which nothing greater can be conceived must have as one of these characteristics which make it greater than anything which can be conceived, existence. Therefore, it must exist. So, God exists.<sup>36</sup>

And as you see, you are being fooled by this man. If you already believe, you can say, aha! that's very nice. You can prove it by the laws of the mind. But if you don't believe in it, you feel you've been fooled by this so-called proof because you're not willing to concede in the first place that this thing is anything more than an imagination; and we see in this already the seeds of the later subjectivism in the West.

---

<sup>35</sup> Cf. St. Anselm's Proslogion II-IV, transl. M. J. Charlesworth, Clarendon Press, 1965, Oxford, p. 119-121. i. Ibid.

<sup>36</sup> Ibid.

This is really the very same thing that Descartes tried to do when he tried to prove his own existence by saying, “I think, therefore I am;” and is also something which later on Metoxis Makrakis was to do when he said that he was the first man in the history of Orthodoxy to prove the existence of the Trinity, as though before this time all the Fathers had been wasting their time, and he was the first one to have enough intelligence and understanding of philosophy to prove what the Holy Fathers couldn’t prove.<sup>37</sup>

Makrakis has exactly that same mentality of, “By my own efforts, I will give you simple people who believed in sort of whatever you were told, I will give you the real explanation of things.” And this is exactly what people like Anselm are trying to do. This is again the spirit of trying to improve on Christianity, trying to accept *not* as Holy Fathers accepted in simple faith, but proving by means of – actually he’s under the influence of all these new currents coming in, and especially of course Aristotle who was very influential in those times, because he seemed to have sort of the universal philosophy – except Christianity; his view of nature was considered to be absolutely the truth.<sup>38</sup>

So, this is the first point: Scholasticism, human reason, becomes the measure instead of Tradition, and that is exactly where Rome went off. But this is only part of the whole picture of what happened in the Middle Ages.

---

<sup>37</sup> i. Descartes, Rene, Discourse on Method: Cogito, ergo sum. i. Paschal Robinson, St. Francis of Assisi, The Catholic Encyclopedia, Vol. VI, Charles G. Herbermann et al, eds., Robert Appleton Co., New York, 1909, p. 227: Francis was ever thoroughly in touch with the spirit of the age.

<sup>38</sup> Ibid., p. 228.

## Romance

Something else happened. And that is that Orthodox tradition is not only rationalized, it also becomes mixed with romance. The element of pagan legends entering into Orthodox Lives of Saints in this time made it so that there are some Lives of Saints which we have in our Orthodox sources, if you read the same Life of a Saint in a medieval Latin source, you will be completely astonished. We'll take one example, the life of St. Christopher, which is known – not too much is known actually about him, but his Life is known: he was a soldier and he was martyred, put to tortures. And there are a number of miracles in the Life; he has a staff that sprouts - this was in the tradition of Orthodox Lives of Saints.

But there is a book written in the thirteenth century, the very thing which exists in English, *The Golden Legend*, which is a synthesis or a compilation of lives of saints, like we have daily readings of Dimitry of Rostov, Lives of Saints which is the same thing. Every day there is Life of a Saint. *The Golden Legend* makes something into being fairy tales or something, not just accounts of something. In the thirteenth century, the height of Middle Ages, before the Renaissance or anything, (when Joachim was doing all the changing) and here he gives the life of St. Christopher, which is such a one that you won't know what he's talking about.

So, it seems that according to this 'life,' St. Christopher was some kind of barbarian who decided he wanted to go in search of the most powerful king in the world in order to serve him. And he finds some kind of powerful king, who's big, as always happens, and he serves him and is very happy because he can then be manful and valiant and fight for him. And then there comes a minstrel to this court, you've probably seen these people going around, troubadours and so forth, and a minstrel comes to his court and begins to sing. And he sings about the devil, he mentions the devil, and every time he mentions the devil, the king makes the sign of the Cross; he seems to be some Christian. And St. Christopher is astonished. Why did you make the sign of the Cross? And he asked him, why did you make the sign of the Cross whenever he mentioned the devil?

King:                                Because I'm a Christian, I'm afraid of the devil.

Christopher:                    Afraid of the devil! That means the devil must be a more powerful king than you are: I'm going to go and serve the devil.



So, he goes off in search of the devil to serve the devil because he's a more powerful king. And he finally finds somebody on the road who says, who are you?

Devil: I'm the devil.

Christopher: Good, I want to serve you. You're the most powerful king in the world.

So he undertakes the service of the devil, and he goes with him on his adventures to various places. And they come to a cross, and the devil all of a sudden falls back, hesitates and runs away. And Christopher says, Why did you run away? I thought you were the most powerful king in the world.

Devil: No, I cannot stand the Cross.

Christopher: Why not?

Devil: I won't tell you.

He [Christopher] said, No, if you don't tell me I'll go and search for some other powerful king, because you're not so powerful. And he [Devil] explained that there was someone who died on the Cross, Whom he's afraid of, and his name is Christ.

So he [Christopher] says, Aha, that means there's a more powerful king yet. I will go and serve Christ. And so he goes off in search of Christ. He comes to some kind of holy man, a monk or something. And he says, Where can I find Christ? he says. Well, he tells him about Christ. He says, Oh, I want to serve him. How do I serve him?

Monk: Well, start fasting.

He [Christopher] says, Oh, I can't fast.

Monk: Can't fast? Well, then, start praying.

Christopher: Oh, I can't pray.

Monk: Well, you can't pray. Well, in that case, go to a certain river and build a hut and sit in the river and wait for people to come and take them across the river, and that way you will serve Christ.

So, he goes to the river, and builds his place and sits in there, and one night, stormy night he hears a small voice,

Child: Christopher, Christopher!

Three times he goes out and sees no one, and the third time he goes out and sees a small child, very small child standing on the shore and saying, Christopher, take me across the river. So, he puts him on his shoulders, goes across the river, and meanwhile the river rises up higher and higher and higher, and the child becomes heavier and heavier and heavier. He finally tells the child, I feel as though I am carrying the whole world on my shoulders.

And he [Child] says, you're carrying not only the whole world, you're carrying the Creator of the world. And so, then he goes off and is martyred and so forth.

And you can see obviously this is absolute fairy tale introduced<sup>39</sup> into a life of a saint, for whatever reasons we don't know, maybe there's pagan influences, the result of very good imagination. Well, anyway, this element of romance enters into even such a thing as the Life of a Saint, becomes a total made-up fairy tale. And that's why you see Catholic and even some Orthodox people paint icons of St. Christopher with the Christ Child on his shoulder, because the word

---

<sup>39</sup> Tikhon: The Brothers Grimm included several stories of Saints in their collections of Fairy Tales (remember that they did not invent these stories, but simply collected German folklore.) *The Twelve Apostles* is a fairy tale that makes all the apostles brothers who were sent out to find bread for their mother and who at the bidding of a childlike angel 'fell asleep' three hundred years prior to the nativity of Christ. In this story is a rewrite of history for a sentimental, romantic, end. A lack of reverence may be noted in the willingness to rewrite this history for a tall-tale. *St. Joseph in the Forest* involves a young girl who becomes lost in a forest, is rescued by St. Joseph, and through doing certain favours for the Saint ends up collecting bags of money for her abusive mother – but once upon failing to do all the favours earns a second nose and is eventually stung to death by snakes and lizards. In this case, the St. Joseph is treated in the exact same way as fairy – requiring a magical ritual to receive a reward, but if not completed properly leads to a punishment. For letting St. Joseph sleep on the ground, rather than sleeping on the ground herself, the girl ultimately dies for being 'wicked.' Saints are reduced to fairies.

Christophoros means Christbearer, therefore they make a literal kind of interpretation and make up a story to suit it.

And many other cases we see that in the Roman Catholic sources even from the height of the Middle Ages in the thirteenth century, there are very many of these romantic elements enter in. We cannot trust those sources. And this was the reason that later scholars came to distrust the sources. Also, there, of course, are such things as the legends of the Grail,<sup>40</sup> which come up from Celtic legends, pagan legends, *The Golden Legend*...<sup>41</sup>

---

<sup>40</sup> Tikhon: The Grail legend has taken many different forms but is always about the search for a relic of Christ. Three main forms of the Grail legend have been told; 1. the cup that held the wine at the last supper; 2. the platter that held the bread at the last supper; 3. A cup that Joseph of Arimathea used to collect the blood of Christ at the cross. In some tellings, variations 1 and 3 are combined. The oldest telling involves the platter that held the bread. These grails, while being very significant relics if they exist, would certainly be mystical and one would expect miracles from them. However, the casual observer will note that the function of the grail is the same as any Eucharistic Chalice. The same miraculous attributes of the Grail apply to the receiving of the Eucharist – with the exception that the Grail grants material immortality rather than spiritual immortality. These legends follow the same trend as *The Golden Legend* and are yet another example of the shift of Western Culture from an ideational to a sensate culture. This is also portrayed in the various characters of these legends.

<sup>41</sup> Tikhon: Another story of *The Golden Legend* worth noting concerns St. Ignatious of Antioch, wherein, after his death the legend claims the faithful split open his heart to discover a prayer written on the inner wall of his heart in gold. This ‘prayer of the heart’ is a bizarrely material portrayal of the acquired ‘prayer of the heart’ that all Christians seek after. The faithful splitting open St. Ignatius’s story proceeds from the Frankish practice of the “division of the body.” As far as Roman Catholic practice is concerned, this many different devotions which focused on certain parts of the Christ (and the Theotokos) evolved from the division of the body, most significantly the Devotion to the Sacred Heart. However, the Frankish Royalty often preferred a devotion to the sacred genitals, considering that the first wound of Christ (the circumcision wound) was the best means to the heart of Christ. The significance of this detail is also historically important as the Avignon papacy resulted from a Papal Bull which banned the gruesome division of the body practice which caused a Frankish coup that took over the papacy about 6 months later. This ban on this practice would reappear during the papacy of Pious IX (1846-1878.) This more recent ban prevented the heart of Pope John Paul II being removed and sent to Poland after his death. The practice of division of the body is problematic as it is a form of Nestorianism. An additional tangential problem sometimes occurred with the division of the body (a practice which involved the boiling and curing of human flesh to prevent decay) was followed by spurious claims of incorruption.

## New Concept of Sanctity

So, we've seen in the Middle Ages the rationalism, logicalness, replacing faith or taking over and shaping now faith, becoming the criteria, romantic elements entering in. And now we come to a very important one which is maybe even more important than Scholasticism, because in the end this will do more to bring about Antichrist than Scholasticism. This is the concept of sanctity which becomes now different from the Orthodox concept of sanctity. And the best example of this is the life of Francis of Assisi.

The fact that this man became so popular, in fact, tremendously popular wherever he went, people went around, acted like Christ Himself coming to them; and they sang and accompanied him. He aroused great enthusiasm, which shows that he was very much in the spirit of his times. But if we look at his life, we see that it is so strange from the Orthodox point of view; and we can say that it's not at all an Orthodox Life of a Saint.

For one thing, he founded a new manner of life. He invented the rule of poverty because in church one day the Gospel was being preached about poverty, about the Apostles not taking anything with them when they preached, although later on, of course, the Apostles did take with them money and so forth. The first time they went out they went by twos to the cities preaching to the Jews and took nothing with them. And he heard this in church and became inspired to invent a new rule, a new way of life, a rule of poverty based on the Gospel, as though there was no monastic tradition before him, which there was. And there were many great Saints at this time.

Of course, he could look around, perhaps the monasteries were corrupt and so forth, and he wanted something different. But there's something already suspicious to think he's going to do something *new*, a whole new rule of life, based not on Holy Fathers. And if he didn't like the recent Latin Fathers, he could have gone back to St. John Cassian, the Egyptian Fathers and so forth, but he didn't. He went instead to the Gospel, like the Protestants. He went and invented himself a rule of poverty. Nothing special, of course – monks are poor – but he made something special out of it, just as later we'll see that the Catholics are making something special about the Mother of God as though she's some kind of unearthly being and so forth. And he gave it and himself and his followers new names.

They were not now to be called just monks, they were the "Penitents of Assisi," or the "Lord's Minstrels," they called themselves, going

about singing. So already we see that they think they're not like previous monks and ascetics, but something *new*, a new spirit which is very much in accord with the spirit of the times.

There was a time, on Christmas in the year 1223, he decided to celebrate the Nativity in a new manner. And so, he reproduced in the church where he was in Italy the stable of Bethlehem. And thus, began the so-called devotion to the crib in the Latin Church and around this he had some kind of a play which is beginning of the mystery plays in Italy – and helping thus the rise of the drama. And the drama of course is something which, although it arose from this very same thing, we're not going to talk about that. The mystery play, which comes from the Liturgy actually, was centered around the Mass and religious themes, and are an adaptation to the new spirit of the times to make religion more interesting, more in accordance with everyday life, more close to the believers, as though Orthodoxy is not enough.

Another aspect of his so-called sanctity - One historian of him says, His very asceticism was often clothed in the guise of romance. So he woos the Lady Poverty, thinks about her as though she's a real person, and keeps wooing her, as the bridegroom, and of course about Sister Death and all of these personifications.

And a very typical example of something new which is not at all Orthodox is what happened once when he was sick. He ate meat. And an Orthodox person who isn't a monk maybe might eat meat during sickness or something. If he did, he would feel repentant about it, ask God's forgiveness, and feel that I'm no good anyway, and ask that if He would, God forgive him. But not Francis of Assisi. Instead, he went out to preach to the people. There was a large crowd, thousands of people as usual, and he said, "Stop. Everyone stay here until I come back." And he went to the church nearby, and he forced two of his disciples to do whatever he told them out of obedience. One of them poured over his head ashes, a bucket full of ashes; the second put a rope around his neck and led him out before the people who were all waiting to see what's going to happen. And here comes Francis of Assisi led by a rope with ashes on his black head, and he looks at them and says, you consider me a saint, but I ate meat when I was sick.<sup>42</sup>

By this, he's making a public display that I am really supposed to be very holy, and if I made a mistake, I got to make up for it so they'll still

---

<sup>42</sup>Cf. The Catholic Encyclopedia, Vol. VI, p. 228: 'Dearly beloved,' he once began a sermon following a severe illness, 'I have to confess to God and you that during this Lent I have eaten cakes made with lard.'

think I'm holy. So we see that he's already playing the *role* of a holy man who must appear before the people as pure, whereas a genuine holy man would repent, and it's all the better if people think he's bad or evil.<sup>43</sup>

Fr. H: Well, here's a good example: the general fools for Christ's sake, they do exactly the opposite. They act crazy in order to be put down...

Fr. S: And, of course, the people who are already having new ideas about sanctity say, Oh, how humble this man is! And actually, there is fake humility; this is not humility. And, in fact, the key to his sanctity is pride. He is conscious of himself as being a holy man. He said, I do not see in myself any sin which I have not expiated by confession and repentance. For the Lord in His mercy has presented me the gift of clearly recognizing at prayer that in which I have been pleasing to Him and that in which I have not been pleasing, that is, spiritual self-satisfaction. I'm holy; I've sinned but I've made up for them by a certain number of penances, and making myself, dragging myself before the people, and now I know that I am pure.

And we can contrast this with any number of Lives of Orthodox Saints, for example, St. Sisoës, who was preparing to die and then lived for a short time longer because, when his disciples asked him, why are you coming back? He said, an angel told me I was not ready; I must repent even more. He's supposed to have lived a holy life, and he said, I have tried all my life to please God, and now at the end I do not know whether I have pleased Him or not. And Francis knows that he pleased God. This is the spirit already of the Pharisee.<sup>44</sup>

---

<sup>43</sup>Cf. Armstrong, April Oursler, St. Francis of Assisi, American R.D.M. Corporation, 1966, p. 54: By chance, Francis was about to eat meat for dinner. Stephen showed him the new constitution that forbade Friars Minor to eat meat this particular day. Francis, laughing, asked Peter (the jurist)'s legal advice. Peter reminded him that he alone had the right to command the friars. 'Then,' shrugged Francis, 'let's eat meat, as befits the freedom the gospel allows us.'

<sup>44</sup>Source for this? – The Prologue, Vol. 3, p. 28, for July 6th says: When St. Sisoës lay on his deathbed, his face was suffused with light. The monks, his disciples, stood around him. Suddenly the saint's gaze became intent, and he said: 'See, the prophets are coming!' His countenance became yet more radiant, and he said: 'See, the apostles are coming!' Then he said: 'See, the angels are coming to take my soul!' Finally, his face shone like the sun and all were in great fear, then the elder said: 'See, the Lord is coming; look, all of you! Listen! He's saying: Bring Me the chosen vessel

At his death-bed Francis says, Behold, God calls me, and I forgive all my brothers both present and absent their offenses and errors, and I remit their sins in so far as this is in my power. He was not a priest, so even in that indirect sense, he had no power; that is, he had some kind of recognizing in himself the power of sanctity by which he can remit the sins of people, which is totally un-Orthodox. And his last words were, I have done what I had to do. I return to God. May He have mercy on you. That is, I'm perfect; I've done it, I'm finished, I'm perfectly justified.<sup>45</sup>

Again, typical of this kind of sanctity is an incident in his life when Christ supposedly appeared to him at prayer and offered him whatever favor he might desire. Already this is romance and all fairy tales – three wishes and so forth. But this kind of familiarity of a saint with God is typical of prelest, spiritual deception. And Francis asked, since he was very much burdened with his love for men, that a plenary indulgence be granted to all who confess and visit his chapel, at the center of his Order. And Christ agreed, but said the Pope must ratify it. The Pope did this. And from that day to this on August Second you can get a plenary indulgence by going to his chapel, receiving confession, which means that you will not have to suffer the temporary or temporal consequences for your sins. A whole new system of indulgences of course is exact already in this thirteenth century; it's already there.

Fr. H: In Metropolia magazine for children, they have a life of St. Francis, Metropolia magazine for children, called Young Life. And Orthodox children receiving this together with St. Seraphim and something else. Can we unite with them?

Fr. S: But there's one thing more, which is the most striking characteristic of this so-called sanctity; in fact, the most striking characteristic of his deception, that is, he imitated Christ in an outward manner. When he had his first, I believe, seven disciples or perhaps twelve – probably twelve and starts with seven. He took them together, and he sent them by two-and-two to go preach the Gospel: one, two, he went himself to France, supposedly to France, two to someplace else, England, Italy, and so forth. And he used the very words of the Gospel:

---

from out the wilderness.!' After this the saint gave up his soul. [EN: How is this any different from St. Francis?]

<sup>45</sup> Robinson, *op. cit.*, p. 226: Francis' last words: I have done my part; may Christ teach you to do yours.

I am sending you by two-and-two to go and preach the forgiveness of sins. First of all he sent them to Christian countries and only later he sent to non-Christian countries, as if he is teaching a new Gospel, as if this had not already been done, as if he is a new christ, sending out his own people who are preaching his gospel; because these countries already have their bishops or their priests, the whole system, and he's sending them into these same countries which already have their Christian government to preach his gospel. Indeed, they go and they found the Franciscan Order.

Again, just before he died, he had bread brought to him. He blessed the bread, he had it broken, and it was given to his disciples, and the life of St. Francis says he remembered the sacred meal which the Lord celebrated with His disciples for the last time; consciously giving them a last supper.

Again, there is a very interesting thing which happened to him when he received the stigmata, which is the marks of the wounds of Christ, five marks in the hands, in the side, the feet. Before receiving this, which in the Catholic Church is accepted as a real sign of a saint, he prayed that he might suffer what Christ suffered in soul and body and, quote, that I might as much as possible feel with all my being that limitless love with which Thou didst burn, O Son of God, and which caused Thee to endure so many torments for us sinners.<sup>46</sup>

This is a brazenness which is unheard of in true Saints: that they want to have God's love itself, and they want to suffer what He suffered feeling the flesh. This is not spiritual striving. This is a search for bodily sensations and the great pride he felt at wishing to feel the very feelings of God. And you can contrast this with any – Christ does appear to saints. He appeared to St. Seraphim as he was serving as a deacon in church, and St. Seraphim did not pray, manifest yourself to me, or make me feel what You felt. He was praying in church; Christ appeared to him. And he did not even want to speak about it.

And then when he [Francis] received the stigmata there was a vision of a seraphim with Christ crucified superimposed on it, which came to him and which we'll show you in one of their icons of this, shoots out rays, sun rays and gives him the stigmata. And at this time, according to his Life, Francis felt himself totally transformed into Jesus, which is blasphemy. That is the root of the whole of Catholic spirituality: this

---

<sup>46</sup> Cf. Armstrong, op. cit., p. 62: Lord, I ask two graces before I die: To experience myself, as far as possible, the sufferings of your cruel Passion, and to have for you the love which caused you to sacrifice yourself for me.



sweetness that Jesus is approaching, I am all one with Him and He's with me— all this is prelest.

And later, sure enough, his disciples call him the new Christ. In one life, it even says, which Ignatius Brianchaninov likes to quote, that when Francis died and was lifted to heaven, God beholding him did not know who was greater, Francis or His own Son.<sup>47</sup>

This kind of sanctity, spirituality is already much worse than the rationalism of Scholasticism, because this means that – you can have rationalists teaching in your seminaries and still be a holy person, still cling to the source of the spirituality – but when the standard of spirituality itself becomes this deceived, presumptuous thing full of pride, then the root is complete closed off. And so it is, obviously, that this kind of spirituality – and this is already 1200, the end of the eleventh, into the twelfth, even the thirteenth century, a hundred years after the Schism, 150 years later – the concept of spirituality is so different from the East, [that there is] no more contact possible. This is what we call a deceived person. This would be a classical example of a person who is living in prelest.

Well, it's obvious that this was simply bound up with his, he had a very apparently strong power of imagination. And this we don't even know the laws of all these kinds of things, but it's on the side of the corrupt properties. It's maybe not black magic itself, but it's very bound up with all that darker realm of the psychic, in which tombs can appear and all kinds of things.

But there's worse to come. The followers of Francis are very interesting because in them there comes out the logical conclusions of this new kind of spirituality, this new kind of sanctity. They see that there's some kind of new, even calls him a new Christ, some kind of a new spirit enters into the world, new spirituality. And so, it is to one of his disciples, Joachim of Flores, that there appears this, actually for the first time, the concept of the Coming of the Third Age of the Holy Spirit which is the foundation of all modern philosophies of progress,

---

<sup>47</sup>Brianchaninov, Bishop Ignatius, *The Arena: An Offering to Contemporary Monasticism*, Holy Trinity Monastery, 1982, p. 40: A 'When Francis was caught up to heaven,' says a writer of his life, \* 'God the Father, on seeing him, was for a moment in doubt to as to whom to give the preference, to His Son by nature or to His son by grace – Francis.' What can be more frightful or madder than this blasphemy, what can be sadder than this delusion! \* *Life of Francis of Assisi*. The greatest saint is only a brand snatched from the fire. Apart from Christ, God sees nothing good in him (I Cor. 1:30).

chiliasm and the New Age.<sup>48</sup> He himself obtained this revelation about this – it was not by thinking it through – it was in a vision. This very interesting book on Meaning in History gives a philosophy of history, of various people from the Middle Ages to modern times. And he says the following about this: It was a decisive moment in the history of the Christian church when an Italian abbot, a renowned prophet and saint and man trained in the most austere discipline of the Cistercian Order, after arduous study and meditations in the wilderness of his Calabrian mountains received an inspiration at Pentecost (between 1190 and 1195). Actually, he wasn't a true disciple of Francis; he was at the same time, revealing to him the signs of the times in the light of St. John's Revelation. He says, When I awoke at dawn, I took to the Revelation of St. John. There, suddenly, the eyes of my spirit were struck with the lucidity of insight, and it was revealed to me the fulfillment of this book and the concordance of the Old and New Testaments. And he therefore has a whole new interpretation of what is the meaning of the Old and New Testaments.<sup>49</sup>

The general scheme of Joachim's discriminating interpretation is based on the Trinitarian doctrine. Three different dispensations come to pass in three different epochs in which the three persons of the Trinity are successively manifested. The first is the dispensation of the Father, the second that of the Son, the third that of the Holy Spirit. [The latter is just beginning now, i.e., toward the end of the twelfth century] and is progressing toward complete 'freedom' of the 'spirit.' The Jews were slaves under the law of the Father. That is the Old Testament. The Christians of the second epoch were, though incompletely, spiritual and free, namely, in comparison with the moral legality of the first dispensation. In the third epoch, St. Paul's prophetic words will come true, that we know and prophesy now only in part, "but when that which is perfect is come, that which is in part shall be done away."<sup>50</sup>

And he says, Joachim, already we can apprehend the unveiling of the final liberation of the spirit in its plenitude.' The first epoch was inaugurated by Adam in fear and under the sign of the law; since Abraham, it has borne fruit to become fulfilled in Jesus Christ. The second [was inaugurated by Uzziah in faith and humility under the sign

---

<sup>48</sup> EN: Joachim of Flores lived before Francis; their lives are contemporary for a few years. Fr. Seraphim corrects himself below.

<sup>49</sup> Lowith, Karl, *Meaning in History*, University of Chicago Press, 1949, Chicago, p. 146-7.

<sup>50</sup> I Cor. 13:9-10

of the gospel;] since Zechariah, the father of John the Baptist, it had borne fruit to become fulfilled in future times. The third was inaugurated by St. Benedict – because he was very monastically oriented – in love and joy under the sign of the Spirit; it will come to pass with the reappearance of Elijah at the end of the world... The ages overlap.<sup>51</sup>

---

<sup>51</sup> Lowith, p. 146-147

## Joachim of Floris

### **3 Ages: The Foundation of all Modern Philosophies of Progress**

“The first dispensation is historically an order of the married, Old Testament, dependent on the Father; the second an order of clerics dependent on the Son; the third an order of monks dependent upon the Spirit of Truth. The first age is ruled by labor and work, the second by learning and discipline, the third by contemplation and praise.... The times which have passed before the law, and under grace were as necessary as the coming epoch which will fulfill those preparatory stages; for the fundamental law of the history of salvation is the continuous progress from the time of the Old and New Testament ‘letter’ to that of the ‘spirit,’ in analogy to the miraculous transformation of water into wine.”<sup>52</sup>

“Thus the coming times of the Holy Spirit are successively prefigured in the first and second epochs of the Father and Son, which are strictly concordant, for each figure and event of the Old Testament, if understood spiritually, is a promise and signification of a corresponding figure and event of the New Testament. This correspondence is one of meaning as well as of succession, i.e., certain events and figures of the Old Testament are spiritually contemporary with certain events and figures of the New Testament by having a concordant historical position and significance. Thus, for example, John’s baptism by water reappears intensified in Elijah’s baptism by the fire of the Holy Spirit, which swallows everything carnal and merely of the letter. This whole process of a progressive consummation is, at the same time, a continuous process of designation, invalidating the preceding promises and significations. The periods of each dispensation have to be reckoned, however, not by homogenous years but by generations which are concordant not by their length but by their numbers, each of them extending about thirty years. The number 30 has no natural, but a spiritual foundation. It refers to the perfection of the Trinity of the one Godhead and to Jesus who was thirty years of age when he gained his first filial spirituals. According to Joachim’s calculations,<sup>53</sup> his own generation is the fortieth, and the assumption of his followers was that, after a period of two further generations, that is, in 1260, the climax would be reached, revealing Frederick II as the Antichrist and the Franciscan Spirituals as the providential leaders of

---

<sup>52</sup> Lowith, p. 148-150

<sup>53</sup> chiefly based on Rev. 11:3 and 12:6; Matt. 1:17

the new and last dispensation, which would end with history's definite consummation by last judgment and resurrection. Within historical time, the goal and meaning of the history of salvation is the uncompromising realization of the evangelical precepts and exhortations, in particular the Sermon on the Mount."<sup>54</sup>

"What is new and revolutionary in Joachim's conception of the history of salvation is due to his prophetic-historical method of allegorical interpretation. In so far as it is allegorical and typological, it is not new but only a coherent application of the traditional patristic exegesis. But this exegesis served Joachim's amazingly fertile imagination not for static – i.e., moral and dogmatic – purposes but for a dynamic understanding of revelation through an essential correlation between Scripture and history and between their respective interpretations. The one must explain the other if history, on the one hand, is really sacred and full of religious meaning and if, on the other hand, the gospel is the *rotulus in rota* or the central axis of the world's happenings. Granted that history is a history of salvation and that the history of the church is its pattern, then the only fitting key to its religious understanding must be the Sacred Scriptures, the concordance of which proves to Joachim not an absolute doctrine but the meaningful structure of a historical process. On the basis of the simple belief in the inspired character of the Scripture, Joachim could extract from it a strictly religious understanding of history and, on the one hand, discover in actual history the hidden presence of purely religious categories. This attempt to explain history religiously and the Revelation of St. John historically is no more and no less than an intricate elaboration of the Christian presupposition that the church is the body of Christ and that therefore her history is intrinsically religious and not merely a department of the history of the world. And, since the history after Christ is still on its way and yet revealed as having an end, the fullness of time is not to be conceived traditionally as a unique event of the past but as something to be worked out in future, in the perspective of which the church, from Christ until now, is not an everlasting foundation but an imperfect prefiguration. The interpretation of history thus necessarily becomes prophecy, and the right understanding of the past depends on the proper perspective for the future, in which the preceding significations come to their end. This consummation does not occur beyond historical time, at the end of the world, but in a last historical epoch. Joachim's eschatological scheme

---

<sup>54</sup> Lowith, p. 148-150

consists neither in a simple millennium nor in the mere expectation of the end of the world but in a twofold eschaton: an ultimate historical phase of the history of salvation, preceding the transcendent eschaton of the new aeon, ushered in by the second coming of Christ. The Kingdom of the Spirit is the last revelation of God's purpose on earth and in time. Consequently, the institution of the papacy and clerical hierarchy is limited to the second epoch. This implies a radical revision of the Catholic doctrine of succession from St. Peter to the end of the world. The existing church, though founded on Christ, will have to yield to the coming church of the Spirit, when the history of salvation has reached its plenitude. This ultimate transition also implies the liquidation of preaching and sacraments, the mediating power of which becomes obsolete when the spiritual order is realized which possesses knowledge of God by direct vision and contemplation. The real signification of the sacraments is not, as with Augustine, the signification of a transcendent reality but the indication of a potentiality which becomes realized within the framework of history."<sup>55</sup>

### **3rd Age is the Last: Chiliasm<sup>56</sup>**

"Belonging himself to the second epoch, Joachim did not draw any revolutionary conclusions from the implications of his historico-eschatological visions. He did not criticize the contemporary church, nor did his interpretation of the angel of the Apocalypse (Rev. 7:2) and the novus dux [new leader], entitled to 'renovate the Christian religion,' mean that he intended a revolutionary reorganization of the existing institutions and sacraments. To him it only meant that a messianic leader was to appear, 'whosoever it will be,' bringing about a spiritual renovation for the sake of the Kingdom of Christ, revealing but not abolishing what hitherto has been veiled in significant figures and sacraments. The revolutionary conclusions were drawn later by men of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, by the Franciscan Spirituals, who recognized in Joachim the new John the Baptist, heralding St. Francis at the novus dux of the last dispensation, even as the 'new Christ.' To them the clerical church was indeed at its end. Rejecting the alleviating distinction between strict precepts and flexible counsels, they made a radical attempt to live a Christian life in unconditional poverty and humility and to transform the church into a community of

---

<sup>55</sup> Lowith, p. 148-150

<sup>56</sup> Fr. Seraphim's notes do not include the next page, but it is included to complete the subject.

the Holy Spirit, without pope, clerical hierarchy, sacraments, Holy Scripture, and theology. The rule of St. Francis was to them the quintessence of the gospel. The driving impulse of their movement was, as with Joachim, the intensity of their eschatological expectancy with regard to the present epoch as a state of corruption. The criterion by which they judged the corruption of their times and the alienation from the gospel was the life of St. Francis. And, since Joachim had already expected that within two generations the final battle would be fought between the spiritual order and the powers of evil, his followers could even more definitely interpret the emperor as the Antichrist – eventually, however, as the providential instrument for the punishment of an anti-Christian church which obstructed its own renovation by persecuting the real followers of Christ.”<sup>57</sup>

...people, these people are on the very high level, they’re really crucifying themselves and struggling very hard. Francis didn’t talk much about that.

Then why is there this idea of a Third Age? It is obviously because with the coming of Christ, there is something new in the world. That is, the whole of world history is divided into two epochs, before Christ and after Christ; the preparation of Christ and the consummation. But once one loses the Christian understanding of the spirit of Christ – Christianity as the preparation for the kingdom of heaven – then this newness leaves one free to speculate.

We see that the Scholastics are reasoning, whatever their logic tells them they come up with. And once you speculate on the idea of newness, you begin to say, Why can’t we have something new now? Because Christianity itself becomes stale. Our monks have become corrupt. That’s what Francis was rebelling against. He wanted to have himself a purer poverty.<sup>58</sup> And therefore from the very idea of Christianity, once the idea of Christian tradition is removed, you logically have the idea of a new Christianity, some new flowering of wisdom, spirituality, and actually a new revelation. This, again, is the Grand Inquisitor of Dostoyevsky, the making of a new Christianity better than Christianity was.<sup>59</sup>

And, of course, all that time released Protestantism and all the sects of today. And the source for this is no longer the Orthodox tradition, which is lost; the source is either reason or visions. At this time of

---

<sup>57</sup> Lowith, p. 151

<sup>58</sup> Lowith, pp. 151-152.

<sup>59</sup> EN: See Lecture 8.

course we have all these new things arising in the Catholic Church, the new orders: Dominicans, Franciscans, and all the rest, the very idea that this is the normal way. And so, these two, Francis and Joachim, will be very influential in later times. People keep coming back to their ideas because they are in the seed period of the modern age.

There are a few other points which are less important but still reveal a very symptomatic outlook of the Middle Ages.

I forgot, about Joachim, he emphasized the fact that this Kingdom of the Spirit is the last revelation, that is, this is the millennium, or chiliasm, the chiliastic expectation. And he used even a phrase, the Church of the Spirit which was coming.<sup>60</sup>

---

<sup>60</sup> Proclaimed by his disciples among the Franciscan spirituals, see Lowith, p. 152 above.



## Medieval Art

We can look at art and see something very interesting, because although iconography, iconographic style never was completely developed in the West, in Italy it was. There was iconographic tradition; and they had many churches in Ravenna and so forth which are in iconographic style. But at this time whatever they had in Italy began to be transformed.

We see already in one who's considered to be still very much in the Byzantium tradition, supposed to have a little bit of tradition left – there's a painter called Duccio who lived at the very time of, no, a hundred years after Francis, end of the thirteenth century. We can see from this painting that [illus.] Christ looks very nice – very serene and calm; it's obviously Byzantium influence. And already there the faces are beginning to be introducing a little bit of human interest. They are very psychologically drawn nicely. But it was very pleasing compared with later, you know, bloody crucifixions and so forth; it's very serene and calm, looks almost Byzantium. That's Duccio who comes before this great change. And there's another one of his, two more of his, Crucifixion and a Mother of God with Child. And you see already, look at these faces in the angels, they are people, you look at angels, not cherubs, haven't got decadent yet, but they're people who have very definite psychological characteristics, maybe somebody posed for the painting. And you see all kinds of human interest. You know. People are looking various, sad and looking around. And already the model, the type of iconography is being lost. There's something, kind of new principle coming in.

But when you come to the next painter we'll talk about, the one who was contemporary with, well, actually the same time, because he was preserving more the older sort of style. But there's a painter whose most typical of this time called Giotto, who was very closely bound up with Francis because he was commissioned to paint his life in the basilica of Assisi. But in him, one historian says: Painting was no longer an echo of tradition but rose at once to the dignity of invention... Art no longer worked on conventional models, abstract and ideal; its models were to be the realities of nature... Representation of real life was to become the object of all painting. And therefore, it's called an artistic revolution, and it's quite fitting that the new saint, new kind of saint has already a new kind of icon, which is no longer an icon but a religious painting. False iconography; false saint gives rise to a false iconography.

He adds many elements from everyday life. This is the beginning of this thing which you see later in the Renaissance painting where all kinds of quaint scenes from everyday life. You even see a Crucifixion of Christ in the heart of Bologna or something like that; this is to show that we're, combination of up-to-dateness and so forth. But you can see from these paintings of Giotto how far away he is even from Duccio. Here is one called the Mourning of Christ; if you look at the close-up especially you see that the faces are very...

Fr. H:        Vicious.

Fr. S:        Sort of vicious and very weird looking. It's still a religious painting, recognizable, doesn't have all the frills later on, but already looks very strange, not at all iconographic style. And Francis receiving the stigmata, already it's (a sort of prelest?); here's the vision which he got directly from himself...

Fr. H:        It's demonic.

Fr. S:        Christ on the seraphim, this weird thing, it's this demonic thing, it's an icon of Francis. And this is somewhat at the same time. You see already all these different kinds of faces. He's obviously trying to capture psychological...

Fr. H:        Earthly, earthly.

Fr. S:        ...earthly aspects of these people. Christ is a still recognizable Christ, but it's gets all the other people with these passions, these...

Fr. H:        That's not icons.

Student:    There's, there's still a remnant here because you notice the three stars on the Mother of God, still a remnant hanging around.

Fr. S:        But we'll show in a later lecture how, what happened in the Renaissance when art completely went wild. You can see already here the principal of why it, how it starts to lose. The picturesque quaint elements begin to enter in, and the whole idea of an icon being the Saint as he is in heaven is lost. Instead, it's the Saint as he is on earth,

an earthly figure. He even begins to throw all kinds of earthly things in. And in Renaissance we'll see that even religious art now becomes a vehicle for a different religion entirely.

## Politics

And a final aspect is, we should touch on very briefly, is the political sphere. The idea of a Byzantium empire was lost. What is the empire? The empire is not some kind of mystical institution; it is rather that political institution which providentially allowed the spreading of Christianity. And once the empire was baptized, became Christian, the emperor was to protect religion for his people and to give the first example of religious life, so that the institutions became Christianized.

In this world, of course, there can never be any perfect Christianization of society, and there was no sort of the romantic idea of making things, you know, perfect society on earth; but, rather that there was an ideal, a heavenly ideal which everything on earth was to imitate. But this ideal was totally lost in the West; of course, there were the political imitations.

First of all, in the 800's there was the rival empire of Charlemagne that was consciously set up as a rival. The Pope indeed chose Charlemagne over Irene the Easterner who was for the icons, and Charlemagne was against the icons, and also favored the Filioque. Already we see that this is very shaky. And this empire gave rise to what was called the Holy Roman Empire in the West.

And Kireyevsky notes, we have a Holy Russia because there are holy men in it, called because of holy men, but the holy Roman Empire was holy in itself, because it was not holy men, holy emperors or holy men in it. It was called 'holy' because the institution itself was conceived as being holy. And this is an attempt, which will come out very strongly later, at sanctifying the world, in which an earthly institution becomes conceived as something holy.

The Crusades at this time, were, although ostensibly undertaken to drive out the infidels from the East, in their practical effect, the function of them was to subdue the Byzantium Empire and make it in union with the Pope.

But the deepest political idea of all in the Middle Ages was that of the papacy. In fact, the universal monarchy of the Pope. As if from the period just before the Schism somewhere in the eighth to tenth century, there is this false document, The Donation of Constantine, at which Constantine supposedly gave the temporal authority to the Pope. And as a result of this, the popes, probably the document aroused, was made as a result of seeing that the Pope was already becoming a political figure. But the result of it was that the Pope himself becomes perceived as a temporal authority, and as a kind of emperor in the West, because

the empire in the West was always very weak. And in the chief political authority is actually the Pope. And we even have the theories of medieval thinkers that all the land in the world belongs to the Pope. He only gives it to people, like in the feudal system. Actually, theoretically he owns the world, the land, not just the spiritual part.<sup>61</sup>

The climax of this kind of a point of view is in the jubilee year of 1300. They're having a jubilee year now [1975] also in Rome. In 1300 there was a jubilee year with the Pope Boniface VIII who seated himself on the throne of Constantine, arrayed himself with sword, crown, and scepter, and shouted aloud, I am Caesar. I am Emperor.<sup>62</sup> This is not an accident, because this is an indication of something extremely deep in the whole of modern thought, which is the search for a universal monarch, which is Antichrist.

As a conclusion we can say that this spirit we looked at in the painting, politics, theology, philosophy, and spirituality is a spirit of this world, of deception, prelest; of the beginning of all those things which we find so strange in the Western saints, the post-schism so-called saints. These idle fantasies, sweetnesses, and all kind of sweet, you know, feelings, imaginations...

Fr. H:       Earthly.

Fr. S:       ...which belong to the earth, in which the religious imagination embroiders upon earthly interests. And these make the separation between, or the estrangement between East and West beginning already in the time of Photius and Charlemagne, as we come now to the final separation. And we simply cannot go back and unite with that church unless that church is going to desperately clean itself up. And how can it clean itself up when these things become very deep in their very mentality and the idea of what is a Saint?

At this dawn of modern history, the thirteenth century, all the seeds of modern mentality are present. And modern history follows logically from these seeds. Essentially, it is one thing – the search for a new

---

<sup>61</sup> The Catholic Encyclopedia, Vol. VI, Charles G. Herbermann et al., eds., Robert Appleton Co., New York, 1909, p. 565.

<sup>62</sup> Source for this? Boniface VIII, quoted in A.P. d'Entrevies, *Dante as a Politic Thinker*, Oxford, 1952 p. 47: "Let not the French rise in their pride and proclaim that they do not recognize a superior authority. They lie, since by right – de jure – they are and must be under the rule of the Romans and Emperor."

Christianity which is better than Orthodoxy, better than the Christianity of the Holy Fathers, which Christ gave to us.

Later on, this will take forms which go through atheism and all kinds of wild beliefs, but essentially the search remains the same, and in the end the world will be Christian, because it's Antichrist who gives them a new religion, which is not something foreign to Christianity. It will not be some kind of paganism. It will be something which everyone will accept as Christianity but will be anti-Christian. A substitute for Christianity which denies the very essence of Christianity.

And that is why the main history of the rebellion against Christ is no less than the apostasy which St. Paul talks about. It is not by means of persecution as it was in the beginning, but by means of taking Christianity and changing it so that it will no longer be Christian. And this is what we can call the unfolding of the Mystery of Iniquity in preparation for Antichrist.

Later we will see some of these main, central themes of the whole of modern history, some of which don't appear too evident in some epochs. One is this striving for world monarchy, world ruler, bound up with the idea of papacy. Another one is the idea of the sanctification of the world, divinization of the world. That's the idea of chiliasm, that this world achieves an importance which is spiritual. Holy Roman Empire, Francis with his feeling of being divine.

And the third one and most obvious one is that man replaces God as the criterion of truth. His feeling, his logic. Man replaces God as the criterion for Truth. Later on, we will see how, to what extreme limit this goes in the Renaissance and later a whole religion of man; but already in these early ages, man puts himself above tradition, above the divine.<sup>63</sup> And Francis places himself even right together with Christ; he becomes transformed into Christ.

All of this is the preparation for the next lecture which we'll define, we'll examine what happened in the Renaissance and Reformation when, as opposed to this thirteenth century, which is considered by the Catholic humanists of today as the peak, really the height of Christianity in the West, and the Renaissance and Reformation as getting away from that. We see the Renaissance and Reformation as only proceeding logically the same apostasy which was started by all this new spirituality of the thirteenth century.

# Lecture 3

## The Renaissance

The life of the saint which we just heard<sup>64</sup>, St. Paul of Obnora, gives us an insight into a civilization which is exactly the opposite of the civilization we are studying now – the Western civilization since the Schism, since the Middle Ages. In the traditional Orthodox civilizations such as that of Russia, very similar events repeat themselves. That is, there are barbarian invasions, monasteries may be laid waste, the monastic life at one time flourishes, at another time it grows lax, and then again it flourishes. Saints rise up, the devil is constantly attacking; there are invasions from outside. And all this happens without disturbing the basic harmony and equilibrium of the civilization. The same thing is true of Byzantium. The same thing is true in the West before the period of the Schism.

There is nothing that we could call new, because once Christianity had been proclaimed, once Christ came and established His Church, there is nothing more that can be new. This is the preparation for the end of the world, and people who are penetrated by the principles of Orthodox tradition do not expect anything new in this world.

In the West, on the other hand, beginning already, as we saw in the last lecture, with the high Middle Ages, with Scholasticism, Francis of Assisi, Joachim of Flores, the element of romance entering into religion, the new political ideas—there is already the idea that something new is happening. Christianity is being improved upon. There's a search for some kind of new Christianity even though they do not use that word yet. And this emphasis is increased in the period we study now – that of the Renaissance, the period after the Middle Ages, roughly 1300-1600. We will find in this period that what began in the Middle Ages is already now becoming an epidemic. And there are things that happened which are totally new in the history of mankind; or, if they did exist before, now attain some kind of completely new level.

The purpose of these lectures, to repeat, why we should be studying the development of modern mentality, is so that we might understand why the world is the way it is today, what has gone into forming our

---

<sup>64</sup> Read during monastic meal the day of this lecture.

own minds; so that we can be Orthodox by rising up against all false ideas, all false formation in our minds, and seeing what is the true Orthodox mentality and the true Orthodox teaching.

Unfortunately, the end of this modern period which begins with the Schism has produced a generation of people who are quite unaware of the past, and therefore a person who does not know what is his past, very easily becomes the victim of his environment which is based upon an anti-Christian philosophy. He becomes this by everything which is in the life around him. And we are trying to understand those things which are in the life around us from a deeper philosophical point of view, so that even the music in the supermarket becomes something philosophical. It has back of it an idea which is supposed to give us a certain feeling which takes us away from Christ.

And so the purpose of this study is Orthodox self-defense. This whole course is an examination of modern history from the point of view of Orthodoxy, which is rather a novel way to do it. Because all history books are written from other points of view; either they begin with the idea that there is a Dark Ages and then enlightened modern ages. And everything is criticized from the point of view of modern, enlightened scientific world outlook. Or else there's another school which says that Christianity, Catholic Christianity is the standard; and the thirteenth century is the pinnacle, and everything else is a falling away from that. And there are other points of view.

But our point of view is Orthodoxy. And from the point of view of Orthodoxy, it should be said that the period of the Renaissance is actually much less significant than the period of the Middle Ages. [During] the period of the Renaissance we see the most spectacular changes and differences from the ancient Christianity; but the actual period when the big changes occurred, which were later to lead to the Renaissance and beyond that, occurred, as we saw in the last lecture, in the period right after the Schism.

After this everything else becomes a logical deduction from that first change. Because once Orthodoxy has been left behind, there is nothing but the playing out of the new principles which came in. And all the principles which began in the Middle Ages will be worked out right up to the present day, so that actually today the forces which are shaping history are just the same as they were in the thirteenth century, only they have attained now a more advanced form.

The period after the Middle Ages is called the period of the Renaissance, the rebirth, that is, rebirth of antiquity. It is the age of so-



called Humanism. And it's very clear already what is the basis of this new epoch.

We saw that the period of the Middle Ages was dominated by Scholasticism, that is, the reason which becomes autonomous, reason which is placed above faith. And this reason, as Kireyevsky very well saw, in the nineteenth century when he was criticizing the West from the Orthodox point of view, very quickly turned against Christianity. First it was supposed to be the handmaiden of faith and serve Christianity and prove all the dogmas of faith and prove a great many other things also based upon authority, the authority both of Scripture, of some early Fathers, mostly Augustine, and Aristotle, since it was believed that Aristotle had the true view of nature.

But in the age of the Renaissance, this reason turned against religion. Because if it's [reason is] autonomous, it's able to develop its own principles; there's no reason why it should be bound to the religious content. And also, we saw in the Middle Ages that the great movements – Francis and Joachim – were very monastically, ascetically oriented. But in the Renaissance, there was a complete reaction against that. And again, this simple matter of the context in which the new ideas arose changed; and therefore, no longer were people interested in either monasticism or having reason serve theology. And so, we find in this period that the idea of monasticism and asceticism is treated extremely negatively, because the interest in the world has now been awakened.

And so, it was natural that at this period Western man turned away from the Church to pagan Greece and Rome, the monuments of which were all over the West and especially in Italy. And one writer has even said that at this period, pagan Greece and Rome had their revenge on Christianity, because that pagan, antique, ancient civilization had been overthrown by Christianity. The ancient pagan civilization which placed man first, was first overthrown by Christianity, and now when reason turned against Christianity, this ancient paganism had its revenge on Christianity, being united with reason. And in its turn this paganism gave a great impetus, a great push to an ideal of total worldliness.

So the ideal of the Renaissance is the ideal of natural man and also of a natural religion which is understandable to reason without any special revelation. One of the great humanists in the north, Erasmus, found in Greece what he called the philosophy of Christ, that is, in pagan ancient Greece. "When I read certain passages of these great men," he wrote of the Greeks, "I can hardly refrain from saying, St.

Socrates, pray for me.”<sup>65</sup> Of course he probably did not pray to the saints, and did not pray to Socrates. What he means to say is: these pagan people are taking the place of the saints.

So, it is in this epoch that man was discovered. And there is a tremendous interest in oneself, the individual. There is a very good book on the subject of the Renaissance in Italy by Jacob Burckhardt, a nineteenth-century scholar. By the way, there are quite a few quite good scholars in the nineteenth century and early twentieth century who developed, who studied quite thoroughly their subjects, which seldom happens anymore. And they, even when their viewpoint is usually quite agnostic or even atheist, because they so thoroughly investigate their subject, you can see quite clearly what’s going on. And he treats a lot of the ideas which were prevalent in this period in Italy, which is the first place of the Renaissance, which later spread to the north.

---

<sup>65</sup> Quoted in Randall, John Herman, *The Making of the Modern Man*, Houghton Mifflin Co., 1926, Boston, p. 134]

## Fame

And he cites for example, he has one chapter on the modern idea of fame, which now first came out – the first time, that is, since the antiquity. He notes first of all that even Dante, who has something in common with Middle Ages, is the first one who can be called someone who is after fame. He says, He strove for the poet's garland with all power of his soul. As a publicist and man of letters, he laid stress on the fact that what he did was new, and that he wished not only to be, but to be esteemed the first in his own walks.<sup>66</sup> Later there was another, elder, a later contemporary of Dante, Albertinus Musattus, or Mussatus, who was crowned poet at Padua by the bishop and rector, enjoyed a fame which fell little short of deification. Every Christmas day the doctors and students of both colleges at the university came in a solemn procession before his house with trumpets and, as it seems, with burning tapers, to salute him and bring him presents. His reputation lasted until, in 1318, he fell into disgrace...<sup>67</sup>

This new incense which was once offered only to saints and heroes, was given in clouds to Petrarch, who persuaded himself in his later years that it was after all but a foolish and troublesome thing.<sup>68</sup> It's obvious this is the lowest kind of worldliness – the desire to be remembered by, worshipped now and remembered by posterity...

Amid all these preparations outwardly to win and secure fame the curtain is now and then drawn aside, and we see with frightful evidence a boundless ambition and thirst after greatness, independent of all means and consequences. Thus, in the preface to Machiavelli's Florentine history, in which he blames his predecessors Leonardo Arentino and Poggio for their too considerate reticence with regard to the political parties in the city: 'They erred greatly and showed that they understood little the ambition of men and the desire to perpetuate a name. How many who could distinguish themselves by nothing praiseworthy strove to do so by infamous deeds! Those writers did not consider that actions which are great in themselves, as is the case with the actions of rulers and of states, always seem to bring more glory than blame, of whatever kind they are and whatever the result of them may be.' In more than one remarkable and dread undertaking the motive assigned by serious writers is the burning desire to achieve something

---

<sup>66</sup> Burckhardt, Jacob, *The Civilization of the Renaissance in Italy*, Vol. I, Harper Torchbooks, New York, 1958, p. 151.

<sup>67</sup> Ibid.

<sup>68</sup> Ibid., p. 152.

great and memorable. This motive is not a mere extreme case of ordinary vanity, but something demonic,<sup>69</sup>This is an agnostic writing. What he means by demonic is something not understandable to human motives.

...Something demonic, involving a surrender of the will, the use of any means however atrocious, and even an indifference to success itself. In this sense, for example, Macchiavelli conceived the character of Stefano Porcaro; of the murderers of Galeazzo Maria Sforza and the assassination of Duke Alessandro of Florence is ascribed by Varchi himself to the thirst for fame which tormented the murderer, Lorenzino de Medici.<sup>70</sup>

Of course, we know the history of, something of the history of the Italian princedoms of this period with these, the infamous De Medicis who even had Popes among them who are poisoning each other and killing off other families, and these tremendous rivalries going on. There was even a certain Lorenzino who brooded over a deed whose novelty shall make his disgrace forgotten, and he was in some kind of disgrace. And [he] ends by murdering his kinsman and prince. These are characteristic features of this age of overstrained and despairing passions and forces.<sup>71</sup>

And, of course, we see in our own times people who are assassinating presidents; [they're] unsuccessful in life; they want somehow to make themselves known, even if they have to go to prison, [or] be killed for it. The idea that they will somehow be immortalized, even by some kind of infamous deed, remembered, because they no longer believe in immortality of the soul.

But this attitude of exalting oneself which appears also in the life of Benvenuto Cellini who's an adventurer running all around doing everything to make himself famous, comes directly from the Middle Ages. It comes from what we saw yesterday, in the last lecture, the preoccupation of Francis of Assisi with himself, with his self-satisfaction, with some kind of dramatic demonstration of how holy he is. Once the spirit of the times had changed, this same motive became twisted into a worldly, extremely coarse self-aggrandizement.

And this is extremely far away from Orthodoxy where even the icon painters usually don't even sign their names. And it's not just a matter of complete anonymity, because we sometimes find the hymns in the

---

<sup>69</sup> Ibid., p. 162.

<sup>70</sup> Ibid.

<sup>71</sup> Ibid., p. 162.

Church books, for example, say this is written by a certain Germanus the Monk or something like that. But there is no desire to establish oneself as a great poet, a great writer, a great icon painter who puts one's [name], so one's name will astonish one's contemporaries. One enters into the tradition and carries on the tradition that has been before.

And now there is the desire that each artist is going to make a name for himself. And in the twentieth century, it becomes ridiculous. As we see, most of these artists have no talent; they think if they splash paint on the canvas as violently as possible to make a name for themselves.

This is a very deep thing because it involves also a deep layer of philosophy and even theology. In the traditional Orthodox worldview, one begins with revelation, with tradition, with what has been handed down from the Fathers and ultimately with God. And if you ask someone how he knows something, he will say, I know because that's the way God made it, that's the way the Holy Fathers have handed it down, that's what Holy Scriptures say, and that's the authority.

In the new age there's a desire to make something else, some kind of a new idea of certainty. And so, a little bit after this period there comes the philosopher Descartes who is the first modern philosopher. And he bases his whole philosophy on one thing: I think, therefore, I am.<sup>72</sup> And everything else that we know for certain is based upon this first intuition which, he says, is the only thing we can know for certain. Because the senses can be mistaken, we can have false revelations; but one knows for certain that I exist. This shows how this preoccupation with the self becomes already a theological first principle. And later on, it attains extremely fantastic development.

---

<sup>72</sup> See note Lecture 2.

## Superstition

It is seldom noticed, because when we think of Renaissance, the books usually say this is the age, the beginning of modern enlightenment when the superstitions of the Middle Ages and the Dark Ages begin to be put away. And so, it is seldom noticed what is very significant about this period – that it is accompanied by an increase of superstition. This is the great age of astrology, of whom Nostradamus is the most famous, of alchemy, Paracelsus and others, and of witchcraft and sorcery.

Burckhardt has a quote on this subject also. Burckhardt notes in this chapter called the Mixture of Ancient and Modern Superstition: He says, “[I]n another way...antiquity exercised a dangerous influence. It imparted to the Renaissance its own forms of superstition. Some fragments of this had survived in Italy all through the Middle Ages, and the resuscitation of the whole was thereby made so much the more easy.”<sup>73</sup> But it was in this period of the Renaissance that it really came out.

At the beginning of the thirteenth century, this superstition of astrology, which had flourished in antiquity, suddenly appeared in the foreground of Italian life. Thirteenth century, that is, this very same period of the high Middle Ages. The Emperor Frederick II always traveled with his astrologer Theodorus; and Ezzelino da Romano with a large, well-paid court of such people, among them the famous Guido Bonatto and the long-bearded Saracen, Paul of Bagdad. In all important undertakings they fixed for him the day and the hour, and the gigantic atrocities of which he was guilty may have been in part practical inferences from their prophecies. Soon all scruples about consulting the stars ceased.<sup>74</sup>

And it should be noted that in Orthodoxy, the Fathers are very much against [this]. Soon all scruples about consulting the stars ceased. Not only princes, but free cities had their regular astrologers, and at the universities, from the fourteenth to the sixteenth century, professors of this pseudo-science were appointed, and lectured side by side with the astronomers. It was well-known that Augustine and other Fathers of the Church had combated astrology, but their old-fashioned notions were dismissed with easy contempt. That is, there's no longer an authority in these Fathers because they are looking for some kind of new religion.

---

<sup>73</sup> Burckhardt, Vol II, p. 484.

<sup>74</sup> Ibid.

The Popes commonly made no secret of their stargazing, although Pius II, who also despised magic, omens, and the interpretations of dreams, is an honorable exception. Julius II, the Pope, on the other hand, had the day for his coronation and the day for his return from Bologna calculated by the astrologers. Even Leo X seems to have thought the flourishing condition of astrology a credit to his pontificate, and Paul III never held a consistory until the stargazers had fixed the hour.<sup>75</sup>

In all the better families the horoscope of the children was drawn as a matter of course, and it sometimes happened that for half a lifetime man were haunted by the idle expectation of events which never occurred. The stars were questioned whenever a great man had to come to any important decision, and even consulted as to the hour at which any undertaking was to be begun. The journeys of princes, the reception of foreign ambassadors, the laying of the foundation-stone of public buildings depended upon the astrologers' answer.<sup>76</sup>

One might ask why these superstitions or pseudo-sciences now begin to increase at this time. The answer is because when Orthodox tradition prevails, there is a knowledge of good and evil. There is a knowledge of evil forces, how they operate, a standard to measure them by. And when this standard is abandoned, when you begin to have the idea that there is some new standard coming in, then there is room for ignorance and superstition to thrive. We will note later on about the question of superstition in our own times, which is by no means as simple as people think: the connection, for example, between socialism and spiritualism which is a very interesting one.

---

<sup>75</sup> Ibid. p. 485

<sup>76</sup> Ibid., p. 486

## Protestant Reformation

The second great movement in this period of the Renaissance, as it is usually interpreted by historians, is the Protestant Reformation. This is only outwardly different from humanism; basically, it is a part of the same movement. It is likewise a movement of reason which turns against Scholasticism and tries to devise a simpler Christianity which any believer can interpret for himself. This spirit was, later, as Kireyevsky very well says, of the spirit that was to destroy Protestantism itself. The enlightened observer, Kireyevsky says, could see Luther behind Scholasticism and the modern liberal Christians behind Luther.

Luther himself was what would probably be considered a narrow fanatic, especially in his later years, but he opened the gate to total subjectivism in religion. And thereupon he gives us a key also to today because this same principle, the individual – whatever I believe, whatever I think has a right to be heard – then becomes the standard. He himself finally achieved some kind of dogmatic system and tried to force it on his followers. But the very idea which he fought for was that each individual can interpret for himself; and therefore, from him come sects.

The religious wars which began in this period, because there now were two religions: first Luther in 1520's who broke off, had already a separate organization, and Calvin and the other Protestants. And therefore, these began to fight with the Catholic princes. And the religious wars of the sixteenth century came up, which really ended only about the middle of the seventeenth century. These wars are rather unimportant in themselves, and their main result was to discredit religion altogether, and lead in the next historical period, which we'll discuss in the next lecture, to the search for a new religion beyond any kind of Christianity, which is the beginning of modern Free-masonry.

Both Humanism and Protestantism continue the work of Scholasticism and Francis of Assisi – the search to improve on Orthodoxy, to improve on Christianity as it has been handed down in the tradition. So, they are continuing this work of Dostoyevsky's Grand Inquisitor. Both Humanism and Protestantism are stages in the destruction of the Christian worldview. Later on, there are more advanced stages.



## Science

Both the Renaissance and the Reformation, though they are the most spectacular movements of this period, are really not the most significant. They are only continuing the work of destruction which the Middle Ages began, the destruction of Orthodox Christianity. And both of them actually stood in the way of the main movement of the Renaissance period, which was that of the rise of the modern scientific worldview. Humanism stood in the way of it because it was preoccupied with the ancient texts and was persuaded that the ancients were wiser than the moderns; and Protestantism stood in the way of science by its narrow dogmatism. It is the rise of the new science which is the new and important thing in this period, which will have the great consequences for the future centuries.

Science became important in this period because man, being set free from Orthodox tradition, turned his attention to the outer world. This attention to the outer world sometimes took forms which were notoriously pagan and immoral. But this worldly interest was also expressed in the rise of industry and capitalism and in the movement of exploration – discovery of America and so forth – these movements which were to change the face of the earth in future centuries. This one might speak of as the kind of leaven of worldliness which would penetrate the whole world and give the tone to today's world which totally lacks the traditional Orthodox sense of the fear of God, and in fact is possessed by triviality.

Protestantism is full of this tone which can be observed by looking at the behavior of any Protestant minister to compare it with the behavior of an Orthodox priest. The Catholic priest also has this same worldly tone, worldly spirit; and Orthodox priests who are losing the savor of Orthodoxy enter into this very same light-minded, jazzy, up-to-date feeling which is the influence of worldliness, which makes possible such a thing as Disneyland and those things which any sane person in the Middle Ages or the Renaissance and, above all, in traditional Christian civilization, would have regarded as some kind of madness.

Now we come to the most important aspect of this period of the Renaissance, which is the rise of modern science. This is the discovery of a new key to knowledge and truth. And actually, what it is, is a new scholasticism. The scientific method replaces the Scholastic method as the means of attaining truth. And just like Scholasticism it leads to the

loss of all truths which do not fit into its framework which is a very narrow and rigid one.

It is extremely interesting that modern science is born in so-called mysticism, just as we shall see later on socialism was born in a kind of mysticism. This mystical outlook was the Platonism and Pythagoreanism which were revived together with ancient studies, which communicated the faith that the world is ordered according to number. The philosophy, the system of Pythagoras especially is based upon the harmonious order of the numbers which corresponds to the outward world. And we see in the modern world that the union of mathematics with observation has indeed changed the face of the earth, because it is true that the world is ordered according to number. But this in the beginning was known only dimly, and it was this faith of the Pythagoreans and Platonists that the numbers corresponded to reality and the investigation into the mysteries of nature which led to the discoveries which changed the world outlook.

Modern science also was borne on the experiments of the Platonic alchemists, the astrologers and magicians. The underlying spirit of the new scientific worldview was the spirit of Faustianism, the spirit of magic, which is retained as a definite undertone in contemporary science today. The discovery, in fact, of atomic energy would have delighted the Renaissance alchemists very much. They were looking exactly for power like that.

The aim of modern science is power over nature, and Descartes, who formulated the mechanistic/scientific worldview said that man is to become the master and possessor of nature. It should be noted that this is a religious faith that takes the place of Christian faith. Even the rationalist Descartes who said that the whole of nature is nothing but a great machine and gave thus the mechanistic/scientific outlook which exists, even today predominates in scientific research – he himself in his youth had strange dreams and visions, and after he had devised his new science he had a vision of the angel of truth. Descartes. This angel of truth commanded him to trust his new science which would give him all knowledge. And knowledge, of course, had the purpose of making man the master and possessor of nature. This religious nature of scientific faith can be seen today when the breakdown of scientific faith, which has been dominant these last centuries, is leading now to a new crisis in religion. Because now men come to the question: what can one believe if even science, which is supposed to be the ultimate certainty,

if it gives no certainty? And so, new irrational philosophies are born and the wish to believe in new gods.

This scientific world outlook which is now breaking down is producing this restlessness which we sense in the air today. And a number of people who are inspired by this restlessness are now coming to Orthodoxy. In fact, that is the position in very much of our converts. And it's very important all the more, therefore, since we are trying to defend ourselves against false philosophies, to understand that if coming to Orthodoxy we do not fully understand the Orthodox world-view and enter into it, we will become the pawns of these new irrational philosophies which will take the place of the scientific faith.

The scientific texts of the Renaissance period are filled with Platonic and pseudo-Christian mysticism and with the conviction that the mystery of the universe is now being discovered. Because before the Middle Ages in traditional Christian times, in Byzantium, in the West before the Schism, in Russia and other Orthodox civilizations, there was no desire to unravel the mystery of the universe because we had the knowledge, sufficient knowledge of God for salvation. And we knew that the universe is – there are many aspects we don't understand. We know enough to save our souls. And the rest of it is this sphere of magic, alchemy and all kinds of dark sciences. But now the Christian faith is being rejected, the religious interest is projected into the world. And therefore [we see] the idea that there's a mystery of the universe which, by the way, is very much with many modern scientists.

At the present day, scientific knowledge is felt to be almost an intolerable weight upon men. And many people feel that the rise of modern science has as its ultimate aim the bringing of mankind to total slavery. And even today we have people seriously in American universities teaching that man is entirely determined, that scientists must sort of govern his future, that you can put a little calculator of some kind in the pocket, hook it up to the brain; and whenever anyone performs an act which is anti-social, against whatever the leaders want, they will get an impulse from the brain which will give them such a pain that they will stop acting contrary to society.

Student: You're talking about Skinner?

Fr. S: Yes. Skinner and those people.

And so, this scientific faith, this scientific knowledge is felt to be very cold and heavy today. And therefore, it's very interesting to understand how the first scientific, the ones who were discovering the new scientific view felt. And there were some at that time who felt a mysterious exaltation at this new religion of science.

A very good example of this is the astronomer and philosopher, Giordano Bruno, who was one of the typical wanderers of modern times. He was a Dominican monk who ran away from his monastery. He went to the north; he met Luther. He was very much attracted by Lutheranism, then by Calvinism. Then he became disillusioned. He was excommunicated by Luther. He was excommunicated by Calvin. He went to England and fell in love with Queen Elizabeth, and then discovered that he wasn't so popular, and he cursed Oxford. Then he went to France, and the king invited him there to give lectures. He had special kind of techniques in memory training that people thought were something close to magic. But he was also teaching the new astronomy; that is, he was one of the first followers of the Copernican theory. But nowhere did he feel any kind of rest. He was full of this restless spirit of the age; but nowhere did he find peace.

But he was one who felt the consequences of the Copernican revolution, about which we'll talk in a minute. That is, the fact that the earth goes around the sun and not the sun around the earth was for him a definite discovery which had religious consequences. He said as a result of this: Man is no more than an ant in the presence of the infinite, and a star is no more than a man.<sup>77</sup> That is very contemporary feeling that man is lost in the immensity of space. But he did not feel it to be something cold. Today we think of something horrible and cold, and man is lost in space. He did not believe that because he saw everywhere God, his idea of God. He said that nature is God in things. He had a kind of mystic pantheism. And he said that matter is divine. He said God, which has been lost because the Orthodox worldview has been rejected, is now projected into matter. He found God everywhere in the life of the universe. He believed that even the planets were alive – maybe not personal intelligence – but some kind of life was glowing through these stars and through these creatures. And perhaps this is not too far away from Francis of Assisi.

When the earth is dislodged from the center of things, he saw, or thought he saw, all boundaries vanish. He believed that the universe is

---

<sup>77</sup> Randall, John Hermann, *The Making of the Modern Mind*, The Riverside Press, Houghton Mifflin Co., Cambridge, Massachusetts, 1926, p. 243.

infinite. There's an infinite number of worlds and an infinite number of intelligences upon these worlds, other kinds of humanity, these ideas which modern people very much are intrigued by.

According to him, to know nature is to know God. Each advance in science and the knowledge of nature is a new revelation, that is, something religious. He himself said that he was attracted by the darkness of the unknowable in the same way that a moth is drawn to the flame which devours it. And he, by that, unwittingly prophesied his own end, because he was arrested by the Inquisition and burned at the stake as a heretic. But he died like a martyr. He was very calm and said that he would not change his views; he believed what he believed.

Later on, he was almost totally forgotten until around 1870 [when] his writings began to be published, and now he's becoming more and more known, and books in English came out about him. There's a pillar was built in Rome on the site of his burning.

This mysticism of nature which he had at the very beginning of modern science is very interesting because it is echoed by another kind of mysticism of science which occurs now when the scientific world-view has collapsed or where it is coming to its end, that is, the so-called mysticism of Teilhard de Chardin – [which we'll look at in] a later chapter.

## The Copernican Revolution

The key moment in the rise to power of the scientific faith, the scientific worldview, is the so-called Copernican revolution. Giordano Bruno died in 1600. Copernicus died 1543, and his book came out in the year of his death, 1543. Before this time medieval astronomy and astronomy from ancient times had been based upon the geocentric theory that the earth was in the center of the universe and everything revolved around it. But there were certain irregular motions of the planets, in order to explain which, the astronomers developed all kinds of cycles within cycles to show that they were making irregular movements. And the new faith in Platonic mysticism – that the numbers correspond to reality, that God does things, nature does things in the simplest possible way – made some people dissatisfied with this. And Copernicus made all kinds of calculations and finally came to the discovery – which was based not on observation; it was based upon mathematical faith – that, to make the simplest possible explanation of the movements in the sky, one must assume that the earth goes around the sun together with the planets.

About this one should say two things: the discovery of this new truth – which seems to be true because you can aim a rocket and get it to the right place in the sky by believing this – the discovery of this new truth does not refute the fact that the heavenly bodies do in fact go around the earth because anybody can observe that every day. The scientific truth of heliocentrism, that the earth goes around the sun, only explains, on the scientific level, the complex movements which the heavenly bodies and the earth make with regard to each other in order to create the effect we see every day, which is that the sun goes around the earth.

In the same way the scientific explanation of greenness, as the joining together of sun, eyes, and a configuration of molecules in a plant, does not change the fact that I see a green forest. And if I am sound in mind and soul, I delight in it. I still see the forest. You can explain it on some kind of technical level and maybe even get a deeper understanding of the causes which produce this effect; but the effect is the same. And this failure to distinguish between these two things caused a lot of confusion at this period; because the scientific theory of heliocentrism does not explain the very essence of things; it only explains that some kind of complicated interrelationships which produce certain effects. And the effect remains the same.

And so, the Copernican theory does not explain away either the Book of Psalms which talks about the sun knoweth his going down (Ps. 104:19) and does not contradict our daily experience of seeing the sun go around the earth. People who change their minds and think only in terms of this – that the earth going around the sun as a fact of everyday experience – are mixing up what is some kind of technical explanation with everyday experience. There are two different spheres.

The second thing to say about this Copernican revolution is that the so-called new universe, which is opened up by the Copernican revolution, is not incompatible with Orthodoxy. Kireyevsky, in fact, says that Orthodox people can only be astonished that they wanted to burn Galileo at the stake for the fact that he said the heresy – they even called it the heresy – that the earth goes around the sun. And Kireyevsky says it's incomprehensible to an Orthodox person how this can be a heresy. Because Scholastic rationalism had so taken possession of Western minds that all the syllogisms of Scholasticism whether based on Scripture or based on Aristotle were of equal value, and so the theories about whether the earth moves or stands still become on the level of dogma. Whereas Orthodoxy carefully distinguishes the truths which are of faith – the dogmas – from those which are outward and are open to various interpretations and speculations.

And in the writings on Hexaemeron of St. Ambrose, Andrew the Great, St. Basil the Great and other Holy Fathers, they are very careful to distinguish what is revealed by God and what is only the speculations of men. And he says it's unimportant for us to speculate about how all these things come to pass, what stands still, what moves, how the comets can be explained; all that is very secondary and does not affect our faith.

The Copernican revolution gave rise to new religious views of man dethroned and alone in a cold and infinite universe. But these religious views are not deducible from the new facts. The new facts themselves do not change anything in one's religion. They only show that the primary impulse in this new scientific worldview was a religious impulse, that men were searching for some new faith which can be found by looking at the outward world. Men wished to have a new faith, and they used the facts which they discovered to help bring this about. The same thing happens all the time from then on in the history of the modern West.

The next thing we'll discuss will be something which is perhaps not of direct historical significance, but it is something which is of very deep significance as revealing the philosophy of modern man and a forerunner of later movements. This concerns some of the religious movements of the Renaissance period, besides the Protestant Reformation.



# Chiliasm

One might say that the mainstream of religion at this time was Protestantism and the increasingly secularized Catholicism, both of which were reducing religion to reason and feeling. It might be said that Catholicism tried to preserve something of the past, but it was obviously making great concessions to the spirit of the age, which it itself had started; it was very much bound up with the new age. But in this period, there are a number of underground currents in religion which are very symptomatic.

There were movements of chiliasm. And one classic book on this called *The Pursuit of the Millennium*, which is a study of the chiliastic movements of this period from the Middle Ages to the Reformation.

Norman Cohn says: There seems to be no evidence of such movements having occurred before the closing years of the eleventh century.<sup>78</sup> That is precisely the time when Rome left the Church. That same new spirit revealed itself in the rise of these new sects.

This is also the same period, by the way, that the practice of flagellation began – after Rome had left the Church. This author is very secularly oriented and says that this is because of the new social conditions, that is, the rise of trade and industry replacing agriculture. But we can say safely that the new mental conditions, the beginning, the opening of the possibility for a new kind of Christianity once Orthodoxy is left behind: this is more likely the dominant reason.

He even talks about this in this book, contrasting the attitude before the Middle Ages with the attitude in the Middle Ages and the Renaissance: ...[I]f poverty, hardships and an often oppressive dependence could by themselves generate it, revolutionary chiliasm would have run strong amongst the peasantry of medieval Europe. In point of fact it was seldom to be found at all. A marked eagerness on the part of serfs to run away; recurrent efforts on the part of peasant communities to extract concessions; brief, spasmodic revolts – such things were familiar enough in the life of many a manor. But it was only very rarely that settled peasants could be induced to embark on the pursuit of the Millennium.<sup>79</sup>

What he's describing is the civilization of a traditional Orthodox place, land – but under new conditions, both under new outward

---

<sup>78</sup> Cohn, Norman, *The Pursuit of the Millennium*, Harper Torchbooks, 1961, New York, p. 22.

<sup>79</sup> Ibid. p. 24

conditions when trade and industry arise, and many of these new sectarians were in the weaving guilds where they had chance of unemployment when the foreign markets were closed and so forth. The unsettledness of their life had an influence on the religious views also, but also because this new spirit came in, which meant that Orthodoxy was not enough. And there was a beginning of a search for a new Christianity, a new religion.

In the traditional, tradition-oriented society, this same author says, the very thought of any fundamental transformation of society was scarcely conceivable.<sup>80</sup> And these new movements began to conceive of the idea of a fundamental transformation of society, that is, the beginning of what we will later find out is the movement of the revolution of modern times.

Some of these sectarians were called the Brethren of the Free Spirit, and they flourished from the eleventh century onward with a doctrine that God is all that is; every created thing is divine, that a new age of the Holy Spirit is coming, and when Joachim of Flores already proclaimed his teaching, they followed his teaching that each person has the Holy Spirit and is himself divine and, therefore, he can commit sin and still be pure. There is a certain Sister Catherine in the fourteenth century who had an ecstatic experience and then proclaimed: Rejoice with me, for I have become God.<sup>81</sup> This is not so far away again from

---

<sup>80</sup> Ibid.

<sup>81</sup> Catherine of Siena: *The Dialogue*, transl. & intr. by Suzanne Noffke, O.P., Paulist Press, 1980, pp. 25-26. Catherine dictated *The Dialogue* during a 5-day ecstatic experience, referring to herself in the third person or as the soul: A soul rises up...she seeks to pursue truth and clothe herself in it. But there is no way she can so savor and be enlightened by this truth as in continual humble prayer, grounded in the knowledge of herself and of God. For by such prayer the soul is united with God, following in the footsteps of Christ crucified, and through desire and affection and the union of love he makes of her another himself. So, Christ seems to have meant when he said, 'If you will love me and keep my word, I will show myself to you, and you will be one thing with me and I with you.' (John 14:21-23) And we find similar words in other places from which we can see it is the truth that by love's affection the soul becomes another himself. To make this clearer still, I remember having heard from a certain servant of God [Catherine referring to herself] that, when she was at prayer, lifted high in spirit, God would not hide from her mind's eye his love for his servants. No, he would reveal it, saying among other things, 'Open your mind's eye and look within me, and you will see the dignity and beauty of my reasoning creature [the human person]. But beyond the beauty I have given the soul by creating her in my image and likeness, look at those who are clothed in the wedding garment of charity, adorned with many true virtues: They are united with me through love. So I say, if you should ask me who they are, I would answer,' said the gentle loving Word, 'that

Francis of Assisi.

Another movement is called the Taborite Movement in the fifteenth century which was a movement of communism, a return to the golden age where everyone is equal. There was at this time a certain Thomas Müntzer who was born just a few years after Luther who preached the millennium and the mass extermination of all those who were opposed to his doctrine. According to him all things were to be held in common. But he was captured and killed after a revolt which he tried to lead. Interestingly enough, this very man Thomas Müntzer was idealized by Friedrich Engels who wrote a whole book about him, I believe. And the Communist historians down to the present day in Russia will say that he's a forerunner of Communism, and we'll see later on that his economic ideas have nothing to do with it. He was, however, in the same spirit as the Communist movement, which is a millennial movement, chiliastic movement, but unlike Müntzer, without talking about the Holy Spirit.

Then again in 1534 there are people who called themselves Anabaptists, that is, who were against infant baptism because each person has to know himself what he's being, what he's getting in for. They had an armed rising in Munster, which was preceded by wild men running in the streets calling for repentance; and there were apocalyptic visions right in the streets. This city of Munster was proclaimed to be the New Jerusalem. Most of the Lutherans left. And the Anabaptists through all the towns about came to this city of Munster which had a population of around ten thousand. They went through the monasteries and churches, looted them. And in one night, they got all the paintings and statues and books from the Catholic cathedral and destroyed them.

---

they are another me; for they have lost and drowned their own will and have clothed themselves and united themselves and conformed themselves with mine.' It is true, then, that the soul is united to God through love's affection. p. 57: The fire within that soul blazed higher and she was beside herself as if drunk, at once gloriously happy and grief-stricken. She was happy in her union with God, wholly submerged in his mercy and savoring his vast goodness.... For her union with God was more intimate than was the union between her soul and her body. p. 85: You will all be made like him in joy and gladness; ... your whole bodies will be made like the body of the Word my Son. You will live in him as you live in me, for he is one with me. Also p. 295 [God speaking to her]: That soul was so perfectly united with me that her body was lifted up from the earth, because in this unitive state I am telling you about, the union of the soul with me through the impulse of love is more perfect than her union with her body.

Two so-called Dutch prophets became their leaders, Matthys and Bockelson, and they turned this city into a theocracy. All Lutherans and Catholics who remained were condemned to be executed; but then they softened this and expelled them from the city.

After this a new law court was set up in which it was an offense to be unbaptized in the Anabaptist faith, which was punishable by killing. The only ones who were to be left in the city were to be the brothers and sisters, the Children of God. The Catholic bishop, of course, was opposed to this and besieged the town. At this time a state of perfect so-called communism was established. All their property was confiscated by the leaders; all who disapproved of the doctrine or expressed any dissent were imprisoned and executed. And while actually they were executed, they sang hymns. A reign of terror was established which is described in this book with some detail:

The terror had begun, and it was in an atmosphere of terror that Matthys proceeded to carry into effect the communism which had already hovered for so many months, a splendid millennial vision, in the imagination of the Anabaptists. A propaganda campaign was launched by Matthys...and other preachers. It was announced that true Christians should possess no money of their own but should hold all money in common; from which it followed that all money, and also all gold and silver ornaments, must be handed over. At first this order met with opposition; some Anabaptists buried their money. Matthys responded by intensifying the terror. The men and women who had been baptized only at the time of the expulsions were collected together and informed that unless the Father chose to forgive them, they must perish by the swords of the righteous. They were then locked inside a church, where they were kept in uncertainty for many hours until they were utterly demoralized. At length Matthys entered the church with a band of armed men. His victims crawled towards him on their knees, imploring him, as the favorite of the Father, to intercede for them. This he did or pretended to do; and in the end informed the terrified wretches that he had won their pardon and that the Father was pleased to receive them into the community of the righteous. After this exercise in intimidation Matthys could feel much easier about the state of morale in the New Jerusalem.

Propaganda against the private ownership of money continued for weeks on end, accompanied both by the most seductive blandishments and by the most appalling threats. The surrender of money was made a test of true Christianity. Those who failed to comply were declared fit

for extermination and it seems that some executions did take place. After two months of unrelenting pressure the private ownership of money was effectively abolished. From then on money was used only for public purposes involving dealings with the outside world, for hiring mercenaries to fight against the bishop, buying supplies and distributing propaganda. Artisans within the town...received their wages not in cash but in kind...<sup>82</sup>

The abolition of private ownership of money, the restriction of private ownership of food and shelter were seen as first steps towards a state in which...everything would belong to everybody and the distinctions between Mine and Thine would disappear. Bockelson himself expressed it thus: "all things were to be in common, there was to be no private property, and nobody was to do any more work, but simply trust in God."<sup>83</sup>

A scholar from Antwerp wrote to Erasmus of Rotterdam, who of course did not like all these irrational movements because he believed men should be rational and liberal and tolerant, 'We in these parts are living in wretched anxiety because of the way the revolt of the Anabaptists has flared up. For it really did spring up like fire. There is, I think, scarcely a village or town where the torch is not glowing in secret. They preach community of goods, with the result that all those who have nothing come flocking.'<sup>84</sup> You can see, of course, that there will be many secondary motives of people who come, but that also the fact that this movement could spread like wild-fire means there is a deep expectation, some kind chiliastic new religion. ...In the middle of March Matthys banned all books save the Bible. All other works, even those in the private ownership, had to be brought to the cathedral-square and thrown upon a great bonfire.<sup>85</sup>

Then this Matthys made a mistake. He had a divine command to go out and fight the enemy, and the enemy killed him. So then Bockelson took over and proclaimed himself to be king. His first act was to run naked through the town in a frenzy and fell into an ecstasy for three days. When speech returned to him, he called the population together and announced that God had revealed to him that the old constitution of the town, being the work of men, must be replaced by a new one which would be the work of God. The burgomasters and Council were

---

<sup>82</sup> Cohn, p. 287.

<sup>83</sup> Ibid., p. 288.

<sup>84</sup> Ibid., p. 290.

<sup>85</sup> Ibid., p. 290.

deprived of their functions. In their place Bockelson set himself and – on the model of Ancient Israel – twelve elders...

Sexual behavior was at first regulated as strictly as all other aspects of life. The only form of sexual relationship permitted was marriage between two Anabaptists. Adultery and fornication, which were held to include marriage with one of the 'godless,' that is, married, marrying one of the godless, were capital offenses. This was in keeping with the Anabaptist tradition... This order came to an abrupt end, however, when Bockelson decided to establish polygamy...<sup>86</sup>

Like community of goods, polygamy met with resistance when it was first introduced. There was an armed rising during which Bockelson, Knipperdollinck and the preachers were thrown into prison; but the rebels, being only a small minority, were soon defeated and some fifty of them were put to death.<sup>87</sup> This very city has about 10,000 people in it. During the following days others who ventured to criticize the new doctrine were also executed; and by August polygamy was established.... The religious ceremony of marriage was eventually dispensed with and marriages were contracted and dissolved with great facility. Even if much in the hostile accounts which we possess is discounted as exaggeration, it seems certain that norms of sexual behavior in the Kingdom of the Saints traversed the whole arc from a rigorous puritanism to sheer promiscuity...<sup>88</sup>

Bock Elson's prestige was at its highest when, at the end of August 1534, a major attack was beaten off so effectively that the bishop found himself abruptly deserted both by his vassals and by the mercenaries. Bockelson would have done well to organize a sortie which might perhaps have captured the bishop's camp, but instead he used the opportunity to have himself proclaimed king.<sup>89</sup>

There was a certain goldsmith who came now as a prophet. One day, in the main square, this man declared that the Heavenly Father had revealed to him that Bockelson was to be king of the whole world, holding dominion over all kings, princes and great ones of the earth. He was to inherit the scepter and throne of his forefather David and was to keep them until God should reclaim the kingdom from him...<sup>90</sup>

---

<sup>86</sup> Ibid., p. 292.

<sup>87</sup> Ibid., p. 293.

<sup>88</sup> Ibid., p. 294.

<sup>89</sup> Ibid., p. 295.

<sup>90</sup> Ibid., p. 295.

The new king did everything possible to emphasize the unique significance of his accession. The streets and gates in the town were given new names; Sundays and feastdays were abolished and the days of the week were renamed on an alphabetical system; even the names of new-born children were chosen by the king according to a special system. Although money had no function in Munster a new purely ornamental coinage was created. Gold and silver coins were minted, with inscriptions summarizing the whole millennial fantasy which gave the kingdom its meaning. Inscriptions included: 'The Word has become Flesh and dwells in us;' 'One King over all. One God, one Faith, one Baptism.' special emblem was devised to symbolize Bockelson's claim to absolute spiritual and temporal dominion over the whole world: a globe, representing the world, pierced by the two swords (of which hitherto pope and emperor had each borne one) and surmounted by a cross inscribed with the words: 'One king of righteousness over all.' The king himself wore this emblem, modeled in gold, hanging by a gold chain from his neck. His attendants wore it as a badge on their sleeves; and it was accepted in Munster as the emblem of the new state...<sup>91</sup>

In the marketplace a throne was erected; draped with cloth of gold it towered above the surrounding benches which were allotted to the royal councilors and the preachers. Sometimes the king would come there to sit in judgment or to witness the proclamation of new ordinances. Heralded by a fanfare, he would arrive on horseback, wearing his crown and carrying his scepter. In front of him marched officers of the court, behind him the chief minister and a long line of ministers, courtiers and servants. The royal bodyguard accompanied and protected the whole procession and formed a cordon around the square while the king occupied his throne. On either side of the throne stood a page, one holding a copy of the Old Testament – to show that the king was a successor of David and endowed with authority to interpret anew the Word of God – the other holding a naked sword.

While the king elaborated this magnificent style of life for himself, his wives and friends, he imposed on the mass of the people a rigorous austerity. People who had already surrendered their gold and silver<sup>92</sup> now submitted to a requisition of their food and accommodations.

In the new works which now were written, the fantasy of the

---

<sup>91</sup> Ibid., p. 297.

<sup>92</sup> Ibid., p. 297.

Three Ages of Joachim of Flores appeared in a new form. The First Age was the age of sin and lasted until the Flood, the Second Age was the age of persecution and the Cross and it lasted down to the present; the Third Age was to be the age of the vengeance and triumph of the Saints. Christ, it was explained, had once tried to restore the sinful world to truth, but with no lasting success.<sup>93</sup> You see the new Christianity must improve upon the old Christianity.

Terror, long a familiar feature of life in the New Jerusalem, was intensified during Bockelson's reign. Within a few days of his proclamation of the monarchy, Dusentschur, one of the ministers, proclaimed that it had been revealed to him that in future all who persisted in sinning against the recognized truth must be brought before the king and sentenced to death. They would be extirpated from the Chosen People; their very memory would be blotted out; their souls would find no mercy beyond the grave. Within a couple of days executions began.<sup>94</sup>

They sent out emissaries, prophet of the Apostles, to arouse other cities to the same revolution. The aim of all these insurrections was the one appointed by Bockelson, and it was still the identical aim which had inspired so many millennial movements.... 'To kill all monks and priests and all rulers that there are in the world, for our king alone is the rightful ruler.'<sup>95</sup>

...During these last, most desperate weeks of the siege, – the Catholic bishop again was besieging them – Bockelson displayed to the full his mastery of the technique of terror. At the beginning of May the town was divided for administrative purposes into twelve sections and over each section was placed a royal officer with the title of Duke and an armed force of twenty-four men.<sup>96</sup> They were forbidden ever to leave their sections, so they couldn't have a rebellion against the king.

They proved loyal enough and exercised against the common people a ruthless terror.... Any man who was found to be plotting to leave the town, or to have helped anyone else to leave, or to have criticized the king or his policy, was at once beheaded. These executions were mostly carried out by the king himself, who declared that he would gladly do the same to every king and prince. Sometimes the body was quartered,

---

<sup>93</sup> Ibid., p. 298.

<sup>94</sup> Ibid., p. 300.

<sup>95</sup> Ibid., p. 302.

<sup>96</sup> Ibid., p. 304.



and the sections nailed up in prominent places as a warning. By mid-June such performances were taking place almost daily.

Rather than surrender the town Bockelson would doubtless have let the entire population starve to death; but in the event the siege was brought abruptly to a close. Two men escaped by night from the town and indicated to the besiegers certain weak spots in the defenses. On the night of June 24th, 1535, the besiegers launched a surprise attack and penetrated into the town. After some hours of desperate fighting, the last two or three hundred male surviving male Anabaptists accepted an offer of safe-conduct, laid down their arms and dispersed to their homes, only to be killed one by one...in a massacre which lasted for several days.<sup>97</sup>

We see in the picture this King John of Leyden.<sup>98</sup>

These Anabaptists have survived at the present time in such communities as Mennonites, the Brethren and the Hutterian Brethren, but of course as an historical movement it lost its influence shortly after this time. But even this agnostic historian says an interesting thing. He finds that these movements he's studying are very similar to the movements in twentieth century of Nazism and Communism. And he notes that: Some suspicion of this has occurred to Communist and Nazi ideologists themselves. An enthusiastic if fanciful exposition of the heterodox German mysticism of the fourteenth century with appropriate tributes to Beghards, Beguines and Brethren of the Free Spirit, fills a long chapter of Rosenberg's *Myth of the Twentieth Century*; – he's the leading apologist for Hitler – while a Nazi historian devoted a whole volume to interpreting the message of the Revolutionary of the Upper Rhine. As for the Communists, they continue to elaborate, in volume after volume, that cult of Thomas Müntzer which was inaugurated already by Engels. But whereas in these works the prophets of a vanished world are shown as men born centuries before their time, it is perfectly possible to draw the opposite moral – that, for all their exploitation of the most modern technology, Communism and Nazism have been inspired by fantasies which are downright archaic.<sup>99</sup> In any case, in many respects, they are both heavily indebted to that very ancient body of beliefs which constituted the popular apocalyptic lore of Europe.<sup>100</sup>

---

<sup>97</sup> Ibid., p. 305.

<sup>98</sup> Ibid., p. 306.

<sup>99</sup> Ibid., p. 309.

<sup>100</sup> Ibid., p. 309.

Looking at what is happening in the twentieth century, one could say more than that: that that chiliastic expectation, the desire for a new kind of Christianity which we realize in this world, is one of the dominant traits of the modern mentality. And this earlier explosion faded away, but later it came out in a stronger form. And in fact, today some half the world is in possession of people who think very much like these people and have the same elements of terror, of killing off all enemies, the same kind of frantic...

Fr. H:       The Gulag.

Fr. S:       Yes, the Gulag; the same frantic talking about the enemies who are about to destroy them, the bourgeoisie, the exploiters of the factory workers and so forth.

This man and there's other ones like this, who led these millennial rebellions in the age of the Renaissance, which did not occur in the settled age before the Schism, are precisely forerunners of Antichrist. And now it becomes the case that whole cities, whole groups of people can follow these false leaders who have the most fantastic and wild expectations and descriptions of themselves – they are the rulers of this world. So, this thing which began in the Middle Ages now becomes stronger, the search for a universal monarchy.

## Renaissance Art

The art of this period which is, of course, some of the great art of Western man, reveals – some things we won't go into: the resurrection of antiquity, the endless naked statues and all that, which are obviously a resurrection of the paganism of the body and this world. We'll look at a few of the religious paintings.



*Virgin and Child* by Peter Paul Rubens



*La Madonna della Vallicella* by Peter Paul Rubens





*Madonna and Child by Tintoretto*





*The Madonna of the Stars by Tintoretto*



*Madonna and Child by Raphael*





*Deposition of Christ by Raphael*

These are, from the Orthodox point of view, blasphemy. We know that for many of the painters, they had a very loose life.

They had their mistresses pose as the Virgin Mary. And you can go through painting after painting of this period and see nothing which is recognizable as a religious, really religious thing. There are a number of them which are simply pagan and even quite indecent. And others are more refined but still the same principles of... You can see the fat chubby child, kind of just naked, and the women are obviously worldly women. Sometimes they're coarse, sometimes refined, but it's the same kind of worldliness. And you can go through all these ones: the Rubens, the, the Rafael – they all have the same extremely worldly spirit. There are some, oh, we'll talk about him in a minute. But you can glance at



some of these pictures that are all sort different themes. Even one here by Caravaggio, it's quite early, a little later, 1600. He has a picture of the ecstasy of Francis, which is very interesting. It fits in with all that... (sound fades)



***Saint Francis of Assisi in Ecstasy* by Michelangelo Merisi da Caravaggio**

There are some who tried to revive religious art, the chief of whom was Fra Angelico; but he was very much against all this paganism and tried to get back to real religious art. You can see that in some of these the people are trying to be pious. They aren't just worldly; but if you look at them you can see that the spirit is a little different, but still the same worldly spirit has been entered very much in. The robes are extremely gorgeous. The painting's extremely beautiful. And the attempt to make some kind of piety which is just plain prelest. Some of these are very Latin.

Some of them like El Greco are just obviously prelest, some kind of a distortion which are far from – he's supposed to be Greek, that's what he's supposed to be. Historians say he has Byzantium influence; and of course, it's nothing of the sort.

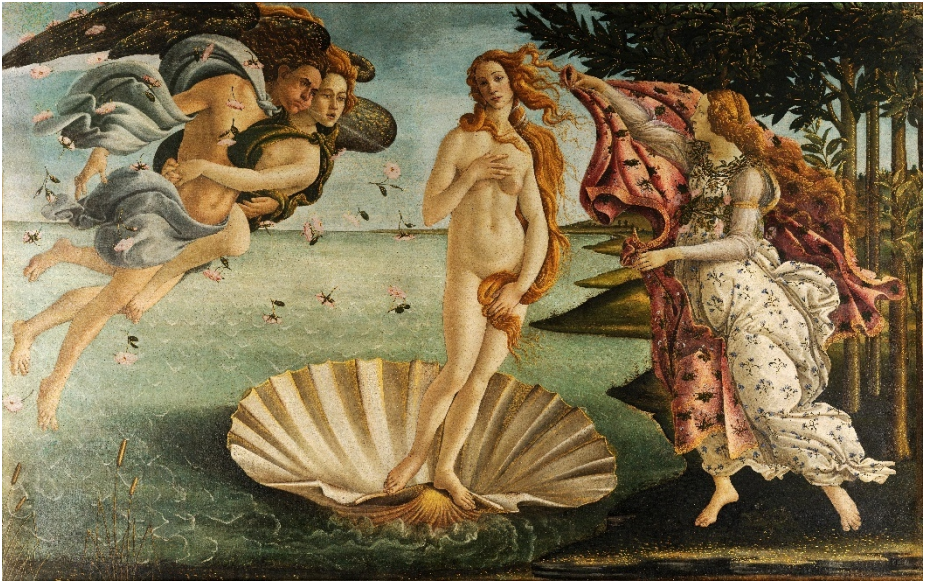


*Adoration of the Magi by El Greco*

Student: Are those supposed to be Mary and Christ?

Fr. S: Yeah. Those are, those are the best of this period.

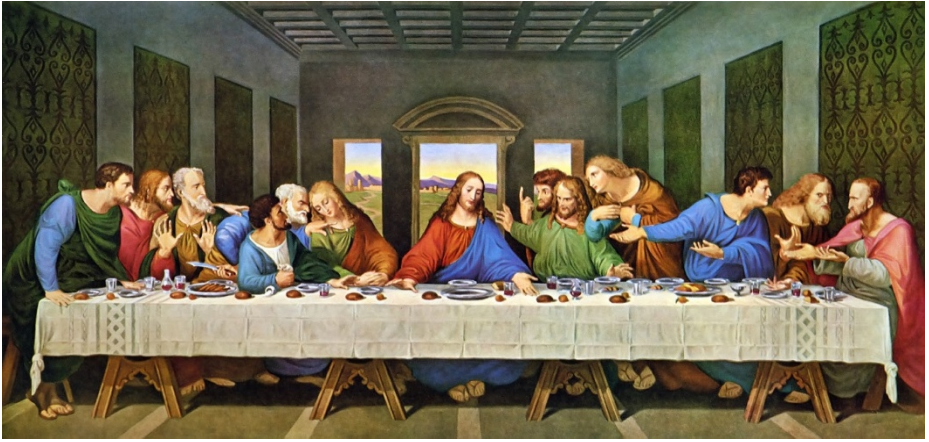
Some of them, especially the ones in Spain or the north, become more and more bloody and ghastly. And some of them like these – Botticelli and Botticini, they're very sort of lovely if you don't look at the child, the chubby child. The Virgin and Christ make exquisite creatures. If we look at some of the paintings of Botticelli – we don't have the one that's in color, but here's this painting of the birth of Venus which is an extremely lovely thing if you look at the colors. Here it's just black and white, but you can see it's extremely finely done. But it's pure paganism; it's the birth of Venus out of a shell. And it's obvious this is some kind of a new religion. It's very close to this thing which we mentioned about Bruno, that matter is divine, that matter is so lovely, the world has been discovered; and it is full of such lovely beauty and such mystery that the painter can somehow bring it out.



***The Birth of Venus* by Sandro Botticelli**

And likewise, the same thing we feel from Michelangelo. You look at some of these sort of Promethean figures, obviously some kind of new religion, totally unchristian belief that man is divine...trying to capture some kind of beauty in this world. The other world is completely lost. In Da Vinci's *Last Supper*, it's all some kind of drama, sort of an arranged pose, very nicely. You can see that whatever Giotto still had and those artists of the Middle Ages, whatever they preserved is totally lost now.





*The Last Supper* by Leonardo Da Vinci

And here's one which is Fra Angelico, who tried to get back to the religious meaning. You can see this is the typical Catholic prelest. The people are, it's so lovely – pink and blue, and all these colors. And if you see the actual painting probably it's stunning. But if you look at the people, such stupid expressions on their faces, so posed, so dramatic. It's Christ crowning the Virgin, but it's very – no religious meaning at all.



*The Coronation of the Virgin by Fra Angelico*

And there's another one here. It shows the Crucifixion already now some kind of realism, the emphasis all on the symbolic. The icon, there's nothing recognizable as an icon; it's totally worldly. And those that are the religious are in prelest.

And very likely, there are some which are mixed up with all kinds of sectarianism. Here's one by Hieronimus Bosch about paradise, Christ with Adam and Eve in paradise which is filled with all kinds of symbolism. He himself was supposed to be mixed up with one of those sects, the Brethren of the Free Spirit. Undoubtedly expresses all kinds of sectarian fantasies about Adam and Eve. We just read about St. Paul, the Life of St. Paul of Obnora, how he lived like Adam in paradise with the animals. And these people [had] lost that idea of the ascetic living like Adam and Eve. We should look at the rest of the pictures.

Some frightful pictures [some of] which aren't very suitable. But this one shows how – well, it's sort of sectarian. Because the sectarians believed at that time was to get back to the state of paradise, Adam and Eve. And that's why they go naked and they have everything in common and think that they're establishing a new reign of paradise on earth.

Here's another one, a very lovely one by Fra Angelico with peacocks and all kinds of things which are so full of some kind of different religious spirit. It's prelest...



***The Adoration of the Magi by Fra Angelico and Fra Filippo Lippi***

Just looking at these paintings already reveals that between Orthodoxy and this, there is already a gulf which is so great it cannot be breached. If one is going to become Orthodox; if he's already Orthodox, he can only be an individual who comes back to the truth and realizes what is truth, how far he's gone astray. But to talk about union with

people who have religious paintings like that shows that you don't know what you're talking about. It's a different religion.

## Summary

So, in summary we will mention the main characteristics which come out in this period:

The first one is the rise of the self as the new god. It becomes, now it has not become expressed in this way, but in the later period already we will see people talking about the individual as being god. This is the meaning of Humanism and Protestantism: get rid of the religious tradition, the Orthodox tradition so that the new god can be born.

The second idea, very strong, is that just as the individual god is being born also the world now becomes divine. This is expressed by Bruno in so many words: if matter is divine, that God is in the world, the world is an alive breathing of God, that the soul of the world is the Holy Spirit. And you see it in some of these paintings, how much people like Botticelli believed something like this, that nature is divine. A pantheistic view. But something which invests the world with a significance which, according to Orthodox thought, it cannot have. The world comes from nothing; it is to go, it's to vanish away and be recreated by God as a new world. But they want this world to last. And therefore, they put a divine meaning into it. And this becomes very important doctrine later on.

Again, the search for the new Christianity results now in much more bizarre religious experiments: The Brethren of the Free Spirit, the new religions of the Third Age of the Holy Spirit, the Anabaptists. And these become stronger as the old religious standard fades more into the background. Later on, the attempt to make a new Christianity becomes much less recognizable as Christian.

And finally, there are now beginning to arise for the first time some serious candidates for antichrist, that is, forerunners of antichrist. These people like this John of Leyden set themselves up as Christ come back to earth. And this idea of the world monarchy, the world theocracy, although it is still underground, is also getting stronger and is able to move a whole city.

We will see what happens to all these movements in the next age, which is the age of the so-called Enlightenment, which, just like the age of the Renaissance, has, besides its main current of rationalism, this very distinct current, undercurrent of irrationalism.

This whole movement of the period of the Renaissance, therefore, shows the development of the seeds which were planted in the period of the Middle Ages by the departure of Rome from the Orthodox Church. And already in the period of Renaissance, what results is



extremely different from Orthodoxy. If you look at the Middle Ages, there are some things which seem much closer. Outwardly they are much closer, but inside they have the seeds which are to produce all the things which are to come afterwards. So that the difference between Middle Ages and Renaissance is actually less than the difference between Orthodox Rome and Rome of the Middle Ages. And all these movements are growing. Some of them burst up like these apocalyptic movements. Some of them suddenly blaze up and then die down, but they still are part of the mentality which is being formed. And they come up later in extremely strange forms, which if you look at them philosophically, theologically, you can see that they are the same movement.

And so, this man [Cohn] here who writes about the millennium is wrong when he thinks that you can show that one is either archaic or that the other is progressive. That's beside the point. The point is they are both there as part of the mentality being formed. Sometimes they show a direct growth, like the growth of science; and sometimes they show, they flare up and die out. But there are certain things which are the basic recurring motives of modern thought, which are the things which we will concentrate on.

The next lecture will be examining the period of the eighteenth century, well, the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, when the scientific worldview becomes dominant and there seems to be some kind of equilibrium established, some kind of harmony. And the history of the world since then is the history of the falling away from this harmony. We will try to show what this harmony consisted of, and why there had to be the falling away from it to produce the world of anarchy in which we live now. And the whole thing from Middle Ages to Renaissance to the Enlightenment Age to the Romantic Age and today, all follows a definite logical progression, showing us that once Orthodoxy is left behind, there is a certain natural process which works. And the devil of course is always there. And we'll see over and over again that great leaders in modern thought will begin with some kind of a vision, and even some kind of – we can see that the devil is working. And they no longer have any idea that the devil can do things like that. And therefore, they are much more inclined to accept their visions as some kind of revelation.

# Lecture 4

## The Enlightenment Part 1

Now we come to the period which stands between the Renaissance and modern times which has a definite essence of its own. One of the classical works on this period, this Paul Hazard, called *The European Mind* states: In this period a moral clash took place in Europe. The interval between the Renaissance, of which it is a lineal descendant, and the French Revolution for which it was forging the weapons, constitutes an epoch which yields to none in historical importance. This is the classical age of modern Europe.<sup>101</sup>

The same author states: The classical mind, with the consciousness of its strength, loves stability, nay, if it could, it would be stability. Now that the Renaissance and the Reformation – big adventures these! – were over, the time had come for a mental stocktaking, for an intellectual ‘retreat.’ Politics, religion, society, art – all had been rescued from the clutches of the ravaging critics. Humanity’s storm-tossed barque had made port at last. Long might it stay there! Long! Nay let it stay there forever! Life was now a regular, well-ordered affair. Why, then, go outside this happy pale to risk encounters that might unsettle everything? The Great Beyond was viewed with apprehension; it might contain some uncomfortable surprises. Nay, Time itself they would have made stand still, could they have stayed its flight. At Versailles, the visitor got the impression that the very waters had been arrested in their course, caught and controlled as they were and sent skywards again, and yet again, as though destined to do duty forever.<sup>102</sup>

This period between the Renaissance and modern times is the first real attempt to make a harmonious synthesis of all the new forces which had been let loose by medieval and Renaissance and Reformation man. But the attempt was to do this without losing a spiritual base of some kind of Christianity. That is how it is quite

---

<sup>101</sup> Hazard, Paul, *The European Mind*, 1680-1715, Meridian Books, New York, 1963, p. xviii.

<sup>102</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 3.

different from what is being attempted today, to make a synthesis without Christianity, or rather with Christianity much more watered-down. We will look at several aspects of this harmony and find there also the reasons why it could not last.

The first aspect of this new classical age, this new harmony, is the dominance of the scientific worldview which took the form of the world machine of Isaac Newton. The age of Newton, the early Enlightenment – he died in the 1720's, I believe; his great book came out in 1690's – when science and rational religion seemed to agree that all was right with the world, and the arts flourished in a way they were never again to flourish in the West. Before this time the West had known several centuries of intellectual ferment and even chaos as the medieval Roman Catholic synthesis collapsed and new forces made themselves felt and led to heated disputes and bloody warfare. The religious wars for all practical purposes ended with the, 1648, the end of the Thirty Years' War which actually devastated Germany and it quite, practically destroyed her two centuries.<sup>103</sup>

Protestantism had rebelled against the complexity and corruption in Roman Catholicism; there was a renaissance of ancient pagan thought and art, a new humanism had discovered the natural man and pushed the idea of God ever more into the background and – the most significant for the future – science replaced theology as the standard of knowledge. And the study of nature and its laws came to seem the most important intellectual pursuit.

By the seventeenth and early eighteenth centuries, however, a certain equilibrium and harmony was reached in Western thought. Christianity was not, after all, overthrown by the new ideas, – in the next lecture we'll see what kind of Christianity this was – But rather adapted itself to the new spirit. And the difficulties and contradictions of modern naturalistic and rationalistic ideas had not yet made themselves felt. Particularly in the most enlightened part of Western Europe – England, France and Germany – it almost seemed that a golden age had come, especially by contrast with the religious wars that had ravaged these countries up to the middle of the seventeenth century. The enlightened man believed in God Whose existence could be rationally demonstrated and in natural religion, was tolerant of the beliefs of others and was convinced that everything in the world could be explained by modern science, whose latest discoveries and advances he eagerly followed. The world was seen to be a vast machine in

---

<sup>103</sup> Fr. Seraphim reading from his unpublished article on Enlightenment, p. 1-2.

perpetual motion whose every movement could be described mathematically. It was one great harmonious universe ordered, not hierarchically as in the Middle Ages or in Orthodox thought, but as a uniform mathematical system. The classical work expressing these ideas, Newton's *Principia Mathematica*, was greeted with universal acclaim when it appeared in 1687, showing that the educated world at that time was thoroughly ripe for this new gospel.<sup>104</sup>

Another classical work on the modern thought, Randall's *Making of the Modern Mind*, discusses some of these elements that entered into this view of the universe. The thirty years that had passed since Galileo published his *Dialogue on the Two Systems*, that is, the heliocentric and the geocentric system, had seen an enormous intellectual change. Where Galileo was still arguing with the past – and we see that he almost got burned at the stake until he recanted his error and then said under his breath, Nonetheless the earth still moves. – Where Galileo was still arguing with the past, Newton ignores old discussions and looking wholly to the future calmly enunciates definitions, principles and proofs that have ever since formed the basis of natural science. Galileo represents the assault; after a single generation comes the victory. Newton himself made two outstanding discoveries: he found a mathematical method which would describe mechanical motion and he applied it universally. At last what Descartes had dreamed was true: men had arrived at a complete mechanical interpretation of the world in exact mathematical deductive terms. In thus placing the keystone in the arch of seventeenth-century science, Newton properly stamped his name upon the picture of the universe that was to last unchanged in its outlines until Darwin; he had completed the sketch of the Newtonian world that was to remain through the eighteenth century as the fundamental scientific verity.<sup>105</sup>

The is the age, actually the end of this period is the age of the Encyclopedia in France, a great undertaking particularly by Diderot, to bring the whole of knowledge into one great book of many volumes. It should be understood first of all that this very idea of the encyclopedia is something quite new, that is, the idea of bringing the whole of knowledge into one place and arranging it, as in later encyclopedias, even alphabetically. So everything is sort of flattened out and placed just within the compass of a certain number of pages, so that if you

---

<sup>104</sup> Ibid

<sup>105</sup> Randall, John Herman, *The Making of the Modern Mind*, Houghton Mifflin Co., 1926, Boston, pp. 257-258.

want to find out about anything, you simply look up in the index or look up alphabetically and you find article on that subject.<sup>106</sup>

It should be said that in other nations which had somewhat of an idea of universal knowledge such as China, there were also encyclopedias. But those encyclopedias were rather different because there, there was still the hierarchical idea and, for example, the great encyclopedias of China which date back quite, a thousand years back or more, all these great encyclopedias were arranged so that the first volume was always Heaven, then the Emperor, then the higher sciences, and gradually progressed until it came down at the very end to those things which deal with earth. Whereas [in] the new idea of encyclopedia, everything is flattened out. And you can know one page of the encyclopedia and know nothing about the rest of it but be an expert in that. Therefore this is a very fragmentary kind of knowledge. And perhaps only the person who puts it together – in fact, not one person puts it together, many people do, so actually nobody – knows the whole thing.<sup>107</sup>

Diderot himself, although he underestimated mathematics, nonetheless his idea of knowledge, the ideal of knowing everything is the same as that of all the rest of the people of his age. He says: We are on the point of a great revolution in the sciences. Judging by the inclination that the best minds seem to have for morals, for belles-lettres, for natural history, and for experimental physics, I almost dare to predict that before a hundred years are over there will not be three great mathematicians in Europe.... [Science] will have erected the pillars of Hercules; men will go no further; their works will last through the centuries to come like the pyramids of Egypt, whose bulks, inscribed with hieroglyphics, awaken in us the awful idea of the power and the resources of the men who built them. We see that they had an idea that they are now going to have the final definition of nature, of science, and collect all the knowledge there is. And soon the task will be finished.<sup>108</sup>

In this new synthesis, the idea of nature actually replaces God as the central idea, even though we will see that the idea of God was not thrown out until the very end of this period. One of the French thinkers of the late eighteenth century, Holbach, thus describes his worship of nature:

---

<sup>106</sup> Ibid., p. 265.

<sup>107</sup> Ibid., p. 274.

<sup>108</sup> Ibid., p. 274-275.

“Man always deceives himself when he abandons experience to follow imaginary systems. He is the work of Nature. He exists in nature. He is submitted to her laws. He cannot deliver himself from them. It is in vain his mind would spring forward beyond the visible world: an imperious necessity ever compels his return – for being formed by Nature, who is circumscribed by her laws, there exists nothing beyond a great whole of which he forms a part, of which he experiences the influence. The beings his imagination pictures as above Nature, or distinguished from her, are always chimeras formed after that which he has already seen, but of which it is utterly impossible he should ever form any correct idea, either as to the place they occupy, or their manner of acting – for him there is not, there can be nothing, out of that nature which includes all beings... – that is, outside of that nature which includes all beings. The universe, that vast assemblage of everything that exists, presents only matter and motion: the whole offers to our contemplation nothing but an immense, an uninterrupted succession of causes and effects...”<sup>109</sup>

Nature, therefore, in its most extended signification, is the great whole which results from the assemblage of matter under its various combinations, with that contrariety of motions which the universe offers to our view.

Voltaire also says, when he describes a dialogue between nature and the scientist. And nature says to the scientist: My poor son, shall I tell you the truth? I have been given a name that does not suit me at all. I am called Nature, but I am really Art – the art of God, the deistic God at that period.

And one of Newton’s disciples says: Natural science is subservient to purposes of a higher kind, and is chiefly to be valued as it lays a sure foundation for Natural Religion and Moral Philosophy; by leading us, in a satisfactory manner, to the knowledge of the Author and Governor of the universe.... To study Nature is to study into His workmanship; every new discovery opens up to us a part of his scheme.... Our views of Nature, however imperfect, serve to represent to us, in the most sensible manner, that mighty power which prevails throughout, acting with a force and efficacy that appears to suffer no diminution from the greatest distances of space or intervals of time; and that wisdom which we see equally displayed in the exquisite structure and just motions of the greatest and the subtlest parts. These, with perfect goodness, by which they are evidently directed, constitute the supreme object of the

---

<sup>109</sup> Hazard, p. 275.

speculations of a philosopher; who, while he contemplates and admires so excellent a system, cannot but be himself excited and animated to correspond with the general harmony of Nature.<sup>110</sup>

Again this Holbach says about nature: "O thou," cries this Nature to man, who, "following the impulse I have given you, during your whole existence, incessantly tend towards happiness, do not strive to resist my sovereign law. Labor to your own felicity; partake without fear of the banquet which is spread before you, with the most hearty welcome; you will find the means legibly written on your own heart.... Dare, then, to affranchise yourself from the trammels of superstition, my self-conceited, pragmatic rival, who mistakes my rights; denounce those empty theories, which are usurpers of my privileges; return under the dominion of my laws, which, however severe, are mild in comparison with those of bigotry. It is in my empire alone that true liberty reigns. Tyranny is unknown to its soil, slavery is forever banished from its votaries; equity unceasingly watches over the rights of all my subjects, maintains them in the possession of their just claims; benevolence, grafted upon humanity, connects them by amicable bonds; truth enlightens them; never can imposture blind him with his obscuring mists. Return, then, my child, to thy fostering mother's arms! Deserter, retrace back thy wandering steps to Nature. She will console thee for thine evils; she will drive from thy heart those appalling fears which overwhelm thee.... Return to Nature, to humanity, to thyself!... Enjoy thyself, and cause others also to enjoy those comforts, which I have placed with a liberal hand for all the children of the earth, who all equally emanate from my bosom.... These pleasures are freely permitted thee, if thou indulgest them with moderation, with that discretion which I myself have fixed. Be happy, then, O man!"<sup>111</sup>

And again he says: "O Nature, sovereign of all beings! and ye, her adorable daughters, Virtue, Reason and Truth! remain forever our revered protectors! It is to you that belong the praises of the human race, to you appertains the homage of the earth. Show us then, O Nature! that which man ought to do, in order to obtain the happiness which Thou makest him desire. Virtue! animate him with thy beneficent fire. Reason! conduct his uncertain steps through the paths of life. Truth! let thy torch illumine his intellect, dissipate the darkness of his road. Unite, O assisting deities! your powers, in order to submit the hearts of mankind to your dominion. Banish error from our mind, wickedness

---

<sup>110</sup> Randall, *op. cit.*, p. 278-279.

<sup>111</sup> *Ibid.* p. 279

from our hearts; confusion from our footsteps; cause knowledge to extend its salubrious reign; goodness to occupy our souls; serenity to occupy our bosoms.”<sup>112</sup>

See what a harmonious ideal this was: of nature ruling over everything, the mysteries of nature being discovered, God still being in His heaven, although not doing much, and scientific knowledge progressing over the whole world. The naturalist Buffon even said that, in describing the early Babylonian astronomers, that early people were very happy, because it was very scientific. The ideas of scientific knowledge and happiness were bound up; in our own day, it seems to be the opposite. And again, he says, What enthusiasm is nobler than believing man capable of knowing all the forces and discovering by his labors all the secrets of nature!

And so, the great philosophers of this period had only to discover the whole system of nature, and so we have at this time the great metaphysical systems when the philosopher could sit down in his easy chair before his desk, read all the results of scientific research and the writings of previous philosophers and devise his own system of what nature is. And so, we have Spinoza sitting back and devising the idea that there are two parallel systems, mind and matter; and both of these are God. And Leibnitz comes up with the idea of the monad – it’s a primary atom which is the basis of everything else – which explains both mind and matter. And Descartes sitting back in his study and discovering that everything in nature proceeds from the knowledge, intuition of clear and distinct ideas.<sup>113</sup>

All these systems, of course, were rivaling each other and eventually overthrew each other; other systems overthrew them. But the ideal of a real philosophy of nature was never realized. But in this period this is still not completely realized. And science was considered to be the kind of knowledge which would bring men to the truth.

This whole period is one of great optimism and is well summed up in the poet Alexander Pope who regarded Newton as the ideal. A few words summed up the spirit which people had, the feeling people had about the time they were living in and the true philosophy which was now being devised from modern science:

All are but parts of one stupendous whole,  
Whose body Nature is and God the soul;..  
All Nature is but Art unknown to thee;

---

<sup>112</sup> Ibid. p. 279

<sup>113</sup> Ibid.



All chance, direction which thou canst not see;  
 All discord, harmony not understood;  
 All partial evil, universal good:  
 And, spite of pride, in erring reason's spite,  
 One truth is clear, whatever is, is right.  
 Nature and Nature's laws lay hid in night:  
 God said, Let Newton be! and all was Light.  
*"Brave new world" - Candide*<sup>114</sup>

But in the Age of Reason 'empiricism' was employed by a Voltaire to destroy revealed religion and absolute monarchy and Christian asceticism, and by the same Voltaire 'reason' was used to erect a 'rational' theology and 'natural' rights and a 'natural' law. Voltaire stated it definitely: 'I understand by natural religion the principles of morality common to the human race.' It contained nothing else. This creed was accepted, by orthodox and radicals together, as the essential content of the religious tradition of Christianity.<sup>115</sup>

With the problem of the moral governance of the world, the age-old problem of evil, they [the rational theologians] did no better than their predecessors; here, too, they could only have faith that a rational order must be a moral order. Some, like Leibnitz, took pages to prove that this is the best of all possible worlds.... Pope's ringing 'Whatever is, is right,' sounded even to the eighteenth century suspiciously like whistling to keep up one's courage. Others, like Voltaire, were too keenly aware of the injustices wreaked by nature and man upon man not to be revolted by such a faith; Voltaire's famous tale, *Candide*, is one long ridicule of Leibnitz' position.<sup>116</sup>

Voltaire's chief quarrel with patriotism is for the humanitarian reason that it seems to require hatred of the rest of the human race. To love one's country, in the common estimation, means to hate all foreign lands.... Hence against the follies of the patriot Voltaire waged an unceasing war of ridicule. Everyone remembers the satire in the first chapters of *Candide*, where the hero is beguiled into the army of the King of the Bulgarians during his war with the Arabians. "Nothing was so fine, so smart, so brilliant, so well-ordered as the two armies... The canons began mowing down about six thousand men on each side... *Candide*, trembling like a philosopher, hid as best he could during this heroic butchery... Brains were scattered on the ground side by side with

---

<sup>114</sup> Ibid., p. 275, quoting Alexander Pope's *Essay on Man* in Works.

<sup>115</sup> Ibid, p. 272.

<sup>116</sup> Ibid., p. 287.

severed legs and arms. Candide fled as fast as he could to another village; ...Candide, walking over palpitating limbs, or through ruins, finally got outside the theatre of war.”<sup>117</sup>

---

<sup>117</sup> Randall, p. 297.

## Faith in Progress

**Dreams for unity of mankind, discovery, mysteries of nature, happiness in earth, progress, golden age of art.**

From the beginning of the century onward there rose one increasing paean to progress through education. Locke, Helvetius, and Bentham laid the foundations for this generous dream; all men, of whatever school, save only those who clung like Malthus to the Christian doctrine of original sin, believed with all their ardent natures in the perfectibility of the human race. At last mankind held in its own hands the key to its destiny; it could make the future almost what it would. By destroying the foolish errors of the past and returning to a rational cultivation of nature, there were scarcely any limits to human wealth where it might not be transcended.<sup>118</sup>

It is difficult for us to realize how recent a thing is this faith in human progress. The ancient world seems to have had no conception of it; Greeks and Romans looked back rather to a golden age from which man had degenerated. The Middle Ages, of course, could brook no such thought. The Renaissance, which actually accomplished so much, could not imagine that man could ever rise again to the level of glorious antiquity; its thoughts were all in the past. Only with the growth of science in the seventeenth century could men dare to cherish such an over-weening ambition. To Fontanelle, whose long life stretched from the days of Descartes to those of the Encyclopedia, belongs the chief credit for instilling the eighteenth-century faith in progress. He was a popularizer of Cartesian science, and it was from science and reason that he hoped that Europe would not only equal, but far surpass antiquity. All men, he proclaimed, are of the same stuff: we are like Plato and Homer, and we have a vastly richer store of accumulated experience than they. Men reverence age for its wisdom and experience; it is we moderns who really represent the age of the world, and the ancients who lived in its youth. A scientist today knows ten times as much as a scientist living under Augustus. So long as men continue to accumulate knowledge, progress will be as inevitable as the growth of a tree, nor is there any reason to look for its cessation.<sup>119</sup>

This opinion may strike us as almost platitudinous, but to Fontenelle's contemporaries it seemed the rankest of heresies. He found himself involved in a furious battle, and all France took sides in

---

<sup>118</sup> Ibid., p. 377-78.

<sup>119</sup> Randall, p. 381.

the conflict between the Ancients and the Moderns.... But of the ultimate outcome there could be no question; all the scientists, from Descartes down, despised the ancients and carried the day for the faith in progress. By the middle of the next century it was clearly recognized that only in literature could the ancient world hope to hold its own; and with the rejection of the classic taste by the rising romantic school, the ancients even here fought a losing battle.<sup>120</sup>

It remained for Condorcet to sum up the hopes and the confidence of the age.

At the end of the eighteenth century there's one great philosopher of progress, Condorcet, who wrote a history of the progress of the human spirit in which he said: The result of my work will be to show by reasoning and by facts, that there is no limit set to the perfecting of the powers of man; as human perfectibility is in reality indefinite; that the progress of this perfectibility, henceforth independent of any power that might wish to stop it, has no other limit than the duration of the globe upon which nature has placed us. Doubtless this progress can proceed at a pace more or less rapid, but it will never go backward; at least, so long as the earth occupies the same place in the system of the universe, and as the general laws of this system do not produce upon the globe a general destruction, or changes which will no longer permit the human race to preserve itself, to employ these same powers, and to find the same resources.<sup>121</sup>

He believed that the principles of Enlightenment will spread over the entire earth; liberty and equality, a real economic and social and intellectual equality, will be continually strengthened; peace will reign on earth. 'War will come to be considered the greatest of pestilences and the greatest of crimes.' Nay, more; a better organization of knowledge, and an intelligent improvement in the quality of the human organism itself, will lead to the disappearance of disease and an indefinite prolongation of human life, but to the actual attainment of the perfect conditions of human well-being.<sup>122</sup>

And again he says, What a picture of the human race, freed from its chains, removed from the empire of chance as from that of the enemies of its progress, and advancing with the firm and sure step on the pathway of truth, of virtue, and of happiness, is presented to the

---

<sup>120</sup> Ibid., p. 382.

<sup>121</sup> Condorcet quoted in Ibid., p. 383.

<sup>122</sup> Ibid., p. 383.

philosopher to console him for the errors, the crimes, and the injustices with which the earth is still soiled and of which he is often the victim! It is in contemplating this vision that he receives the reward of his efforts for the progress of reason, for the defense of liberty. He dares then to link them to the eternal chain of human destiny; it is there that he finds the true recompense of virtue, the pleasure of having created a lasting good, which fate cannot destroy by any dread compensation, bringing back prejudice and slavery. This contemplation is for him an asylum whither the memory of his persecutors cannot pursue him; where, living in thought with man established in his rights as in the dignity of his nature, he forgets him whom avarice, fear or envy torment and corrupt; it is there that he truly exists with his fellows, in a paradise which his reason has created, and which his love for humanity enriches with the purest of joys.<sup>123</sup>

Another historian of this time wrote a history of philosophy, 1796, J. G. Buhle, who says, We are now approaching the most recent period of the history of philosophy, which is the most remarkable and brilliant period of philosophy as well as of the sciences and of the arts and of the civilization of humanity in general. The seed which had been planted in the immediately preceding centuries began to bloom in the eighteenth. Of no century can it be said with so much truth as of the eighteenth that it utilized the achievements of its predecessors to bring humanity to a greater physical, intellectual and moral perfection. It has reached a height which, considering the limitations of human nature and the course of our past experience, we should be surprised to see the genius of future generations maintain.<sup>124</sup>

And there's an interesting message which was placed in the steeple knob of the church in Gotha, in Germany, in 1784 which was supposed to be read by posterity. This is the message, from 1784: Our age occupies the happiest period of the eighteenth century. Emperors, kings, princes humanely descend from their dreaded heights, despise pomp and splendor, become the fathers, friends and confidants of their people. Religion rends its priestly garb and appears in its divine essence. Enlightenment makes great strides. Thousands of our brothers and sisters, who formerly lived in sanctified inactivity, meaning monks, are given back to the state. Sectarian hatred and persecution for conscience' sake is vanishing. Love of man and freedom of thought are gaining the supremacy. The arts and sciences are flourishing, and our

---

<sup>123</sup> Ibid., quoting Condorcet, p. 383.

<sup>124</sup> Ibid., quoting Buhle, p. 384.

gaze is penetrating deeply into the workshop of nature. Handicraftsmen as well as artists are reaching perfection, useful knowledge is growing among all classes. Here you have a faithful description of our times. Do not haughtily look down upon us if you are higher and see farther than we; recognize rather from the picture which we have drawn how bravely and energetically we labored to raise you to the position which you now hold and to support you in it. Do the same for your descendants and be happy.<sup>125</sup>

When we look at these views of nature, art, virtue, the idea, we see, remember the idea that there is such a possibility of man being happy on this earth, of knowledge being perfect, of the arts flourishing and of there being a harmonious, in fact, it even says here, paradise on earth.

This is the foundation for what has been happening in the world for the last two centuries. All the ideas by which people are living today, most of them, come from this period. And if now this early optimism seems quite naive, we still have to understand why it is naive, why it does not correspond to the truth. So we will have to look at the inside of all this positive philosophy to see what were the germs which existed already at this time which led to the negative, to the overthrowing of this optimistic philosophy.

But before doing that, we'll have to look at one other very interesting thing. Although this seems – if one thinks it through – to be very superficial, to be a kind of mockery of Christianity; still it's very true that at this period there was a great flourishing of the arts. In fact, many people would say that the arts in the West never again came back to the standard of this period; particularly in music, it is indeed true that this is a golden age of modern Western music.

And so we'll have to see, we'll have to look at the positive side to see why there can be a positive flourishing of the arts like that which seems quite profound also when the philosophy is based upon something which seems quite superficial. And that will be the subject of the next lecture.

---

<sup>125</sup> Ibid., p. 384.

# **Lecture 5**

## **The Enlightenment Part 2**

The brave new world we described in the last chapter, and the faith in science and nature, has another aspect to it, which is the religious view of this age. And in all these philosophers and writers we will examine, we see something which is already becoming, which is already familiar to us. Because many of the arguments they use we ourselves have heard. This is already, you can say, the wavelength or the universe of discourse in which we also talk. Their arguments were a little bit different, they were more naive than the enlightened scientist today; but still they're talking basically the same kind of language, trying to prove things by science or reason, and so forth.

This age of the Newtonian system is also the age of the religion of reason. One can say that in the age of Renaissance and Reformation, Christianity was either neglected or it was boiled down to its essentials – simplified as the Protestants tried to do – but they still, those who believed in Christianity were still keeping somehow onto the past. Already in Thomas Aquinas and Francis of Assisi we saw that the Christianity was becoming quite different, but still the basic content of the faith outwardly was quite similar to traditional Christianity, just that they were changing the whole approach to it, which would lead later on to a change in the content also.

But in this new age, the Age of Enlightenment, we see that the very content of the faith now is being changed, and quite new religious ideas appear. The reason for this is that religion is now subjected to the same standard which science is: the outward study of the outward world, that is, the standard of reason. And thus, it continues the process which began with Scholasticism when reason was placed above faith and tradition. This was the time when men dreamed of a religion of reasonableness. We will quote a number of the writers of this time. They all have just a slightly different approach, but in the end have very similar philosophy.

For example, Diderot, the great encyclopedist, talks about the getting rid of prejudices in religion. In one of his works he has a

speaker tell about the importance of keeping people in bondage to certain prejudices for public good. To this Diderot replies: What prejudices? If a man once admits the existence of a God, the reality of moral good and evil, the immorality of the soul, future rewards and punishments, what need has he of prejudices? Supposing him initiated in all the mysteries of transubstantiation, consubstantiation, the Trinity, hypostatical union, predestination, incarnation and the rest, will he be any the better citizen?<sup>126</sup>

So obviously the new standard being applied, is a very outward standard. Reasonableness and all these things which seem complicated by Orthodox tradition, the basic doctrines of the faith, now come to seem very, too complicated. It doesn't help us to live any better, according to this view; and it's completely irrational. And notice that most of these people retain a few basic faiths, that is, articles of faith like the existence of good and evil, of God, and afterlife.

---

<sup>126</sup> Ibid., quoting Diderot, p. 283.



## Enlightenment in England

In this period the leadership in the expressing the spirit of the age passes over to England. Because England was the place where after 1689 there was the Edict of Toleration where all religions and all the Christian sects are allowed to exist except for Catholicism and Unitarianism; that is, various kinds of Protestantism, Anglicanism became legal.

We see this combination of Abroad-mindedness, so-called, with continued intolerance, because the Catholics had a very difficult time in England for a long time right up to the nineteenth century; and even today the broad-minded Anglican persuasion is extremely narrow in some respects – so much so that when there was an Englishman in our church who wanted to be baptized and become a priest, he had to go to France where Vladika John ordained him because it was not allowed in England for an Anglican cleric to become Orthodox.

And even today our English mission is very much restricted. The Anglicans very much are against any kind of converts coming to Orthodoxy and there are even laws about clergymen becoming Orthodox. So, there's a combination of a narrow, bureaucratic mentality with freedom. You can believe whatever you want as long as you're either in the Anglican Church or just don't care about religion. But they're very much against any other kind of strong belief having freedom.

And most of the people we'll examine today are English writers who, although they of course are not profound philosophers, are in the English pragmatic school; but their ideas were very much in accord with the spirit of the times and they spread over to France and Germany, and especially in France they had even very radical followers. The English usually held back from the most radical consequences because they're very practical. You can keep the past and still be a freethinker without going all the way.

There was already in the seventeenth century a Lord Herbert of Cherbury, who died in 1633, who was one of the leading theologians, so-called, of this new naturalistic religion. And he also, like many people in the Renaissance, had heard a supernatural voice which sanctioned his natural religion.

According to him there are five articles of faith which all Christians can agree upon regardless of their sect or their theological differences. So, you see he's going to make out of reason – sort of synthesize – the essence of Christianity. And these five articles of faith which everyone

agrees on are, namely, that God exists, that He is to be worshipped, that He is worshipped chiefly by piety and virtue, that men are called to repentance, and that there is an after-life of rewards and punishments. He thought that these were reasonable, of course, not on the basis of reason but because the people he knew and the ordinary thinking people of that time still believed, they still kept this much of Christianity. But after him there would be much more radical views.

There is another thinker, John Toland, an Anglican clergyman – I believe he was clergyman – who died in 1722, who wrote a book called, *Christianity Not Mysterious*,<sup>127</sup> wherein he wanted to explain how Christianity is really very reasonable; you don't have to have any superstition to believe in Christianity. And he said that: There is nothing in the Gospel contrary to reason, nor above it: and that no Christian doctrine can properly be called a mystery. So, everything is perfectly understandable. A good man of common sense will understand what Christianity is all about.

Another one of the same period, Matthew Tindal who died in 1733, wrote another book on the same kind of topic called *Christianity as Old as the Creation*. And according to him, the Gospel is simply the law of nature. And any revelation above this is really quite useless. Christianity is reduced simply to what is natural.

There were at this time two schools of thought in England, that is, the conservatists who were called the supernaturalists and the radicals who became the deists. But they all had in common this faith that religion is nothing but what is natural. The supernaturalists thought that revelation did add something to natural religion, although not very much. It was thought it was used as a kind of stamp of genuineness like saying 24-carat gold. Derive your belief from reason and nature and then revelation comes along and says, this is true. That's about as much as it did. And these were the conservatives.<sup>128</sup>

For example, we have as an example of a conservative, John Locke, the philosopher, who said: In all things of this kind, religion, there is little need or use of revelation, God having furnished us with natural and surer means to arrive at a knowledge of them. For whatsoever truth we come to a clearer discovery of from the knowledge and contemplation of our own ideas, will always be more certain to us than

---

<sup>127</sup> Toland, John, *Christianity Not Mysterious: or, A treatise showing, that there is nothing in the Gospel contrary to reason, nor above it: and that no Christian doctrine can be properly called a mystery*, [complete title] London, 1696.

<sup>128</sup> Randall, op. cit., p. 287-88.

those which are conveyed to us by traditional revelation.' It's obviously the idea here that revelation comes from without as though it is forced on you, whereas the thing which comes from inside you, which really persuades you, are rational arguments.<sup>129</sup>

In the New Testament this John Locke found that there are only really two conditions set down for salvation. These two, faith and repentance, that is, believing Jesus to be the Messiah, and a good life, are the indispensable conditions of the new covenant to be performed by all those who would obtain to eternal life. So all we have to do is believe and lead a righteous life. Already Orthodoxy is quite reduced, quite blotted out. All that is left is a very narrow Protestantism. He wrote a book typically called, *The Reasonableness of Christianity*.

So Christianity became, even with the conservatives, really just a rational philosophical system which appealed to common sense. And those who didn't like this, they didn't have any rational arguments apparently; and so the main rebellions against this rationalism were the lower-class movements of Pietism, Methodism and so forth which based religion on feeling.

And among the intellectuals, it seems that only Pascal saw through all this and was very profound in his observations about this religion of reason. He said, if you want to prove religion by reason, you had better not take Christianity, because it's too full of mysteries. You can more easily prove the truth of Islam because it has fewer mysteries.<sup>130</sup>

But the movement of reason, once they got started, you can't stop it wherever you please. The Scholastics thought that they would accept the whole content of Christianity and simply make it logical. Those after them rejected many of the small points which they were arguing about and said there was a certain essence you could be retain. Then the essence grew smaller and smaller and finally they wanted to do away with mysteries altogether. And now we shall see that the idea of religion at all begins to be attacked.

---

<sup>129</sup> Ibid., quoting Locke, p. 288.

<sup>130</sup> Randall, op. cit., p. 286: Fr. Seraphim marked this passage in his book: Malebranche particularly attempted to prove by reason the truth of the religious ideas upon the firm Cartesian foundation of the method of reason.... Pascal, who almost alone of first-rate French thinkers felt the insufficiency of the purely rational proof of religion in general cannot be a proof of any particular religious revelation, and that Malebranche's attempt might just as easily have established Mohammedanism or Judaism; – might have done so, in fact, since they contained fewer 'mysteries' than orthodox[sic] Christianity.

## Deism

First of all, there was a movement of Deism which is perhaps the most typical one of this whole eighteenth century. The idea of Deism is that God exists, but He's quite irrelevant. That is, He creates the world and steps back. And from that time on it has nothing to do with God. Newton himself believed that He couldn't calculate quite everything correctly, as, for instance, the paths of comets and so forth. And he had an idea that the universe was like a great watch which God made, stepped back and once in a while He has to step in and correct it, kind of wind it up again. But later astronomers said no, this is not true. And there actually is a unified theory you can have which explains everything including comets and all irregular kinds of movements. And so God is simply necessary only at the beginning. God creates and that's all. And God becomes extremely vague. Thus miracles and prophecy are beginning to be called into question; and many writers already begin to say they're just superstition. In this the French became more radical than the English.

The example of Diderot who says, – although he did not publish it, he said in a private letter; it was still not early enough to publishing such a thing – “The Christian religion is to my mind the most absurd and atrocious in its dogmas; the most unintelligible, the most metaphysical,’ metaphysical now becomes a bad word, the most intertwined and obscure, and consequently the most subject to divisions, sects, schisms and heresies; the most mischievous for the public tranquility, the most dangerous to sovereigns by its hierarchic order, its persecutions, its disciplines; the most flat, the most dreary, the most Gothic, which is also a bad word – Middle Ages, and the most gloomy in its ceremonies; the most puerile and unsociable in its morality, considered not in what is common to it with universal morality, but in what is peculiarly its own, and constitutes it evangelical, apostolic and Christian morality, which is the most intolerant of all. Lutheranism, freed from some absurdities, is preferable to Catholicism; Protestantism (Calvinism) to Lutheranism, Socinianism to Protestantism, Deism, with temples and ceremonies, to Socinianism.”<sup>131</sup> But he still keeps some religion, as you notice; he wants Deism with temples and ceremonies because it's good for the people.<sup>132</sup>

---

<sup>131</sup> Randall, quoting Diderot, p. 292.

<sup>132</sup> Barruel, Abbé, *Memoirs to Serve for a History of Jacobinism*, Vol. I, Lyons, 1818, French edition, p. 37.

Voltaire has the same kind of spirit and even said, *Ecrasez l'infame* – blot out the infamous thing, Christianity. Every man of sense, every good man, ought to hold the Christian sect in horror. The great name of Deist, which is not sufficiently revered, is the only name one ought to take. The only gospel one ought to read is the great book of Nature, written by the hand of God and sealed with His seal. The only religion that ought to be professed is the religion of worshipping God and being a good man. It is as impossible that this pure and eternal religion should produce evil as it is that the Christian fanaticism should not produce it.<sup>133</sup>

---

<sup>133</sup> Randall, quoting Voltaire, p. 292.

## Against Miracles

The last defense of people who were defending supernatural religion on anything except a purely emotional basis, was the existence of miracles. And there was one writer in England who took upon himself to finally demolish the whole idea of miracles. And that's David Hume, a Scotsman, whom we will discuss later on as very important to our contemporary whole philosophy.<sup>134</sup> And it's interesting, this textbook on modern thought, which was written in the '20's by a typical enlightened man [Randall], who's very precise about his quotes, analyzing the ideas, but he himself is very much a product of all these ideas. And so for him, Hume is very much the standard. He says, In his famous Essay on Miracles, in 1748, he proved so conclusively that intelligent men have rarely questioned it since, that a miracle, in the sense of a supernatural event as a sign of the divinity of its worker, cannot possibly be established. Even could it be shown that the events recorded did actually take place, that they were supernatural, and that they sufficed to establish a religion, it is still impossible to demonstrate.<sup>135</sup>

And he quotes Hume on this who says: No testimony is sufficient to establish a miracle, unless the testimony be of such a kind, that its falsehood would be more miraculous, than the fact, which it endeavors to establish.... A miracle can never be proved so as to be the foundation of a system of religion.... Suppose all the historians who treated England should agree [that Queen Elizabeth died and after being buried a month returned to her throne and governed England again.]<sup>136</sup> I should not doubt of her pretended death, and of those other public circumstances that followed it: I should only assert it to have been pretended, and that it neither was, nor possibly could be real.... I would still reply, that the knavery and folly of men are such common phenomena, that I should rather believe the most extraordinary events to arise from their concurrence, than admit of so signal a violation of the laws of nature. But should this miracle be ascribed to any new system of religion; men, in all ages, have been so much imposed upon by ridiculous stories of that kind, that this very circumstance would be a full proof of a cheat, and sufficient, with all men of sense, not only to make them reject the fact, but even reject it without farther

---

<sup>134</sup>

<sup>135</sup> Randall, p. 293-4.

<sup>136</sup> Brackets are Randall's

examination.... As the violations of truth are more common in the testimony concerning religious miracles, than in that concerning any other matter of fact;... this must make us form a general resolution, never to lend any attention to it, with whatever specious pretense it may be covered.”<sup>137</sup>

And according to this man, this is already conclusive proof that miracles do not exist or at least cannot be proved. But, of course, it’s evident that this man had a very strong faith not to believe in miracles. And we’ll have to examine later on what, where he gets his faith and how it is that this seems so evident to him.

This is the kind of thinking which everyone was doing in those days, all the people who were writing books. Some were defending a little more religion, some a little less; but they were all tending in this direction towards the getting rid of everything supernatural. And this whole mentality so took hold of men that they could not help but think in these terms. We’ll see later on that Hume also applied this same standard to science with results which were absolutely devastating.

---

<sup>137</sup> Ibid., quoting Hume, p. 293.

## Attacking and Defending Religion

But soon this very religion of reasonableness in which the only thing left is that there's a God and men should be good – even this began to be attacked, because reason is not content as long as it has something more to attack. And now the attack begins, not against just the supernatural, but against religion altogether. And here, perhaps to our surprise, we find that two of the great defenders of religion are precisely the Voltaire and Diderot, that is, the new idea of religion.

Voltaire argues at a time when he was still holding onto his Deism and many French thinkers already had become materialists and atheists. And he said: When I see a watch whose hands mark the hours, I conclude that an intelligent being has arranged the springs of this machine so that its hands will mark the hours. Thus, when I see the springs of the human body, I conclude that an intelligent being has arranged these organs to receive and nourished for nine months in the womb; that the eyes are given to see, the hands to grasp, etc. So this is called the Argument from design, a proof of the existence of God.

And a second argument is that there must be a final cause of everything. Voltaire says: I exist, hence something exists. If something exists, then something must have existed from all eternity; for whatever is, either exists through itself or has received its being from something else. Already sounds like Thomas Aquinas. If through itself, it exists of necessity, it has always existed of necessity, it is God; if it has received its being from something else, and that something from a third, that from which the last has received its being must of necessity be God...<sup>138</sup>

Intelligence is not essential to matter, for a rock or grain do not think. Whence then have the particles of matter which think and feel receive sensation and thought? it cannot be from themselves, since they think in spite of themselves; it cannot be from matter in general, since thought and sensation do not belong to the essence of matter: hence they must have received these gifts from the hands of a Supreme Being, intelligent, infinite and the original cause of all beings.<sup>139</sup>

You see he's quite clinging on to the old fashioned way of things. And he says finally, in the opinion that there is a God, there are difficulties; but in the contrary opinion there are absurdities. And later on good thinking men with common sense will begin to say that, no,

---

<sup>138</sup> Ibid., quoting Voltaire, p. 296.

<sup>139</sup> Ibid.



there's no absurdity in thinking that the world evolved itself and so forth. We'll see this in a later lecture on the whole idea of evolution.

And Voltaire even believed in the immortality of the soul. On the immortality of the soul Voltaire says, "Without wanting to deceive men, it can be said we have as much reason to believe in as to deny the immortality of the being that thinks." And of course, here he is not depending upon science; he's speaking on the old beliefs, which the more radical thinkers were already disproving, getting rid of.<sup>140</sup>

But already with the materialists and the atheists in this period just before the French Revolution, we begin to come to some of the reasons why the whole Enlightenment world-view was destroyed. But the basic outlook of Enlightenment was optimism, that it's possible to understand what the world was all about. There are no mysteries left. Even Christianity is reasonable.<sup>141</sup>

---

<sup>140</sup> Ibid.

<sup>141</sup> Ibid., p. 297.

## Art and Music

Now one note on the art and music of this period;

In reading the philosophers and theologians of this period, one finds that they are very much dated, that is, out of date. You read them and you see that: how can people think like that?

They're so naive. By reason alone you're going to prove the existence of the soul, or the existence of the afterlife. It's obvious they are believing this on some other basis and not understanding that they believe this out of faith, because on reason alone, what can you believe, if you're left to reason alone?

But the music of this period and the art is still very much alive. And you can hear a concert of this music, Baroque music, and it feels, you are very much attuned to it. In fact, it is just as fresh now as it was then. And interestingly enough, this music is quite profound. And it is not, as music later became, more and more subject to romantic feelings and sentimentality; it's quite sober and has very much feeling in it, very fresh, very alive, also of course very regular. Both the art, the painting was subject to certain classical rules of painting, and the music also after polyphony had developed out of the Middle Ages, out of the later Middle Ages. Certain rules of counterpoint were adopted which later composers would think were too restrictive. But out of these – this sort of a definite – this classical system of musical laws and artistic laws, a very living art came.

One man even said this was one of the pinnacles of human achievement. Whether one thinks of Handel or Bach, or Rameau, David, the English composers Purcell, Burke, or the Italians Corelli, Vivaldi – they're all on an extremely high level. Of course, in Germany also there are others – Schmutz also. They wrote both religious music: the Passions, various kinds of Passions, and cantatas and secular music.

This music, of course, is not spiritual music. Even in the religious music you can see that it is not the same as the Orthodox church services which arouses one to contrition, which has a definite function in one's spiritual life. This is what the Russians call *duchevni* – that is, music of the soul, the lower part of the soul not the higher part, which is called the spirit. Thus, this does not have the supreme worth that true Christian art does, whether the icon or the church music, which leads the soul to heaven. This is more, you sit back, and you contemplate, relax and enjoy, but kind of thinking about it – although there's some extremely pious music. Bach wrote one piece called *I Rejoice on My Death* about a person ready to die. And it's obvious he had deep

religious feelings. But this music also is not something which should be just thrown out because it is very, extremely refined.<sup>142</sup>

And those who are in the world, since they are going to be subjected to art and music of some kind, can't help it. You go into a supermarket and you're subjected to music. You go out in the street and you're subjected to the art – the buildings, the billboards, everything in the streets is the art of our times. And therefore since one has to be subjected to that, it's better to be subjected to good, refined art than the barbarism which exists today.

Later on we'll discuss something about the falling away from this classical age of art, and how you can detect a definite progress the same way that reason was to destroy this faith in the deistic god and the universe that makes sense. The same way the new currents that came in were to destroy the whole classical idea of art and music.

But one might also ask a very interesting question of where does the spirit behind this art come from? Because if one reads these philosophers and theologians one sees that their thought is extremely superficial; that is, some kind of deeper dimension seems to be missing. They're lost, and the further one goes on and the more logical they get, the more one feels they've lost the whole point of what religion is. And obviously this music does not express the philosophy of Deism.

And the reason why the music can be so profound is obviously because it lived on the basis of the capital of the past, that is, the Christian capital of the past which is still not exhausted completely. And even these, even Voltaire who still believes in God and the afterlife is still living on the basis of the past. There was still left some kind of belief, some kind of traditional values. And music and art still have contact with this, these sources, although of course they've come far away from the traditional Orthodox art.

Later we'll discuss how this modern art fell away from this classic age the same way as modern philosophy did. And now before beginning the last series of lectures on the modern world which we know, forces which shaped it, we should ask a few questions on how is it that this worldview of the Enlightenment collapsed – because it collapsed very soon. Its philosophy and its theology seems now incredibly naive and narrow. And its art is a kind of golden age which is impossible to go back to. You can play over again these great masterpieces, but you can't, there's no one composing now like that.

---

<sup>142</sup> Source for this? See note SC10N, p. 287, see also note SC9, p. 28.

And there are several reasons and they all perhaps overlap each other. One is the very thing which Kireyevsky talked about: that reason, once it is exalted above faith and tradition, continues and produces its own destruction. The reason which first produced Scholasticism then produced the Reformation because you were criticizing the religion itself; and finally – first it's the Reformation is a criticism of the Medieval Catholicism and then the criticism of Protestantism produces the atheist agnostic philosophers of the nineteenth century. And after Kireyevsky we'll see that it produced the actual suicide of reason.

Once one accepts reason as the standard of truth, you have to follow it all the way. And that is why, as we are examining these religious thinkers, we see that one generation holds on to more of the past and thinks that is rational. The next generation subjects that to criticism and holds on to less, but thinks there's still something left. The next generation destroys all that, and thinks there's very little left. And that generation resembles[overtuns?] the next one. As long as you believe that reason is capable of giving you truth, you have no argument against it. And that's why there was no one; even the ones who were defending Christianity were arguing on the same rationalistic terms.

It's the same thing that Dr. [Alexander] Kalimiros talks about: that between Orthodoxy and the West there is this gulf because in the West they are all talking in the same language, the Protestants, Catholics, sectarians, atheists; it's all the same language. They're all used to taking reason as the standard, even when they do not take it all the way, because they're scared to go too far, most people; still, they have this rationalistic atmosphere in common. And in that atmosphere you cannot escape. You have to admit that reason is capable of truth; and, therefore, when your enemy has a very good argument, you have to grant that that's true. If it's true, he explains away your faith. But in Orthodoxy, reason has an entirely different function which we'll talk about later.

And so we'll see also in one of the next lectures that the history of our world in the last 200 years is a continuation of a kind of dialectical process whereby reason overthrows everything in the past and finally destroys itself. That is, reason must destroy itself once it is given the license to be the standard of truth. That's why this Enlightenment Age seems now so naive.

Another reason which acted for the overthrowing of this world-view is that the loss of the whole spiritual tradition and spiritual experience which we can see by the very fact that reason is made the standard –

which means they lost the spiritual tradition – this loss made men actually hopeless, helpless before the negative criticism of reason, which you see in Voltaire, being very pathetic in his defense of some small part of the old tradition. And also made them unaware of non-rational influences which actually act upon the rationalists themselves. Later on people will become more aware of this, and that's when reason actually destroys itself, in our own time.

And also, they did not see when demonic powers intervened because they don't believe anymore in demons. There's no – these people weren't even arguing for the existence of demons anymore.

So, this is why we discussed earlier some of the undercurrents of chiasm and the mystical view of science. It's obvious that there are many forces under the surface, irrational forces which dominate one's behavior. And a person who thinks he's very rational, very reasonable, who believes only in reason, obviously has a kind of mystical faith in this reason. And most of them at this time were totally unaware of that.

Again, this view of theirs was so one-sided. Once you start reasoning, you do away with all kinds of things which you used to believe in, or would wish to believe in. And you go a lot farther than you would feel like going. And after a while, it's natural that people will say, Wait, wasn't there something then, too? And so this very one-sided rationalism led to a revolt against it, which is on the religious level. There was this underground, this Pietism and Methodism, and now – beginning also at the end of the period – occultism and the so-called Romantic revolt in which everything Medieval all of a sudden becomes very attractive because it seems much richer than this narrow Enlightenment philosophy.

The experimental ideal in science also had a function similar to that of reason because it is never satisfied. It always wants to test its conclusions and come to new conclusions. So scientific ideals, these theories are constantly changing, and this helped overthrow this scientific synthesis of the time of Newton.

## Progress

Again, the idea of progress which we saw in this period in the earlier part of the period, the idea of the ancient was kept very much alive because of the Renaissance, that the ancients were the ones who were for us the true standard. If we can only get back to them and away from the Middle Ages and superstition, we will be fine. But then is when the sciences begin to become the dominant form of thought, the scientific world-view. People begin to see that anyone living today has more scientific knowledge than someone living in antiquity. Now science for the first time is being pursued systematically, experiments and everything else.

And so the people defending the ancients finally have to say that only in literature do the ancients hold the supremacy. And then with the outpouring of great classical literature of this period, and music and art, even there they say that, no, the moderns are also superior to the ancients because now we have a superior philosophy; and art also is superior. And out of this battle between the ancient and the moderns came the development for the first time of the idea of progress which is actually quite a religious idea which we'll examine later.

But the very idea of progress – that the present is building upon the past, the past and improving it and future generations will improve upon us, that there will be an unlimited progress and man will constantly go ahead – this obviously destroys the idea that there's one standard, the classical standard from the past whether Christian or pagan or what. Therefore, everything becomes a [living seed?] at first, but everything becomes quite relevant. And one exists actually just for the sake of the future people who are going to improve upon one. And where, after a while when a person begins to realize that this is a movement of, philosophy of constant change, constant movement, then the soul begins to be upset. It's a sign that there's no peace, no security. In the nineteenth century this leads to the evolutionary worldview; it's a quite distinct world-view, in fact, quite as powerful as the Newtonian world-view, but quite different.

Finally when these rationalistic ideas, people sitting in their cabinets and thinking out logically what is true, what is false, what can be retained from the past, and what has to be rejected – it is one thing for a philosopher in his cabinet, but when you go outside and say now let's change society on the basis of these ideas, something quite different occurs. And you can see that actually a great disaster occurs.

And that brings us to the subject of the next lecture which will be the Revolution. The French Revolution and the whole revolutionary movement of our times, which is the application of rationalistic ideas to the changing of society, the changing of the whole outward order of life. And here we will begin also to examine more the source of some of these rationalistic ideas, where they came from, why people came to believe that reason is the one standard of truth.

This whole ideal of the Enlightenment Age, the idea of Deism was, of course, the atmosphere from which modern Masonry arose. The idea of the Grand Architect God, God Who is somewhere remote in the heavens and doesn't touch us. But the whole subject of Masonry will come up next lecture on Revolution because it was the power which was very responsible for producing the Revolution, that is, the deistic idea. And there's very important reasons why Deism – although it seems quite outmoded and disproved – lasted on in the Masonic lodges.

Because the whole of the modern world-view is not atheistic, and is not agnostic; it believes in God. It's only a temporary period where agnosticism and atheism are replacing Christianity for a certain purpose – so as to come back and worship the true God according to the revolutionary philosophy, which the Masons still believe today: the Grand Architect is new God.

# Lecture 6

## The French Revolution

Now after examining the ideas which have been replacing one another in modern times from the Middle Ages and forming the modern mentality, we come to our own day, that is, the history of the last two hundred years. Because everything which came before the French Revolution has a different spirit; what comes after has a new spirit. The period before 1789 was called the Old Regime, and the period after that is the Revolutionary Age which is the same now as it was in the 1790's.

This will take a number of lectures because now we will continue both the historical description of the modern mentality, but at the same time we will now do something else. At the very same time we are doing this, we will stop and analyze what is the underlying unity of these ideas. That is, what is the basic philosophy; in fact, what is the basic theology of the revolutionary mind?

And what do we mean by saying the revolutionary theology? Just as Orthodox Christianity has its theology, a whole dogmatic structure, which, when one believes it, enters into and changes every aspect of one's life; so too the modern mentality, which has achieved its final form in the Revolution, has a whole belief system which affects the whole of one's life and molds history.

The idea that modern history is a chance play of conflicting forces is totally unrealistic. There is a definite pattern, a definite philosophy or theology that is being worked out, so much so that astute prophets, so-called, among the modernists have been able to predict in advance how man is going to change in accordance with this theology. We can cite, for example, a little later on we will give more and more examples. We can cite, however, here Nietzsche who says, I think in *The Will to Power*, What I am describing here is the history of the twentieth century, the triumph of Nihilism, because when the masses get the ideas which I am now proclaiming, there will be a revolution such as the world has never seen. And indeed, the ideas filter down from the philosophers to the masses and then tremendous changes are caused.

Or we could quote another one, who was a crazy one also, Heinrich Heine, a Jew from Germany, who was very much akin to all this revolutionary spirit. And he says a few things which show that he's in



tune with what's coming up. He wrote a history of Religion and Philosophy in Germany in which he quite accurately saw what was behind Luther, what was behind Kant, Hegel and these modern philosophers. This was in 1834 already he wrote this. He says, Mark this, ye proud men of action, ye are nothing but unconscious hodmen, workers, of the men of thought who, often in humblest stillness, have appointed you your inevitable task. Maximilian Robespierre was merely the hand of Jean Jacques Rousseau, the bloody hand that drew from the womb of time the body whose soul Rousseau had created.<sup>143</sup>

In another place he even makes a prophecy about his own country. He tells the French that the Germans also are going to make a revolution. He says, "The old stone gods will then arise from the forgotten ruins and wipe from their eyes the dust of centuries, and Thor with his giant hammer will arise again, and he will shatter the Gothic cathedrals.... Smile not at the fantasy who one foresees in the region of reality the same outburst of revolution that has taken place in the region of intellect, because Germany was indeed the avant guard of philosophy. The thought precedes the deed, as the lightning the thunder. German thunder is of true German character: it is not very nimble, but rumbles along somewhat slowly. But come it will, and when ye hear a crashing such as never before has been heard in the world's history, then know that at last the German thunderbolt has fallen. At this commotion the eagles will drop dead from the skies and the lions in the farthest wastes of Africa will bite their tails and creep into their royal lairs. There will be played in Germany a drama compared to which the French Revolution will seem but an innocent idyll. At present, it is true, everything is tolerably quiet; and though here and there some few men create a little stir, do not imagine these are to be the real actors in the piece. They are only little curs chasing one another around the empty arena, barking and snapping at one another, till the appointed hour when the troop of gladiators appear to fight for Life and death."<sup>144</sup>

And the hour will come. As on the steps of an amphitheater, the nations will group themselves around Germany to witness the terrible combat. Later on we'll see what happens in Germany when there was indeed great revolutionary storm released.

No one author or history book or historical event contains the whole of the philosophy or theology which produced modern history,

---

<sup>143</sup>Religion and Philosophy in Germany: A Fragment by Heinrich Heine, transl. John Snodgrass, Beacon Press, 1959, Boston, p. 106.

<sup>144</sup>Ibid., p. 160.

revolutionary history. And therefore, we shall have to examine many different historical events, many different writers, philosophers and try to grasp the underlying thread of this whole philosophy.

And in fact it is exactly like [approaching] Holy Fathers. There's no one Holy Father you can read to get the whole teaching of Christianity, because many Holy Fathers express different points of view, different aspects. And the whole of the Fathers contain the wisdom of the tradition. And modern historians would like to say that one contradicts the other and so forth, but if, once you enter into the Orthodox spirit you see that one rather compensates for the other. And there's a marvelous harmony in all the writings of Holy Fathers.

In the same way, there's the same kind of harmony in all these modern thinkers, the ones who are really in contact with the spirit of the times. You can read one and get one aspect; read another and you get different aspect. You can see in the French Revolution one aspect, in Napoleon a different aspect. When you put them all together, you see there's a marvelous harmony to it; it all makes sense. But this has not really been done before – such an analysis – and therefore we'll have to look at very many different aspects.

With the revolution we must examine two aspects of the activity of the modern mentality: we call these the philosophers and the activists – the philosophers who have the ideas and the activists who produce the historical events. Or as one early historian of the French Revolution said, the one is called the corrupting philosophers, the ones who think the thoughts; the second are called the massacring philosophers, the ones who go out and massacre the people.

This is the age, this modern age, this revolutionary age, when modern philosophy produces the most profound effects in everyday life. Before, philosophy was largely a matter of the upper classes, sort of idle people who had the time to think. And from now on, everyone is drawn into this, the modern philosophy because it changes the whole of life. These two aspects, the philosophy and activism, are not entirely separate but they intertwine. And so we have to understand first of all how they are related to each other.<sup>145</sup>

First of all, the philosophy inspires the act. Without modern philosophy there would have been no revolution. In fact, Napoleon even said, Without Jean Jacques Rousseau I would never have existed.

---

<sup>145</sup> Barruel, Abbé, *Memoirs to Serve for a History of Jacobinism*, Vol. I, Lyons, 1818, French edition, p. 40: *Al ne fallut rein moins que cet intervalle aux philosophes corrupteurs pour préparer les voies aux philosophes maccacreurs.*

Secondly, philosophy is not something which comes first and they act afterwards; the philosophy continues while the act is going on. And we can say that it consolidates what the act has gained and keeps pushing on the activists to do more. The revolutionary acts are often the work of a small organized group, but they succeed because they have the support of the common mind, that is, the spirit of the times, which is willing to excuse any kind of excesses. Without this support of the common mentality of the times, the revolution, all revolutions would collapse as soon as the plotters are killed off.<sup>146</sup>

Even today we see very clearly that Communism continues to exist and to have half the world precisely because the West shares the same basic ideas and, therefore, is willing to excuse the crimes of Communism.

In looking at the acts of the revolutions, it is not possible for us to untangle exactly everything that happens and see exactly who inspired each separate act, which secret society is at work, where there are charlatans, where there is somebody who is trying to make a name for himself. The secret societies themselves, who were very much involved in all of this, make a point of hiding themselves. And therefore, there's no way we can untangle everything and say – as some people like to point out: they can spot every place where the Communist conspiracy is going on. It's much deeper than that. That is a kind of John Birch mentality [in] which someone is seen with somebody who is a friend of a Communist, [therefore,] that means that the plot is right there – and [that's] not necessarily [the case] at all. The only thing we can do is look much deeper and examine the ideas which are expressed, and the acts which come out, and see how significant they are and how faithful they are to the modern philosophy – the revolutionary philosophy – and which ones are in accordance with the spirit of the times and are going to produce results in the future.

Therefore, first of all, we will try to trace the progress of modern thought in the revolution. And by revolution I mean, of course, the whole new concept of revolution, which is a universal thing, which begins with the French Revolution. We will try to show the unity of the

---

<sup>146</sup> Merezhkovsky, Dmitri, trans. Zvegintzov, Catherine, *Napoleon the Man*, E.P. Dutton & Co., New York, 1928, quoting Holland, p. 39: Without him [Rousseau] there would have been no French Revolution.... It is also true that I, too, would not have existed....

Perhaps that would have been better for the happiness of Europe.

whole revolutionary movement and analyze its theological philosophy and its psychology. This will give us an outward, unified view of the revolutionary age. And then in a later lecture we'll turn to the inward, so-called spiritual striving of modern man which gives the inspiration for the final goal of the whole revolution.

In looking at the French Revolution, which is the place where we begin because this is where modern ideas have their first great outburst, we will have to have an approach which is different from most histories of the French Revolution. You can read... [historians explaining its events] ...as though the revolution was made by well-meaning people and unfortunately there were sometimes some hot heads who got mixed up with it; and historical circumstances changed, outward dangers caused changes of plans, and the whole thing just didn't come off the way it was supposed to be. And the idealists were somehow frustrated and have to come back and start again. And this, if we look at the actual history of events, is a very naive view. It's not that way at all. This is not to say that every single event is brought about by a conspiracy, because there are many other motives – there are many people who want themselves to take over, to kill off somebody else – and many byways in which the revolution gets sidetracked and then comes back to the main purpose. And so we have to look, as I said, to see what is the essence of the various changes which come about, and to follow the thread which occurs as a constant thread throughout all the revolutionary events.

In examining the revolution there is one book which is very great textbook of this. It is written by a person who was in Paris during the Revolution, during the 1790's and wrote the book about 1797, I think. And this edition we have is 1818. It's called *Memoirs to Serve for a History of Jacobinism* by the Abbé Barruel. B-A-R-R-U-E-L. And he's very valuable because he was right there when this was all very fresh. And he was faced by the same kind of thinkers we have today who say that the whole thing was a noble experiment which did not come off. And he made great research into many texts – and we'll see what kind of texts they were – and shows that there's a single thread which goes through the Revolution; it's not some kind of chance thing. And many things which now people and historians might say are accidental results, he says, No, they planned it that way. And he has the texts to back it up.<sup>147</sup>

---

<sup>147</sup> Barruel, p. v-vi.

I'll read part of the introduction to his book which shows his whole approach. He says: Under the disastrous name of Jacobins, who are the radicals who immediately took over the Revolution, Under the disastrous name of Jacobins, a sect appeared in the first days of the French Revolution, teaching that men are all equal and free; in the name of this equality and this disorganizing liberty, trampling underfoot the altars and the thrones; in the name of this same equality and of this same Liberty, calling all the nations to the disasters of the rebellion and to the horrors of anarchy.<sup>148</sup>

From the first moments of its appearance, this sect found itself three hundred thousand members strong, supported by two million arms which it could set in motion throughout the whole extent of France, weapons of torches, pikes, hatchets, and of all the thunder-bolts of the revolution.<sup>149</sup>

It is under the auspices, it is by the movements, the impulsion, the influence and the action of this sect that were committed all the great atrocities which have inundated a vast empire by the blood of its bishops [pontiffs], its priests, its nobles, its wealthy, its citizens of every rank, every age, every sex. It is by these very men that King Louis XVI, the Queen his spouse, his sister Princess Elizabeth, battered by outrages and ignominy during a long captivity, were solemnly assassinated on the scaffold, and all the Sovereigns of the world were proudly menaced by the same fate. It is by these men that the French Revolution has become the scourge of Europe, the terror of powers vainly united to put an end to the progress of these revolutionary armies, more numerous and more devastating than the inundation of the Vandals.<sup>150</sup>

Who therefore are these men who come out, so to speak, from the bowels of the earth, with their dogmas and their thunder-bolts, with all their projects, all their means, and all the resolution of their ferocity. What is this devouring sect? ...

What might be their school and who might be their masters? What are their subsequent plans? This French Revolution brought to an end, will it finally cease to torment the earth, to assassinate the kings and to fanaticize the nations?

We have perceived them trying to persuade people that the whole revolutionary and conspiratorial sect, before this revolution itself, is

---

<sup>148</sup> Ibid., p. viii-xii.

<sup>149</sup> Ibid., p. ix.

<sup>150</sup> Ibid., p. ix.

only an imaginary sect. For those people, all the evils of France and all the terrors of Europe succeed one another, are connected by the simple concurrence of unforeseen circumstances, impossible to foresee. It seems to them useless to seek out the conspiracies and agents who had plotted the conspiracies and directed the chain of events. The ones [actors] who rule today do not know the plans of those who have preceded them; and those who will come after them will likewise be ignorant of the plans of their predecessors.<sup>151</sup>

Preoccupied with such a false opinion, filled with such a dangerous prejudice, these pretended observers will readily say to the various nations: let the French Revolution alarm you no longer. It is a volcano which has opened itself, without anyone being able to know the hot-bed where it was prepared; but it will wear itself out, with its fuel, on the counter-forces which have seen it arise. You announce that – due to causes unknown in your climates, due to elements less likely to ferment, due to laws more analogous to your character, the public fortune being more secure – the fate of France could not become yours; And so you do not be afraid. [and if you must one day participate in it, in vain will you seek to avoid it. The coincidence and the fatality of circumstances will sweep you away against your will. That which you might have done to escape it might perhaps be called the plague, and will only hasten your misfortune.]<sup>152</sup>

I have in my hands the memoir of an ex-minister, of Louis XVI, who was consulted about the causes of this Revolution, and in particular concerning the principal conspirators whom it would be good to know, and about the plan of the conspiracy. I have read how he pronounces that it would be useless to search out either men or an association of men who could have planned the ruin of the throne and of the altar, or formed any plan which could be called a conspiracy. Unfortunate Monarch! When the very ones who should have been watching out for you are unaware of even the name and even the existence of your enemies and those of your people, is it very astonishing that you and your people would be the victims of it! ...We will tell them: in this French Revolution, everything including its most horrible crimes, all has been foreseen, planned, contrived, resolved, decreed: all has been the result of the most profound infamy, since all has been prepared, brought about by the men who alone possessed the thread of the conspiracies long ago plotted in the secret societies, and

---

<sup>151</sup> Ibid., p. xi.

<sup>152</sup> Ibid., p. xii.

who have known how to choose and hasten the moments propitious to their plots.<sup>153</sup>

If, in these daily events, there exist certain circumstances which seem to be less the result of plots, there is nonetheless one cause of them from the secret agents who would both invoke these events, who would know how to profit from these circumstances or even to call them into existence, and who would direct them all towards the principal object. All these circumstances could well serve as a pretext and occasion, but the great cause of the Revolution, of its great crimes, of its great atrocities, would always be independent; of these incidental circumstances. And this great cause exists all within the conspiracies plotted long ago.<sup>154</sup>

[In uncovering the object and the extent of these conspiracies, I ought to dispel an error even more dangerous.] It exists in one fatal delusion among men who would not have difficulty agreeing that this French Revolution has been planned; but they are not afraid to add that in the intention of its original authors it was bound to lead only to the happiness and the regeneration of the Empires; that if great misfortunes have come to interfere with their plans, it is because they came across great obstacles; and besides, that one does not regenerate a great people without great agitations; but that, after all, these storms are not eternal: that the waves will subside and the calm will return; that then the astonished nations, rather than having to fear the French Revolution, instead will imitate it by holding fast to its principles.

This error is above all what the leaders of the Jacobins strive all the more to confirm. This explanation was given as the first implements of the rebellion to that whole band of Constitutionalists, who still regard their decrees about the rights of man as a masterpiece of public law, and who still do not lose the hope of one day seeing the whole universe regenerated by this political rhapsody. This explanation was given to all those men whose stupid credulity, with all their good intentions, sees only a necessary misfortune in the horrors of the 10th of August and in the massacre of the 2nd of September, which we will discuss, It is given finally to all those men who even today are consoled by three or four hundred thousand assassinations, by those millions of victims which the war, the famine, the guillotine, the revolutionary tribulations have cost France; [to] all those men who yet today are consoled by this

---

<sup>153</sup> Ibid., p. xv.

<sup>154</sup> Ibid., p. xvi.

immense depopulation, under the pretext that all these horrors will eventually bring about a better order of things.<sup>155</sup>

Against this false hope, against all these supposed intentions of the revolutionary sect, I set forth its true plans and its conspiracies for realizing them. [I will speak, because it must be properly told at last, because all the proofs of it have been obtained:] The French Revolution has been what it had to be in the spirit of the sect. All the evil which it has done, it had to do; all its crimes and all its atrocities were but a necessary result of its principles and its systems. I will say even more, far from preparing in the distance a happy future, the French Revolution is only one attempt of the forces of this sect; its conspiracies extend over the entire universe.

If among our readers there are those who conclude: the sect of the Jacobins must be eliminated or certainly the whole society may well perish, and that to our present governments everywhere without exception will come the convulsions, overturnings, massacres, and the infernal anarchy of France; I would reply, Yes, one must expect this universal disaster or totally abolish A[crush] the sect....

That which the Jacobins have shattered before a first time, they will shatter yet again. They will pursue in the darkness the great object of their conspiracies; and by new disasters will teach the nations that the whole French Revolution was only the beginning of the universal dissolution which this sect plans.

One has seen the delirium, the rage and the ferocity of the legions of the sect; one recognizes them readily enough as the instruments of all the crimes, of all the devastations, of all the atrocities of the French Revolution; but one does not know enough what masters, what school, what vows, and what successively savage plots there are.

The result of these investigations and of all the evidence which I have gathered, above all in the archives of the Jacobins and of their first masters, has been that their sect and their plots are in themselves but the joining together, the coalition of a triple sect, of a triple conspiracy in which, long before the Revolution, was plotted and is yet being plotted, the overthrow of the altar, that of the throne and finally that of the whole civil society. It was already planned. The three points he has in mind are the philosophers, the Masons and the Illuminati.

You have believed the Revolution to be finished in France, but the revolution in France is but a first attempt of the Jacobins; and the vows,

---

<sup>155</sup> Ibid., p. xvii.



the oaths, and the plots of Jacobinism extend to England, Germany, Italy, to all nations as it does to the French nation.

## Voltaire

Now we will try to examine these ideas which before the French Revolution prepared the way for the Revolution. First of all, there is that thing which we already examined briefly in the previous lectures, that is, the philosophy of the Enlightenment. He finds the most significant philosopher of the Enlightenment to be Voltaire, in this respect, because when he was still a young man in England, he made a vow that he would devote his life to the destruction of Christianity, and from him comes this famous phrase, *Ecrasez l'infame* to exterminate the infamous thing, that is, religion of Christ and replace it, of course, with his religion which is Deism.

He and his followers, as I said, are the ones that this Barruel calls the philosophes corrupteurs, the corrupting philosophers. And the Jacobins are the philosophes massacreurs, the massacring philosophers, the ones who were still have ideas; but they go out and chop people's heads off. He finds also most significant Diderot and D'Alembert, among the other French Deists philosophers, and Frederick II, king of Prussia, who frequently met with Voltaire. And we see at that time, as later on with Bolshevism, that the wildest revolutionaries have the ability to persuade princes and high rulers to go with them in their plans.<sup>156</sup>

We will later on say something about the Jews, but right now we'll just mention that it's interesting that both D'Alembert and Voltaire, in their hatred for Christianity, tried to persuade several princes to rebuild the temple in Jerusalem in order to prove that Christianity was false, the same way that Julian the Apostate tried to do it. He even wrote a Letter to Catherine II, Please build the temple in Jerusalem. But Catherine was rather smarter than that.

Many of the rulers, the small dukes in Germany, and the nobles in France were very much intrigued by these ideas; even the very wildest revolutionary ones were doing away with Christianity. And that's, of course, one big reason why the Revolution had such support.

But Catherine II in Russia, although she was German and so forth, was much smarter than the other rulers. And she even told Voltaire that she couldn't go along with all his ideas, although she was a very good friend of his; and that if his ideas were going to be put into practice, she would no longer be able to have her salon and invite him to give talks.

---

<sup>156</sup> Barruel, p. xx.

And later on when the French Revolution broke out, of course, she arrested all the Masons; and that was the end of revolution for her.<sup>157</sup>

---

<sup>157</sup> Ibid., p. 37

## Rousseau

A second great stream – the first one is Voltaire and the Deist philosophers who are rationalists, that is, they reduce everything to their limit of their understanding – a second great current of philosophy, which was very influential in the Revolution, was that of Jean Jacques Rousseau, who is the philosopher of feeling. He said of himself that he had a romantic spirit. He was filled with great feelings. He had always found somebody who would support him in his love affairs and everything else. He would go in the woods, some great prince would support him, and he would ramble in the woods, and his heart would swell up with great feelings, and he would recognize God everywhere, and that was his religion. He lived in his emotions, in the realm of the vague and the indefinite. But in the same way as Voltaire reduced everything to his mind, Rousseau reduced everything to his feelings. And these two things – of course, very strong in man, two sides of our nature – both entered into the revolutionary spirit. And the religion of feeling is, of course, much more accessible to the common people than the religion of mind.<sup>158</sup>

He had a philosophy of nature which is extremely influential on the Revolution. It is with him that we get the idea of back to nature, away with artificiality and civilization. Although he was not absolutely saying we should discard civilization, he even said once that since we are corrupt anyway, we might as well be a little educated than uneducated. But he contrasted the artificiality of civilized life with the simplicity of what he thought was primitive life. In fact, he said that the first time that someone said this is mine, that was the origin of our corruption. He was even against the idea of private property.<sup>159</sup>

He wrote a book, *Emile*, which describes the education of a young person, in which the person is supposed to be taught almost nothing at all, and nature is supposed to come out in him. And the teacher just removes obstacles to the development of nature in the child. There is no

---

<sup>158</sup> See footnote above.

<sup>159</sup> Rousseau, Jean Jacques, *A Discourse on the Origin of Equality*, 1754, quoted in Seldes, George, *The Great Quotations*, Pocket Books, New York, 1967, p. 299: The first man, who, having enclosed a piece of ground, bethought himself of saying This is Mine, and found people simple enough to believe him, was the real founder of civil society. From how many crimes, wars and murders, from how many horrors and misfortunes might not anyone have saved mankind, by pulling up the stakes, or filling up the ditch, and crying to his fellows, 'Beware of listening to this impostor; you are undone if you once forget that the fruits of the earth belong to us all, and the earth itself to nobody.'

external authority. No religion is given; when he grows up, it's time for him to choose his own religion. He will have no prejudices or habits or religion. And he even said that until the child is twelve years, he should not be able to tell the difference between his right hand and his left hand so he will not be corrupted by knowledge.

And Voltaire, when he read this book, wrote to Rousseau that reading this book makes him feel like walking on all fours, But as it is more than sixty years since I have done this, it is impossible for me to resume the habit. Nonetheless they were profoundly in agreement: one is destroying everything except his mind, the other everything except his feeling. So even [though they are] opposed in their basic outlook, since Rousseau also didn't like this complicated rationalism, still their effect is even more powerful because it takes two strands and applies them to the revolutionary activists: they will be inspired by both of these.<sup>160</sup>

In his politics he developed the idea that sovereignty comes not from God, not from the upper classes, but it comes from the people. Of course, this is the big idea of Revolution. But, as we'll see later on, his very philosophy already justifies the strange fact that those inspired by this idea end up by establishing tyranny, because he said that the general will is superior to individual will. He thought once kings were overthrown that everyone would spontaneously be happy and have the same will; but if they don't, then the masses are to dictate to the individual.

He [Rousseau] was the one who said, Man is born free and is everywhere in chains. Of course, the basic idea of the revolution adds up to Marx. He said...his religion is one of feeling. He was a deist like Voltaire, but his deism is not one that's thought out; it's just his own feeling about God. And he also believed in immortality. But all this is just his subjective feeling. All dogmas are subjected to his heart. His prayer is not any kind of petition because he did not believe that any God answers prayers; rather it was an outburst of enthusiasm, of joy in nature which became a hymn of praise to the Great Being, that is, the great God of Deism.

---

<sup>160</sup> Letter of Francois Marie Arouet de Voltaire to Jean Jacques Rousseau, In *Defense of Civilization*, August 30, 1755, *The Portable Age of Reason Reader* ed. Crane Brinton, The Viking Press, New York, 1956, p. 600: [T]o read your book makes one long to go on all fours. Since, however, it is now some sixty years since I gave up the practice, I feel that it is unfortunately impossible for me to resume it....

In his ideal commonwealth he said that no intolerant religion should be allowed, that is, Christianity, of course. There was to be a profession of faith which is purely civil and its articles are to be social sentiments, without which it is impossible to be a good citizen or a faithful subject – that is, a new religion which is rather autocratic. Those who do not accept this religion, since the whole society must have one religion, must leave the country. And if one accepts the religion and then acts contrary to it, he must be executed.<sup>161</sup>

So these are the two philosophical strands which enter into the makeup of the revolutionary mind: one, the idea that I by myself can think through a system whereby society will be more harmoniously ordered; and the other that my feelings will guide me to the truth. And in neither one is there any safeguard: the idea of revelation, of tradition, of God is out. The only God left is a very vague God, the God of Deism.

And we Orthodox Christians know that one who removes revelation, tradition, the Church, and accepts whatever his mind tells him, or whatever his feelings dictate to him, opens the way for what? – for Satan to enter, because Satan enters by means of thoughts, by means of feelings. And we'll see that in these revolutionary outbursts you cannot explain what happens except by the fact that Satan is directing things. He's inspiring these people with all kinds of plots, all kinds of ideas.

---

<sup>161</sup> Rousseau, *The Social Contract*, 1762.

# Secret Societies

But to these two philosophical elements there is added now a third thing, which is the secret societies. Of course, the secret societies have an underground existence throughout the period before the Enlightenment, but it is especially in the eighteenth century that there is born a new sect, or at least a reorganized [one], and that is Freemasonry, which was born in England in 1717, and very quickly spread to France and America and the rest of Europe. Later on we shall see that Freemasonry in England and in America became something rather different from Freemasonry on the continent, especially in the Catholic countries. And the reason for this is not so difficult to understand.<sup>162</sup>

The English mentality which gave the world already the philosophy of deism is a so-called conservative mentality; that is, it's capable of believing just about anything and being quite content, and not pushing its beliefs to any logical conclusions. Just as later on we'll see David Hume destroys the whole of the world, and then sits back and enjoys himself, and drinks his coffee and smokes his pipe, not seeing that he's given ideas which will drive people to despair.

In the same way, English Masonry was born out of the spirit of tolerance and seeking to find some kind of a religious belief which is neither Catholic nor Protestant, but which will bind together all men of goodwill. And they were satisfied with that. They had a deistic religion, the Grand Architect. There were no religious differences discussed in the Lodge – you have to put religion behind. And for the Englishman and later for the Americans this was considered to be sufficient. If you believe in God, you can go to your Protestant church or Anglican church and be happy.

## **Illuminati**

(Adam) Weischaup, born 1748; Jesuit training, but hated them, turned to French philosophers, Manicheans, and occult doctrines. Very similar philosophy to Rousseau, but added secret revolutionary society, May 1, 1776, a combination of freemasonry and Jesuitry.: The very ideas of Masonry, the ideas of a brotherhood of men – which is something above Catholicism or Protestantism – when they went to the continent they inflamed men's minds and made them quite radical.

---

<sup>162</sup> Quoted in Webster, Nesta, *World Revolution*, Small, Maynard & Co., 1921, Boston, p. 8.

There is in particular one kind of Freemasonry, which apparently was evolved separately. And this is what is called Illuminism.<sup>163</sup> This was the creature of one man, whose name is Adam Weishaupt. He was born in 1748, went through a Jesuit education, and later on came to hate the Jesuits, turned to the French philosophers, to Manichaeism philosophy, and apparently had some kind of occult initiation in one of the many occult sects.<sup>164</sup>

[Let us] examine here a few of his views. He says, in agreement with Rousseau, that civilization is a great mistake, and to this all the inequalities of human life were due. He says, Man is fallen from the condition of Liberty and Equality, the State of Pure Nature. He is under subordination and civil bondage arising from the vices of Man. This is the Fall and Original Sin. Notice he uses the Christian term here, original sin. Later on we'll see how this is all an imitation of Christianity.

According to him, all the arts and sciences must be abolished. He says, "Do the common sciences afford real enlightenment, real human happiness? Or are they not rather children of necessity, the complicated needs of a state contrary to Nature, the inventions of vain and empty brains?... Why," he asks, "should it be impossible to the human race to attain its highest perfection, the capacity for governing itself?" For this reason, he taught that not only should kings and nobles be abolished but even a Republic should not be tolerated, and the people should be taught to do without any controlling authority, any law, or any civil code. In order to make this system a success it would be necessary only to inculcate in Man 'a just and steady morality,' and since Weishaupt professed to share Rousseau's belief in the inherent goodness of human nature this would not be difficult, and society might then 'go on peaceably in a state of perfect Liberty and Equality.' For since the only real obstacle to human perfection lay in the restraints imposed on Man by artificial conditions of life, the removal of these must inevitably restore him to his primitive virtue. 'Man is not bad except as he is made so by arbitrary morality. He is bad because Religion, the State, and bad examples pervert him.' It was necessary, therefore, to root out from his mind all ideas of a Hereafter, all fear of retribution for evil deeds, and to substitute for these superstitions the religion of Reason. "When at

---

<sup>163</sup> Webster footnote: *Nachtrag...Originalschriften (des Illuminaten Ordens)*, Zweite Adtheilung, p. 65.

<sup>164</sup> Webster footnote: A German sect of this name professing Satanism, with which Weishaupt's Order may have been connected, existed in the fifteenth century.



least Reason becomes the religion of men, then will the problem be solved.”<sup>165</sup>

After deliverance from the bondage of religion, the loosening of all social ties must follow. Both family and national life must cease to exist so as to “make of the human race one good and happy family.” The origins of patriotism and the love of kindred are thus described by Weishaupt in the directions given to his Hierophants for the instruction of initiates:

“At the moment when men united themselves into nations they ceased to recognize themselves under a common name. Nationalism or National Love took the place of universal love. With the division of the globe and its countries benevolence restricted itself behind boundaries that it was never again to transgress. Then it became a virtue to spread out at the expense of those who did not happen to be under our dominion. Then in order to attain this goal, it became permissible to despise foreigners, and to deceive and to offend them. This virtue was called Patriotism. That man was called a Patriot, who, whilst just towards his own people, was unjust to others, who blinded himself to the merits of foreigners and took for perfections the vices of his own country. So one sees that Patriotism gave birth to Localism, to the family spirit, and finally to Egoism. Thus the origin of states or governments of civil society was the seed of discord and Patriotism found its punishment in itself.... Diminish, do away with this love of country, and men will once more learn to know and love each other as men, there will be no more partiality, the ties between hearts will unroll and extend.”

In these words, the purest expression of Internationalism as it is expounded today, Weishaupt displayed an ignorance of primeval conditions of life as profound as that of Rousseau. The idea of Paleolithic man, whose skeleton is usually exhumed with a flint instrument or other weapon of warfare grasped in its hand, passing his existence in a state of ‘universal love,’ is simply ludicrous. It was not, however, in his diatribes against civilization that Weishaupt surpassed Rousseau, but in the plan he devised for overthrowing it. Rousseau had merely paved the way for revolution; Weishaupt constructed the actual machinery of revolution itself.

---

<sup>165</sup>Footnote in Webster: Robison’s Proofs of a Conspiracy, pp. 106, 107.

It was on the 1st of May 1776 that Weishaupt's five years of meditation resulted in his founding the secret society that he named, after bygone philosophical systems, the Illuminati.<sup>166</sup>

### **Abolition of Religion, Absolute Obedience**

The grades of the Order were a combination of the grades of Freemasonry and the degrees belonging to the Jesuits. Weishaupt, as has already been said, detested the Jesuits, but recognizing the efficiency of their methods in acquiring influence over the minds of their disciples, he conceived the idea of adopting their system to his own purpose. 'He admired,' says the Abbé Barruel, 'the institutions of the founders of this Order, he admired above all those laws, that regime of the Jesuits, which under one head made so many men dispersed all over the universe tend towards the same object; he felt that one might imitate their methods whilst proposing to himself views diametrically opposed. He said to himself: What all these men have done for altars and empires, why should I not do against altars and empires? By the attraction of mysteries, of legends, of adepts, why should not I destroy in the dark what they erect in the light of day?'

It was in the training of adepts that Weishaupt showed his profound subtlety. Proselytes were not to be admitted at once to the secret aims of Illuminism, but initiated step by step into the higher mysteries – and the greatest caution was to be exercised not to reveal to the novice doctrines that might be likely to revolt him. For this purpose the initiators must acquire the habit of 'talking backwards and forwards' so as not to commit themselves. 'One must speak,' Weishaupt explained to the Superiors of the Order, 'sometimes in one way, sometimes in another, so that our real purpose should remain impenetrable to our inferiors.'

Thus to certain novices (the novices ecossais) the Illuminati must profess to disapprove of revolutions, and demonstrate the advantages of proceeding by peaceful methods towards the attainment of world domination.<sup>167</sup>

The passage then goes on to say vaguely that this is not the case and that the Order only demands of the initiate the fulfillment of his obligations. Nor must antagonism to religion be admitted; on the contrary, Christ was to be represented as the first author of Illuminism,

---

<sup>166</sup> Webster footnote: Robison, p. 375.

<sup>167</sup> Webster., p. 12.

whose secret mission was to restore to men the original liberty and equality they had lost in the Fall. ‘No one,’ the novice should be told, ‘paved so sure a way for liberty as our Grand Master Jesus of Nazareth, and if Christ exhorted his disciples to despise riches it was in order to prepare the world for that community of goods that should do away with property.’<sup>168</sup>

### **Novices Initiated Step by Step into the Higher Mysteries**

It was not, then, until his admission to the higher grades that the adept was initiated into the real intentions of Illuminism with regard to religion. When he reached the grade of Illuminated Major or Minor, of Scotch Knight, Epopte, or Priest he was told the whole secret of the Order in a discourse by the Initiator:

“Remember that from the first invitations which we have given you in order to attract you to us, we commenced by telling you that in the projects of our Order there did not enter any designs against religion. You remember that such an assurance was given you when you were admitted into the ranks of our novices, and that it was repeated when you entered into our Minerval Academy.... You remember with what art, with what

simulated respect we have spoken to you of Christ and of his gospel; but in the grades of greater Illuminism, of Scotch Knight, and of Epopte or Priest, how we have to know to form from Christ’s gospel that of our reason, and from its religion that of nature, and from religion, reason, morality and Nature, to make the religion and morality of the rights of man, of equality and of liberty... We have had many prejudices to overcome in you before being able to persuade you that the pretended religion of Christ was nothing else than the work of priests, of imposture and of tyranny. If it be so with that religion so much proclaimed and admired, what are we to think of other religions? Understand then that they have all the same fictions for their origin, that they are all equally founded on lying, error, chimera and imposture. Behold our secret.... If in order to destroy all Christianity, all religion, we have pretended to have the sole true religion, remember that the end justifies the means, and that the wise ought to take all the means to do good which the wicked take to do evil. Those which we have taken to deliver you, those which we have taken to deliver one day the human

---

<sup>168</sup> Ibid., pp. 12-13.

race from all religion, are nothing else than a pious fraud which we reserve to unveil one day in the grade of Magus or Philosopher Illuminated.

But all this was unknown to the novice, whose confidence being won by the simulation of religion was enjoined to strict obedience. Amongst the questions put to him were the following:

- If you came to discover anything wrong or unjust to be done under the Order what line would you take?
- Will you and can you regard the good of the Order as your own good?
- Will you give to our Society the right of life and death?
- Do you bind yourself to absolute and unreserved obedience?
- And do you know the force of this undertaking?

By way of warning as to the consequences of betraying the Order a forcible illustration was included in the ceremony of initiation. Taking a naked sword from the table, the Initiator held the point against the heart of the novice with these words:

If you are only a traitor and perjurer learn that all our brothers are called upon to arm themselves against you. Do not hope to escape or to find a place of safety. Wherever you are, shame, remorse, and the rage of our brothers will pursue you and torment you to the innermost recesses of your entrails.

It will thus be seen that the Liberty vaunted by the leaders of the Illuminati had no existence, and that iron discipline was in reality the watchword of the Order.”<sup>169</sup>

A great point impressed upon the adepts – of which we shall see the importance later – was that they should not be known as Illuminati; this rule was particularly enforced in the case of those described as ‘enrollers....’

### **Women Were to be Used as Fools with Money.**

Women were also to be enlisted as Illuminati by being given ‘hints of emancipation.’ ‘Through women,’ wrote Weishaupt, ‘one may often work the best in the world; to insinuate ourselves with these and to win them over should be one of our cleverest studies. More or less they can all be led towards change by vanity, curiosity, sensuality, and inclination. From this can one draw much profit for the good cause. This sex has a large part of the world in its hands.’ The female adepts

---

<sup>169</sup> Ibid., p. 13-14.

were then to be divided into two classes, each with its own secret, the first to consist of virtuous women who would give an air of respectability to the Order, the second of ‘light women,’ ‘who would help to satisfy those brothers who have a penchant for pleasure.’ But the present utility of both classes would consist in providing funds for the society. Fools with money, whether men or women, were to be particularly welcomed. ‘These good people,’ wrote Spartacus to Ajax and Cato, ‘swell our numbers and fill our money-box; set yourselves to work; these gentlemen must be made to nibble at the bait.... But let us beware of telling them our secrets, this sort of people must always be made to believe that the grade they have reached is the last.’<sup>170</sup>

### **System of Universal Spying**

Espionage formed a large part of Weishaupt’s program. The adepts known as the ‘Insinuating Brothers’ were enjoined to assume the role of ‘observers’ and ‘reporters’; ‘every person shall be made a spy on another and on all around him’; ‘friends, relations, enemies, those who are indifferent – all without exception shall be the object of his inquiries; he shall attempt to discover their strong side and their weak, their passions, their prejudices, their connections, above all, their actions – in a word, the most detailed information about them.’ All this is to be entered on tablets that the Insinuant carries with him, and from which he shall draw up reports to be sent in twice a month to his Superiors, so that the Order may know which are the people in each town and village to whom it can look for support.<sup>171</sup>

### **Anti-Science and Civilization in General**

“Sciences are the complicated needs of a state contrary to nature, the inventions of vain and empty brains.”<sup>172</sup>

### **Sent Apostles**

From the first year of his [Weishaupt’s] Illuminism, in his atrocious impiety, aping the God of Christianity, he conceived in these terms the orders he would give to Massenhausen to propagate his new gospel: “Did not Jesus Christ send forth his Apostles to preach throughout the

---

<sup>170</sup> Ibid. p. 15-16

<sup>171</sup> Ibid., pp. 16-17.

<sup>172</sup> Barruel, *Memoirs to Serve for the History of Jacobinism*, Vol. IV, p. 9

universe? You who are my Peter, why would I allow you to be idle and quiet at home? Go then and preach.”<sup>173</sup>

### **Martinism Also Important**

In the book of Saint-Martin, *Des erreurs et de la vérité*, published in 1775, the formula ‘Liberty, Equality and Fraternity’ is referred to as *Ale ternaire sacré*.<sup>174</sup>

The Martinistes, frequently referred to in French contemporary records as the *Illuminés*, were in reality dreamers and fanatics and must not be confounded with the Order of the *Illuminati* of Bavaria that came into existence twenty-two years later.<sup>175</sup> It is by this ‘terrible and formidable sect’ that the gigantic plan of World Revolution was worked out under the leadership of the man whom Louis Blanc has truly described as ‘the profoundest conspirator that has ever existed.’<sup>176</sup>

### **Congress of Wilhelmsbod, 1782**

Illumism and Freemasonry united to pursue common end, claiming three million members.

“But it was not until the *Congrès de Wilhelmsbad* that the alliance between Illuminism and Freemasonry was finally sealed. This assembly, of which the importance to the subsequent history of the world has never been appreciated by historians, met for the first time on the 16th of July 1782, and included representatives of all the Secret Societies – Martinistes as well as Freemasons and *Illuminati* – which now numbered no less than three million members all over the world. Amongst these different orders the *Illuminati* of Bavaria alone had formulated a definite plan of campaign, and it was they who henceforward took the lead. What passed at this terrible Congress will never be known to the outside world, for even those men who had been drawn unwittingly into the movement, and now heard for the first time the real designs of the leaders, were under oath to reveal nothing. One such honest Freemason, the Comte de Virieu, a member of a Martiniste lodge at Lyons, returning from the *Congrès de Wilhelmsbad* could not conceal his alarm, and when questioned on the ‘tragic secrets’ he had

---

<sup>173</sup> Webster, p. 8.

<sup>174</sup> In 1775 St. Martin called Liberty, Equality, Fraternity the sacred ternary.

<sup>175</sup> Webster footnote: The Martinistes, whose tendencies were purely scientific, passed frequently for madmen and despised politics’ (Papus, President of the Supreme Council of the Martiniste Order (1895), *Martines de Pasqually*, p. 55).

<sup>176</sup> Weishaupt

brought back with him, replied: 'I will not confide them to you. I can only tell you that all this is very much more serious than you think. The conspiracy which is being woven is so well thought out that it will be, so to speak, impossible for the Monarchy and the Church to escape from it.' From this time onwards,... 'the Comte de Virieu could only speak of Freemasonry with horror.'"<sup>177</sup>

### **Elector of Bavaria Prohibited All Secret Societies, 1784**

Public opinion had now, however, become thoroughly roused on the subject of the society, and the Elector of Bavaria, informed of the danger to the State constituted by its adepts, who were said to have declared that 'the Illuminati must in time rule the world,' published an edict forbidding all secret societies.<sup>178</sup>

### **Illuminati Arrested, Tried, Documents Publicized,<sup>179</sup> 1785**

In April of the following year, 1785, four other Illuminati,.. disgusted by the tyranny of Weishaupt, were summoned before a Court of Inquiry to give an account of the doctrines and methods of the sect. The evidence of these men...left no further room for doubt as to the diabolical nature of Illuminism. 'All religion,' they declared, 'all love of country and loyalty to sovereigns, were to be annihilated, a favorite maxim of the Order being: *Tous les rois et tous les prêtres, Sont des fripons et des traîtres.*'<sup>180</sup>

Moreover, every effort was to be made to create discord not only between princes and their subjects but between ministers and their secretaries, and even between parents and children, whilst suicide was to be encouraged by inculcating in men's minds the idea that the act of killing oneself afforded a certain voluptuous pleasure. Espionage was to be extended even to the post by placing adepts in the post offices who possessed the art of opening letters and closing them again without fear of detection.' Robison, who studied all the evidence of the four professors, thus sums up the plan of Weishaupt as revealed by them:

The Order of the Illuminati adjoined Christianity and advocated sensual pleasures. 'In the lodges death was declared an eternal sleep;

---

<sup>177</sup> Webster, p. 18-19.

<sup>178</sup> Webster, pp. 24-25.

<sup>179</sup> Recipes for bombs, Description of the Goal, etc.

<sup>180</sup>"All kings and all priests, are rogues and traitors."

patriotism and loyalty were called narrow-minded prejudices and incompatible with universal benevolence'; further, 'they accounted all princes usurpers and tyrants, and all privileged orders as their abettors... they meant to abolish the laws which protected property accumulated by long-continued and successful industry; and to prevent for the future any such accumulation. They intended to establish universal liberty and equality, the imprescriptible rights of man...and as necessary preparations for all this they intended to root out all religion and ordinary morality, and even to break the bonds of domestic life, by destroying the veneration for marriage vows, and by taking the education of children out of the hands of the parents.'

### **Summary**

Reduced to a simple formula the aims of the Illuminati may be summarized in the following six points:

1. Abolition of Monarchy and all ordered Government.
2. Abolition of private property.
3. Abolition of inheritance.
4. Abolition of patriotism.
5. Abolition of the family (i.e., of marriage and all morality, and the institution of the communal education of children).
6. Abolition of all religion.

Now it will surely be admitted that the above forms a program hitherto unprecedented in the history of civilization. Communistic theories had been held by isolated thinkers or groups of thinkers since the days of Plato, but no one, as far as we know, had ever yet seriously proposed to destroy everything for which civilization stands. Moreover, when, as we shall see, the plan of Illuminism as codified by the above six points has continued up to the present day to form the exact program of the World Revolution, how can we doubt that the whole movement originated with the Illuminati or with secret influences at work behind them?<sup>181</sup>

It was on the 11th of October 1786 that the Bavarian authorities descended upon the house of Zwack and seized the documents which laid bare the methods of the conspirators. Here were found descriptions of a strong box for safe guarding papers which if forced open should blow up by means of an infernal machine; of a composition which

---

<sup>181</sup> Webster, pp. 21-23.



should blind or kill if squirted in the face; of a method for counterfeiting seals; recipes for a particularly deadly kind of ‘aqua toffana,’ for poisonous perfumes that would fill a bedroom with pestilential vapors, and for a tea to procure abortion. A eulogy of atheism entitled *Better than Horus* was also discovered, and a paper in the handwriting of Zwack describing the plan for enlisting women in the two classes mentioned above:

It will be of great service and procure much information and money and will suit charmingly the taste of many of our truest members who are lovers of the sex. It should consist of two classes, the virtuous and the freer-hearted.... They must not know of each other, and must be under the direction of men, but without knowing it... through good books, and the latter (class) through the indulging of their passions in concealment.<sup>182</sup>

...The fearful danger presented by the Illuminati now became apparent, and the Government of Bavaria, judging that the best manner of conveying a warning to the civilized world would be to allow the papers to speak for themselves, ordered them to be printed forthwith and circulated as widely as possible. A copy of this publication, entitled *Original Writings of the Order of the Illuminati*, was then forwarded to every Government of Europe, but, strange to say, attracted little attention, the truth being doubtless, as the Abbé Barruel points out, that the extravagance of the scheme therein propounded rendered it unbelievable, and the rulers of Europe, refusing to take Illuminism seriously, put it aside as a chimera.<sup>183</sup>

---

<sup>182</sup> Webster footnote: Nachtrag...Originalschriften,

<sup>183</sup> Section from Webster, pp. 21-24 added by FSRF.

## The Revolution

1. Calling of Sts. Gen because of financial difficulties - the pretext for Enlightenment ideas to work. The Revolution was radical from the beginning and had immense support from the spirit of the age. Wordsworth: "Bliss was it in that scene to be alive, but to be young was very heaven."<sup>184</sup>
2. Jacobins: took the lead from the beginning, the only real party. Agreed beforehand on policy in National Assembly. Well organized – 406 affiliated societies in the provinces with 500,000 members by 1793.<sup>185</sup> They take control, power from secret societies: Conceived not many years before the French Revolution, in the thoughts of a man whose total ambition seemed absorbed at Ingolstadt in the chalk-dust of schools, how is it that Illuminism, in less than twenty years, became that formidable Sect which under the name of Jacobins, counts today as its trophies so many altars fallen to pieces, so many Scepters broken or mangled; so many Constitutions overturned, so many Nations subjugated; so many Potentates fallen under its daggers or its poisons or its executioners, so many other Potentates humiliated beneath the yoke of a servitude called peace, or of a servitude even more dishonorable called Alliance?

Under this same name of Jacobins, swallowing up simultaneously all the secrets, all the conspiracies, all the sects of sworn infidels, of seditious Plotters, of disorganizing Plotters, how is it that Illuminism sets up such a dominion of fear that, holding the universe in dismay, it permits not a single King to say: tomorrow I will still be King; and not a single people: tomorrow I will still have my laws and my religion; not a single citizen: tomorrow both my fortune and my home will still be mine; tomorrow I will not awaken beneath the tree of Liberty on the one side, and the tree of death, the ravenous guillotine on the other?

Invisible authors, how it is that the secret adepts of modern-day Spartacus alone preside at all the crimes, at all the disasters of this plague of brigandage and of ferocity called Revolution? How do they still preside over all that the Sect plans, in order to consummate the desolation and dissolution of human societies?

---

<sup>184</sup> Wordsworth, Source for this?

<sup>185</sup> Barruel, IV, p. 1-2.

The Jacobins' orders were instantly obeyed. They drink each others' blood to the death of kings. Western fall of monarchy in 1792 destruction begins in earnest.<sup>186</sup>

I found the letter. It was composed in these terms: 'Your letter, my dear friend, has been read in presence of the whole Club. It was surprising to find so much philosophy in a village Curate. Never fear, my dear Curate; we are three hundred; we mark the heads, and they fall. As for that of which you speak, it is not time yet. Only keep your people ready; dispose your parishioners to execute the orders, and they shall be given to you in time. This letter was signed...Dietrich, secretary.

To the reflections which this letter suggests, I shall add only that the club from where it was sent, had changed the place of its meetings to go to the suburb of St. Honore, and that there it remained unknown to the Court; until the moment of one of these orgies, whose object would be to again apprise the King of the fate that awaited him. After one of these repasts celebrated in the name of fraternity, all the Brothers would prick their arms and drain their blood into their glass; all would drink of this blood, after having cried, 'Death to the Kings,' and this would be the last toast of their fraternal repast. This letter tells us also which men formed this legion of the Twelve Hundred, which Jean de Brie proposed to establish at the Convention, whose goal was to be spread into the Empires to assassinate all the Kings of the earth.

### **The Great Fear July 1789**

**Violence: the usual interpretation - incidental, passions aroused national defense, etc. But evidence points to deliberate use: when there are real grievances, they are exploited by clever politicians to promote the Revolution, Great role of agitators.**

To whatever agency we attribute it, however, the mechanism of the French Revolution distinguishes it from all previous revolutions. Hitherto the isolated revolutions that had taken place throughout the history of the world can be clearly recognized as spontaneous movements brought about by oppression or by a political faction enjoying some measure of popular support, and therefore endeavoring to satisfy the demands of the people. But in the French Revolution we see for the first time that plan in operation which has been carried on right up to the present moment – the systematic attempt to create grievances in order to exploit them..<sup>187</sup>

---

<sup>186</sup> Ibid., p. 337.

<sup>187</sup> Bourne p.100

The most remarkable instance of engineered agitation during the early stages of the Revolution was the extraordinary incident known to history as The Great Fear, when on the same day, July 22, 1789, and almost at the same hour, in towns and villages all over France, a panic was created by the announcement that brigands were approaching and therefore that all good citizens must take up arms. The messengers who brought the news post-haste on horseback in many cases exhibited placards headed Edict of the King, bearing the words The King orders all châteaux to be burnt down; he only wishes to keep his own! And the people, obedient to these commands, seized upon every weapon they could find and set themselves to the task of destruction. The object of the conspirators was thus achieved – the arming of the populace against law and order, a device which ever since 1789 has always formed the first item in the programme of the social revolution.<sup>188</sup>

### **Protest of Women Oct. 5, 1789**

Women also dressed as men, many forced to go along.

### **The Reign of Terror under Robespierre**

Ostensibly invoked by foreign invasion, seeking enemies of the people inside; this a means of governing (cf. Communism). But deeper; there was a little-publicized plan of depopulization. Report of the Committee of Public Safety, Aug. 8, 1795: Be peaceful; France has enough for 12 million men: all the rest (12 million) will have to be put to death. And then you will no longer lack for bread.<sup>189</sup>

“It was she [the sect] that extinguished even the affection of a brother for his brother; of the child for his father, when the adept Chénier, at the sight of a brother delivered over to his executioners, coolly replied, ‘If my Brother is not in the sentiment of the Revolution, let him be sacrificed’; when the adept Philip brought in triumph to the Jacobins the heads of his father and mother. This is the Sect always insatiable for blood, which by the mouth of Marat, demanded yet two hundred and seventy thousand heads, which before long could only be counted by millions. She [the Sect] knew it; all the secrets of its equality could only be accomplished in its greatest events by depopulating the world; and the sect which replied through Le Bo, to the Communes of Montauban, terrified for want of provisions, Never

---

<sup>188</sup> Webster, p. 32-33.

<sup>189</sup> Barruel, IV, p. 334-5.

fear; France has enough for twelve million men; it is necessary that the rest, that is, the other twelve million Frenchmen must be put to death, and then you will no longer lack bread.”<sup>190</sup>

Revolutionary Tribunal discussed reduction of population to 1/3 or 1/2; Committee of Public Safety calculated how many heads to have in each town and district. Drowned, guillotined, or shot - perhaps 300,000, of which only 3,000 nobles, most peasants and workers. At Nantes 500 children of poor people were killed in one butchery; 144 poor women thrown into river, etc.<sup>191</sup>

### **Killings and Destruction Especially Fierce**

Sept. 1792 massacres of priests and others in prisons - cannibalism and torture. The violence calculated - and Marx's idea. Sieyes replies:

You speak to us always about our means; eh, Monsieur, it is the end, it is the object and the goal that you must learn to see....

Saint-Just: I will walk willingly with my feet in blood and tears.

‘I will walk willingly with my feet in blood and tears,’ said Robespierre's coadjutor Saint-Just; and this, whether he admits it or not, must be the maxim of every revolutionary Socialist who believes that any methods are justifiable for the attainment of his end.<sup>192</sup>

### **Babeuf, Conspiracy of the Equals**

Disciple of Weischaup, followed Robespierre's Communist ideas. Said depopulization was the immense secret of the Terror (claimed it took 1 million lives). Formed his own masonic organization for bringing about equality. A Communist.<sup>193</sup>

Unfortunately the confusion of mind prevailing amongst the advocates of ‘Equality’ was so great that the meetings – which before long consisted of two thousand people – became ‘like a Tower of Babel.’ No one knew precisely what he wanted and no decisions could be reached; it was therefore decided to supplement these huge assemblies by small secret committees...and here the scheme of social revolution was elaborated. Starting from the premise that all property is theft, it was decided that the process known in revolutionary language as ‘expropriation’ must take place; that is to say, all property must be wrested from its present owners by force – the force of an armed mob.

---

<sup>190</sup> Report of the Committee of Public Safety, meeting of August 8, 1795

<sup>191</sup> Ibid., p. 335.

<sup>192</sup> Webster footnote: Ibid., p. 173.

<sup>193</sup> Ibid., p. 56.

But Babeuf, whilst advocating violence and tumult as the means to an end, in no way desired anarchy as a permanent condition; the State must be maintained, and not only maintained but made absolute, the sole dispenser of the necessities of life. 'In my system of Common Happiness,' he wrote, 'I desire that no individual property shall exist. The land is God's and its fruits belong to all men in general.' Another Babouviste, the Marquis d'Antonelle, formerly a member of the Revolutionary Tribunal, had expressed the matter in much the same words: 'The State of Communism is the only just, the only good one; without this state of things no peaceful and really happy societies can exist.'<sup>194</sup>

### **Finished His Manifesto of Equals - Apr. 1796**

Babeuf then decided that a 'Secret Directorate' must be formed, of which the workings bear a curious resemblance to those of the Illuminati. Thus Weishaupt had employed twelve leading adepts to direct operations throughout Germany, and had strictly enjoined his followers not to be known even to each other as Illuminati; so Babeuf now instituted twelve principal agents to work the different districts of Paris, and these men were not even to know the names of those who formed the central committee of four, but only to communicate with them through intermediaries partially initiated into the secrets of the conspiracy. Like Weishaupt also Babeuf adopted a domineering and arrogant tone towards his subordinates, and any whom he suspected of treachery were threatened, after the manner of the secret societies, with the direst vengeance.<sup>195</sup> 'Woe to those of whom we have cause to complain!' he wrote to one whose zeal he had begun to doubt; 'reflect that true conspirators can never relinquish those they have once decided to employ.'<sup>196</sup>

By April 1796 the plan of insurrection was complete, and the famous *Manifesto of the Equals* drawn up ready for publication.

Of France,' this proclamation announced, 'for fifteen centuries you have lived in slavery and consequently in unhappiness. For six years (i.e. during the course of the Revolution) you have hardly drawn breath, waiting for independence, for happiness, and equality. Equality! the first desire of Nature, the first need of Man and the principal bond of all legal association!

---

<sup>194</sup> Webster footnote: Fleury, Edouard, Babeuf et le socialisme en 1976, p. 111.

<sup>195</sup> Webster footnote: Fleury, Edouard, Babeuf et le socialisme en 1976, p. 111.

<sup>196</sup> Webster, p. 42.

Well! We intend henceforth to live and die equal as we were born; we wish for real equality or death, that is what we must have. And we will have this real equality, no matter at what price.

Woe to those who interpose themselves between it and us! . . . The roofs of our houses. We will consent to anything for that, to make a clean sweep so as to hold to that only. Perish if necessary all the arts provided that real equality is left to us!

The agrarian law and the division of lands were the momentary wish of a few soldiers without principle moved by instinct rather than by reason. We tend to something more sublime and equitable, the Common Happiness or the Community of Goods. No more private property in land, the land belongs to no one We claim, we wish for the communal enjoyment of the fruits of the earth: the fruits of the earth belong to everyone.

'We declare that we can no longer endure that the great majority of men should work and sweat in the service and for the good pleasure of an extreme minority. Long enough and too long have less than a million individuals disposed of what belongs to more than twenty millions of their fellowmen, of their equals. Let it cease at last, this great scandal in which our nephews will not be able to believe. Vanish at last revolting distinctions of rich and poor, of great and small, of masters and servants, of governors and governed. Let there be no other difference between men than that of age and sex. Since all have the same needs and the same faculties, let there be only one education, one kind of food. They content themselves with one sun and air for all; why should not the same portion and the same quality of food suffice for each of them?...

'People of France, we say to you: the holy enterprise that we are organizing has no other object but to put an end to civil dissensions and to public misery. Never has a more vast design been conceived and executed. From time to time a few men of genius, a few sages have spoken in a low and trembling voice. Not one of them has had the courage to tell the whole truth. The moment for great measures has arrived. The evil is at its height; it covers the face of the earth. Chaos under the name of politics has reigned for too many centuries.... The moment has come to found the Republic of the Equals, the great hostel open to all men.... Groaning families, come and seat yourselves at the common table set up by nature for all her children.... People of France,

open your eyes and heart to the plenitude of happiness; recognize and proclaim with us the Republic of the Equals.<sup>197</sup>

This document was destined, however, not to be displayed to the eyes of the public, for the Secret Committee finally decided that it would be inexpedient to admit the people into the whole plan of the conspiracy; particularly did they judge it inadvisable to publish the phrase which had been expressed in almost identical language by Weishaupt: ‘Perish all the arts, provided that real equality is left to us!’<sup>198</sup> The people of France were not to know that a return to barbarism was contemplated. Accordingly a second proclamation was framed under the title of *Analysis of the Doctrine of Babeuf* – a far less inspiring appeal than the former Manifesto, and mainly unintelligible to the working-classes, yet, as M. Fleury remarks, ‘the veritable Bible or Koran of the despotic system known as Communism.’<sup>199200</sup> For herein lies the crux of the matter. No one reading these two documents of the Babouvistes can fail to recognize the truth of certain of their strictures on society – the glaring disparity between poverty and riches, the uneven distribution of work and pleasure, the injustice of an industrial system whereby, owing largely at this period to the suppression of trade unions by the revolutionary leaders, employers could live in luxury by sweated labor – but the point is: how did Babeuf propose to redress these evils? Briefly, then, his system, founded on the doctrine ‘Community of goods and of labor,’ may be summarized as follows:

Everyone must be forced to work so many hours a day in return for equal remuneration; the man who showed himself more skillful or industrious than his fellows would be recompensed merely by ‘public gratitude.’ This compulsory labor was in fact not to be paid for in money but in kind, for, since the right to private property constituted the principal evil of existing society, the distinction of ‘mine’ and ‘thine’ must be abolished and no one should be allowed to possess anything of his own. Payment could therefore only be made in the products of labor, which were all to be collected in huge communal stores and doled out in equal rations to the workers. Inevitably commerce would be entirely done away with, and money was no longer

---

<sup>197</sup> Webster footnote: Buonarotti, Ph. *Conspiration pour l’égalité dite de Babeuf*, ii, 130-134.

<sup>198</sup> Webster footnote: Fleury, op. cit., p. 71.

<sup>199</sup> Webster footnote: Fleury, op. cit., p. 244.

<sup>200</sup> Webster footnote: This word was first coined by Thouret, a member of the National Assembly, in a debate on the goods of the clergy in 1790.



to be coined or admitted to the country; foreign trade must therefore be carried on by coin now in circulation, and when that was exhausted, by a system of barter.<sup>201</sup>

But people were not informed of this (à la Weischaup), told only that the goods of the enemies of the people would be given to the needy.<sup>202</sup>

But the people were not in the secret of the movement. Just as in the great outbreaks of the Revolution the mob of Paris has been driven blindly forward on false pretexts supplied by the agitators, so once again the people were to be made the instruments of their own ruin. The 'Secret Committee of Direction' well knew that Communism was a system that would never appeal to the people; they were careful, therefore, not to admit their dupes among the working-classes into the whole of their programme, and believing that it was only by an appeal to self-interest and covetousness they could secure a following, they skillfully played on the people's passions, promising them booty they had no intention of bestowing on them.<sup>203</sup> Thus in the *Insurrectional Act* now drawn up by the Committee it was announced that 'the goods of the emigrés, of the conspirators (i.e., the Royalists), and the enemies of the people were to be distributed to the defenders of the country and the needy';<sup>204</sup> they did not tell them that in reality these things were to belong to no one, but to become the property of the State administered by themselves.... The people then were not to be allowed to know the truth about the cause in which they were asked to shed their blood – and that they would be obliged to shed it in torrents no sane man could doubt.<sup>205</sup>

### **His Admiration for Robespierre**

...[W]hen it came to organizing the required insurrection Babeuf adopted a very different kind of language. In fact the former denouncer of Robespierre's 'system of depopulation' now asserted that not only Robespierre's aims but his methods were to be commended.

I confess to-day that I bear a grudge against myself for having formerly seen the revolutionary government and Robespierre and Saint-Just in such black colors. I think these men alone were worth all the

---

<sup>201</sup> Webster footnote: *Pieces saisies chez Babeuf*, ii. 52.

<sup>202</sup> Webster footnote: *Ibid.*, i. 197.

<sup>203</sup> *Ibid.*, i. 200.

<sup>204</sup> Webster footnote: Buonarotti, *op. cit.*, i. 87.

<sup>205</sup> Webster, pp. 62-3.

revolutionaries put together, and that their dictatorial government was devilishly well thought out.... I do not at all agree...that they committed great crimes and made many Republicans perish. Not so many, I think... The salvation of twenty-five millions of men must not be weighed against consideration for a few equivocal individuals. A regenerator must take a wide outlook. He must mow down everything that thwarts him, everything that obstructs his passage, everything that can impede his prompt arrival at the goal on which he has determined. Rascals or imbeciles, or presumptuous people or those eager for glory, it is all the same, tant pis pour eux [so much the pity for them] – what are they there for? Robespierre knew all that and it is partly what makes me admire him.<sup>206</sup>

But where Babeuf showed himself the intellectual inferior of Robespierre was in the way he proposed to overcome resistance to his plan of a Socialist State. Robespierre, as he well knew, had spent fourteen months ‘mowing down those that obstructed his passage,’ had kept the guillotine unremittingly at work in Paris and the provinces, yet even then had not succeeded in silencing objectors. But Babeuf hoped to accomplish his purpose in one day – that ‘great day of the people’ wherein all opposition should be instantly suppressed, the whole existing social order annihilated, and the Republic of Equality erected on its ruins. If, however, the process were to be brief it must necessarily be all the more violent, and it was thus with none of the calm precision of Robespierre marking down heads for destruction that Babeuf set about his task.<sup>207</sup>

## His Frenzy

When writing out his plans of insurrection, his secretary Pillé afterwards related at his trial, Babeuf would rush up and down the room with flaming eyes, mouthing and grimacing, hitting himself against the furniture, knocking over the chairs whilst uttering hoarse cries of ‘To arms! to arms! The insurrection! the insurrection is beginning!’ – it was an insurrection against the chairs, said Pillé drily.<sup>208</sup> Then Babeuf would fling himself upon his pen, plunge it into the ink, and write with fearful rapidity, whilst his whole body trembled and the perspiration poured from his brow. ‘It was no longer madness,’ added Pillé, ‘it was

---

<sup>206</sup> Webster footnote: Ibid., ii. 21.

<sup>207</sup> Webster, pp. 64-35.

<sup>208</sup> Webster footnote: Buonarotti, op cit., i. 194.

frenzy!<sup>209</sup> This frenzy, Babeuf explained, was necessary in order to work himself up to the required degree of eloquence, and in his appeals to insurrection it is difficult to see where his programme differed from the brigandage and violence he had deprecated....<sup>210</sup>

### **The Great Day of Revolution**

The following programme for the 'Great Day' was now drawn up by the Secret Directory: at a given moment the revolutionary army was to march on the Legislative Assembly, on the headquarters of the Army, and on the houses of the Ministers. The best-trained troops were to be sent to the arsenals and the munition factories, and also to the camps of Vincennes and Grenelle in the hope that the 8,000 men encamped there would join in the movement. Meanwhile orators were to hold forth to the soldiers, and women were to present them with refreshment and civic wreaths. In the event of their remaining proof against these seductions the streets were to be barricaded, and stones, bricks, boiling water, and vitriol thrown down on the heads of the troops.<sup>211</sup> All supplies for the capital were then to be seized and placed under the control of the leaders; at the same time the wealthier classes were to be driven from their houses, which were immediately to be converted into lodgings for the poor. The members of the Directory were then to be butchered, likewise all citizens who offered any resistance to the insurgents. The insurrection thus 'happily terminated,'<sup>212</sup> as Babeuf naively expressed it, the whole people were to be assembled in the Place de la Revolution and invited to co-operate in the choice of their representatives. 'The plan,' writes Buonarotti, 'was to talk to the people without reserve and without digressions, and to render the most impressive homage to its sovereignty.'<sup>213</sup> But lest the people perchance, blinded to its truest interests, might fail to recognize its saviours in the person of the conspirators,<sup>214</sup> the Babouvistes proposed to follow up their homage of the people's sovereignty by demanding that 'executive power should be exclusively confided to themselves',<sup>215</sup> for, as Buonarotti observed, 'at the beginning of the revolution it is necessary,

---

<sup>209</sup> Webster footnote: Ibid., i. 196

<sup>210</sup> Webster, p. 65

<sup>211</sup> Webster footnote: Fleury, Edouard, Babeuf et le socialisme en 1796.

<sup>212</sup> Webster footnote: Buonarotti, *Analyse de la doctrine de Babeuf*, op. cit., ii. 146.

<sup>213</sup> Webster footnote: Ibid., i. 213.

<sup>214</sup> Webster footnote: Ibid., ii. 145.

<sup>215</sup> Webster, p. 57-60. Webster footnote: Buonarotti, op. cit., 1. 238, 271, ii, 318.

even out of respect for the real sovereignty of the people, to occupy oneself less with the wishes of the nation than to place supreme authority in strongly revolutionary hands.<sup>216</sup> Once in these hands it would of course remain there, and the Babouvistes with all the civil and military forces at their back would be able to impose their system of State serfdom on the submissive people.<sup>217</sup>

## Violence

At a meeting of the committee, there was read aloud the finished plan of insurrection, to which further atrocious details had been added – every one attempting to exercise any authority was instantly to be put to death, the armorers were to be forced to give up their arms, the bakers their supplies of bread, and those who resisted hoisted to the nearest lantern; the same fate was reserved for all wine and spirit merchants who might refuse to provide the brandy needed to inflame the populace and drive them into violence. ‘All reflection on the part of the people must be avoided,’ ran the written directions to the leaders; ‘they must commit acts which will prevent them from going back.’<sup>218</sup>

Amongst the whole of this ferocious band, Rossignol, the former general of the revolutionary armies in La Vendee, showed himself the most bloodthirsty: ‘I will not have anything to do with your insurrection,’ he cried, ‘unless heads fall like hail...unless it inspires so great a terror that it makes the whole universe shudder...” – a discourse that met with unanimous applause.<sup>219</sup>

The 11th of May had been fixed for the great day of explosion, when not only Paris, but all the cities of France worked on by the agents of Babeuf were to rise and overthrow the whole structure of civilization.... [Meanwhile there was an informant] and the Government, warned of the impending attack, was ready to meet it. On the morning of the day appointed, a placard was found posted up on all the walls of Paris bearing these words: The Executive Directory to the Citizens of Paris<sup>220</sup>

Citizens, a frightful plot is to break out this night or tomorrow at the dawn of day. A band of thieves and murderers has formed the project

---

<sup>216</sup> Webster footnote: Buonarotti, op. cit. i. 97: It was impossible to inspire the people with energy without talking to them of their interests and their rights.

<sup>217</sup> Webster, pp. 67-68.

<sup>218</sup> Webster footnote: Ibid., i. 134.

<sup>219</sup> Webster footnote: Fleury, op. cit., pp. 193-195.

<sup>220</sup> Webster footnote: Ibid., p. 196.

of butchering the Legislative Assembly, all the members of the Government, the staff of the Army, and all constituted authorities in Paris. The Constitution of '93 is to be proclaimed. This proclamation is to be the signal for a general pillage of Paris, of houses as much as of stores and shops, and the massacre of a great number of citizens is to be carried out at the same time. But be reassured, good citizens; the Government is watching, it knows the leaders of the plot and their methods...; be calm, therefore, and carry on your ordinary business; the Government has taken infallible measures for outwitting their schemes, and for giving them up with their partisans to the vengeance of the law.<sup>221</sup>

Then, without further warning, the police burst into the house where Babeuf and Buonarotti were drawing up a rival placard calling the people to revolt. In the midst of their task the arm of the law surprised and seized them, and on the following morning forty-five other leaders of the conspiracy were arrested likewise and thrown into the Abbaye. Alas for the support they had hoped for from the populace! The revolutionary army on which they had counted, impressed as the people always are by a display of authority, went over to the police in support of law and order. With the removal of the agitators the whole populace came to their senses and realized the full horror of the plot into which they had been inveigled.<sup>222</sup>

Napoleon averted them and ended the last great attempt in French Revolution to realize the aim of Illumism.<sup>223</sup>

### **Revolutionaries Devoured Each Other**

Christ had no more Altar in France; the Kings had no more Throne; those who had destroyed the Altar and the Throne conspired against each other; the intruders, the atheists and the deists slaughtered the Catholics; the intruders, the atheists and the deists slaughtered one another. The Constitutionlists pursued the Royalists, the Republicans pursued the Constitutionlists; the democrats of the one and indivisible Republic, butchered the democrats of the federate Republic; the faction of the Mountain guillotined the faction of the Gironde. The faction of the Mountain divided into the faction of Hebert and of Marat, into the faction of Danton and of Chabot, into the faction of Cloots and of Chaumette, into the faction of Robespierre which devoured them all,

---

<sup>221</sup> Webster footnote: Fleury, op. cit., p. 216.

<sup>222</sup> Webster footnote: Buonarotti, op cit., ii, 252.

<sup>223</sup> Webster, pp. 70-71.

and which would be in its turn devoured by the faction of Tallien and of Freron. Brissot and Gensonné, Guadet, Fauchet, Rabaud, Barbaroux and thirty others were sentenced by Fouquier-Tinville as they had passed sentence on Louis XVI; Fouquier-Tinville was himself judged as he judged Brissot. Pethion and Buzot, wandering in the forests, perished consumed by hunger, devoured by beasts; Perrin died in chains, Condorcet poisoned himself in prison, Valage and Labat stabbed themselves, Marat was murdered by Charlotte Corday; Robespierre is no more; of them Syeyes still remains, because France must yet have its plagues. L'enfer, to establish the reign of his impiety, le Ciel to punish him for it, gave her [France] under the name of Directors her five tyrants or her Pentarques and her double Senate. Rewbel, Carnot, Barras, le Toureur, la Reveillère-Lepaux rob her of her weapons, drive out the Deputies of her equality and her liberty, batter her sections with cannon and mortars, squeeze her in his clutches and cause to hang upon her a yoke of iron. All tremble before them; they are frightened, envying one another, withdrawing from one another; only allowing new tyrants to arrive and join together; the deportations, the stupor, the terror and these Pentarques, at this moment those are the Gods who rule over France. The silence of the terror in her empire, where her vast prison, twenty million slaves all dumb with terror under the shaft, at the mere name of la Guiane, of Merlin, or of Rewbel; behold this people so often proclaimed equal and free and sovereign.<sup>224</sup>

### **France Ruined by Revolution**

...the condition of France at the end of the Terror...: 'France is demoralized. She is exhausted – this is the last trait of this country in ruins. There is no longer any public opinion, or rather this opinion is made up only of hatred. They hate the Directors (members of the Directory) and they hate the deputies; they hate the Terrorists and they hate the chouans (the Royalists of La Vendée); they hate the rich and they hate the anarchists; they hate the Revolution and they hate the counterrevolution.... But where hatred reaches paroxysm is in the case of the newly rich. What is the good of having destroyed Kings, nobles, and aristocrats, since deputies, farmers, and tradesmen take their place? What cries of hatred!... Of all the ruins found and increased by the Directory – ruins of parties, ruins of power, ruins of homes, ruins of

---

<sup>224</sup> Barruel, IV, pp. 338-9.

consciences, ruins of intellects – there is nothing more pitiable than this: the ruin of national character.’<sup>225</sup>

Eight years after the ending of the Terror, France had not yet recovered from its ravages. According to Redhead Yorke, even the usually accepted theory of agricultural prosperity is erroneous.<sup>226</sup>

Nothing can exceed the wretchedness of the implements of husbandry employed but the wretched appearance of the persons using them. Women at the plough, and young girls driving a team give but an indifferent idea of the progress of agriculture under the Republic. There are no farmhouses dispersed over the fields. The farmers reside together in remote villages, a circumstance calculated to retard the business of cultivation. The interiors of the houses are filthy, the farmyards in the utmost disorder, and the miserable condition of the cattle sufficiently bespeaks the poverty of their owner.’<sup>227</sup>

Everywhere beggars assailed the traveller for alms; in spite of the reduced population unemployment was rife, education was at a standstill, and owing to the destruction of the old nobility and clergy, and the fact that the new rich who occupied their estates were absentee landlords, there was no system of organized charity. Yorke is finally driven to declare:

The Revolution, which was brought about ostensibly for the benefit of the lower classes of society, has sunk them to a degree of degradation and misfortune to which they never were reduced under the ancient monarchy. They have been disinherited, stripped, and deprived of every resource for existence, except defeats of arms and the fleeting spoil of vanquishing nations.’<sup>228</sup>

In another passage Yorke asks the inevitable question that arises in the minds of all thinking contemporaries: ‘France still bleeds at every pore – she is a vast mourning family, clad in sackcloth. It is impossible at this time for a contemplative mind to be gay in France. At every footstep the merciless and sanguinary route of fanatical barbarians disgust the sight and sicken humanity – on all sides ruins obtrude themselves on the eye and compel the question, For what and for whom are all this havoc and desolation?’<sup>229</sup>

---

<sup>225</sup> Webster footnote: Madelin, M., *La Révolution*, pp. 443, 444.

<sup>226</sup> Webster footnote: Buonarotti, i. 114, 115.

<sup>227</sup> Webster footnote: [Yorke, Redhead], *France in 1802*, p. 28.

<sup>228</sup> Webster footnote: *France in 1802*, p. 33.

<sup>229</sup> Webster, pp. 49-50.

# Religion

## **De-Christianization: Nov. 1793**

...the church is desecrated. The same thing happened in this revolution. But in 1793 the new revolution to replace Catholicism became apparent. And this is one of the standard Lefebvre textbooks which is very objective and discusses this.

In 1793 the festival of August 10th,... the proclamation of the republic, was purely secular. The new religion endowed itself with symbols and a form of liturgy, honored the 'holy Mountain,' that is, the place, the party of the Mountain, and venerated its martyrs, Lepeletier, Marat, and Chaliar. On the 3 Brumaire, Year II (October, 24, 1793),... the Convention adopted the revolutionary calendar. The year one was to begin with August 10th, 1792, the republic. All the months are renamed in accordance with natural phenomena; that is, in the, I think December is called Pleuvoise which means rain, the rainy season, the rainy month and so forth. It attempted to de-christianize daily life by replacing references to religious ceremonies and the saints with names borrowed from tools and products familiar to the French. All feast days were abolished, and the seven day week was abolished also in favor of a ten day week; that is, there's no more Sunday. In 1793 November A report... concerning civic festivals constituted the prelude to the official organization of the new national religion....

At Nevers on September 22, 1793,... a festival was celebrated in the cathedral in honor of Brutus. In this province in October of 1793 all ceremonies, all religious ceremonies outside churches were abolished, and funeral processions and cemeteries were secularized. Other local provinces adopted similar policies. The district of Corbeil declared that the majority of persons under its jurisdiction no longer desired the Catholic form of worship. In November 6th, 1793, the bishop of Paris resigned under compulsion and said that he had been deceived. On the 17th of November he came with his vicars to the Convention to confirm his action officially. A Festival of Liberty was planned for 20 Brumaire, year II (November 10th, 1793). To celebrate the victory of philosophy over fanaticism, the Commune seized Notre Dame, Cathedral, A mountain was built in the choir, and an actress impersonated Liberty. Informed of this, the Convention proceeded to the cathedral – now called the Temple of Reason – and attended a second celebration of the civic festival. By the way, they burned in effigy the image of atheism, because the revolution is not atheist; it's



deistic. Some sections (provinces) followed this example. On the 30th (November 20) the citizens of the Unity section... adorned with priestly symbols, paraded before the Convention, singing and dancing. And on November 23rd 1793 the churches were closed.<sup>230</sup>

### **Temple of Reason**

We have some sources which show and give insight into the spirit of these celebrations of Reason. For example, in the city of Chalons-on-the-Marne, there's the following description of the inauguration of a Temple of Reason: The festival was announced in the whole Commune the evening before. For this purpose retreat was sounded by all the drummers and by the trumpeters of the troops in barracks at Chalons and all parts of town. The next day at daybreak it was again announced by general quarters which was likewise sounded in all parts. The former church of Notre Dame was for lack of time and means cleaned and prepared only provisionally for its new use, and in its former sanctuary there was erected a pedestal supporting the symbolic statue of Reason. It is of simple and free design, this is an eyewitness account, It is of simple and free design, decorated only by an inset bearing this inscription: 'Do unto others as you would have them do unto you.' It was flanked by two columns surrounded by two antique bronze perfume boxes which emitted incense smoke during the whole ceremony. In front at the foot of three steps was placed an altar of antique form on which were to be placed the emblems of the various groups composing the procession would put there. On the four pillars of the corners of the sanctuary were four projecting brackets to receive the bust of Brutus, and he's the enemy of tyranny, the father of the republics and the model of republicans, of Marat the faithful friend of the people, who was a vicious killer, of Lepelletier, who died for the republic, and the immortal Châlier. At precisely nine o'clock in the morning the general assemblage formed on the gravel promenade, otherwise called the Promenade of Liberty. The military detachments and other groups destined to form the procession had their places indicated there. Commissioners from the society arranged them in order. A detachment of cavalry, national constabulary and Hussars mingled together to strengthen the bonds of fraternity, leading the march; and on their pendant there were these words, 'Reason guides us and enlightens

---

<sup>230</sup> The French Revolution from 1793 to 1799, Georges Lefebvre, Vol. 2, Columbia University Press, 1964, New York, pp. 77-8. [Fr. Seraphim is paraphrasing parts of this.]

us.' It was followed by the company of canoneers of Chalons preceded by a banner with this inscription, 'Death to the Tyrants.' This company was followed by a cart loaded with broken chains on which were six prisoners of war and a few wounded being cared for by a surgeon. This cart carried two banners front and back with these two inscriptions, 'Humanity is a Republican Virtue' and 'They were very mistaken in fighting for tyrants,' that is, these prisoners of war. This cart was accompanied by two detachments of national guardsmen and regular troops fully armed. Other common people carried banners with the words, 'Let us be united like it,' like the tri-color flag, nothing can conquer us.' Forty women citizens dressed in white and decorated with tri-color ribbons carried a large tri-color ribbon tied to each head. A liberty bonnet crowned this banner and young national guardsmen accompanied them carrying various pennants on which were written various mottos. In its train groups of children of both sexes carried baskets of fruit and vases of flowers accompanying a cart drawn by two white horses. In the cart was a young woman nursing an infant, beside her a group of children of different ages. It was preceded by a banner with this inscription, 'They are the hope of the fatherland.' From the cart flew a tri-color streamer with this inscription, 'The virtuous mother will produce defenders for the fatherland.' This van was followed by a chariot of antique type decorated with oak branches and bearing a sexagenarian couple with a streamer on which was written these words, 'Respect old age.' Again there was a group of national guardsmen united arm-in-arm singing hymns to liberty and bearing two banners bearing these inscriptions, 'Our unity is our strength' and 'We will exterminate the last of the despots.' Next marched a group of women with tri-color ribbons bearing a standard with this inscription, 'Austere morals will strengthen the republic.' All who composed this group were dressed in white, as were the drivers of the cart, and all were bedecked with tri-color ribbons. Then followed the surveillance committees, that is, the GPU, grouped one after another. In front were four banners each bearing the name of a section and an emblem depicting a finger on the lips to indicate secrecy and another banner with this inscription, 'Our institution purges society of a multitude of suspicious people.' The republic section went first; it accompanied a chariot pulled by two white horses and led by two men on foot dressed in Roman style. In it was a woman dressed in the same way representing the Republic. On the front of this chariot appeared a tri-color ensign bearing these words, 'Government of the wise.' Next marched the Equality section

accompanying a plough pulled by two oxen and guided by a cultivator in work clothes. A couple seated on it carried a standard on which were written on one side, 'Honor the plough' and on the other side, 'Respect conjugal love.' The principal inspector and all the employees in the military storehouses formed a group which followed the plough. Two standards were carried by this group. The first had the words, 'Military Supplies' and the second, 'Our activity produces abundance in our armies.' Then marched the Fraternity section, consoling groups of convalescents whose physicians were close by. In the middle of this section was an open cart from the Montagne Hospital containing men wounded in the defense of the fatherland, who appeared to have been cared for and bled by health officers who were binding their wounds. They were partly covered by their bloody bandages. The front of this cart carried a banner with this inscription, 'Our blood will never cease to flow for the safety of the fatherland.' After the committees followed four women citizens dressed in white and adorned with tri-color belts decorated with the attributes of the four seasons. After the four seasons came the people's representative in the midst of the constituted authorities, civil and judicial, wearing their distinctive insignia. Each citizen held in his hand a wheat stalk and on the banner which preceded the constituted authorities was this inscription, 'From the enforcement of the laws come prosperity and abundance.' These were followed by various staff officers of the national guard who were preceded by a banner saying, 'Destroy the tyrants or die.' Next the illegitimate children of the fatherland were led by a woman bearing a banner, 'The fatherland adopts us, we are eager to serve it.' Finally the old people represented by veterans without weapons, preceded by two banners on which were the inscriptions, 'The dawn of reason and liberty embellishes the end of our life,' and 'The French Republic honors loyalty, courage, old age, filial piety, misfortune. It places its constitution under the safe keeping of all the virtues.'

Finally there was a pause for singing patriotic songs. On the front steps of the city hall there had been built and painted a mountain, at the top of which was placed a Hercules defending a facies fourteen feet in height. A tri-color flag flew above it on which was written in Large letters, 'To the Mountain from the grateful French.' That is, like saying To the Bolsheviks.

At the foot of the mountain pure water flowed from a spring failing by various cascades. Twelve men dressed as mountaineers armed with pikes and with civic crowns on their heads were hidden in caverns in

the mountain. As the procession arrived singing the last couplet of the *Marseillaise*, the mountaineers quietly came out of their caverns without fully revealing themselves, and when 'To Arms Citizens' was sung, they ran to get axes to defend their retreat, posted themselves on different sides of the mountain, but seeing the cart with feudalism and fanaticism drawn by donkeys with miters on their heads, they ran towards them, axe in hand, grabbed the miters, copes and chasubles which adorned them as well as the Pope and his acolytes and chained them to the chariot of liberty. During this the band played a military charge.

The mountaineers, seeing other carts arrive and feigning to believe that they were only the train following the one containing Fanaticism, advanced in their column to meet the first one they saw which was the chariot of Liberty. They lowered their axes as a sign of respect and the band played a march. Then a litter appeared supporting a chair decorated with garlands. The goddess descended from her cart, seated herself on the chair and was borne by eight mountaineers to the foot of the mountain. She was followed by two nymphs, one of whom was carrying a tri-color flag and the other the Declaration of the Rights of Man. They marched upon the trash remnants of nobility and superstition which were then burned to the great contentment of all the citizens and climbing the mountain with people's representative, Pleger, then present at this festival, and mountaineers who represented his colleagues while the band played, 'Where can one better be than in the bosom of one's family' reached the summit. The goddess was crowned by the graces. Then a tri-color flag was displayed and they sang, 'Our country's three colors.' And still on the mountain they sang, 'When from the mountain peaks the sun.' The procession descended, the goddess stopped at the spring, a vase was presented to her by the president of the Commune. She drank some water from the mountain, then presented some to the people's representative, to all the constituted authorities, citizens and officers of the different corps present, who all drank to the health of the republic, one and indivisible and of the Mountain, the party.

The goddess again on her chair was borne to her chariot by eight mountaineers. Four others placed themselves at her side, axes raised to drive away the profane. The others took their places with the administrative bodies to indicate that public dignitaries are consistent with virtue alone. From there they went to the Temple of Reason. All the musicians gathered behind the altar with the singers. At the moment

when the procession entered the temple, the organ blared an overture. And the société populaire, the constituted authorities, the surveillance committees, GPU, and the groups described above took places in rows facing the altar of Reason in a certain distance from it. The military band played hymns to Reason, to Liberty, to hatred for tyrants, and to sacred love for the fatherland, after which the president of the société populaire delivered the inaugural speech. The Commune president and others delivered speeches. After their harangues various patriotic hymns were repeated and accompanied by the military band, after which in front of the temple entrance, the trumpeteers announced that the inauguration festival and the ceremony were concluded.

In the evening fireworks were displayed on the mountain, a bouquet marked the gratitude of all the French to the mountaineers present, who were solemnly recognized to be the saviors of the republic. Then a ball was held and so brotherhood was twice celebrated in a single day. Each citizen taking part in this fine day evidenced this civic spirit. All took the oath to live in freedom or to die.<sup>231</sup>

But this is very much in harmony with, of course, Communist celebrations of various kinds – very rational, very ordered, very artificial. The triumph of the abstract mind which is the sign of reason is the highest reality.

One asks how this all fits together, and we'll see later on how it all fits together because we want to examine both the reaction against this in the nineteenth century and the further development of the revolutionary ideas.

Already we can gain one idea which is very central to all of this. And that is that this whole Revolution, with these various strands, is very much like a secular form of something we already saw in the Renaissance period, that is, the chiliastic sects. Now, there's a goddess of Reason, the same idea there's a new order of the ages; history is now coming to an end. So far we see no talk of the Third Age of the Holy Spirit, because it's all couched in rationalistic terms; but this is very much an outbreak of that same spirit. Now it's much broader and takes over the whole society. We'll see later on how deep this chiliastic strain goes into modern man.

---

<sup>231</sup> Dawson . 121-122

# Napoleon

And now we come to the last aspect of the Revolution, which is that of Napoleon. With Napoleon the Revolution actually comes to an end, that is, this bloody part. The whole of Europe is convulsed; half of it is welcoming the Revolution until it sees all the blood and begins to get a little upset; but still many people are welcoming revolution, and another half of it is horrified by it; and they begin to fight. And the French armies go out beyond the borders carrying the Revolution abroad. They saw how the.... Goethe, Beethoven and others think it's a wonderful thing bringing liberty and equality to mankind.

And then comes one very talented and clever man, Napoleon, who takes over the whole thing and becomes over fifteen years the dictator for France. In many ways he offers a compromise, that is, he restores the church, in fact gives the church.... He has a concordat with the Pope, which gives the Pope much more power over the French Church than he had before. He restores the churches; he even restores a new kind of nobility, and establishes an empire, a new monarchy, but preserving the advantages of the Revolution. That is, he has a new law code, he dissolves the whole idea that there are different castes in society. All are supposed to be equal at least theoretically before the law. And we'll look at few aspects of his life, which are not too often talked about, which were....

There's a book by [Dimitri] Merezhkovsky, a Russian, crazy Russian, who however was very much attuned to Napoleon's mystical ideas, so he quotes from many of his letters. To begin with, he has a frontispiece the motto for the whole book, a quote from Pushkin, who calls Napoleon The Fateful Executor of a Command Unknown. That is, the idea that he is representing something he knows not what. He himself is very aware of being on the crest of some movement in history, and as long as that movement supports him, he can he go forward and conquer the world; and when it departs, he feels he loses everything. This Merezhkovsky calls Napoleon the titan who bridled the chaos – the Revolution. He took over and gave it order.<sup>232</sup>

There's a Catholic thinker from the nineteenth century, Leon Bloy, who talks about Napoleon. He says, Napoleon cannot be explained; he is the most inscrutable of men, because he is primarily and above all the prototype of Him Who must come and Who, perhaps, is not far

---

<sup>232</sup> Napoleon the Man by Dmitri Merezhkovsky, trans. Catherine Zvegintzov, E.P. Dutton & Co., Inc., 1928, p. 6.

distant; he is the prototype and forerunner, closely akin to us. Who among us, Frenchmen or even foreigners, living at the end of the nineteenth century but has felt the illimitable sadness of the consummation of this incomparable Epic? Who possessed with but an atom of a soul but was not overwhelmed by the thought of the verily too sudden downfall of the great Empire and its Leader? Who was not oppressed by the remembrance that but yesterday, so it seemed, men were on the highest pinnacle possible to humanity, because of the mere presence of this Beloved, Miraculous and Terrible Being, the like of whom had never before been seen in the world; and could, like the first human beings in paradise deem themselves lords of all God's creation, and now immediately after must again be cast back into the age-long mud of the Bourbons dynasty, because after Napoleon the monarchy was restored.<sup>233</sup>

He [Napoleon] himself speaks of himself as someone who is very much one of the people, even though he was himself from some kind of little nobility. He says popular fibre responds to mine; I am come from the ranks of the people, and my voice has influence over them....

Great was my material power, he said, But my spiritual power was infinitely greater; it bordered on magic!<sup>234</sup>

When the people died for Napoleon they died for someone whom, as Victor Hugo writes, Understanding that they were going to die..., they saluted their god who was standing in the midst of the tempest, that is, Napoleon as a deity.<sup>235</sup>

On his return to Paris from Elba,... that is, when he was first banished to Elba off the coast of France and then came back for a brief period before Waterloo, he came into the Palace of the Tuileries in Paris and, 'Those who carried him were frantic, beside themselves with joy, and thousands of others deemed themselves happy to be able to kiss or even touch the hem of his garments.' 'Me thought I was present at Christ's resurrection,' says one witness.<sup>236</sup>

When I was a child, writes this same Leon Bloy, AI knew old veterans who could not distinguish him (Napoleon) from the Son of God. Napoleon himself writes in his testament which he left, I die in the Roman apostolical religion in the bosom of which I was born. And in fact he lived, he was a member of the Roman Catholic Church, but in

---

<sup>233</sup> Bley, Leon, quoted in Merezhkovsky, op. cit. p. 15-16.

<sup>234</sup> Napoleon quoted in Merezhkovsky, p. 20-21.

<sup>235</sup> Hugo, Victor, quoted in Merezhkovsky, p. 25.

<sup>236</sup> Merezhkovsky, p. 29.

ideas, totally foreign to it. And he said, in fact, I prefer Islam. At least it is not as absurd as our religion.

‘Napoleon is a daimonic being,’ says Goethe using the word *daimon* in its antique pagan sense, neither god nor devil but someone betwixt the two.<sup>237</sup>

There was an Apocalyptic strain which runs throughout the whole Napoleonic mystery. It originated earlier still with the Revolution, when at times it reached such a pitch that it is almost akin to the early Christian eschatology, a premonition of the world’s approaching end. This, of course, is very accurate because this is a chiliastic movement. The end of all things is at hand; there will be a new heaven and new earth.’

The ancient dream of paradise lost, of God’s kingdom on earth as in heaven, together with a new vision of a human kingdom of Liberty, Equality and Fraternity drew men towards Napoleon.... Napoleon is the soul of the Revolution.... ‘I am the French Revolution,’<sup>238</sup> says he, as he begins the Empire; and at end he says, ‘The Empire is the Revolution.’<sup>239</sup>

‘He was a bad man, an evil man!’<sup>240</sup> – he says of Rousseau standing over his grave. ‘Without him there would have been no French Revolution.... It is true that I, too, would not have existed.... Perhaps that would have been better for the happiness of France. Your Rousseau is a madman; it is he who has brought me to this.’ ‘Time will show whether it would not have been better for the peace of the world if neither Rousseau nor I had lived. Still he was very much the spokesman of the Revolution.’<sup>241</sup>

He says of himself, ‘I closed up the chasm of anarchy. I put an end to Chaos. I cleansed the Revolution....’<sup>242</sup>

In spite of all its atrocities, the Revolution was the true cause of our moral regeneration. Thus the most foul-smelling manure produces the most noble vegetation. Men may restrain or temporarily suppress this progress but are powerless to crush it.<sup>243</sup> ‘Nothing can destroy or efface the great principles of the Revolution. Its sublime truths will

---

<sup>237</sup> Quoted in Merezhkovsky, p. 30.

<sup>238</sup> Napoleon quoted in Merezhkovsky, p. 30.

<sup>239</sup> Ibid., p. 31.

<sup>240</sup> Merezhkovsky, p. 32.

<sup>241</sup> Ibid., p. 33.

<sup>242</sup> Ibid., p. 35

<sup>243</sup> Ibid., p. 36.



endure forever in the light of the wonderful deeds we have done, in the halo of glory with which we surrounded them, already they are immortal!... They live in Great Britain, shed their light in America; have become the heritage of the French nation. They are the torch which will illuminate the world.... They will become the religion of all nations and, say what you will, this new epoch will be associated with my name, because I kindled the torch and shed a light on its beginnings and now through persecution, I will be forever acclaimed as its Messiah. Friends and foes alike will call me the first soldier of the Revolution, its champion leader. When I am no more I shall remain for all nations the beacon star of their rights, and my name will be their battle cry, the slogan of their hopes.<sup>244</sup>

As to the dichotomy between liberty and equality which, as anyone knows, exclude each other, he says, 'Better abolish liberty than equality. It is the spirit of the times, and I wish to be a son of my times!'<sup>245</sup> 'Liberty is the need of the few elect.... It can be constrained with impunity, but equality is pleasing to the majority.'<sup>246</sup>

This Merezhkovsky quite rightly notes that the Revolution seceded from Christianity in everything, save in the idea of universality. Dostoyevsky writes, As a matter of fact the French Revolution was nothing more than the last variation and reincarnation of the same ancient Roman formula of universal unity, which by the way we discovered earlier is one of the main themes of modern thought.<sup>247</sup>

Napoleon says it himself, "My ambition? It was of the highest and noblest kind that ever perhaps existed – that of establishing and consecrating the Empire of reason and the full exercise and enjoyment of all human faculties."<sup>248</sup>

And he wanted to march on Asia. Before he became emperor, he was in Egypt and came back to take over France. For him Europe was but the route to Asia. He said, Your Europe is a molehill! Only in the East have there been great empires and mighty upheavals; in the East, where dwell six hundred million people.<sup>249</sup>

"The lure of the East," says this Merezhkovsky, "grips him all his life. In Egypt before the Syrian campaign, young General Bonaparte,

---

<sup>244</sup> Ibid., p. 39.

<sup>245</sup> Ibid., pp. 40-41.

<sup>246</sup> Ibid., pp. 42-43.

<sup>247</sup> Dostoyevsky quoted in Merezhkovsky, p. 51.

<sup>248</sup> Napoleon quoted in Merezhkovsky, p. 53.

<sup>249</sup> Ibid., p. 61.

poring for hours on the ground over huge outspread maps, dreams of a march to India across Mesopotamia following the route of Alexander the Great. He says, With overwhelming forces, I shall enter Constantinople, overthrow the Sultan, and found the new and great empire of the Orient. This will bring me immortal fame.”<sup>250</sup>

Now we see about how he surrounds himself with a mysticism. At St. Helena when he’s in final exile, he says, I always realized the necessity of mystery.... I always realized that my ends could best be served by surrounding myself with a halo of mystery which has such a strong fascination for the multitude. It fires the imagination, paves the way to those brilliant and dramatic effects which give one such power over men. This was the cause of my unfortunate march to Moscow. Had I been more deliberate I might have averted every evil, but I could not delay it. It was necessary that my movement and success should seem, as it were - supernatural.

And about religion he says, I created a new religion. Already I pictured myself on the road to Asia, riding on an elephant with a turban on my head and carrying a new Alcoran written by myself, a new sacred book.<sup>251</sup>

Napoleon realized that, as he said, As soon as a man becomes king, he is a separate being from his fellow-men. I always admired Alexander’s (the Great) sound political instinct which prompted him to proclaim his divine origin. Had I returned from Moscow, he says, As a conqueror I should have had the world at my feet, all nations would have admired and blessed me. I might have withdrawn myself mysteriously from the world, and popular credulity would have revived the fable of Romulus; it would have said that I had been carried up to heaven to take my place among the gods!’...

He realized that our life and time were not appropriate for calling himself God. He says, Now were I to declare myself the son of the Father Almighty and order a thanksgiving service on the occasion, every fish-wife in Paris would jeer at me to my face. No, the people are too civilized nowadays. There is nothing great left for me to do!

He used the Catholic faith, as he himself says, Would you like me to invent some new and unknown religion according to my fantasy? No, I hold a different view on the matter. I need the old Catholic faith; it alone retains its grip on all hearts, and alone can turn the hearts of the people towards me and remove all obstacles from my path.

---

<sup>250</sup> Merezhkovsky, p. 61.

<sup>251</sup> Napoleon quoted in Merezhkovsky, p. 62.

But on St. Helena he notes that he had aims beyond conquering the world. He says, I should have governed the religious with the same facility as the political world. I intended to exalt the Pope beyond measure, to surround him with grandeur and honors. I should have succeeded in suppressing all his anxiety for the loss of his temporal power. I should have made an idol of him; he would have remained near my person. Paris would have become the capitol of Christendom; and I should have governed the religious as well as the political world.

And so we see some of these mystical ideas of Napoleon and other important things. We have in him the first time in [the] modern age a world conqueror, someone who consciously wanted to conquer the world and even perhaps set himself up as a god. He saw himself as the successor of the Roman Empire, after he defeated the Russians at Austerlitz in 1807 and the Germans in 1806 – in fact, the Germans were so afraid that he would take the crown of the Holy Roman Empire that the Emperor of Austria abolished the Holy Roman Empire in 1806. Napoleon announced in 1807 after defeating the Russians that I am now the Roman emperor because I have defeated the first Rome, the Holy Roman Empire, and the third Rome, which is Moscow, and I am now the heir of both.

And a third aspect is his attitude towards the Jews. The age of revolution was preceded immediately by much agitation in favor of the Jews, especially on the part of very enlightened Jewish philosophers like Moses Mendelssohn and the Liberal radical Jews who wanted to abolish the separate ghettos and so forth. In fact the Revolution gave a great deal of so-called freedom to the Jews, in every place the Revolution is usually

accompanied by emancipation of the Jews. That, we'll go back to that later on, that aspect.<sup>252</sup>

The most interesting thing about Napoleon and the Jews is that after he had proclaimed himself Emperor, he called from all over the world a meeting of the Sanhedrin, which was the Jewish high court which condemned Christ to death and had not existed since the time of the fall of Jerusalem after the death of Christ. He called back this organization into existence for one purpose: so that the Jewish people would proclaim him to be emperor. There's even an illustration of him at the Sanhedrin meeting in order to proclaim him Emperor; it is in a book I lost.<sup>253</sup>

---

<sup>252</sup> Ibid., pp. 64-5.

<sup>253</sup> Ibid., p. 65.

One asks the question how these – certainly there's many enlightened and modern ideas here; he's obviously a child of the Enlightenment – wonders how this whole idea of an empire, of a monarchy, a restored monarchy, fits in with the ideals of the Revolution which is a democracy, and a state of equality. How does it fit? And how could he be recognized as the carrier of the revolutionary ideal? In fact wherever he went his armies were tremendously enthusiastic because they felt they had an ideology; they were carrying the message of truth to other peoples. Obviously, it's bound up with this chiliastic revolutionary ideal.

For now we won't say much more about it. But we find later on <sup>254</sup>other examples of this same phenomenon occurring again. But there are different strands of the Revolution; and the strand which Napoleon most evoked was this, which we've talked about before, the ideal of universal monarchy, which makes him one of the forerunners of Antichrist. The very thought that he could be proclaimed a god after conquering the world, that he would be conqueror of the world, one world ruler, that he is the Roman Emperor, and that the Jews proclaim him as the emperor, that is, almost messiah, shows that he has very definitely more than anyone before him in modern times is a forerunner of Antichrist. And we will see later there is one other person so far in modern history who had a similar function. In fact almost all these things have the same ideas, and that's Hitler.<sup>255</sup>

And this whole revolution beginning with the proclamation of the rights of man, and equality through the bloody massacres and deliberate depopulation, proclamation of Communism, the coming to power of one ruler who wanted to be ruler of the world. All of this is a rehearsal for a future kingdom of this world.<sup>256</sup>

And once Napoleon was removed and the monarchy was restored – we'll see that it was not a real restoration – these revolutionary ideas begin to be much more powerful; and the whole of the European intellectual class now becomes filled with these ideas. They change a few ideas but the basic ideal remains the same. There are some thinkers who go a little deeper into the question; some are more superficial. We will examine the views of the various ones and also the revolutionary outbreaks which they inspired. But to understand the Revolution we have to see it not as something which is complete in itself but as

---

<sup>254</sup> Ibid., pp. 67-68.

<sup>255</sup> Ibid., p. 68.

<sup>256</sup> Ibid., p. 70.

something which is an attempt of breaking through of the new forces, the new chiliastic forces. Later on these forces are able to take over not just most of Europe, but now most of the world, because meanwhile this process of apostasy, of the Mystery of Iniquity has gone much deeper and has entered into the lives of now everybody in the world.<sup>257</sup>

---

<sup>257</sup> Ibid., p. 72.

# Lecture 7

## The Revolution in the Nineteenth Century

We will begin this lecture with a quote from Metropolitan Anastassy, from his memoirs, which is called, well, it's just a collection of his memoirs on various topics. We will begin this way because he was a profound churchman in the full tradition of Orthodoxy, in whom, as in other great churchmen, great hierarchs, the spirit of the Church is, as it were, incarnated; that is, they are the ones to whom we look for mature wisdom, not only on narrow Church questions, but on this whole question of the Revolution for example. He comes from a Russia which had a particular, special relation to the Revolution, as we'll see the next lecture. And what he says has particular weight because it comes from outside, as it were, the main place where the Revolution began. It comes from someone who was very deep, both in thought and feeling. And he has a very interesting observation to make about the French Revolution.

This part is called *From Conversation with My Own Heart*.<sup>258</sup> He says, "In the French Revolution, as in a mirror, the light-minded character of this people was reflected. Its striving for posing, for beautiful phrases and gestures inspired by vainglory. All the heroes and the ordinary activists in this Revolution, even the most moderate and serious of them, the Gerondists, remind one of actors who stand before the face of a numerous audience and think only about what their contemporaries and their descendants will think of them. They gave themselves over to orgies on the eve of being beheaded so as to show by this their faked manliness of spirit. Many of them even strove to have themselves painted in the carts taking them to the guillotine which was for them the last "scene" in this world. None of them thought about their responsibility before God, before history or before their own conscience in this fatal moment for the country."

This is a very profound judgment. And we'll see that it is even more true of the nineteenth century which is filled with these revolutionary

---

<sup>258</sup> Metropolitan Anastassy, Source for this?

agents who are so posed and so fake and you can look around you today and see the same thing. Everybody comes up with a new plan for society; everybody's dreaming about who they are going to bomb, how they are going to make a name for themselves, how they are going to bring about the final revolution; and they're all extremely shallow and posing. And they have no basis, no idea of responsibility before God, no idea that they are going to be called to account for their life – nothing but this senseless fever they have to spread the revolution. And they don't even know what it's all about. They're obviously just puppets in a play which is being played. They don't know who is the author or where it's going. And when they're finally shot down themselves, they just become, as even the Communists say, "manure" for the revolution, the future happiness of mankind.

But we now will follow the example of such as Metropolitan Anastassy who thought very deeply on the question of the Revolution, and try to get behind the ideas and the thoughts that are going on among people. And see if we can understand why these things happened, what the end of them is. We will see especially in the nineteenth century, an age of egotists which probably has never been equaled before. These posers and egotists. Everyone comes up with a new theory: it's been revealed to him, it's the latest thing and the most fantastic idea. There was a great feeling of freedom. You know, remember that Wordsworth talked about it being alive in the dawn of the French Revolution.<sup>259</sup> Everybody was so overjoyed; it's a new age that's coming. And this same feeling persists throughout this early part of the nineteenth century when everybody comes up with a new social system. And they come up with the most fantastic schemes. If you go back now and read, you can see this is a golden age for crackpots. They come up with ideas of theocracy. There was a fantastic thinker, Poplardolevie, who reconstructed the ancient Hebrew language and translated Genesis with a metaphysical interpretation of it. And then he came up with an idea of a great theocracy.

And, by the way, this very same spirit is reflected in Greece where it came a little bit later in the crackpot, Makrakis, at the end of the century, who thought he was first one to prove the existence of the Holy Trinity by reason and so forth – the same idea, some kind of spirit of overwhelming pride, at the same time extremely shallow. And this, of course, is totally foreign to Orthodoxy. And the reason it could come was because Christianity was lost.

---

<sup>259</sup> See footnote Lecture 6.

The period we come to now, this period – actually it's contemporaneous with the Revolution itself. In fact, it begins just before the Revolution and carries on after the Revolution. It's the period of the late eighteenth and early nineteenth century. Here we have many conflicting revolutionary ideas. We'll examine a few of them in a minute. And one wonders how are we to tell which are the important ideas. And the key to that is looking at around us in the world today, because the revolution is the historical process which has produced the world of today. And we can see the key ideas by examining chiefly the one form of the revolution which is dominant today, that is, Communism, and even threatens to swallow up the whole world, and also by examining our own philosophical, spiritual environment in the free world to see what it is that moves people in the free world.

Much of the thought in the nineteenth century would have seemed the fantasies of some kind of crackpots, if Marxism had not conquered Russia and now half the world and shown us that these ideas are very much a part of the spirit of our own times. And there's definite reasons why they've triumphed.

We will not try to trace any one revolutionary school, such as liberalism, or socialism, communism, or any of the secret societies, even if this were possible, because we want to understand the mind that gave these birth, that is, the revolutionary mentality.

There are in this age, if possible, even more secret societies than existed in the eighteenth century. And it becomes even ridiculous, there are so many of them. And they, each one is involved with being a conspirator, of hiding its plan from the rest of them, trying to gain dominance. And the ones who are in the lower ranks are afraid there's a higher secret that's not been revealed to them. And they're afraid that it's not what they want. And they're going from one to the next. There's one kind of group in Italy which sits before bonfires in the darkness in the moonlight thinking about how to unite Italy and make Italy the center of the world, revive the Roman Empire and all kinds of fantastic things – blood oaths, and all this kind of thing – which especially the young people of that Romantic Age were very inspired by.

It's not possible to see how influential each one of these little sects was. Obviously they had a great part to play because in many of these revolutions, at the right time, there were people who came and inspired the people to march the right direction in order to get their



revolutionary ideas across. But this is actually secondary importance because whatever they achieved by their conspiracies would not have been able to be preserved had it not been for the fact that the spirit of the times was receptive to it. And that's what we want to examine, the spirit of the times, which is primary.

In the next lecture we'll also look at the conservative reaction against the Revolution to see if we can't get a picture of the whole developing mentality of the nineteenth century which produced the present world which we live in, which has revolutionary ideas and governments standing against so-called "conservatism." We will see whether this can be called conservatism or not. In fact, we'll see some very interesting revolutionary ideas in the middle of these conservatives. This world, We'll discuss chiefly the time of [the] post-Napoleonic age, because this is the time when thinkers had to stop and ask themselves what was the meaning of the Revolution and where do we go next.

The first thing that happened when Napoleon was overthrown and the Revolution was crushed – or so it looked, the whole of Europe presided over by the magnificent, romantic Alexander from Russia [who] came to the West and proceeded to reconstruct the society of Europe – there was a political reaction; it's called the "age of the political reaction." The Bourbon dynasty was restored under the brother of Louis XVI, Louis XVIII, who was quite willing to live under the new conditions. And it was not actually much of a restoration. It was a new idea, that is, a constitutional monarchy. It was not the old absolutism of the eighteenth century. Therefore the revolutionary ideas already gained somewhat of an acceptance.

This restoration meant that the churches were open; of course, they were already opened in the time of Napoleon, but there was no more Napoleon to be bringing the Revolution to everybody else. And there was somewhat the freedom of the press where all kinds of wild ideas could be expressed and also the conservative ideas. But underneath this whole society, the restored monarchy in France, there was a strong undercurrent of revolutionary unrest – not because the people were particularly unhappy with their lot, although of course there were many grievances especially because it was the age of rising industrialism and, of course, the lot of the workers got worse and worse – but mainly because these ideas were in the air. And just because Napoleon was defeated, these ideas did not go away. They formed the climate of the times, the spirit of the age.

In France there was one revolutionary outburst in 1830 in which the Bourbon dynasty was finally chased away. And the poor Charles X had to leave his slippers behind him as he fled in his coach to England. And the Orleans dynasty came in, I believe, a cousin of the last Bourbon king. And he was very much a man of the people, had even taking part in the Revolution, and called himself [king] “by the grace of God and the people,” that is, he put them both together. He’s going to be both a traditionalist and a revolutionary. And we’ll see later on what Nicholas I in Russia thought about that. But he in turn was chased out, and I think he left his slippers behind, as the new Revolution in 1848 overthrew him.

We’ll look a little in the next lecture at what happened in that Revolution which is actually a repetition of 1789 to 1793 – and rather hilarious if you don’t count all the people that were killed – and ended with the clown monarch Napoleon III who was one of the most lightheaded monarchs probably Europe ever had, [who] ended up by rushing off to defeat the Germans, leaving Paris open. He lost all his armies and Paris was taken by the Germans in the worst defeat France ever saw. But that’s already in the next lecture.

Most historians regard the history of the nineteenth century as the battle between reaction – summed up by the name of Metternich, the prime minister of Austria and the Holy Alliance, that is, all these nations who had the restored monarchs – against the revolution or freedom, as the workman and the bourgeoisie tried to gain their freedom from the nobles and the kings. But this is a very superficial view. The real battle is much deeper than that.

This time, not just the time after 1815 but the time before, a decade or two before, the whole time of the Revolution and afterwards through the first half of the nineteenth century, is the age of Romanticism. This is the time when the Enlightenment ideas of reason, of humanitarianism, of Voltaire and Diderot, the rights of man, the making [of] constitutions, thinking things through and coming up with logical deductions which will save mankind – all this is rejected. But it is rejected only for its one-sidedness, many of the more positive ideas – actually humanitarian ideal, and the overthrowing of the old system of the absolutism – are not so much rejected. But there’s rather an irrational feeling, which actually comes straight from Rousseau, already in the middle of the eighteenth century, of a religion of feeling and a sympathy for all kinds of mysterious things and mysticism. But now this is reduced to this world. There’s a great deal of sympathy for the Middle Ages and for

the national past of every country, whereas the Enlightenment age was an international age.

So, you get people going around like the Grimm brothers to collect fairy tales, and the folk songs and tales of the people. And as far as the religion is concerned, of course, there's a great revival of Catholicism; and it becomes now fashionable to be seen at the Mass. But at the same time it becomes something new. It's not exactly like it was in the old regime. It's very much of a this-worldly atmosphere about it, and a great revival of occultism for several decades. It's at the same time, from before the Revolution. And one can say that there is a search for some kind of new Christianity which will harmonize with the philosophy of the Enlightenment, keep the best features of the philosophy of the Enlightenment and reject the one-sidedness, such as, Voltaire's anti-Christianity and the atheism of the later thinkers.

This is the age of the great Romantic poets, the search for marvels, religion of inspiration and enthusiasm, new revelations, and the poets being carried away by their imagination – poems and stories about ruins and moonlight and darkness and all kinds of the darker side of life, the mysterious side.

This is the time of Calioistro, who, by the way, was mixed up with one the plots to overthrow the king in 1789, and [Franz Anton] Mesmer the hypnotist. And in fact one of the French writers at this time, [Johann Kaspar] Lavater, said that Mesmer went around and laid hands on people's heads, hypnotized them and healed them and all kinds of things. And this one man said that this is the modern equivalent of the Apostles laying on of the hands, which in our times comes out in the charismatic movement. And San Martin, the unknown philosopher, as he was called, was mixed up with one of these lodges actually which helped inspire the revolution, got mixed up very much with occultism. In fact, I met his son, Martiniste, some years ago, who was, claimed to be eighty years old and looked much younger and has the secret of long life and health and success; but there doesn't seem to be too much there, too much spirituality.

One can say that this is the second age of Romance in the history of Europe, the first one being the Middle Ages. In between these two ages there was the development of the scientific world-view and the age of reason. But now comes the reaction which produces back to something which something like the Middle Ages, only now it's going to be not within Catholicism that this romanticism comes out, but beyond Catholicism.

There was a deep awareness in this period that the past, even though there was a political restoration and a longing for the past, and the poetry written about the Middle Ages, and everyone became enthusiastic about stained glass windows and so forth; still there was an awareness that the past could not be recaptured, the old Europe, the Old Regime was gone. And there was a deep undercurrent at this time, a longing for a new unity, a new kind of golden age something like the Middle Ages where everyone was inspired by a common ideal and art would flourish, and the sciences would progress harmoniously. And this very feeling, this desire for some kind of new unity is, as we'll see, very much of a chiliastic idea. And in fact, we can say that this whole period including the Revolution and the romanticism of the poets and artists, and the mysticism of the sects and lodges, and as we'll also see even the Christian sects, is part of one great outburst of chiliastic fervor.

There are at this time so many prophets, so many people who've gotten the answer. It's been revealed to them what is the future of mankind, what is the truth.

This is like the movement of the earlier Anabaptists we already looked at a little bit and those sects; only now it is on a much greater scale, because it enters not only the sectarian, religious sphere but enters into the main sphere of philosophy and politics.

In the eighteenth century there are many of these chiliastic sects, the Shakers, the Rappites, and so forth. And in this very time a little bit later there come other chiliastic sects, the Adventists, the Mormons and many, many others, the Irvingites, and so forth. We'll look at a few of them in a minute. And these are only a small reflection of this attitude of mind which deeply penetrated the men of this time and which goes on even today.

We will try to look at these all in a way together, because its usual to think that the sectarian mentality is one thing; and the mentality which enlightened men, people who to go to college and have degrees and so forth and are capable of rational thought, they are something else. But we'll see here that in this time all these currents are very much mixed up.

## German Romantic Poet: Novalis<sup>260</sup>

We'll give as an example of this chiliastic mentality, a couple of quotes from the German Romantic poet, Novalis, who wrote a novel, which I think is called *Hans von Erztandinger*, one of the early Romantic novels about the search for the mysterious blue flower, in which he wrote a few things about his chiliastic ideas. He, by the way, [and] the great "thinkers" who had a great deal to sort of inspire this movement were all born about 1770 interestingly enough. It's the very year Beethoven was born. We'll see later on Saint-Simon, Owen, Fourier, these people, and Novalis was also born in 1772, I believe, and died in 1829 at the turn of the century.

He [Novalis] said, "Christendom had again to become living and active.... As yet there is no Religion. We must first found a training school of genuine Religion. Think ye that there is Religion? Religion must be made and produced through the union of a number of men. The fullest germs of the new religion lie in Christianity, but they also lie comparatively neglected.

And in another passage: Who says that the Bible is finished?

May it not be that the Bible is in the process of growing...[Novalis' disciple wrote:] He wrote in 1797: Oh these blind people who are talking about atheism! Does a theist as yet exist? Is any human intellect already master of the idea of divinity?

...Novalis...saw in the Christian religion the germ of democracy.

It is also, I think, highly significant that Novalis even anticipated the Utopian and Marxian Socialist expectation that there will be no need for a legal order in the society of the future, or at any rate that the number of laws will decrease, for: Laws are the complement of imperfect characters.

...[In Novalis] pamphlet *Die Christenheit oder Europa* ...We find in it the same emphasis on the paramount importance of religion: It is impossible for secular powers to find their balance; a third element, secular and transcendental at the same time, can alone fulfil this task. ...Religion alone can again awaken all Europe, it alone can safeguard the nations. ...Novalis, like so many Utopians, turned his eyes to the far distant past: Princes referred their dispute to the father of Christianity [the Pope], and willingly cast down their crowns and dignities at his feet. Here we have a typical example of a Utopia

---

<sup>260</sup> Schenk, Hans George Viktor, *The Aftermath of the Napoleonic Wars*, Howard Fertig, 1967, New York, pp. 13-15.

attributed to a past period;... a new golden Period, with heavenly features, a prophetic wonder-working, wound-healing one, comforting us and enkindling hopes of eternal life. And in another passage: The old and new world are engaged in warfare.... Perchance, in these events, as in the sciences, a more intimate and varied connection between the European States is at hand. And Novalis ultimate aim was that: Europe may again awaken and the states form but one.<sup>261</sup>

## Chiliasm in Early Socialist Prophets the Utopian Socialists

### Owen: 1771-1858

- a. New Lanark (still exists unchanged today): Industrial community under benevolent capitalist. 20,000 visitors 1815-1825, including Nicholas I. Largest cotton spinning mill in Britain. 1500 employees. 12-hour day, low pay but many occupational benefits, low rent, free medical care, schools, food at cost. Produced order, neatness and regularity.
- b. Aspects of life: 158. But later he saw that the factory wasn't the ideal.
- c. Background of his further ideas in religious communitarianism millennial sects of 18th-19th century: Ephrata Community, Moravian Brethren, (and later similar movements Mormonism, Adventism); especially influenced by Shakers and Rappites, and tried his experiments by buying the Rappite town of Harmony Indiana. Owens was a secular continuation of an established religious experiment.
- d. New Harmony
- e. Idyllic agricultural community described by a disciple.<sup>262</sup> But radical ideas – end of family system.<sup>263</sup> Sought, like other early Socialists, a science of man. Owenism did not degenerate into a sect had sectarian tone from the beginning. Shakers and Swedenborgians became Owenites and Owenites became Shakers.<sup>264</sup> One disciple wanted to be made bishop.<sup>265</sup> Owen felt

---

<sup>261</sup> Ibid. p. 14-15. Fr. Seraphim marked these sections in his book for reading during the lecture.

<sup>262</sup> 589-9

<sup>263</sup> p. 58-60.

<sup>264</sup> ex. p. 108.

- himself [to be an] agent of a mission<sup>266</sup>
- f. Owen in America:<sup>267</sup> New Harmony described.<sup>268</sup> Enthusiasm quickly died out. Communism experiments in American in 1840 were Fourierist.
- g. Illustrations<sup>269</sup>
- h. Owen is carried away by spiritism<sup>270</sup>

### **Fourier: 1772-1837**

- a. Life: Son of wealthy cloth-merchant, good education, trained in France, Germany, Italy. Inherited much property from his father, but lost it in the Revolution 1803, published article on European politics which interested Napoleon. Became small businessman, spent leisure on his work on new organization of society.
- b. Ideas: against individualism and competition (i.e., Liberalism), new theory of cooperation for the harmonious development of human nature. Free development of human nature through unrestrained indulgence of passions, which will result in harmony (this discovery he thought, ranked him with Newton, discovery of gravity - so St. Simon also). Wanted to reorganize all of society on this basis society to be composed of phalansteres with 1600 people each, common building (phalanstere) and soil. Phalansteres of uniform design. Dirty work done by children, no one required to do anything he didn't like. Marriage abolished, new arrangement substituted for it.
- c. No one paid attention to his first two works, his third work 1829 *The New Industrial World* began to attract disciples; he attacked Owen and St. Simon in *The Charlatanism of Two Sects*. A disciple started a community in 1832, but it quickly failed; Fourier waited in vain for a wealthy capitalist to give money for new experiments.
- d. Made fantastic prophecies of future paradise on earth: sea would turn into lemonade, men would be 7 feet tall, live to 144, have 120 years of free love. Men would progress, there would be 30 million scientists and great as Newton, and 30 million poets as great as Shakespeare.

---

<sup>265</sup> 124.

<sup>266</sup> 134.

<sup>267</sup> 106

<sup>268</sup> 164-5.

<sup>269</sup> p. 20, 84, 100 a-b, 116 a-b, 132

<sup>270</sup> 250-1

- e. Brook Farm in Massachusetts, started 1841 to combine thinker and worker, became Fourierist phalanx 1845, but collapsed by 1847. Dostoyevsky and others influenced.

### **St. Simon: 1760-1825**

Claude Henri de Rouvroy, Comte de Saint-Simon, who was born in 1760 and died in 1825, was in a sense the child of both the Old Regime and the philosophy of the Enlightenment.<sup>271</sup>

Saint-Simon fought at the battle of Yorktown for industrial liberty, and in his early twenties he devised plans for the building of canals to join the Pacific and the Atlantic in Nicaragua and to link Madrid with the sea. Upon his return to France, he used his wealth to gather as his tutors the most eminent scientists of France. His soon-spent wealth was restored during the Revolution when he speculated in church lands, though he consequently almost lost his head under Robespierre. Once more he surrounded himself with the savants of the time, traveled to Germany and England, and unsuccessfully tried to marry Mme. de Stael. Slowly his ideas on scientific method, industrialism, and the application of science to social organization took systematic shape; and from 1802 onward, they appeared in a steady stream of pamphlets and books. Falling again poverty-stricken, Saint-Simon became dependent on the charity of a former servant. After 1810, he was surrounded by a following of young engineers from the Ecole Polytechnique, chief among whom were Augustin Thierry and Auguste Comte, who acted as his secretaries and collaborated in his writings. Apparently disappointed by his lack of success in persuading the rulers and the intelligentsia to support his proposal for social reconstruction, Saint-Simon attempted suicide in 1823. His last work, the *New Christianity*, with its religion of human brotherhood, appeared in the year of his death, 1825.

Saint-Simon acknowledged [Condorcet] as one of the strongest influences on his own thought. [In Condorcet's writings] Saint-Simon saw the perfection of scientific methodology as the basis of human progress.... In a last phase, Saint-Simon in the *New Christianity* called for a religion based upon brotherly love and concerned with achieving

---

<sup>271</sup> The Doctrine of Saint-Simon: An Exposition, transl. Georg G. Iggers, Beacon Press, 1958, Boston, p. xix. Fr. Seraphim marked all the following passages in his own copy of the book for reading during the lecture.



bless on earth. The basic concern of religion was to be the speediest amelioration of the lot of the poor.<sup>272</sup>

The term Saint-Simonianism refers here to the disciples of Saint-Simon. It must be made clear that Saint-Simonianism, while maintaining certain basic tenets, from its beginning until its dissolution, continuously underwent changes in others. Yet a basic unity existed in its attempt to put an end to what was regarded at the revolutionary situation of the age.<sup>273</sup>

The theory was expounded in a series of public lectures held biweekly after December 17, 1828, and known as the...<sup>274</sup>

### **Doctrine of Saint Simon: An Exposition of the First Year (1828-29)**

While this second phase of the Saint-Simonian movement had a general unity of thought, there emerged slowly a stronger religious and political emphasis which tended to subordinate the earlier scientific and industrial interest.... This new emphasis led to the establishment of a hierarchically organized Saint-Simonian church in late December, 1829. The doctrine was propagated through public sermons and teachings in Paris, by mission sent to the provinces and to Belgium, by pamphlets, an above all through the pages of the weekly *Organisateur* and the daily *Globe*. The *Globe* had been the famous liberal paper of the twenties and became Saint-Simonian in November, 1830, after the conversion of its manager, Pierre Leroux, to the new religion. In the *Globe*, the Saint-Simonians received their greatest degree of attention...

The Saint-Simonian church foreshadowed the basic structure and philosophy of the Religion of Humanity of Comte in his later years. Buchez, the later Catholic socialist, was a member of the Saint-Simonian hierarchy. Heine and Franz Liszt regularly attended the Sunday meetings. Carlyle and Mill corresponded with the society. Sainte-Beuve and George Sand expressed their keen interest and approval, while Lamartine, Balzac, and Lamennais watched with mixed emotions. Stendhal, Benjamin Constant, and Fourier found the new philosophy sufficiently important to attack it. Even Goethe, while criticizing the Saint-Simonian collectivism...regularly received the *Globe*...

---

<sup>272</sup> Ibid., p. xxi-xxii..

<sup>273</sup> Ibid., p. xxii.

<sup>274</sup> Ibid. pp. xix-xxv.

The new religion claimed over 40,000 adherents by the middle of 1831 and was well known to every educated person in Europe.

The disintegration of this second phase, during which Saint-Simonianism was concerned primarily with social reorganization, was precipitated by the conflict within the movement on the question of woman. While there had been general agreement that woman, traditionally exploited like the worker, should be emancipated socially, a new orientation emerged under the leadership of Enfantin which increasingly emphasized the importance of the question of woman, finally advocated free love, and identified the outcome of history with the emancipation and sanctification of the flesh. this heightened feminism led to a schism, to the rupture of Bazard with the movement, the consequent departure of other members, and to legal persecutions after January, 1832. On April 20, 1832, the last issue of the *Globe* appeared, and the second phase of the movements history may be said to have ended.

In the third phase characterized by heightened feminism and pantheistic religious thought after 1832, the concern with social and political problems lessened. The Saint-Simonians were now less interested in propagating the faith than in preparing for a more propitious time by the education of a hierarchy. They withdrew to a monastic life. The trials which resulted in the imprisonment of Enfantin further weakened the movement, which dissolved as an organized group after Enfantins departure to Egypt in search of the Woman Messiah. Later in the century, the Saint-Simonians were to be prominent in financial and industrial projects, such as the creation of the *Crédit Mobilier*, the extension of the French railroad net, and the construction of the Suez Canal.<sup>275</sup>

Influences secular chiliasm, especially Lessing<sup>276</sup> with philosophy of eternal striving and religion of the heart (and through him, Joachim of Fiore). Lessing: "If God held concealed in his right hand all truth, and in His left only the ever eager impulse after truth, (even though coupled with the condition that I should ever and always err,) and said to me, Choose!, I should reverently take his left hand and say, Father give unto me! The absolute truth is for Thee alone?"<sup>277</sup> But believed in revelation which brought human race from lower to higher stages. Man

---

<sup>275</sup> Ibid., p. xxiv-xxv

<sup>276</sup> Gotthold Ephraim Lessing

<sup>277</sup> From *The Influence of Darwin on Philosophy* by John Dewey, Henry Holt & Co., quoted in Randall, op. cit., p. 477.

will progress to the state of not requiring belief in future life to do good, but will to do good for itself then will the eternal gospel, the 3rd Age of the Holy Spirit, come! Freemasons his ideal, who wait for the sunrise of the new age, and throw down barriers of religion, the state, and nationality.

(So: a romantic even in age of Enlightenment.) God is the soul of the world.

Thus: Owen influenced by sectarians; Fourier by revolutionaries, St. Simon by chiliastic tradition of Joachim of Fiore.

### **Philosophy: New Age**

..There have been no more philosophic doctrines worthy of the name than there have been general states of mankind, but the phenomenon of an orderly social order has occurred only twice in the series of civilization to which we belong and which forms an uninterrupted chain extending to our own time, namely in antiquity and in the Middle Ages. The new general state which we proclaim for the future will form the third link in this chain; it will not be identical with its predecessors but will offer striking analogies to them with respect to order and unity. It will follow upon the various periods of the crisis that has been disturbing us for three centuries; it will appear finally as a consequence of the law of the development of mankind.<sup>278</sup>

### **Cause of Today's Evil**

We shall state that the cause of evil is to be sought in the lack of unity in social outlook; and the remedy will be found in the discovery of this unity.<sup>279</sup>

We Live in Ruins of the Middle Ages:

We dwell in the midst of the rubble, the living rubble of medieval society which continues to bemoan its fate.<sup>280</sup>

### **We Must Not Just Negate the Middle Ages:**

It was believed that the solution of the problem consisted in putting a minus sign before all the terms of the formula of the Middle Ages, but this strange solution could only engender anarchy.

---

<sup>278</sup> The Doctrine of Saint-Simon, p. 4.

<sup>279</sup> Ibid., p. 11.

<sup>280</sup> Ibid., p. 18.

We, who accept neither the Middle Ages nor constitutionalism, leap beyond the limits of the present.... The time is approaching when the nations will abandon the banners of a disorderly and thoughtless liberalism to enter lovingly into a state of peace and happiness, abandoning mistrust and recognizing that legitimate power can exist on earth.<sup>281</sup>

### **Unitary View of Future**

The doctrine that we are proclaiming is to take possession of the entire man, and to give the three great human faculties a common goal and a harmonious direction. By its means, the sciences will make unified progress towards the most speedy development; industry, regulated in the interest of all, will no longer present the frightening spectacle of an arena; and the fine arts, once more animated by ardent sympathy, will reveal to us the feelings of enthusiasm in a common life, whose gentle influence will make itself felt in the most secret joys of private life.<sup>282</sup>

### **Times are Fulfilled**

Rid yourselves of all fear, gentlemen, and do not struggle against the torrent which carries you onward to a happy future; put an end to the uncertainty which weakens your hearts and strikes you with impotence. Embrace the altar of reconciliation lovingly, for the times have been fulfilled and the hour is about to strike when, according to the Saint-Simonian transformation of the Christian word, all shall be called and all shall be chosen.<sup>283</sup>

### **Old Must be Destroyed**

For the happiness of mankind requires that the work of destruction, to which this method has been applied with such effect, be completed.<sup>284</sup>

### **New and Final State**

...[T]oday mankind is traveling toward a final state which will be exempted from the long and painful alternatives and under which

---

<sup>281</sup> Ibid., pp. 22, 23, 24

<sup>282</sup> Ibid., pp. 24-25.

<sup>283</sup> Ibid., p. 40.

<sup>284</sup> Ibid., p. 50.

progress will take place without interruption, without crises, in a continuous, regular, and constant fashion. We are marching toward a world where religion and philosophy, cult and the fine arts, dogma and science will no longer be divided....

The destruction of the former order of things has been as radical as possible in the absence of the revelation of the new order to be established.<sup>285</sup>

### **Goal: Universal Association - ‘Brotherhood’**

...[T]his continuous succession of seeming grandeur and apparent decline, commonly called the vicissitudes of mankind, is nothing but the regular series of efforts made by mankind to attain a final goal.

This goal is universal association, which is to say, the association of all men on the entire surface of the globe in all spheres of their relationships.<sup>286</sup>

### **Christianity Failed**

Christianity, whose principle and expansive force have long since been exhausted, embraced in its love and sanctified by its law only one of the modes of human existence, and did not succeed in establishing its rule – now failing – over more than a portion of mankind.<sup>287</sup>

The entire world is progressing toward unity of doctrine and action. This is our most general profession of faith. This is the direction which a philosophical examination of the past permits us to trace. Until the day when this great concept, born of the genius of our master, together with its general developments, can become the direct object of the endeavors of the human spirit, all previous social progress must be considered as preparatory, all attempts at organization as partial and successive initiations to the cult of unity and to the reign of order over the entire globe, the territorial possession of the great human family.<sup>288</sup>

### **Future is Religion**

We certainly do not claim to be heroes for introducing the foundations of a new religion to you. In this indulgent, or rather indifferent, century, all opinions, as we know, can appear without danger, especially when they seem not to go beyond the narrow

---

<sup>285</sup> Ibid., pp. 56-7.

<sup>286</sup> Ibid., p. 58.

<sup>287</sup> Ibid., p. 60.

<sup>288</sup> Ibid., p. 71.

confines of a philosophic school. But we also know that we are speaking to men who consider themselves superior because they are unbelievers, and who smile scornfully at all religious ideas, which they regulate to the dark ages, to what they call the barbarism of the Middle Ages, and to the childhood of mankind. We do not fear to brave this smile. Voltairian sarcasm and the arrogant scorn of modern materialism can dispel from some men's hearts the vague sentimentality common today. They can frighten away and confound that type of individual religiosity which in vain seeks forms to express itself, but they are powerless to destroy deep conviction.

Yes, gentlemen, we have come here to expose ourselves to this sarcasm and scorn. For following Saint-Simon and in his name, we come to proclaim that mankind has a religious future; that the religion of the future will be greater and more powerful than all those in the past; that it will, like those which preceded it, be the synthesis of all conceptions of mankind and, moreover, of all modes of being. Not only will it dominate the political order, but the political order will be totally a religious institution; for nothing will be conceived of outside of God or will develop outside of His law. Let us add finally that this religion will embrace the entire world because the law of God is universal.<sup>289</sup>

## **Science and Religion**

Take the religious standpoint, but one more elevated and broader than any mankind has yet attained. As long as science preserves its atheistic character, which is considered essential to it, science will not give expression to man's faculty to know successively and progressively the laws by which God governs the world: in brief, the providential plan. None of the discoveries upon which atheism, when threatened, relies will be able to escape the formula: This is how God manifests himself.

No, gentlemen, it is not the destiny of science, as many seem to believe, to be the eternal enemy of religion and constantly to restrict religion's realm in order someday entirely to dispossess it. On the contrary, science is called upon to extend and constantly to strengthen the realm of religion, since each of science's advances is to give man a broader view of God and of His plans for mankind.<sup>290</sup>

We foresaw a time, no longer distant, when the sciences, freed from the influence of the dogmas of criticism and viewed in a much broader

---

<sup>289</sup> Ibid., pp. 202-203.

<sup>290</sup> Ibid., p. 206.

and general fashion than they are today, would no longer be considered antagonistic to religion, but rather as the means given to the human mind to know the laws by which God governs the world; the providential plan.<sup>291</sup>

---

<sup>291</sup> Ibid., p. 266.

## **Tribute to Revolutions Work of Destruction**

We have shown previously that critical epochs can be divided into two distinct periods: one forms the beginning of those epochs during which society, united by a fervent faith in the doctrines of destruction, acts in concert to overthrow the former religious and social institution; the other comprises the interval separating destruction from reconstruction during which men, disgusted with the past and the uncertainties of the future, are no longer united by any faith or common enterprises. What we have said concerning the absence of morality in critical periods refers only to the second of the two periods which they include, but not at all to the first, or to the men who figure in it and who, through some sort of inconsistency, preach hatred through love; call for destruction while believing to be building; provoke disorder because they desire order; and establish slavery on the altar they erect to liberty. Gentlemen, let us admire these men. Let us pity them merely for having been given the terrible mission which they have fulfilled with devotion and love for mankind. Let us pity them, for they were born to love and their entire life was dedicated to hate. But let us not forget that the pity with which they inspire us should be a lesson to us; that it should increase our desires and confirm our hopes in a better future – in a future in which the men who are capable of love will ceaselessly be able to apply their love.<sup>292</sup>

## **Man Must Have Faith**

Mankind never lacks faith. One will no more have to ask whether man has the inclination to believe than whether he will someday renounce love. Rather, it is merely a question of knowing on which men and ideas he will bestow his confidence and for what guarantees he will ask before abandoning himself to them.<sup>293</sup>

## **New Prophet**

We do not hesitate to say with you that what is not atheism today is ignorance and superstition. But if we want to heal mankind of this wound, if we want it to abandon the beliefs and practices which we consider unworthy of it, if we want it to leave the Church of the Middle Ages, we must open the Church of the future. Let us stand ready, as de Maistre has said, for a tremendous event in the divine order toward

---

<sup>292</sup> Ibid., pp. 208-209.

<sup>293</sup> Ibid., p. 211.



which, as all must notice, we are marching in an accelerated speed. Let us say with him that there is no longer religion on earth and that mankind cannot remain in this state. But more fortunate than de Maistre, we shall no longer wait for the man of genius whom he prophesies and who, according to him, shall soon reveal to the world the natural affinity of religion and science. Saint-Simon has appeared.<sup>294</sup>

### **Religion of future**

While proclaiming that religion is destined to assert its rule over society, we certainly are as far from holding that any of the religious institutions of the past should be re-established as we are from claiming to lead society back to the old state of war or slavery. We proclaim a new moral and political state. This is just as thoroughly a new religious state: for to us religion, politics, and morals are merely different names for the same fact.... The religion of the future is called upon to take its place in the political order; but to be exact, when considered in its totality, the political institution of the future must be a religious institution.<sup>295</sup>

Importance: Saw new world view must be religious. Socialism is not enough, there must be a synthesis of politics-science-religion (confined field theory of mind). Today we see the great defect of Marxism – it is not religious and mankind must have religion, as St. Simon saw. This New Christianity is a thorough attempt to complete the process begun in the Middle Ages: to improve on Christianity.

---

<sup>294</sup> Ibid., p. 213.

<sup>295</sup> Ibid., p. 265.

# Lecture 8

## Meaning of Revolution:

Now, in order to get a full picture of the meaning of the revolution of our times, we will look at a number of thinkers in the nineteenth century who were called “reactionaries,” people who were against the revolution. Because, by seeing what arguments were brought against the revolution, and by seeing how a number of them themselves were influenced by deeper ideas which revolutionaries shared, we will get a deeper understanding of how deep this revolution goes.

The new order in Europe in 1815, after Napoleon was overthrown, was the reaction, the Holy Alliance, that is, the monarchs of Europe, were restored. And there was a definite reaction. Revolutionary movements were discouraged and even squashed. Russia took a leading part in this – even Tsar Alexander, who was [under a] very Masonic influence in his early years. Later on, after this time, after this Congress in Vienna, he began to understand that revolution was a serious business and that Christianity was quite other than he pictured it. And especially under the influence of the Archimandrite Photius who persuaded him the Masons were out to destroy his kingdom. And [warned him against] all these Protestants who were filtering in, and the Bible society. And when there was a rebellion in Spain, 1820, he volunteered to send a hundred thousand Cossacks to squash it. And the other powers of Europe decided this was too risky, that they’d better let the French take care of it. And so the French did take care of it, and squashed the rebellion. But from that time on the Russian Tsars became very aware of their responsibility to fight the revolution, especially inside Russia and, where possible, outside Russia. With one exception, that is, when the Greek rebellion broke out against the Turks, the Russians supported it.

And later on in 27-28 when the Turks threatened to take over the Greek kingdom again, Tsar Nicholas, the arch-conservative, came to the aid of the Greeks, even though Metternich the great statesman warned him that they were also Masons and rebels just like the rest of them. And he said, “But, anyway, they’re Orthodox; and we come to

the aid of the Orthodox kingdoms.”<sup>296</sup> And owing to a great deal to the Russian Tsars, Greece has a kingdom today as an independent state; they’re not under the Turks.

---

<sup>296</sup> . See below, p. 25; here Fr. S. is paraphrasing the letter to Emperor Franz-Joseph, January 4/16, 1854, quoted in Talberg, p. 188: “Are you allowing yourself, an apostolic emperor, to make interests of the Turks your own? Will your conscience permit this? If this happens, Russia will proceed alone under the protection of the holy Cross to its holy purpose.”

# Metternich

The leading statesman of this time in the west of Europe was Metternich. M-E-T-T-E-R-N-I-C-H, the foreign minister of Austria who was the spokesman for the conservative movement, although he himself was not quite as reactionary as he's painted to be. There's a brief description of his basic philosophy here in these books on the post-revolutionary epoch.

He also was born in the 70's, 1773, and died in 1859. The offspring "of a Catholic noble family in the Rhineland, he witnessed as a youth the Jacobin excesses," that is, revolutionary excesses, "at Strassburg which confirmed his contempt for mob-democracies and his faith in European society founded on Latin civilization consecrated by Christian faith and embellished by time. He grew up with a deep reverence for tradition.... The Old Régime in its last days produced in him its ablest if not its noblest representative. He was a fine flower of an age that is now only a memory: a polished and courtly aristocrat, cool, urbane and imperturbable, a patron of the arts, a diplomat of first rank, a lover of beauty, order and tradition, something of a cynic perhaps, but always polite and charming.... [H]e entered the Austrian diplomatic service and made his reputation by worsting Napoleon in the critical days of 1813 after the retreat from Moscow. After the Emperor's fall he reigned as prime minister of Europe until the" Revolution of 1848 overthrew him.<sup>297</sup>

"He saw that he was living in an age of transition; the old order, which had seemed so firm and secure, was everywhere dissolving and none could divine what was to take its place. Before a new equilibrium was attained, a period of anarchy and chaos must intervene. Metternich's life work was to stave off collapse as long as possible and maintain stability for the time at whatever cost. He was fully alive to the impermanent character of his achievements, remarking bitterly that he spent his days in propping up worm-eaten institutions, that he should have been born in 1700 or 1900, for he never fitted into the revolutionary Europe of the nineteenth century. The future," he knew, "was with democracy and nationalism," and "all that he held sacred – monarchy, Church, aristocracy, tradition – was doomed, but it was his

---

<sup>297</sup> Saunders, J.J., *The Age of Revolution: A Survey of European History Since 1815*, Hutchinson & Co., Ltd., no date, p. 19.

duty to hold on, to retreat if need be to the very last line of defense before giving up.”<sup>298</sup>

So that’s this statesman, who wrote his memoirs also, a very conservative man. He was against what he called the “presumptuous men,”<sup>299</sup> these revolutionaries who were constantly rising up with their egotistic theories that they were going to remake society. He was overthrown in 1848 in the new wave of revolution which swept over the whole of Europe.

Another one of the chiefs – there are actually three chief conservative philosophers at this time, thinkers: one in England, one in France, one in Spain. In England, the conservative is Edmund Burke, who was one of the first ones to protest against the Revolution already in 1790 when he wrote these reflections on the Revolution in France, which is a book which inspired many of these new neo-conservatives. Briefly, some of his views are set forth here in one of his textbooks.

In this book, *Reflections on the Revolution*, he says: “Is it in destroying and pulling down that skill is displayed? Your mob,” that is, revolutionaries, “can do this as well at least, as your assemblies. The shallowest understanding, the rudest hand, is more than equal to that task. Rage and frenzy will pull down more in half an hour than prudence, deliberation and foresight can build up in a hundred years.... At once to preserve and to reform is quite a different thing. A spirit of innovation is generally the result of a selfish temper and confined views. People will not look forward to posterity, who never look backward to their ancestors.... By a constitutional policy working after the pattern of nature,” that is, we English, “we transmit our government and our privileges, in the same manner in which we enjoy and transmit our property and our lives. The institutions of policy, the goods of fortune, the gifts of Providence are handed down to us, and from us, in the same course and order. Our political system is placed in a just correspondence and symmetry with the order of the world, wherein, by the disposition of a stupendous wisdom, molding together the great mysterious incorporation of the human race, the whole, at one time, is never old, or middle-aged, or young, but, in a condition of unchangeable constancy, moves on through the varied tenor of perpetual decay, fall, renovation, and progression. Thus, by preserving the method of nature in the conduct of the State, in what we improve, we are never wholly new; in what we retain, we are never wholly

---

<sup>298</sup> Ibid., p. 20.

<sup>299</sup> Source for this?

obsolete.... A disposition to preserve, and an ability to improve, taken together, will be my standard of a statesman.”<sup>300</sup>

Of course, these are very sensible words, spoken against people who talk about novelty for the sake of novelty and show that they don't know how bring it about. And when they do bring it about, they really upset the whole society. But, of course, he was an Englishman; what his idea of conservatism is, is preserving whatever we have. And whatever we have is the English monarchy with the developing already idea of democracy. At that time, it was still quite conservative; only the aristocrats had the right to vote, the upper classes. And the parliament was not at all representative of the whole people, it was gradually evolving in that direction. And, of course, he was undoubtedly an Anglican, and already that's a falling away even from Catholicism. Catholicism's a falling away from Orthodoxy. And you can evolve a new religion of Anglicanism. It means, even though he's very conservative, there's no underlying principle which he can really rely on. And it's only a matter of time until, as we see, this kind of conservatism can evolve into something which is quite democratic and already utopian. So, this kind of conservatism will not go very far.

---

<sup>300</sup> Quoted in Randall, *op. cit.*, p. 433.

## Donoso Cortes

But there's a second thinker of this time a little bit later, born 1809, died in 1853, who lived in Spain. His name is [Juan] Donoso Cortes. I think he was a prince or a count or something. He is not too well known in the West, although one of his books has been translated into English. And he is the most philosophical of all the people in the West who wrote about, against the Revolution. He wrote his great book in 1852, called *Essays on Catholicism, Liberalism, and Socialism*. He's a marqués, Marqués of Valdegamas.

And he is most significant because he clearly saw that this revolution is not some kind of an aimless thing; it has definite purpose behind it. And he even said that the revolution is theological. In order to defeat it, you must have a different theology.<sup>301</sup>

He was especially against the great anarchist of his time, Proudhon, whom we'll talk in the next lecture. Proudhon, we'll see, is quite profound, more profound than many other revolutionaries. And he [Cortes] quotes even Proudhon, at the very opening of this book. He says, it's called "How a Great Question of Theology is Always Involved in Every Great Political Question":

"In his *Confessions of a Revolutionist* Monsieur Proudhon has written these remarkable words: It is wonderful how we ever stumble on theology in all our political questions! There is nothing here to cause surprise except the surprise of Monsieur Proudhon. Theology, inasmuch as it is the science of God, is the ocean which contains and embraces all sciences, as God is the ocean which contains and embraces all things."<sup>302</sup> And this whole book is an exposure of

---

<sup>301</sup> Fr. Seraphim's notes for "Order" chapter of *Anarchism* book includes quote from *Ensayo Sobre el Catolicismo, el Liberalismo y el Socialismo*, *Essays on Catholicism, Liberalism, and Socialism*, J.F. Wagner, New York, 1925, Book I, Chapter 1, p. 13: "He who...speaks explicitly of anything,...speaks implicitly of God, or...speaks explicitly of any science,...speaks implicitly of theology." "Theology, considered in its most general acceptance, is the perpetual subject of all sciences, as God is the perpetual subject of all human speculations. Every word which comes from the mouth of man, is an affirmation of the Divinity, even that by which he blasphemes or denies Him."

<sup>302</sup> Cortes, Don Juan Donoso, *An Essay on Catholicism, Authority and Order*, Joseph F. Wagner, Inc., New York, 1925, reprinted by Hyperion Press, Inc. Westport, Connecticut, 1979, Book I, Ch. 1, p. 1: "Proudhon, in his *Confessions of a Revolutionist*, has written these remarkable words: It is surprising to observe how constantly we find that all our political questions involve theological ones. There is nothing in this to cause surprise, except it be the surprise of Proudhon. Theology,

liberal[ism], first of mainly socialism as being anti-God. And liberalism he doesn't even have much respect for at all, because he sees it's only a halfway between socialism and monarchy. And there one book here he quotes somehow excerpts from this book [Viereck].

As Metternich called these revolutionaries the "presumptuous men," Donoso Cortes called them "the self-worshipping men."<sup>303</sup> And he liked them better than the liberals because they had their own dogmas at least. You can fight against them on dogmatic grounds. He saw that the ending of religious influence on politics, that is, the atheist revolution, would produce in the future the most gigantic and destructive despotism ever known. In fact, in one of his talks before the Parliament in Spain, 1852, he told them that the end of the revolution is Antichrist, we can see on the horizon in the next century. In that respect he's quite profound. Here he gives some general quotes on the liberals and socialists.

The liberal school," he said, "...is placed between two seas, whose constantly advancing waves will finally overwhelm it, between socialism and Catholicism.... It cannot admit the constituent sovereignty of the people without becoming democratic, socialistic, and atheistic, nor admit the actual sovereignty of God without becoming monarchical and Catholic...."<sup>304</sup>

"This school is only dominant when society is threatened with dissolution, and the moment of its authority is that transitory and fugitive one, in which the world stands doubting between Barabbas and Jesus, and hesitates between a dogmatical affirmation and a supreme negation. At such a time society willingly allows itself to be governed by a school which never affirms nor denies,<sup>305</sup> but is always making distinctions.... "Such periods of agonizing doubt can never last any great length of time. Man was born to act, and will resolutely declare either for Barabbas or Jesus and overturn all that the sophists have attempted to establish.... The socialist schools" – whom we always think [of] as Marx, Proudhon, Saint-Simon, Owen, Fourier, and all those thinkers – "possess great advantages over the liberal school, precisely because they approach (to state) directly all great problems

---

being the science of God, is the ocean which contains and embraces all the sciences, as God is the ocean in which all things are contained."

<sup>303</sup> Donoso, Source for this?

<sup>304</sup> Ibid., Bk. II, p. 165.

<sup>305</sup> Emphasis in Original



and questions, and always give a peremptory and decisive solution. The strength of socialism consists in its being a system of theology, and it is destructive only because it is a satanic theology.

“The socialist schools, as they are theological, will prevail over the liberal because the latter is anti-theological and skeptical. But they themselves, on account of their satanic element, will be vanquished by the Catholic school which is at the same time theological and divine. The instincts of socialism would seem to agree with our affirmations, since it hates Catholicism, while it only despises liberalism.”<sup>306</sup>

And its history seems to prove him true, because indeed Communism takes over the world and democracy becomes more and more radical and more and more utopian in order to compete with socialism. Again, he says:

“The Catholics affirm that evil comes from man, and redemption from God; the socialists affirm that evil comes from society and redemption from man. The two affirmations of Catholicism are sensible and natural, namely, that man is man and performs human works, and that God is God, and performs divine acts. The two affirmations of socialism assert that man understands and executes the designs of God, and that society performs the works proper to man. What, then, does human reason gain when it rejects Catholicism for socialism? Does it not refuse to receive that which is evident and mysterious in order to accept that which is at once mysterious and absurd?”<sup>307</sup>

Now his reasoning is quite straight. He had a few thoughts on Russia also. He saw that he believed that Russia, he was very afraid of the Russian peril. He thought that Russia was going to overwhelm the West. And after overwhelming the West, it would drink the poison of the Revolution itself and die just like Europe.

---

<sup>306</sup> Ibid., Bk. II, pp. 166-168.

<sup>307</sup> Ibid., p. 197

## DeMaistre

We'll see what the next thinker thinks about Russia. This next one, who is probably the best known of the radical conservatives, the real reactionaries, is Josef de Maistre, D-E-M-A-I-S-T-R-E, who was actually not a Frenchman but a Sardinian, although he spoke French, it's a French-speaking kingdom. In fact he was ambassador from Sardinia to St. Petersburg, during the time of Napoleon, and after Napoleon.

He was born in 1753, died in 1821. He is the apologist for the divine right of kings, in the eighteenth century tradition. In fact, he even got somewhat embarrassed because his book on the divine right of kings was published without his knowledge. He wrote it several years earlier and [it] was published just at the time when the restored Bourbon king, Louis XVIII accepted the Constitution. And therefore this king thought he was against him. And of course he accepted and compromised finally, but he set forth the principle of divine right. The aim of his philosophy, and of conservative philosophy, according to him, is absolutely to kill the whole spirit of the eighteenth century. You see, he's quite bold. No compromise with Voltaire, Rousseau, the Revolution, nothing. The answer to the Revolution, he says, is the Pope and the executioner.<sup>308</sup>

In fact, he has a whole page in one of his books in which he praises the man, the executioner with the axe in his hand who comes home at night to his wife with a clean conscience because he has done the duty of society.<sup>309</sup>

---

<sup>308</sup> Viereck p. 29-32.

<sup>309</sup> DeMaistre. Joseph, *The Works of Joseph DeMaistre*, transl. by Jack Lively, MacMillan Co., N.Y., 1965, pp. 191-2: "To come now to detail, let us start with human justice. Wishing men to be governed by men at least in their external actions, God has given sovereigns the supreme prerogative of punishing crimes, in which above all they are his representatives...."

"This formidable prerogative of which I have just spoken results in the necessary existence of a man destined to inflict on criminals the punishments awarded by human justice; and this man is in fact found elsewhere, without there being any means of explaining how; for reason cannot discern in human nature any motive which could lead men to this calling. I am sure, gentlemen, that you are too accustomed to reflection not to have pondered often on the executioner. Who is then this inexplicable being who has preferred to all the pleasant, lucrative, honest, and even honorable jobs that present themselves in hundreds to human power and dexterity that of torturing and putting to death his fellow creatures? Are this head and this heart made like ours? Do they not hold something peculiar and foreign to our nature? For my own part, I do not doubt this. He is made like us externally; he is born like us but

He is actually quite, himself, rationalistic. It's just that he starts in a different place. He starts with absolute Catholicism. And he's rather a cold thinker, but very astute, very clear thinking. He can see that these other rationalists, or, atheist rationalists, begin without God and therefore they end in absurdity.

He wrote one book on God in society, came out during Napoleon's time. And there's a few excerpts here we'll quote from him:

"One of the gravest errors of a century which embraced them all," see how immediately he leaps on the eighteenth century, "was to believe that a political constitution could be written and created a priori, whereas reason and experience agree that a constitution is a divine work and that it is precisely the most fundamental and most essentially constitutional elements in the a nation's laws that cannot be written."<sup>310</sup>

---

he is an extraordinary being, and for him to exist in the human family a particular decree, a FIAT of the creative power is necessary. He is a species to himself. Look at the place he holds in public opinion! Scarcely have the authorities fixed his dwelling-place, scarcely has he taken possession of it, than the other houses seem to shrink back until they no longer overlook his. In the midst of this solitude and this kind of vacuum that forms around him, he lives alone with his woman and his offspring who make the human voice known to him, for without them he would know only groans. A dismal signal is given; a minor judicial official comes to his house to warn him that he is needed; he leaves; he arrives at some public place packed with a dense and throbbing crowd. A poisoner, a parricide, or a blasphemer is thrown to him; he seizes him, he stretches him on the ground, he ties him to a horizontal cross, he raises it up: then a dreadful silence falls, and nothing can be heard except the crack of bones breaking under the crossbar and the howls of the victim. He unfastens him; he carries him to a wheel: the shattered limbs interweave with the spokes; the head falls, the hair stands on end, and the mouth, open like a furnace, gives out spasmodically only a few blood-spattered words calling for death to come. He is finished: his heart flutters, but it is with joy; he congratulates himself, he says sincerely, No one can break men on the wheel better than I. He steps down; he stretches out his bloodstained hand, and justice throw into it from a distance a few pieces of gold which he carries through a double row of men drawing back with horror. He sits down to a meal and eats; then to bed, where he sleeps. And the next day, on waking, he thinks of anything other than what he did the day before. Is this a man? Yes: God receives him in his temples and permits him to pray. He is not a criminal, yet it is impossible to say, for example, that he is virtuous, that he is an honest man, that he is estimable, and so on. No moral praise can be appropriate for him, since this assumes relationships with men, and he has none. "And yet all grandeur, all power, all subordination rests on the executioner: he is the horror and the bond of human association. Remove this incomprehensible agent from the world, and at that very moment order gives way to chaos, thrones topple, and society disappears. God, who is the author of sovereignty, is the author also of chastisement: he has built our world on these two poles; for Jehovah is the master of the two poles, and on these he makes the world turn. (I Samuel 2:8)"

<sup>310</sup> Demaistre, p. 147.

[This] quote is very profound because obviously these countries of Europe had an orderly government, their own traditions. An absolute monarch is, of course, not absolute because he is always hedged about, first of all by the church, then by his nobles, then by what the people want; and no absolute monarch was ever just some kind of absolute despot except for the revolutionary despots, who have no kind of tradition to stop them. And, of course, the constitution is not a piece of paper. It's something which comes out of the experience of a whole nation, based largely on religion. Again he says, "Everything therefore brings us back to the general rule: Man cannot make a constitution, and no legitimate constitution can be written. [Emphasis in original] The corpus of fundamental laws that must constitute a civil or religious society have never been written and never will be written. This can only be done when a society is already constituted, yet it is impossible to spell out or explain in writing certain individual articles; but almost always these declarations are the effect or the cause of very great evils and always cost the people more than they are worth."<sup>311</sup> From that point of view, he's quite wise. These people, who think they're all of a sudden going to put down a whole new government on paper, always end up by creating despotism, having to revise the constitution, finally abolishing the constitution, [and] establishing some kind of new monarch like Napoleon.

But we see in this DeMaistre, who was the most fanatical anti-revolutionary, we see a very interesting thing. Because he was so very anti-revolutionary and the same time was very rational, he came to new conclusions which were not in the European philosophy of the past. He saw that revolution was a very strong movement, and you had to have something very strong to oppose it. And therefore, he became the apologist for the Pope. And in fact, he said, "Without the Pope [Sovereign Pontiff] there is no [real] Christianity."<sup>312</sup> In fact, he said, "The Pope in himself is Christianity,"<sup>313</sup> as if the Pope in himself entirely represents Christianity.

So his position of being an anti-traditional, being menaced by the revolution, leads him to a new kind of rationalist absolutism – the absolutism of the Pope. In fact, he was one of the chief people whose

---

<sup>311</sup> DeMaistre, op. cit., "The Generative Principle of Political Institutions, XXVIII, p. 161.

<sup>312</sup> De Maistre, Joseph, *The Pope*, Howard Fertig, Inc., 1975, p. xxiv.

<sup>313</sup> Ibid., p. xxxiii: "*Christianity is wholly based upon the Sovereign Pontiff.*" [emphasis in original]

ideas related to, lead to the doctrine of papal infallibility, proclaimed in 1870, which is something new. The Catholics didn't have it before. They say it developed out of the past. It was only then against the Revolution that they had to proclaim something new: that is, the Pope himself is the one outward standard you can see, which will protect you from the Revolution. It is quite a long book. I have the French edition of the book on the Pope by DeMaistre.

He talks about all kinds – the Russian Church also is here. And we'll see what he said about the Russian Church here. But this is one of the leading textbooks of "Ultramontanism," so-called, that is, the absolute infallibility of the Pope. But it's something new even in Catholic tradition as an outward, absolutely external and clear standard which you can oppose to revolution, because he saw the tradition is dying off, the Catholic tradition's dying off, and you have to have some kind of an absolute monarch to save it. And it's very logical. We'll see later on what Dostoyevsky has to say about this.

This book of his, on the Pope, was conceived as an answer to another book which was printed at that time 1816 by the Russian minister Sturdza, S-T-U-R-D-Z-A, in which he printed in French, declaring, to the great chagrin of DeMaistre, that the Roman Church was schismatic and only the Orthodox Church was the true Church of Christ. And he was so upset by this, because for him Catholicism is the one thing which is against revolution. And these Russians, this barbarous country, dares to say that they are the one Church. In fact, he described Russia as a country constantly lying in laziness, which only wakes up, stirs once in a while, in order to throw out some kind of blasphemy against the Pope. He felt that the Western peoples – in fact, he accused the Russians of having missed the whole development of Western civilization. And he does not see that that whole development is what led to the Revolution, because he puts it back only to the Renaissance. The Middle Ages is fine; that's the very peak as far as he is concerned. And he says the one big thing missing in Russia is the idea of universalism, which is represented by the Pope. We'll see what Dostoyevsky says – [a] very profound thing – about this very universalism.

# Tsar Nicholas I

Now we have a different kind of thing, because now we discuss the question of the traditionalism, anti-revolutionism in Russia. We'll start first with Nicholas I, and later on have some more general comments on this anti-revolutionary tradition in Russia.

As I said in the last lecture, Nicholas I was an exemplary monarch in the pure tradition of Russian absolutism. There is no constitution, no parliament. The king reigns supreme, Tsar reigns supreme. He was familiar with the Revolution. He went to see Owen, his experiment. He was very interested in making better the lot of the people. In this time [the] Industrial Revolution was even slightly coming to Russia, but much more in the West. And he studied the Revolution carefully and studied the doings of Louis XVI and already had a quite conscious view of what he was going to do.

We will quote some of the statements here from this book by [Nicholas] Talberg, who was a late professor in Jordanville. And as we now come to Russia, we'll see something different because these Western thinkers, they're all in the Catholic tradition or even Anglican tradition, and they're very clear thinkers. They see through the Revolution pretty well, but they're still participating in this Western atmosphere which is rather rationalistic. And they're lacking some kind of deeper rootedness in tradition. And these people, even this person [Talberg] who died just some years ago, you can see by what he writes, that he is himself deeply rooted in Orthodox tradition. And therefore his conclusions are not just conclusions of somebody who has thought the thing through, but are conclusions of somebody who feels what is the tradition of religion, Orthodox religion and the tradition, of the political tradition also.

Most of what he says will come of quotes from contemporaries of Nicholas I, who, when he's writing also you can see that he's very deeply conservative, not just in mind but his whole life, his whole heart is that way. And there are many Russians like this left. "For Emperor Nicholas I," he writes, "in the very first hours of his reign, there began his ardor" (striving) "to manfully hold up Russia against those frightful misfortunes which were threatening it by the criminal light-mindedness of the so-called Decembrists. This enthusiasm" struggling "of the Tsar ended thirty years later" (when he defended the Fatherland – this time

from external enemies – who hated Russia) “in the Crimean War when he died.”<sup>314</sup>

He was above all a man of principle and duty. “Emperor Nicholas was entirely penetrated with the consciousness of duty. During the time of the war for the fatherland,” that is, Napoleon’s invasion, “when he was sixteen years old, he was terribly anxious to go to the army. I am ashamed, he said, to see myself useless, a useless creature on the earth, not even fit to be able to die a brave death.”<sup>315</sup>

“Six years before he ascended the throne, he was terribly distressed to the point of tears when Emperor Alexander,” his older brother, “told him of his intention to leave the throne which he would hand over to Nicholas,” although there was one brother older than Nicholas, Constantine, “as a consequence of the fact that Tsarevitch Constantine did not wish to reign. Nicholas

[Pavlovitch] wrote in his dairy later,” the emperor, “This conversation finished, but my wife and I were left in the situation which may be likened...to the feeling which must strike a man who is going peacefully along a pleasant road which is sown everywhere with flowers and from which one sees everywhere the most pleasant views, when all of a sudden an abyss opens up before his feet, towards which an unconquerable power is pushing him without allowing him to step aside or to turn [back].”<sup>316</sup>

This is the way he felt from the very beginning that he was going to be Tsar. And he felt this was a terrible burden; he did not want to be the Tsar. You see the difference already: revolutionaries struggled just to beat everybody else off so they can be the head; and here this government which is based upon hereditary authority – the person who does not want the kingdom gets it, and he has to rule. But we see already there’s a much better possibility for a just rule under such conditions.

His kingdom, his reign began with the rebellion of the Decembrists, who were infected by the revolutionary ideas. “This is the way he spoke to the senior officers of the guard gathered by him on the morning of December 14th when the rebellion had become known already, and he said to them, “I am peaceful since my conscience is clear. You know, sirs, that I did not seek the crown. I do find that I

---

<sup>314</sup> Talberg, Nicholas Dimitrievitch, *Otechestvennaya Byl*, Holy Trinity Monastery, Jordanville, NY, 1960, p. 151.

<sup>315</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 161.

<sup>316</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 162.

have neither the experience nor the needful talents to bear such a heavy burden, but since the Lord entrusted this to me, and as it is likewise the will of my brothers and the fundamental laws of the land, therefore I shall dare to defend it, and no one in the world will be able to wrest it away from me. I know my obligations and I shall be able to fulfill them. The Russian emperor in case of misfortune must die with his sword in his hand. But, in any case, without foreseeing by what means we will be able to come out of this crisis, I will in that case entrust my son [to you].”<sup>317</sup>

[During] this rebellion of the Decembrists, which was not a bloody thing like happened in France – just a number of officers who began to demand a constitution and was easily dispersed because of the boldness of the Tsar – [he] went right out in the midst of them at the head of his troops. I believe the five ring leaders were hanged and the rest were sent into exile. And when he was asked about having mercy on them, he said, “The law dictates punishment for them, and I will not make use of the right of mercy that belongs to me regarding them. I will be unwavering, I am obliged to give this lesson to Russia and to Europe.”<sup>318</sup> Studying history in his youth, he was especially interested in the French Revolution. At that time he said, “King Louis XVI did not understand his obligations, and for this he was punished. To be merciful does not mean to be weak. The sovereign does not have the right to forgive the enemies of the government.”<sup>319</sup> And in 1825 these enemies were the Decembrists. And so the emperor subjected them to punishment. “But at the same time that he kept a strictness, the Sovereign revealed also great concern with regard to these rebels, which was bound up...with the general laws concerning prisoners.”<sup>320</sup>

We’ll see now what a contrast is here between this, [and] not only revolutionaries who simply kill people off without mercy, but even the liberals.

“In his own handwriting the emperor gave to the commandant of the Peter-Paul Fortress prison...the following words: The prisoner Ryleyev should be placed in the Alexeyevsky Prison, but his hands should not be bound. He should be given paper for writing, and whatever he will write to me in his own hand is to be given to me every day. The prisoner Karhovsky is to be kept better than ordinary prisoners. He’s to be given tea

---

<sup>317</sup> Ibid., p. 162.

<sup>318</sup> Ibid., p. 165.

<sup>319</sup> Ibid.

<sup>320</sup> Ibid.



and everything else that he wants. I will undertake the keeping of Karhovsky on my own income. Since Batenkov is sick and wounded, his condition is to be made as easy as possible. Sergei Muraviev is to be kept under strict arrest according to your judgment; he is wounded and weak. He is to be given everything he needs. There is to be every day a doctor's examination of him and his wounds are to be rebound. Then all the arrested and prisoners were ordered by the Tsar to be given a better type of food, tobacco, books of religious content, and a priest was to be allowed to come to them for spiritual conversation. They were not to be forbidden to write to their relatives, of course, only through the commandant," that is, he would read the letters. "On nineteenth of December the Sovereign sent the wife of" one of these revolutionaries, "Ryleyev two thousand rubles and a [reassuring] letter from her husband. She wrote to Ryleyev," that is, her husband, "My friend, I do not know with what feelings [or words] to express the unutterable mercy of our monarch. Three days ago the emperor sent your letter and right after it two thousand rubles. Teach me how to thank the father of our homeland. After the guilty ones were condemned, in a year, he made their condition even easier. The chief means of his mercy was through secret decrees. The fulfilling of them he entrusted to his authorized agent, General Leparsky. Go with the commandant to Nerchinsk" Serbia "and ease the lot of the unfortunate ones there, he told him. I give you full authority in this. I know that you will be able to harmonize the duty of service," that is, the fact that they're prisoners, "with Christian compassion. Leparsky fulfilled exactly the directions of the Sovereign and by this earned the love of the Decembrists and their wives. And all the good things which he did [for] the prisoners and their wives [they] thought were owing to his own good heart without understanding that he was only doing with great joy what had been commanded him by the Sovereign."<sup>321</sup>

We see here a spirit of Christian compassion which is totally foreign to Communism, to socialism, to liberalism, and to these even these ordinary monarchs in the West.

There were a few incidents in the life of Tsar Nicholas which reveal a different attitude to the whole process of governing and the attitude of the king toward his subjects. There was in 1849 "during the month of May a parade in which 60,000 troops took part. Many spectators were present. When at the time of the ceremonial march" – of course, the Tsar is standing there ready to salute the soldiers – "the second battalion of the Yegersky legion in which Lvov was the leader, the Sovereign with his inimitable voice, which was quite loud, commanded,

---

<sup>321</sup> Ibid.

Parade stop! The whole regiment stopped dead in their tracks. The Sovereign with a sign of his hand stopped the music and called Lvov,” the leader, “out of the ranks. In the hearing of all, he turned to him and said, Lvov, by an unfortunate mistake, you have unjustly and completely innocently suffered.” Because earlier he had accused him of taking part in this very conspiracy that Dostoyevsky was caught in: these people studying the writings of Fourier and talking about the overthrow of the government. And he was mistaken for somebody else by the Sovereign. And here and before sixty thousand troops and many thousands of spectators, he apologizes. “I beg forgiveness of you before the soldiers and the people. For the sake of God, forget all that has happened to you and embrace me. With these words bending down from his horse, the Sovereign three times kissed Lvov strongly. Having kissed the hand of the emperor, Lvov, who was thus made so happy, returned to his place. At the command of the Sovereign the march again began. This moment, says an eye witness, for those who saw it and heard the voice of their Sovereign, the feelings that filled their heart at that time cannot be called ecstasy. This was something beyond ecstasy. The blood stopped in one’s veins?”<sup>322</sup> to see the Sovereign of all Russia stop and ask forgiveness of simple officer.

But we see on another occasion what happened. There was a certain woman whose husband was imprisoned also in... [a] revolutionary affair of some kind. And she stopped him some place where he was looking at various institutions, and he allowed her to come and present a petition to him, and he began to read it. There was here a request to have mercy upon her husband who had taken an active part in the Polish rebellion which had occurred recently and for this had been sent to Siberia. And by the way, they were sent to Siberia under very easy conditions. They had their own houses, were well fed and everything else.

“-The Sovereign listened heedfully and the woman sobbed. Having read the petition the sovereign returned it to the petitioner and sharply declared, Neither the forgiveness nor even a lightening of the punishment of your husband can I give. And he cried out to the chauffeur to go further. When he returned the Sovereign withdrew into his office. Immediately after his return, there was a need for” this one officer “Bibikov to go to the Tsar with a report. There was a double door into this office. Having opened the first door and intending to go into the second, Bibikov stepped back in indescribable astonishment. In

---

<sup>322</sup> Ibid., p. 166.

the small corridor between the two doors, the Sovereign was standing and was all shaking from stifled sobs coming out of him. Great tears were coming out of his eyes. What is wrong with you, your majesty? Bibikov mumbled. Oh, Bibikov, he said, If you only knew how difficult [, how terrible] it is to be “unable to forgive”! I cannot forgive now this man, that would be weakness, but after some time make another report to me about him.”<sup>323</sup>

We see here the combination of absolute strictness because he knows that weakness leads to overthrow of government. And that exactly what the revolutionaries are feeding upon, this liberalism which creeps into their governments and allows them to constantly say, “Well, we really believe the same thing as you – almost. We’re working for the same end, and we’ll forgive you and everything will be fine.” And instead he was very strict, at the same time very merciful. And when the conditions were such that this weakness would not cause a temptation to people to say that he’s soft on the revolutionaries – and therefore the revolutionaries can develop themselves – then he’s extremely kind. And you can see his heart is filled with compassion for them; but his sense of duty would not allow him to do what would be for the harm of the whole people.

His attitude towards his whole people is not like in the West where they let the representatives have [an] entirely cold relation to the subjects, to the citizens, or even the Western kings who are obviously governing people of all kinds of different beliefs, and there’s no kind of particular warmth. In some Western states there still was – in the monarchies perhaps. This is rapidly being lost.

But the reign of Nicholas I “was something quite like a family, very patriarchal. And from him there was something paternal in his relationship towards his subjects. Being very severe and threatening towards the enemies of the kingdom, he was at the same time merciful and filled with love for his good and faithful subjects. In his addresses to the people and his soldiers, he would often address them as my children.”<sup>324</sup>

Once, he was travelling, he wanted to have a special word to say to certain troops. “He came to the tents where they were and he commanded, My troops, my children, come to me, everyone just as he dressed. This order was fulfilled precisely: some in their dress uniforms, some in overcoats, and some just in their underwear. And many of

---

<sup>323</sup> Ibid., pp. 167-169.

<sup>324</sup> Ibid., p. 172.

them lined up around the Sovereign and the Tsarevitch. And where is Conon Zabuga? The Tsar asked. This was a non-commissioned officer...who had recently distinguished himself. Here I am, your imperial majesty, resounded over the head of the Sovereign the loud voice of Zaboga, who, dressed only in his underwear, had climbed a tree to see the Tsar better. The Sovereign ordered him to climb down. And when he almost fell head over heels to the ground and stood up in the front, the emperor kissed him on the head and said, Give this to all your companions for their brave service. The captain of the general headquarters, Philipson,...who was an eyewitness of this, said, This whole scene, so sincere and unprepared, produced upon the troops a much deeper impression than any kind of eloquent speech would have.”<sup>325</sup>

Of course, under the old fashioned system, this was possible, that there’s such a humane relationship between the king and his subjects. Of course, the main thing about his spiritual makeup was his Orthodox faith. Here he describes in his dairy, the Tsar’s own dairy, what he did on the 14th of December when he was faced with the rebellion of the Decembrists. “Being left alone, I asked myself what to do and, crossing myself, I gave myself over to the hands of God, and decided to go myself wherever the danger threatened greatest. And he admitted later that at this time besides this decision, he had no definite plan of action, but to trust in God.”<sup>326</sup>

Another time he was traveling and fell down off his horse and broke his shoulder and he was left with only one of his orderlies. And this is what he said to the orderly. “I feel that I’ve broken my shoulder. This is good; this means God is waking me up. That one does not need to make any kind of plans without asking His help first.”<sup>327</sup> For a king to be thinking like this, of course, shows that he places – he is absolute ruler, theoretically, but above him is God.

Concerning his heir, Alexander, who became Alexander II, he says, “-We were speaking [also] about Shasha,” Alexander, “and we both thought that he was showing great weakness in his character, and was allowing himself to be easily given over to distractions. I am hoping all the time that this will pass as he grows up so that, because the foundations of his character are so good, one can expect a great deal. But without this,” strength of character, “he will fall; for his work?” as

---

<sup>325</sup> Ibis

<sup>326</sup> Ibid., p. 180.

<sup>327</sup> Ibid., p. 180

emperor “will be no lighter than mine. And what is it that saves me? Of course, not my talents. I am a simple man, but my hope in God and my firm will to act – that is all I have.”<sup>328</sup>

And when he was celebrating the 25th anniversary of his reign, and when people were surrounding him and giving him glory, his daughter went up to him and said, “Aren’t you happy now, papa? Aren’t you satisfied with yourself? And he said, with myself? And pointing his hand to heaven, he said, I am just a splinter of wood.”<sup>329</sup> That is, this very thing that we Americans have so strong – satisfaction with ourselves – the Tsar himself did not even have it. He is so aware that he is serving something else.

I have here the comments of a certain Spanish writer in the 1850’s writing about Tsar Nicholas, a certain Vidal. “In general,” he says, “the Eastern question,” which the Western diplomats were so occupied with then, the question of Turkey, “it is not strange that this question cannot be solved by those who so often allow themselves to be blinded by the disorderly theories of our so-called government representatives. But if we look with some heedfulness and dispassion at the character of Russian diplomacy, we will immediately see an enormous contrast which has always been presented, on the one hand, by the ability of the Moscow government, and on the other hand, by the paradoxes of our own government people.

“Intrigues and money are the agents which, more than anything else, affect our own governments.”<sup>330</sup> And we know at that time all the English, French – everybody was so filled with sending agents, and being bought up and everything else, thinking only about their narrow national interests, and breaking treaties as though they’re nothing, yet if there is a chance to get away with it. “Because we everywhere and always see such complete nonentities, with a few exceptions, in the higher places of administration, at the head of the armies, at the governance of the diplomatic corps, and even in the professorships of our universities. The Russian government does not follow this very poor example. They use in their service all the best people, without paying attention to” special “[their] political opinions, their origins,” and so forth. “In a word, the Russian government has always followed in this case, the most liberal politics which our representatives do not know anything about....

---

<sup>328</sup> Ibid., p. 180-1.

<sup>329</sup> Ibid., p. 181.

<sup>330</sup> Ibid., p. 188.

“After having fought against Islam for so many centuries, Christian Europe goes to it for assistance and has taken it under its protection when it was ready to fall apart, and, under the pretext of placing a barrier to despotism, it is sharpening its sword for the defense of another despotism.”<sup>331</sup>

This refers, of course, to the fact that, considering the Tsar is in this great peril, that they’re only trying to expand; the Western powers are constantly supporting Turkey. And [it] even happened that, during the Crimean War, the Tsar was kind, he did it only for the sake of the Orthodox peoples of the Balkans and Greece. And he knew that the English and French would take the side of the Turks just to oppose him. And he was counting on his, I think it was his cousin, the Emperor of Austria and of Germany. And they guaranteed that they would be on his side. But they found that it was diplomatically better to be on the other side because the balance was better that way, and therefore they broke their promises. And he wrote to the Emperor of Austria and he said, “Don’t tell me that you too are going to fight under the sign of the Turkish crescent. It’s enough for this barbarian English and French do it, but you my own cousin, you’re supposed to be standing for monarchy.”<sup>332</sup> And that hurt him very much when someone had given him a promise, his fellow monarch had given a promise, and would not keep it for the sake of politics. And he always was faithful to his promises.

This Spanish writer continues, “-A spirit of prejudice forces our journalists to speak about the Emperor Nicholas as of some despot, and one in love with his own honor, who by his personal caprices and his unrestrained pride is supposedly bringing the blood of his own people as a sacrifice, and also is sacrificing the balance of power in Europe and the good state of the whole world. But in actual fact there are not today many such sovereigns who are really worthy of praise, both for their gifts as for their personal and public virtues. Emperor Nicholas was a devoted man, a gentle and caring father, a faithful friend and monarch, who with all his power was concerned for the happiness of his subjects. All his daughters and grandchildren lived in his court, with

---

<sup>331</sup> Ibid.

<sup>332</sup> Fr. Seraphim is paraphrasing the letter to Emperor Franz-Joseph, January 4/16, 1854; quoted in Talberg, p. 188: “Are you allowing yourself, an apostolic emperor, to make interests of the Turks your own? Will your conscience permit this? If this happens, Russia will proceed alone under the protection of the holy Cross to its holy purpose. If you will support the cause of the Turks and go against me under the sign of the crescent, then this will lead to a patricidal war.”

the exception of the Grand Duchess Olga.... The people blessed his name and one must acknowledge that the whole of Europe is obliged to him for the preservation of the order, which is now being threatened by the senselessness and arrogance of this fierce Emperor Napoleon III.”<sup>333</sup>

This is interesting as a testament from outside of Russia. Of course, inside of Russia he was greatly loved by all except the revolutionaries. Now let us examine how such a one as this dies. I have a full account of his last days. The doctor who attended him said the following: “From the time when I began my medical practice, I have never seen a death anything like this death. I did not even consider it possible that the consciousness of precisely fulfilled duty joined with an unwavering firmness of will should to such an extent be dominant even at the fatal moment when the soul is freed from its earthly shell, so as to go to eternal repose and happiness. I repeat, I would have considered this impossible if I have had not had the misfortune to live to see all this man die.

“The Empress Alexandra Feodorevna offered to the Tsar,” as he was dying, “that he should receive Holy Communion. He was disturbed that he should have to receive the Holy Gifts lying down and not fully clothed. His confessor, the Protopresbyter Vasilli Vazhanoff, said that in his life he had instructed many poor people as they were dying, but never had he seen such a one, such faith as in Emperor Nicholas I, which triumphed over the approaching death. Another eyewitness of the last hours of the life of the Sovereign expressed the opinion that had an atheist been brought into the room of the Tsar then, he would have become a believer. After Communion the Sovereign pronounced the words, O Lord accept me in peace. The Empress recited Our Father. After the pronouncing of the Emperor’s favorite words, Thy will be done, he said, Always, always. Several times he then repeated the prayer, now lettest thou Thy servant depart in peace, O Master, according to Thy word.

“Then the Sovereign gave all necessary instructions concerning his burial. He demanded that there be as little expense as possible for the funeral. He forbade that the hall be decked with black where his body would be,” for this was not according to Orthodox custom, “He asked that there be placed in the coffin with him, the icon of the Mother of God Hodigitrea, [with] which at his baptism the Empress Catherine had blessed him,” that is, his grandmother Catherine II. “He blessed his

---

<sup>333</sup> Talberg, pp. 188-9.

children and those who were absent, he blessed from a distance. Grand Duchess Olga Nicholaevna, whom he loved so much, felt his paternal blessing at her place in Stuttgart. He called his nearest friends. To the heir to the throne he specially recommended Count Alderburg saying, This counselor has been a close friend to me for forty years.

Concerning Count Orloff, he said, You yourself know everything that needs to be done. I don't need to recommend anything to you. He gave his great thanks to the Empress' favorite maid, Madame Rorburg for her care for the Empress in her recent, which he shared with her. And in his bidding farewell to her, he said, Greet my dear Peterhof for me....

"All the reports which came from the army he commanded to be given over to the Tsarevitch. Then he asked that he be left alone for a while. Now, he said, I must be left alone so as to prepare myself for the final moment. I will call you when the time comes, he said.

"Later the Emperor called certain of the grenadiers, bade farewell to them, asking them to give his final greeting to those who were not there. He asked the tsarevitch to give his greetings also to the guards, to the army, and especially to those who had been defending Sebastopol," because he was dying at the very time when Russia was losing the Crimean War. "Tell them that I will continue to pray for them in the other world. He commanded that final telegrams be sent to Sebastopol and to Moscow with these words, The Emperor is dying and bids farewell to Moscow. At 8:20 his confessor, Father Boris began to read the prayer of the departure of the soul from the body. The Sovereign listened attentively to [the words of] these prayers, making the sign of the Cross over himself [from time to time]. When the priest blessed him and gave him the Cross to kiss, the dying Sovereign said, I think that I never did evil in my life consciously."

Notice how Francis says, "I do not recognize any sin in myself;" and he says, "I think that I never consciously did evil," that is, he confessed all his sins and realizes that he is full of sins but he thinks that he never actually did evil consciously.

"He held the hand of the Empress in his and the tsarevitch also, and when he could no longer speak he bid farewell to them with a glance. At ten o'clock the Sovereign lost the capability of speaking. But before his repose he began to speak again. He commanded the Tsarevitch to raise one of the princesses from her knees since this was bad for her health. Some of his last words were, speaking to the Tsarevitch, Hold on to everything, Hold on to everything, accompanying this with a



decisive gesture. Then the agony began and the Liturgy ended in the palace church.

“The wheezing before his death, wrote Tyucheva, kept getting stronger. His breathing became more and more difficult and sporadic. Finally, convulsions passed across his face and his head was thrown back. They thought that this was the end and already those around let out a cry of despair. But the Emperor opened his eyes, raised them to heaven, smiled and then it was all over. Seeing this death, so firm and so pious, one must think that the Emperor had for a long time foreseen it and had prepared himself for it.”<sup>334</sup>

Archbishop Nicanor of Cherson, about the death of the Emperor said, “His death was the image of the death of a Christian, for he was a man of repentance, in full possession of his faculties and of unwavering manliness.”<sup>335</sup>

In his testament he wrote, “I die with a grateful heart for all the good things by which God has been pleased to reward me in this world which passes away, with ardent love for our glorious Russia which I have served to my last to the best of my understanding with faith and righteousness. I regret that I could not do the good things which I so sincerely desired. My son will take my place. I shall entreat God that He will bless him for such a difficult work unto which he now enters, and will grant him to confirm Russia on the firm foundation of the fear of God. O, grant her,” that is, Russia “to come to fulfill its inward good order and he will push away all danger from without. In Thee, O Lord, I have hoped; let me not be ashamed unto the ages.”<sup>336</sup>

Again he tells in his will to the Tsarevitch, “Keep strictly all that our Church proscribes. You are young and inexperienced, and you are in those years when the passions are developing, but always remember that you must be an example of piety, and conduct yourself in such a way that by your life you might serve as a living example” to the people. “Be merciful and accessible to all the unfortunate ones, but do not spend money above the treasury.” Very pious. “Despise all kinds of slanders and rumors, but fear to go against your conscience. May the All merciful God bless you. Place all your hope in Him [alone]. He will not leave you as long as you will constantly turn to Him.”<sup>337</sup>

---

<sup>334</sup> Ibid., p. 195.

<sup>335</sup> Ibid., p. 197.

<sup>336</sup> Ibid.

<sup>337</sup> Ibid., p. 198.

## **Tsar Nicholas, Orthodox Tsar, anti- Revolution**

“He faithfully comprehended and precisely defined the triune origin of our historical existence: Orthodoxy, autocracy and nationality. He strictly and consistently steered it in his personal politics – not only internal, but external as well. He believed in Holy Russia, in her calling in the world, he labored for her benefit and stood untiring on the guard of her honor and dignity. – the historian, S. S. Tatishchev.

T. I. Tyutchev, in his notes, *Russia and Revolution*, wrote, At this opportunity, allow me to make the observation: In what way could it have happened that, among all the sovereigns of Europe, and equally among the political figures that guided her in recent times, only one could be found who, from the very beginning recognized and proclaimed the great delusion of 1830 and who, from that time alone in Europe, and perhaps alone amongst all those around him who constantly refused to yield to it. At that time (1848) fortunately, there was a Sovereign on the Russian throne in whom was embodied the Russian idea, and in the present world situation it was the Russian idea alone that was so distinct from the revolutionary environment, and which could evaluate the facts that manifested themselves in it. Had Nicholas died in 1850 he would not have lived until the disastrous war with France and England which cut short his life and cast a gloomy shadow over his reign. But this shadow exists only for contemporaries. In the light of dispassionate history it vanishes, and Nicholas stands in the ranks of the most celebrated and valiant kings in history. (Russ. Arch. 1873)<sup>338</sup>

## **Helped Austria without reward**

“In his *Thoughts and Recollections* prince Otto Bismark says, In the history of European states one can barely find another example of a monarch of a great power showing a neighboring state favor like that which Emperor Nicholas showed to Austria. Seeing the dangerous situation in which she found herself in 1849 he came to her aid with 150,000 troops, suppressed Hungary, reestablished the kings power and recalled his troops, without demanding for this from Austria any kind of concessions, any kind of compensation, and without even touching upon the disputed Eastern or Polish questions.

In Hungary and in Olmutz Emperor Nicholas acted with the conviction that he, as a representative of the monarchist principle, was

---

<sup>338</sup> Ibid., p. 200.

called by fate to declare war on the revolution, which approached from the West. He was an idealist and remained faithful to himself in all historical moments.<sup>339</sup>

### **Idealist**

“The famous general A. Dyugamel wrote: The throne had never yet been occupied by a more noble knight, by a more honorable man. He never consented to any trace whatever of the revolution, and even liberalism aroused his suspicion. In his capacity as the autocrat of all Russia, Emperor Nicholas came early to the conviction that there was no other salvation for the Empire than a union with conservative principles, and in the course of his thirty-year reign he never deviated from his pre-ordained path.<sup>340</sup>

### **Recognized Louis Phil**

“Confirmation of what has been said may be found in the Sovereigns relationship to the July revolution of 1830 in France and to the seizure of the throne by King Louis-Phillipe of Orleans, in violation of the lawful rights of the grandson of King Carl X. The Emperor for a long time did not agree to recognize him despite the arguments of the ambassador in France, Count Pozzo-Di-Bobro. Finally, to the arguments of the latter were joined those of the Minister of Internal Affairs, Count Nesselrode, who presented the Tsar with a corresponding report. On it the resolution was placed by the Sovereign: I know not which is more to be preferred – a republic, or a similar so-called monarchy. Then he added, I surrender to your arguments, but I call Heaven to witness that this is and always will be against my conscience, and that this is the most painful effort I have ever made.<sup>341</sup>

### **Gogol: Andreyev**

“We are in possession of a treasure which cannot be valued, – he thus characterizes the Church, and continues: This Church which, like a chaste virgin, is the only one that has preserved itself from the time of the Apostles in its innocent original purity; this Church which, complete with its profound dogmas and its most minute external rituals, was as it were brought down from Heaven for the Russian people

---

<sup>339</sup> Ibid., p. 201.

<sup>340</sup> Ibid., p. 202.

<sup>341</sup> Ibid., p. 203.

which alone has the power to resolve all the intricacies of our perplexities and questions. And this Church, which was created for life, we, even up to now, have not brought into our life.<sup>342</sup>

Gogol loudly and with conviction declared that the Truth is in Orthodoxy and in the Orthodox Russian autocracy; that the historical to be or not to be is resolved by Orthodox Russian culture, and that the immediate fate of the whole world depends on its preservation. The world is at the point of death and we are entering the pre-apocalyptic period of world history.<sup>343</sup>

Having been made indignant by the fact that Gogol dared to see the salvation of Russia in religio-mystical, inward activities, in ascetic podvigs and prayer; and that he therefore considered the work of preaching to be higher than all the works -

Belinsky, in this connection, wrote in his letter: Russia sees salvation neither in mysticism, nor in asceticism, nor in pietism, but in the success of civilization, enlightenment, and humanity. She needs neither sermons (she has heard enough of them) nor prayers (she has had enough of their endless repetitions), but the awakening in her people of a sense of human worth.<sup>344</sup>

## Alexander III:

**a. His tutor Pobedonostsev – gave him straight Orthodox, anti-revolutionary education, acquainted him with past in Revolution – Rachinsky (developed parish schools), Dostoyevsky, Melnikov and Pechersky.**

**b. Voices calling him to anti-liberal course<sup>345</sup>**

From a letter of Pobedonostsev to Alexander, March 6, 1881, 5 days after the murder of Tsar Alexander II: “I am resolving to write again, because things are terrible, and there is no time to lose. If they will sing you the old siren song, that you need to be calm, that you need to continue in a liberal direction, that you need to yield to so-called public opinion – O, for God’s sake, don’t believe them, Your Majesty; don’t listen. This would be ruin – the ruin of Russia and of you. This is as clear as day to me. Your safety would not be protected by this, but would be further diminished. The insane villains that killed your father

---

<sup>342</sup> Gogol, Nicholas, quoted in *Essays on the History of Russian Literature of the 19th Century*, I. M. Andreyev, p. 135.

<sup>343</sup> Andreyev, p. 136.

<sup>344</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 137.

<sup>345</sup> Talberg p. 229.

will not be satisfied with any concessions, and will only become more violent. And it can be suppressed – the evil seed can be torn up – only by fighting against it to the death, by iron and blood. To be victorious is not difficult – until now all have wished to flee the struggle and have deceived the reposed Sovereign, you, themselves, and everyone and everything in the world, because they were not people of reason, power and heart, but flaccid eunuchs and conjurers. No, Your Majesty – the only one sure, direct way is to stand on your feet and begin, not slumbering for a moment, a most holy fight, as there has only been in Russia. The whole nation awaits this authoritative decision and as soon as they sense the sovereign will, all will rise up, all will be revived and will regain their healthy color in the air.

On that day he received a note from the Sovereign: I thank you from my whole soul for your heartfelt letter, with which I am in full agreement. Drop by to see me tomorrow at 3 o'clock and I shall be happy to have a talk with you. All my hope is in God.<sup>346</sup>

Loris-Melikov had the intention to do Russia the favor of giving it a constitution or by setting a beginning to it by summoning deputies from all Russia. In this connection a conference took place in February with Emperor Alexander II. On March 2 the Council of Ministers was appointed to be at the Sovereigns for a final decision, but in the meantime Loris-Melikov had already prepared the triumphant publication of this, which was to have appeared in the Government Herald on the 5th. And suddenly the catastrophe. From the 2nd of March the magazines began, in connection with the regicide, to demand a constitution. Loris-Melikov sent to ask them that they be silent, if only for fifteen days. And then they gathered us in the Council of Ministers with the Sovereign on Sunday at 2 p.m. They invited me, the elderly S. G. Stroganov, and the grand dukes. The Sovereign, having declared what the business was, added that it had not been decided by the reposed and that it was in doubt and he asked all to speak without constraint. Loris-Melikov began to read the protocol and the draft declaration already prepared in the name of the new Sovereign in which he considered it as it were his sacred duty to fulfill the testament of his father. And imagine – they had the shamelessness to leave in this declaration now all the same motives that had been placed in the previous one: that public order had been established everywhere, the uprising had been suppressed, the exiles had returned, and so on. There is no time to describe all this in detail. The first one to come out against

---

<sup>346</sup> Talberg, p. 229.

it was Stroganov, briefly but energetically. Then Valuyev, Abaza and Milyutin gave bombastic speeches about how all Russia is waiting for this blessing. Milyutin at this time made a slip of the tongue, referring to the people as irrational masses. Valuyev, instead of the word people, used the word peoples. There further spoke Nabokov, Saburov, and the rest. Only Posyet and Makov came out against it. But when they turned to me, I could no longer hold back the waves of my indignation. Having explained all the falseness of the institution, I said that shame and disgrace covered my face when thinking of what a time we were discussing this, when the body of our Sovereign lay still unburied. And who was guilty in this? His blood was on us and on our children. We were all guilty in his death. What had we been doing all this time and during his reign? We talked and talked, listened to ourselves and to one another and everything from his institution was turned under our hands into a lie, and the freedom granted by him had become false. And in recent years, in years of explosions and mines, what had we done to protect him? We talked – and only that. All of our senses should have been concentrated in the fear that he might be murdered, but we allowed into our souls so many base, despicable fears and began to tremble before public opinions, that is, the opinions of contemptuous journalists, and what Europe would say. And we know that through magazines.

You can imagine with what thunder my words fell. Those adjacent to me, Abaz and Loris-Melikov, could barely contain their fury at me. Abaz replied quite sharply: From what the Ober-procurator of the Synod has said, it would follow that everything done in the past reign was of no use whatever – the freeing of the serfs and the rest – and that the only thing left for us to do after this is to request our dismissal. The Sovereign, who at my words His blood is on us interrupted me with the exclamation, This is true, supported me, saying that really all were guilty, and that he did not exclude himself. We spoke further. Pitiful words were heard, that something should be done, but that something meant the institution (constitution).<sup>347</sup>

**c. Most ministers were for liberalism, reforms in government, but Pobedonostsev and others were for autocracy. Alex, resolved to go against the spirit of the times, not give himself over to**

---

<sup>347</sup> Talberg, pp. 230-231. This is not included in the outline, but the last half of it is marked by Fr. Seraphim in his copy of Talbergs book, and one sentence is even underlined. This is from a letter of Pobedonostsev published in a magazine called Russian Archive.

**unrealizable fantasies and scabby liberalism. Against Constitution why? nationalism; Russian already had a constitution in Orthodoxy, ancient institution and trust of Tsar and people.**

**d. Pobedonostsev stands up against liberalism and constitutionalism, Tsars mournful, 232. Disturbances disappeared but heavy weight on the Tsar 233.**

On April 29, 1881 the decisive word of the Tsar rang out in a manifest, in which it was said: The voice of God commands us to embark vigorously upon the matter of governance, hoping in Divine Providence, with faith in the power and truth of autocratic rule, which we are called to uphold and preserve from any encroachment upon it, for the good of the people.

May the hearts of our faithful subjects – of all who love the fatherland and are dedicated to the royal authority, inherited from generation – who have been confounded by anxiety and terror, be encouraged. Under its protection, and in indissoluble union with it, our land has more than once survived great strife and has reached a state of power and glory in the midst of grievous trials and misfortunes, with faith in God, Who establishes her fate. Dedicating ourselves to our great service, we summon all our faithful subjects to serve us and the state in faith and righteousness in uprooting the revolts which have disgraced the Russian Land, in the confirmation of faith and morality, in the good upbringing of children, in the annihilation of falsehood and thievery, in the establishment of truth in the activities of the institutions granted Russia by its benefactor, our beloved father.

And here the darkness of sedition, cut through by the light, bright as lightning, of the Tsars words, began quickly to disperse – writes Nazarevsky. The revolt, which seemed invincible, melted like wax before the face of fire, vanished like smoke under the wings of the wind. Sedition in people's minds began quickly to be replaced by Russian sensibility; dissoluteness and self-will gave way to order and discipline. Freethinking no longer trampled upon Orthodoxy like some kind of Ultramontaniam, or upon our dear Church like clericalism. The authority of the indisputable and hereditary national Supreme rule stood again upon its historical, traditional height.

But it was not easy for the Autocrat to bear this difficult yoke for the benefit of Russia. On December 31, 1881, in a letter of reply to Pobedonostsev, the Sovereign wrote: I thank you, most gracious Constantine Petrovich, for your kind letter and all your wishes. A terrible, frightful year is coming to a close; a new one is beginning, and

what awaits us ahead? It is so frightfully difficult at times, that were it not for my faith in God and His limitless mercy, of course, I would have no other choice than to put a bullet through my head. But I am not fainthearted, and the chief thing is that I have faith in God and I believe that there will come, at last, happy days for our dear Russia. Often, very often I recall the words of the Holy Gospel: Let not your heart be troubled; believe in God and believe in Me. These powerful words act salutarily upon me. With full hope in Gods mercy, I close this letter: Thy will be done, O Lord.<sup>348</sup>

## St. John of Kronstadt

### At Deathbed Repose of Tsar Alexander III

A description of his last days is given by Nazarevsky, who was able to receive proper notification. On the 5th of October a bulletin carefully composed by Zakharyn and Professor Leiden (who was recalled from Berlin), concerning the serious illness of the Sovereign, made not only all Russia, but even the whole world wince. Everyone, in fear for the life of the Emperor, who had gained a powerful influence absolutely everywhere, began to pray for his recovery. It became clear to everyone, and to the sufferer himself, that the end was approaching. The bright mood and manly calmness of the sick Tsar were striking. Despite his weakness, insomnia and heart palpitations, he still did not wish to take to his bed and strove to continue his occupation with matters of state, of which the last were written reports concerning matters in the Far East, and Korea in particular.

By the 9th of October the invalid told his confessor for certain that he sensed the closeness of death and with great joy heard his suggestion that he receive the Holy Mysteries. He was only sorry for one thing – that he could not as before, as is usually done during Great Lent, prepare himself for this great Sacrament. At his confession, which took place soon thereafter, the Sovereign knelt and made full prostrations like a healthy man. But for Communion he was now no longer able to raise himself up. He was raised up by the Empress and his confessor. With profound reverence the Sovereign communed the Body and Blood of Christ. On the next morning, on October 10, the Sovereign cheerfully and sincerely met Fr. John of Kronstadt, who had arrived at Livadia; and in the evening, he met the fiancé of his firstborn, Princess Alix of Hesse, who had hastened to the Crimea.

---

<sup>348</sup> Ibid., pp. 232-3.



When he greeted the respected pastor the Sovereign, with the meekness that distinguished him, said: I myself did not dare to invite you to take such a long journey, but when Grand Duchess Alexandra Iosifovna suggested that I invite you to Livadia, I happily agreed to it, and I thank you for coming. I implore you to pray for me – I'm quite unwell. As Fr. John related, Then he went into the other room and asked me to pray together with him. He knelt, and I began to recite the prayers. His Majesty was praying with deep feeling; his head was bowed and he was immersed within himself. When I had finished, he arose and asked me to pray in the future.

In the evening, to meet his sons bride, he gave order to be given his dress coat and put it on and, despite the swelling in his feet, went to meet her. He expressed his paternal feelings to her, accepting her as a dear daughter, close to his heart.

The excitement of that day evidently had a good effect on him, and he began to feel better. This continued until October 18. This kindled the hope in those around him that the Sovereign would recover.

On a memorable day, October 17, Fr. John of Kronstadt gave the Sovereign the Holy Mysteries for the second time. After the Liturgy he went in to the sick man with the Holy Chalice in his hands. The Tsar firmly, clearly, and with deep feeling repeated the words of the priest: I believe, O Lord, and I confess that Thou art truly the Christ and he reverently received Communion from the Chalice. Tears of contrition fell upon his breast. He again felt an upsurge of energy, and the Sovereign was just about to set about his business again and even to work at night. But he became worse and an inflammatory process of the lungs came to light, along with expectoration of blood. The dying man manfully struggled with his infirmity and displayed the power of his will. On the 18th a courier was sent to Petersburg for the last time with resolved business. On the following day once again he endeavored to work on several reports and wrote for the last time: In Livadia. Read. But this was already his last day of service to Russia – the great toiler of the Russian Land became severely weakened and now awaited his approaching passage to the other world.

The Sovereign spent the night without sleep, earnestly waiting for the dawn and, arising from his bed, sat in an armchair. The day came, dismal and cold. A strong wind came up; the sea groaned with violent chopiness.

At seven o'clock the Sovereign sent for the Tsarevitch and spoke privately with him for about an hour. After this he summoned the

Empress, who found him in tears. He told her: I sense my end. The Empress said, For God's sake, don't say that – you'll be well. No, the Sovereign firmly replied, this has dragged on too long. I feel that death is close. Be at peace. In absolutely at peace. At 10 o'clock his relatives gathered around the dying man and he, fully conscious, tried to say an amiable word to each one. Recalling that the twentieth was the birthday of Grand Duchess Elizabeth Feodorovna, the Sovereign wanted to congratulate her. Conversing with his close ones, he did not forget about his soul and asked that his confessor be summoned to say prayers and desired again to commune the Holy Mysteries.

Having communed the Sovereign, the confessor wished to withdraw so as to leave the dying man among his family, but the Sovereign detained him and thanked him sincerely. The pastor, leaning towards the Sovereign, thanked him on behalf of the Holy Church, for the fact that he was always her unwavering son and faithful defender, on behalf of the Russian people, for whom he sacrificed all his strength and, finally, he expressed the firm hope that in the heavenly dwelling places there would be prepared for him an imperishable kingdom of glory and blessedness with all the saints.

At 11 o'clock the condition of the sick man became especially difficult; shortness of breath increased, the activity of his heart declined, and he asked that Fr. John of Kronstadt be summoned who, having come, anointed the body of the Sovereign with oil from the lampada and, in accordance with his request, placed his hands upon his head. Fearing that the respected pastor was becoming tired, the dying man asked him to rest, and when the latter asked him whether he was tiring him by holding his hands on his head, he heard, on the contrary, it's very easy for me when you hold them there. And he added, touchingly, the Russian people love you. With his weakening voice the Sovereign began to express his farewell affection, first to the Empress, then to the children. They stood near him and the Empress held his hand. At 2 o'clock his pulse increased. The last minutes had come. The royal sufferer, held up by the shoulders by the Tsarevitch, leaned his head upon the Empress shoulder, closed his eyes and quietly reposed. It was 2:15 in the afternoon. So ended his life this good sufferer for the Russian Land, as in ancient Rus they called his holy heavenly protector, the Right-believing Alexander Newsy.

The ever-memorable Fr. John thus described these sorrowful days: On October 17, by the wish of the reposed-in-God Sovereign Emperor he was given communion of the Holy Mysteries by me. I celebrated the

Liturgy daily, either in the Livadia church, or occasionally in Oreand, and on the aforementioned day, directly after celebrating the Liturgy in the latter church, I hastened with the Cup of life to the August (sick one), who received with reverent feelings, from my hands, the life-creating Mysteries.

On October 20, the Sovereign Emperor again wished to see me. I hastened to appear immediately after celebrating the Liturgy and remained in the Imperial presence right up to the blessed repose of the Sovereign. By wish of the Empress I read the prayer for healing for the sick one and anointed his feet and other parts of his body with oil. This oil from the lampada of a revered miracle-working icon, by wish of zealous people, was provided by one of the priests of Yalta, Fr. Alexander, for the anointing of the August (sick one), which was done. Receiving with sincere faith this reverent zeal, the Sovereign Emperor expressed the wish that I lay my hands on his head, and when I held them there, His Majesty said to me, The people love you. Yes, said I, Your Majesty, your people love me. Then he deigned to say, Yes – because they know who you are and what you are. (His exact words). After this, the August (sick one) felt a strong attack of shortness of breath, and oxygen was continually pumped into his mouth. He was in great pain. On the left of the August (sick one) was the Empress; before him stood his two eldest sons and the bride of the Tsarevitch; on the right were Grand Duke Michael Alexandrovich and Olga Alexandrovna; and I stood by the headrest of the armchair. Is it not painful for Your Imperial Majesty that I'm holding my hands on your head? No, the Sovereign deigned to answer, It's easier for me when you hold your hands over me. This was because I had appeared immediately after serving Liturgy, and in the palms of my hands held the Most Pure Body of the Lord and had been a partaker of the Holy Mysteries.

Kronstadt

November 8, 1894

Archpriest John Sergiev<sup>349</sup>

---

<sup>349</sup> Ibid., pp. 245-8.

## Pobedonostsev<sup>350</sup>

1. Russian tradition unique not influenced by Revolution or liberalism:<sup>351</sup>
2. Quotes 120-3.<sup>352</sup>
3. Watched over new literature and philosophy and art, admired Tsar against Solneyei, Tolet, blasphemous paintings of Ge, Opera during Lent against what is revolting and propagandistic.

---

<sup>350</sup> Notes from Fr. Ss Revolution chapter of Anarchism manuscript: Only, however, in the supremely reactionary, autocratic Russian Empire did the political order itself retain – for all its weakening in the period of Westernization – some sense of its old, absolute foundation; and even in Russia it was only, perhaps, a very few statesmen like Pobedenostsev who were seriously concerned to preserve this foundation. Also in his notes for the Empire, Old Order chapter, Fr. S. lists a quote by Pobedenostsev: Russia has been strong thanks to autocracy, thanks to the unlimited mutual trust between the people and its tsars.

<sup>351</sup> Viereck 84-5.

<sup>352</sup> Source for this?

## Dostoyevsky

(1) Radical youth caught in Fourierist group, condemned, Siberia, then became Tsarist. Having himself been deeply infected by revolutionary disease, he saw deeper than anyone its meaning and end.<sup>353</sup>

Dostoyevsky lived, well he died 1881 or 2, and his life was, in his youth he was at the very time when Gogol was being converted, in the 1840's, Dostoyevsky was taking part in discussion groups. There was one group called Petrochevsky Group, which was discussing the socialist ideas of Fourier. But this group was not serious as a, they were not trying to overthrow the government, whenever they talked about things like that, it was on a very naive level. They had no organization, no thought at all about overthrowing the government or taking over. They just had idealistic notions about how wonderful it would be if everybody was peaceful and harmonious, it were a perfect government and nobody oppressed anybody else, and Fourier seemed to point to that.

Fourier was just a crazy man who lived in the West, crazy, that is, according to, but he was in the spirit of the times. And later on he bequeathed this to people like Marx who made this whole idea much more serious, made it so-called "scientific." But Fourier was dreaming about paradise with lemonade fountains and all kinds of images like that. But this spirit of egalitarianism and socialism sort of was in the air, that was the way the Western ideas were largely coming in from Europe.

And Dostoyevsky was discussing these and dreaming about the bright future, already writing novels. And then he was caught. That is, this group was found out by the Tsar's police. They broke in and arrested him together with other people from his group. And he was then sentenced to death. They thought it was a serious thing; they were going to execute them and cut off the revolution at the root. But the Tsar had in mind – Tsar Nicholas I who had a very patronizing attitude towards his subjects – that is, he had a very personal interest in the fate of each subject. And he did this, he allowed this death sentence to be given, intending to, not to carry it through, so that his people would – when they found themselves in front of the executioners and then the sentence was postponed or abrogated – come to their senses and repent.

---

<sup>353</sup> The following is taken from Fr. S's Russian Literature Lecture Passage

And in the case of Dostoyevsky, it had just that effect. The other ones, I don't know how they ended up. But he went through, of course, his whole life comes to an end – he's still a young man in his 30's, even late 20's, and he sees the rifles drawn in front of him – his life comes to its end. What has he done? He hasn't thought much about religion up till then. And then all of a sudden they say the Tsar has pardoned you. You will have eight years in Siberia instead.

So he went to Siberia, and he's written in some of his books his experiences in Siberia. He lived eight years in Siberia, he lived a very hard life. They slept on hard boards, many people in a room. The food was poor, although Solzhenitsyn makes a point of comparing accounts like the ones Dostoyevsky describes with accounts of Communist prisons. And what sounds to us like a terrible time, after he describes Communist prisons, then he describes Tsarist prisons – it's obvious that the Tsarist prisons were quite luxurious compared to the Communist prisons. Of course, Dostoyevsky, being a lower class, did not have a comfortable exile that many of the upper class people did, who just lived like free citizens in exile. But he went through this experience which, from the political side, made him, after eight years in Siberia under very difficult times under a difficult regime, come out a Tsarist, Orthodox Christian, and converted to the whole idea of Tsarism. It means that there was something deep happening in him, and he reformed his whole ideas about life, about Christianity, about where he was going, about the meaning of life. But at the same time, that's from the philosophical side, his whole ideas are going to about the Grand Inquisitor and the meaning of modern history and so forth. On the Christian side, I'd like to emphasize today, he went through some kind of a special thing. He was converted to Christianity, Christian ideas, and he began to write stories....<sup>354</sup>

The Possessed analyzes revolutionary mentality, both its stupidities and deep thinkers:<sup>355</sup>

Virginsky himself was rather unwell that evening, but he came in and sat in an easy chair by the tea table. All the guests were sitting down too, and the orderly way in which they were ranged on chairs suggested a meeting. Evidently all were expecting something and were filling up the interval with loud but irrelevant conversation. When Stavrogin and Verkovensky appeared there was a sudden hush.

But I must be allowed to give a few explanations to make things clear.

---

<sup>354</sup> End of 1980 Russian Literature Lecture Passage

<sup>355</sup> pp. 397-400 on Quintets;

I believe that all these people had come together in the agreeable expectation of hearing something particularly interesting and had notice of it beforehand. They were the flower of the reddest Radicalism of our ancient town and had been carefully picked out by Virginsky for this meeting. I may remark, too, that some of them (though not very many) had never visited him before. Of course, most of the guests had no clear idea why they had been summoned. It was true that at that time all took Pyotr Stepanovitch for a fully authorized emissary from abroad; this idea had somehow taken root among them at once and naturally flattered them. And yet among the citizens assembled ostensibly to keep a name-day, there were some who had been approached with definite proposals. Pyotr Verkovensky had succeeded in getting together a quintet amongst us like the one he had already formed in Moscow and, as appeared later, in our province among the officers. It was said that he had another X province. This quintet of the elect were sitting now at the general table, and very skillfully succeeded in giving themselves the air of being quite ordinary people, so that no one could have known them. They were – since it is no longer a secret – Liputin, then Virginsky himself, then Shigalov (a gentleman with long ears, the brother of Madame Virginsky), Lyamshin, and lastly a strange person called Tolkatchenko, a man of forty, who was famed for his vast knowledge of the people, especially of thieves and robbers. He used to frequent the taverns on purpose (though not only with the object of studying the people), and plumed himself on his shabby clothes, tarred boots, and crafty wink and a flourish of peasant phrases. Lyamshin had once or twice brought him to Stepan Trofimovitch's gatherings, where, however, he did not make a great sensation. He used to make his appearance in the town from time to time, chiefly when he was out of a job; he was employed on the railway.

Every one of these five champions had formed this first group in the fervent conviction that their quintet was only one of hundreds and thousands of similar groups scattered all over Russia, and that they all depended on some immense central but secret power, which in its turn was intimately connected with the revolutionary movement all over Europe. But I regret to say that even at that time there was beginning to be dissension among them. Though they had ever since the spring been expecting Pyotr Verkovensky, whose coming had been heralded first by Tolkatchenko and then by the arrival of Shigalov, though they had expected extraordinary miracles from him, and though they had responded to his first summons without the slightest criticism, yet they had no sooner formed the quintet than they all somehow seemed to feel insulted; and I really believe it was owing to the promptitude with which they consented to join. They had joined, of course, from a not ignoble feeling of shame, for fear people might say afterwards that they had not dared to join; still they felt Pyotr Verkovensky ought to have appreciated their heroism and

have rewarded it by telling them some really important bits of news at least. But Verkovensky was not at all inclined to satisfy their legitimate curiosity and told them nothing but what was necessary; he treated them in general with great sternness and even rather casually. This was positively irritating, and Comrade Shigalov was already egging the others on to insist on his explaining himself, though, of course, not at Virginskys, where so many outsiders were present.

I have an idea that the above-mentioned members of the first quintet were disposed to suspect that among the guests of Virginskys that evening some were members of other groups, unknown to them, belonging to the same secret organization and founded in the town by the same Verkovensky; so that in fact all present were suspecting one another, and posed in various ways to one another, which gave the whole party a very perplexing and even romantic air. Yet there were persons present who were beyond all suspicion. For instance, a major in the service, a near relation of Virginsky, a perfectly innocent person who had not been invited but had come of himself for the name-day celebration, so that it was impossible not to receive him. But Virginsky was quite unperturbed, as the major was incapable of betraying them; for in spite of his stupidity he had all his life been fond of dropping in wherever extreme Radicals met; he did not sympathize with their ideas himself, but was very fond of listening to them. What's more, he had even been compromised indeed. It had happened in his youth that whole bundles of manifestoes and of numbers of *The Bell* had passed through his hands, and although he had been afraid even to open them, yet he would have considered it absolutely contemptible to refuse to distribute them – and there are such people in Russia even to this day.

The rest of the guests were either types of honorable amour-propre crushed and embittered, or types of the generous impulsiveness of ardent youth. There were two or three teachers, of whom one, a lame man of forty-five, a master in the high school, was a very malicious and strikingly vain person; and two or three officers. Of the latter, one very young artillery officer who had only just come from a military training school, a silent lad who had not yet made friends with anyone, turned up now at Virginskys with a pencil in his hand, and scarcely taking any part in the conversation, continually made notes in his notebook. Everybody saw this, but everyone pretended not to. There was, too, an idle divinity student who had helped Lyamshin to put indecent photographs into the gospel-woman's pack. He was a solid youth with a free-and-easy though mistrustful manner, with an unchangeably satirical smile, together with a calm air of triumphant faith in his own perfection. There was also present, I don't know why, the mayor's son, that unpleasant and prematurely exhausted youth to whom I have referred already in telling the story of the lieutenant's little wife. He was silent the whole evening. Finally, there was



a very enthusiastic and tousle-headed schoolboy of eighteen, who sat with the gloomy air of a young man whose dignity has been wounded, evidently distressed by his eighteen years. This infant was already the head of an independent group of conspirators which had been formed in the highest class of the gymnasium, as it came out afterwards to the surprise of everyone.

I haven't mentioned Shatov. He was there at the farthest corner of the table, his chair pushed back a little out of the row. He gazed at the ground, was gloomily silent, refused tea and bread, and did not for one instant let his cap go out of his hand, as though to show that he was not a visitor, but had come on business, and when he liked would get up and go away. Kirillov was not far from him. He, too, was very silent, but he did not look at the ground; on the contrary, he scrutinized intently every speaker with his fixed, lustreless eyes, and listened to everything without the slightest emotion or surprise. Some of the visitors who had never seen him before stole thoughtful glances at him. I can't say whether Madame Virginsky knew anything about the existence of the quintet. I imagine she knew everything and from her husband. The girl-student, of course, took no part in anything; but she had an anxiety for her own: she intended to stay only a day or two and then to go on farther and farther from one university town to another to show active sympathy with the sufferings of poor students and to rouse them to protest. She was taking with her some hundreds of copies of a lithographed appeal; I believe of her own composition. It is remarkable that the schoolboy conceived an almost murderous hatred for her from the first moment, though he saw her for the first time in his life; and she felt the same for him. The major was her uncle and met her today for the first time after ten years. When Stavrogin and Verkovensky came in, her cheeks were as red as cranberries: she had just quarreled with her uncle over his views on the woman question.<sup>356</sup>

"Shigalov went on: Dedicating my energies to the study of the social organization which is in the future to replace the present condition of things, I've come to the conviction that all makers of social systems from ancient times up to the present year, 187-, have been dreamers, tellers of fairy-tales, fools who contradicted themselves, who understood nothing of natural science and the strange animal called man. Plato, Rousseau, Fourier, columns of aluminum, are only fit for sparrows and not for human society. But, now that we are all at last preparing to act, a new form of social organization is essential. In order to avoid further uncertainty, I propose my own system of world-organization. Here it is. He tapped the notebook. I wanted to expound my views to the meeting in the most concise form possible, but I see that I should need to add a great many

---

<sup>356</sup> Dostoyevsky, Fyodor, *The Possessed*, transl. Constance Garnett, The Modern Library, Inc., Random House, Inc., 1963, pp. 397-400.

verbal explanations, and so the whole exposition would occupy at least ten evenings, one for each of my chapters. (There was the sound of laughter.) I must add, besides, that my system is not yet complete. (Laughter again.) I am perplexed by my own data and my conclusion is a direct contradiction of my original idea with which I start. Starting from unlimited freedom, I arrive at unlimited despotism. I will add, however, that there can be no solution of the social problem but mine.

The laughter grew louder and louder, but it came chiefly from the younger and less initiated visitors. There was an expression of some annoyance on the faces of Madame Virginsky, Liputin, and the lame teacher.

If you've been unsuccessful in making your system consistent, and have been reduced to despair yourself, what could we do with it? one officer observed warily.

You are right, Mr. Officer, Shigalov turned sharply to him – especially using the word despair. Yes, I am reduced to despair. Nevertheless, nothing can take the place of the system set forth in my book, and there is no other way out of it; no one can invent anything else. And so I hasten without loss of time to invite the whole society to listen for ten evenings to my book and then give their opinions of it. If the members are unwilling to listen to me, let us break up from the start – the men to take up service under government, the women to their cooking; for if you reject my solution you'll find no other, none whatever! If they let the opportunity slip, it will simply be their loss, for they will be bound to come back to it again.

There was a stir in the company. Is he mad, or what voices asked.

So, the whole point lies in Shigalov's despair, Lyamshin commented, and the essential question is whether he must despair or not?

Shigalov's being on the brink of despair is a personal question, declared the schoolboy.

I propose we put it to a vote how far Shigalov's despair affects the common cause, and at the same time whether its worth while listening to him or not, an officer suggested gaily.

That's not right. The lame teacher put in his spoke at last. As a rule he spoke with a rather mocking smile, so that it was difficult to make out whether he was in earnest or joking. That's not right, gentlemen. Mr. Shigalov is too much devoted to his task and is also too modest. I know his book. He suggests as a final solution of the question the division of mankind into two unequal parts. One-tenth enjoys absolute liberty and unbounded power over the other nine-tenths. The others have to give up all individuality and become, so to speak, a herd, and, through boundless submission will by a series of regenerations, attain primeval innocence, something like the Garden of Eden. They'll have to work, however. The measures proposed by the author for depriving nine-tenths of mankind of

their freedom and transforming them into a herd through the education of whole generations are very remarkable, founded on the facts of nature and highly logical. One may not agree with some of the deductions, but it would be difficult to doubt the intelligence and knowledge of the author. It's a pity that the time required – ten evenings – is impossible to arrange for, or we might hear a great deal that's interesting.

Can you be in earnest? Madame Virginsky addressed the lame gentleman with a shade of positive uneasiness in her voice, when that man doesn't know what to do with people and so turns nine-tenths of them into slaves? I've suspected him for a long time.

You say that of your own brother? asked the lame man.

Relationship? Are you laughing at me?

And besides, to work for aristocrats and to obey them as though they were gods is contemptible! observed the girl-student fiercely.

What I propose is not contemptible; its paradise, an earthly paradise, and there can be no other on earth, Shigalov pronounced authoritatively.

For my part, said Lyamshin, if I didn't know what to do with nine-tenths of mankind, I'd take them and blow them up into the air instead of putting them in paradise. I'd only leave a handful of educated people, who would live happily ever afterwards on scientific principles.

No one but a buffoon can talk like that! cried the girl, flaring up.

He is a buffoon, but he is of use, Madame Virginsky whispered to her.

And possibly that would be the best solution of the problem, said Shigalov, turning hotly to Lyamshin. You certainly don't know what a profound thing you've succeeded in saying, my merry friend. But as it's hardly possible to carry out your idea, we must confine ourselves to an earthly paradise, since that's what they call it.

That's pretty thorough rot, broke, as though involuntarily, from Verkovensky. Without even raising his eyes, however, he went on cutting his nails with perfect nonchalance.

Why is it rot? The lame teacher took it up instantly, as though he had been lying in wait for his first words to catch at them. Why is it rot? Mr. Shigalov is somewhat fanatical in his love for humanity, but remember that Fourier, still more Cabet and even Proudhon himself, advocated a number of the most despotic and even fantastic measures. Mr. Shigalov is perhaps far more sober in his suggestions than they are. I assure you that when one reads his book it's almost impossible not to agree with some things. He is perhaps less far from realism than anyone and his earthly paradise is almost the real one – if it ever existed – for the loss of which man is always sighing.

I knew I was in for something, Verkovensky muttered again.

Allow me, said the lame man, getting more and more excited.

Conversations and arguments about the future organization of society are almost an actual necessity for all thinking people nowadays. Herzen was

occupied with nothing else all his life. Byelinsky, as I know on very good authority, used to spend whole evenings with his friends debating and settling beforehand even the minutest, so to speak, domestic, details of the social organization of the future.

Some people go crazy over it, the major observed suddenly.

We are more likely to arrive at something by talking, anyway, than by sitting silent and posing as dictators, Liputin hissed, as though at last venturing to begin the attack.

I didn't mean Shigalov when I said it was rot, Verkovensky mumbled. You see, gentlemen, – he raised his eyebrows a trifle – to my mind all these books, Fourier, Cabet, all this talk about the right to work, and Shigalov's theories – are all like novels of which one can write a hundred thousand – an aesthetic entertainment. I can understand that in this little town you are bored, so you rush to ink and paper.

Excuse me, said the lame man, wriggling on his chair, though we are provincials and of course objects of commiseration on that ground, yet we know that so far nothing has happened in the world new enough to be worth our weeping at having missed it. It is suggested to us in various pamphlets made abroad and secretly distributed that we should unite and form groups with the sole object of bringing about universal destruction. Its urged that, however much you tinker with the world, you can't make a good job of it, but that by cutting off a hundred million heads and so lightening ones burden, one can jump over the ditch more safely. A fine idea, no doubt, but quite as impractical as Shigalov's theories, which you referred to just now so contemptuously.

Well, but I haven't come here for discussion. Verkovensky let drop this significant phrase, and, as though quite unaware of his blunder, drew the candle nearer to him that he might see better.

It's a pity, a great pity, that you haven't come for discussion, and it's a great pity that you are so taken up just now with your toilet.

What's my toilet to you?

To remove a hundred million heads is as difficult as to transform the world by propaganda. Possibly more difficult, especially in Russia, Liputin ventured again.

Its Russia they rest their hopes on now, said an officer.

We've heard they are resting their hopes on it, interposed the lame man. We know that a mysterious finger is pointing to our delightful country as the land most fitted to accomplish the great task. But there's this: by the gradual solution of the problem by propaganda I shall gain something, anyway – I shall have some pleasant talk, at least, and shall even get some recognition from government for my services to the cause of society. But in the second way, by the rapid method of cutting off a hundred million heads, what benefit shall I get personally? If you begin advocating that, your tongue might be cut out.

Yours certainly would be, observed Verkovensky.

You see. And as under the most favorable circumstances you would not get through such a massacre in less than fifty or at the best thirty years – for they are not sheep, you know, and perhaps they would not let themselves be slaughtered -- wouldn't it be better to pack ones bundle and migrate to some quiet island beyond calms seas and there close ones eyes tranquilly? Believe me – he tapped the table significantly with his finger – you will only promote emigration by such propaganda and nothing else!

He finished evidently triumphant. He was one of the intellects of the province....<sup>357</sup>

## Shigalov

[Verkovensky speaking]...To cut the matter short – for we can't go on talking for another thirty years as people have done for the last thirty – I ask you which you prefer: the slow way, which consists in the composition of socialistic romances and the academic ordering of the destinies of humanity a thousand years hence, while despotism will swallow the savory morsels which would almost fly into your mouths of themselves if you'd take a little trouble; or do you, whatever it may imply, prefer a quicker way which will at last untie your hands, and will let humanity make its own social organization in freedom and in action, not on paper? They shout a hundred million heads; that may be only a metaphor; but why be afraid of it if, with the slow day-dreams on paper, despotism in the course of some hundred years will devour not a hundred but five hundred million heads? Take note too that an incurable invalid will not be cured whatever prescriptions are written for him on paper. On the contrary, if there is delay, he will grow so corrupt that he will infect us too and contaminate all the fresh forces which one might still reckon upon now, so that we shall all at last come to grief together. I thoroughly agree that it's extremely agreeable to chatter liberally and eloquently, but action is a little trying....

However, I am no hand at talking; I came here with communications, and so I beg all the honorable company not to vote, but simply and directly to state which you prefer: walking at a snail's pace in the marsh, or putting on full steam to get across it?

I am certainly for crossing at full steam! cried the schoolboy in an ecstasy.

So am I, Lyamshin chimed in.

There can be no doubt about the choice, muttered an officer, followed by another, then by someone else. What struck them all most was that Verkovensky had come with communications and had himself just promised to speak.

---

<sup>357</sup> The Possessed, pp. 409-413.

Gentlemen, I see that almost all decide for the policy of the manifestoes, he said, looking round at the company.

All, all! cried the majority of voices.<sup>358</sup>

Shigalov is a man of genius! Do you know he is a genius like Fourier, but bolder than Fourier; stronger. I'll look after him. He's discovered equality!

He is in a fever; he is raving; something very queer has happened to him, thought Stavrogin, looking at him once more. Both walked on without stopping.

He's written a good thing in that manuscript, Verkovensky went on. He suggest a system of spying. Every member of the society spies on the others. and it's his duty to inform against them. Every one belongs to all and all to everyone. All are slaves and equal in their slavery. In extreme cases he advocates slander and murder, but the great thing about it is equality. To begin with, the level of education, science, and talents is lowered. A high level of education and science is only possible for great intellects, and they are not wanted. The great intellects have always seized the power and been despots. Great intellects cannot help being despots and they've always done more harm than good. They will be banished or put to death. Cicero will have his tongue cut out, Copernicus will have his eyes put out eyes, Shakespeare will be stoned – that's Shigalovism. Slaves are bound to be equal. There has never been either freedom or equality without despotism, but in the herd there is bound to be equality and that's Shigalovism. Ha ha ha! Do you think it strange? I am for Shigalovism....

Listen, Stavrogin. To level the mountains is a fine idea, not an absurd one. I'm all for Shigalov! Down with culture. We've had enough science! Even Without science we have material enough to go on for a thousand years, but one must have discipline. The one thing wanting in the world is discipline. The thirst for culture is an aristocratic thirst. The moment you have family ties or love you get the desire for property. We will destroy that desire; we make use of drunkenness, slander, spying; well make us e of incredible corruption; well stifle every genius in its infancy. Well reduce all to a common denominator! Complete equality! We've learned a trade; and we are honest men; we need nothing more, that was an answer given by English working-men recently. Only the necessary is necessary, that's the motto of the whole world henceforward. But it needs a shock. That's for us, the directors, to look after. Slaves must have directors. Absolute submission, absolute loss of individuality, but once in thirty years Shigalov would let them have a shock and they would all suddenly begin eating one another up, to a certain point, simply as a precaution against boredom. Boredom is an aristocratic sensation. The Shigalovians

---

<sup>358</sup> Ibid., p. 415.

will have no desires. Desire and suffering are our lot, but Shigalovism is for the slaves.

You exclude yourself? Stavrogin broke in again.

You, too. Do you know, I have thought of giving up the world to the Pope. Let him come forth on foot, and barefoot, and show himself to the rabble, saying, See what they have brought me to! and they will all rush after him, even the troops. The Pope at the head, with us around him, and below us – Shigalovism. All that's needed is that the Internationale should come to an agreement with the Pope, so it will. And the old chap will agree at once. There's nothing else he can do.<sup>359</sup>

### **Kirillov: On New Religion**

And then he has this man, this character Kirillov, who is the philosopher who came to the conclusion since there's no God, I must be god. And if I'm god, I have to do something that proves I'm god. And you can't just live an ordinary life. Therefore, you must do something which is spectacular. It must be something which is absolute and proves that you have authority over yourself. Course the main proof that you have authority is over your own life – therefore to prove that I am god – I must kill myself. That's the logic. To us it makes no sense. That man is crazy. But it makes perfect sense, and once you reject Christianity, that's very logical.<sup>360</sup>

“I am bound to show my unbelief, said Kirillov, walking about the room. I have no higher idea than disbelief in God. I have all the history of mankind on my side. Man has done nothing but invent God so as to go on living, and not kill himself; that's the whole of universal history up till now. I am the first one in the whole of human history who would not invent God. let them know it once for all.

Do you understand now that the salvation for consists in proving this idea to every one? Who will prove it? ! I can't understand how an atheist could know that there is no God and not kill himself on the spot. To recognize that there is no God and not to recognize at the same instant that one is God oneself is an absurdity, else one would certainly kill oneself. If you recognize it you are sovereign, and then you won't kill yourself but will live in the greatest glory. But one, the first, must kill himself, for else who will begin and prove it? So I must certainly kill myself, to begin and prove it. Now I am only a god against my will and I am unhappy, because I am bound to assert my will. All are unhappy because all are afraid to express their will. Man has hitherto been so unhappy and so poor because

---

<sup>359</sup> Ibid., pp. 424-425.

<sup>360</sup> Taken from 1980 Survival Course Lecture on Nietzsche

he has been afraid to assert his will in the highest point and has shown his self-will only in little things, like a schoolboy. I am awfully unhappy, for I am awfully afraid. Terror is the curse of man.... But I will assert my will. I am bound to believe that I don't believe. I will begin and make an end of it and open the door, and will save. That's the only thing that will save mankind and will recreate the next generation physically; for with this present physical nature man can't get on without his former God, I believe. For three years I've been seeking for the attribute of my godhead and I've found it; the attribute of my godhead is self-will! That's all I can do to prove in the highest point my independence and my new terrible freedom. For it is terrible. I am killing myself to prove my independence and my new terrible freedom.<sup>361</sup>

Therefore, finally, since he has human nature, he's scared of killing himself and he's constantly hesitating, then along comes a character like Lenin, who's this Verkovensky, who uses this, tries to persuade him to kill himself and then blame it on somebody else in order to gain some kind of a disorder so that his revolutionary circle could begin to take over. And he finally persuades him. He says, "All right, go on, kill yourself. Sign this paper that says that you'll down with the capitalists and so forth, and then kill yourself. I'll stand right here and hold the door open for you." And he says, "No, I can't. I must do it on a big scale. I must do it in front of everybody." He says, "No, no, just do it quiet here. And the note is all written here." And I think he finally pushes him, finally kills himself. These kind of people are with us. They're all over the place.<sup>362</sup>

## **Crime and Punishment**

**On man who want to be beyond good and evil, kills for an idea Napoleon Superman. But ends in repentance and opening of Christian life.<sup>363</sup>**

Although a large part of the book [*Crime and Punishment*] is before he kills the woman, he is constantly thinking that he should do it, and he goes through these, it's basically Nietzsche's idea that if there is no God, then everything is permitted. And this of course has its philosophical, political form, but from the Christian point of view this

---

<sup>361</sup> Ibid., p. 628-30. Fr. S's Anarchism notes have these quotes from Kirillov: If there is no God, then I am God.... If God exists, all is His will and from His will I cannot escape. If not, it's all my will and I am bound to show self-will.... the attribute of my godhead is self-will!

<sup>362</sup> Taken from 1980 Survival Course Lecture on Nietzsche

<sup>363</sup> The following is taken from Fr. S's taped lecture on Russian Literature



means that I can do anything. And he keeps thinking of Napoleon. Here's a man who comes from the ranks, and he goes out, becomes the leader of a country. And he's allowed to kill whoever he wants, just because he's the head of the country. That means there must be a class of Supermen.

It's based upon entirely, in fact, this is, the kingdoms of this world vs. the kingdom of Christ. According to the kingdom of Christ we all must humble ourselves before God. And according to the philosophy of the world, of the power of this world, there are some people who are strong. If you're strong you have the right to trample on others. He's Machiavellian: government can do ups as long as the prince has the power. Or Nietzsche: that you can do anything you want as long as you are one of these Supermen.

And so he's going through these agonizing dialogues with himself. He goes and visits the woman. He sees how she behaves. He's casing the joint, seeing how he will do it, where she goes, where she keeps the money. And there's a second woman, her sister, it is? And the one he begins to build in his mind an image that she's hateful, she's just like an insect. All these actually un-Christian things that they come from rationalistic ideas which were coming from the West. And you look at what Marx came up with in the West, actually the idea that you can go and do whatever you want just as long as you take over, make people violent. It's part of the idea that while the revolution goes on when people kill somebody else, it makes them violent. And therefore they can be tools for the revolution. In other words people are to be used as things. That's exactly the opposite of Christianity.

But his conscience is there; he can't help it. And therefore he keeps hesitating, and he condemns himself, "Are you so weak, you can't do it?" He's accusing himself. "You're supposed to be a Superman and you can't do it, you can't go through with it!" And finally he gets the nerve, and goes and hits, I think debates whether he should kill them both or just one. Finally he gets...

...[The other woman] comes in or something at the last minute. He didn't want to kill her and he gets all upset by that, and decides he has to kill her too. And then he's stuck. I think he takes hardly any money – just a little. He gets so hysterical he goes and hides it someplace. And then begins his torments. If he's Superman he should feel absolutely cool and calm. She's just a flea, some kind of insect. She doesn't need to live, and I'm the Superman. I'm going to prepare myself by college education so I can help the Western ideas to come to enlighten Russia.

But meanwhile his conscience begins to operate and he cannot understand why he's not at peace. For one thing he faults himself because he didn't get enough money. But then, something happens inside of him, and shows this Christianity cannot be, the conscience planted by God and developed by the Christian Church cannot be silenced. And then begins this terrible duel between him and this interrogator who is investigating the case, and he never knows whether he knows he did it, suspects he did it, whether he suspects somebody else, but is constantly...if he didn't have a bad conscience, he wouldn't have any problem.

And in the end it turns out that this interrogator is just waiting for him to confess. And he finally says, "Who do you think it is? Tell me." And he said, "Why, it's you, Rodya Romanovitch. You killed her. But I'm waiting for you to come by yourself and tell us." And so he almost goes crazy. What should he do? Should he run away?

And then he meets this girl Sonya, who is a prostitute, that is the lowest element of society, and outside Christianity, Christian sympathy or anything. Why is she a prostitute? Because she has to support her mother. And she didn't want to do it; she has Christian faith. But she has to; it's the only way she can get money. In other words this absolutely helpless, pitiful creature. And she's going to be the one that saves this man who is deluded by these Western ideas. And he begins to talk to her. She shows the Gospel. "Oh. Gospel, anything but the Gospel!" And she begins to talk about Jesus Christ. And gradually his heart begins to soften. And finally he goes to her, I think at the end, to decide whether he should give himself up. And he says, "What shall I do? They'll send me to Siberia and finished." And she said, "Oh, I'll come with you to Siberia." And he went, how can this be someone like that, the lowest dregs of society? And she, she loves me? That she'll come to Siberia to be with me?" And he finally is so crushed, he finally got, he gets on his knees before the police station and says, "I DID IT! Kill me, take me away!"

And this is a very strong thing, by the way, in the Russian temperament.

Well, with [Sophia], the case was that she preserved her Orthodoxy, her Christianity, even though externally she was a sinner, she couldn't receive Communion, she was constantly in a state of sin. And he of his own free will went away from it, and therefore this purity, actually the purity of Christianity remained in her even though she was, in fact, the fact that she was a sinner probably even increased it because she knew

that she was no good, the last dregs of society, she was a hopeless case. And yet she retained Jesus Christ, and therefore she could preach the Gospel to this sophisticated, although he wasn't too sophisticated, just a student, but still he had these high ideas, and eventually melt his heart and convert him. And then it says they went to Siberia, and he begins I think to describe a little of it, and then he says the rest of the story is a different story. He doesn't tell you what happened in Siberia. Because he went to Siberia and came back a converted man himself.

That's probably the, the most perfect as a work of art of Dostoyevsky – it's all complete in one, one volume; he doesn't just sort of go over his head.<sup>364</sup>

---

<sup>364</sup> End of Russian Literature Lecture Passage

## **Grand Inquisitor<sup>365</sup>**

The Brothers Karamozov presents the same cold, calculating Western mentality. Ivan Karamazov is theorizing about sort of his ideas of the Grand Inquisitor, it's presented as his idea. By the way Dostoyevsky makes clear there that's there's some kind of a little man in the stove pipe who keeps coming to him, it's an image of the devil, the fact that he was in contact with some other power, who gives him his wonderful ideas and he comes up with this idea about – he keeps thinking Christianity can't, he has a debates with Alyosha, the young brother who's supposed to be the hero. Alyosha wants true Christianity, and he sees his brothers are tormented. They don't have peace, and his father's a rascal, old-type devoshid, and his children are, this Ivan who is cold, calculating type, no faith in Christ, he can't believe everything Alyosha says about Christ.

### **Ivan Karamazov's Philosophy**

To begin with, for the sake of being Russian. Russian conversations on such subjects are always carried on inconceivably stupidly. And secondly, the stupider one is, the closer one is to reality. The stupider one is the clearer one is. Stupidity is brief and artless, while intelligence wriggles and hides itself. Intelligence is a knave, but stupidity is honest and straightforward. I've led the conversation to my despair, and the more stupidly I have presented it, the better for me.

You will explain why you don't accept the world? said Alyosha.

To be sure I will, it's not a secret, that's what I've been leading up to. Dear little brother, I don't want to corrupt you or to turn you from your stronghold, perhaps I want to be healed by you. Ivan smiled suddenly quite like a gentle child. Alyosha had never seen such a smile on his face before.

### **Rebellion**

I must make you one confession, Ivan began. I could never understand how one can love ones neighbors. It's just ones neighbors, to my mind, that one can't love, though one might love those at a distance. I once read somewhere of John the Merciful, a saint, that when a hungry, frozen beggar came to him, he took him into his bed, held him in his arms, and began breathing into his mouth, which was putrid and loathsome from some awful disease. I am convinced that he did that from self-laceration,

---

<sup>365</sup> Taken from the 1980 Survival Course Lecture on Nietzsche

from the self-laceration of falsity, for the sake of the charity imposed by duty, as a penance laid on him. For anyone to love a man, he must be hidden, for as soon as he shows his face, love is gone.

Father Zossima has talked of that more than once, observed Alyosha, he, too, said that the face of a man often hinders many people not practiced in love, from loving him. But yet there's a great deal of love in mankind, and almost Christ-like love. I know myself, Ivan.

Well, I know nothing of it so far, and can't understand it, and the innumerable mass of mankind are with me there. The question is, whether that's due to men's bad qualities or whether it's inherent in their nature. To my thinking, Christ-like love for men is a miracle impossible on earth. He was God. But we are not gods. Suppose I, for instance, suffer intensely. Another can never know how much I suffer, because he is another and not I. And what's more, a man is rarely ready to admit another's suffering (as though it were a distinction). Why won't he admit it, do you think? Because I smell unpleasant, because I have a stupid face, because I once trod on his foot. Besides there is suffering and suffering; degrading, humiliating suffering such as humbles me – hunger, for instance, – my benefactor will perhaps allow me; but when you come to higher suffering – for an idea, for instance – he will very rarely admit that, perhaps because my face strikes him as not at all what he fancies a man should have who suffer for an idea. And so he deprives me instantly of his favor, and not at all from badness of heart. Beggars, especially genteel beggars, ought never to show themselves, but to ask for charity through the newspapers. One can love one's neighbor in the abstract, or even at a distance, in the ballet, where if beggars come in, they wear silken rags and tattered lace and beg for alms dancing gracefully, then one might like looking at them. But even then we should not love them. But enough of that. I simply wanted to show you my point of view. I meant to speak of the suffering of mankind generally, but we had better confine ourselves to the sufferings of the children. That reduces the scope of my argument to a tenth of what it would be. Still we'd better keep to the children, though it does weaken my case. But, in the first place, children can be loved even at close quarters, even when they are dirty, even when they are ugly (I fancy, though, children never are ugly). The second reason why I don't speak of grown-up people is that, besides being disgusting and unworthy of love, they have a compensation – they've eaten the apple and know good from evil, and they have become like god. They go on eating it still. But the children haven't eaten anything, and are so far innocent. Are you fond of children, Alyosha? I know you are, and you will understand why I prefer to speak of them. If they, too, suffer horribly on earth, they must suffer for their fathers' sins, they must be punished for their fathers, who have eaten the apple; but that reasoning is of the other world and is incomprehensible for the heart of man here on earth. The innocent must not suffer for another's sins, and

especially such innocents! You may be surprised at me, Alyosha, but I am awfully fond of children, too. And observe, cruel people, the violent, the rapacious, the Karamazovs are sometimes very fond of children. Children while they are quite little – up to seven, for instance – are so remote from grown-up people; they are different creatures, as it were, of a different species. I knew a criminal in prison who had, in the course of his career as a burglar, murdered whole families, including several children. But when he was in prison, he had a strange affection for them. He spent all his time at his window, watching the children playing in the prison yard. He trained one little boy to come up to his window and made great friends with him.... You don't know why I am telling you all this, Alyosha? My head aches and I am sad.

You speak with a strange air, observed Alyosha uneasily, as though you were not quite yourself.

By the way, a Bulgarian I met lately in Moscow, Ivan went on, seeming not to hear his brother's words, told me about the crimes committed by Turks and Circassians in all parts of Bulgaria through fear of a general rising of the Slavs. They burn villages, murder, outrage women and children, they nail their prisoners by the ears to the fences, leave them so till morning, and in the morning they hang them – all sorts of things you can't imagine. People talk sometimes of bestial cruelty, but that's a great injustice and insult to the beasts; a beast can never be so cruel as a man, so artistically cruel. The tiger only tears and gnaws, that's all he can do. He would never think of nailing people by the ears, even if he were able to do it. These Turks took a pleasure in torturing children, too; cutting the unborn child from the mother's womb, and tossing babies up in the air and catching them on the points of their bayonets before their mothers' eyes. Doing it before the mothers' eyes was what gave zest to the amusement. Here is another scene that I thought very interesting. Imagine a trembling mother with her baby in her arms, a circle of invading Turks around her. They've planned a diversion; they pet a baby, laugh to make it laugh. They succeed, the baby laughs. At that moment a Turk points a pistol four inches from the baby's face. The baby laughs with glee, holds out its little hands to the pistol, and he pulls the trigger in the baby's face and blows out its brains. Artistic, wasn't it? By the way, Turks are particularly fond of sweet things, they say.

Brother, what are you driving at? asked Alyosha.

I think if the devil doesn't exist, but man has created him, he has created him in his own image and likeness.

Just as he did God, then? observed Alyosha.

It's wonderful how you can turn words, as Polonius says in Hamlet, laughed Ivan. You turn my words against me. Well, I am glad. Yours must be a fine God, if man created Him in His image and likeness. You asked just now what I was driving at. You see, I am fond of collecting certain

facts, and, would you believe, I even copy anecdotes of a certain sort from newspapers and books, and I've already got a fine collection. The Turks, of course, have gone into it, but they are foreigners. I have specimens from home that are even better than the Turks. You know we prefer beating – rods and scourges – that is our national institution. Nailing ears is unthinkable for us, for we are, after all, Europeans. But the rod and the scourge we have always with us and they cannot be taken from us. Abroad now they scarcely do any beating. Manners are more humane, or laws have been passed, so that they don't dare to flog men now. But they make up for it in another way just as national as ours. And so national that it would be practically impossible among us, though I believe we are being inoculated with it, since the religious movement began in our aristocracy. I have a charming pamphlet, translated from the French, describing how, quite recently, five years ago, a murderer, Richard, was executed – a young man. I believe, of three and twenty, who repented and was converted to the Christian faith at the very scaffold. This Richard was an illegitimate child who was given as a child of six by his parents to some shepherds on the Swiss mountains. They brought him up to work for them. He grew up like a little wild beast among them. The shepherds taught him nothing, and scarcely fed or clothed him, but sent him out at seven to herd the flock in cold and wet, and no one hesitated or scrupled to treat him so. Quite the contrary, they thought they had every right, for Richard had been given to them as a chattel, and they did not even see the necessity of feeding him. Richard himself describes how in those years, like the Prodigal Son in the Gospel, he longed to eat of the mash given to the pigs, which were fattened for sale. But they wouldn't even give him that, and beat him when he stole from the pigs. And that was how he spent all his childhood and his youth, till he grew up and was strong to go away and be a thief. The savage began to earn his living as a day laborer in Geneva. He drank what he earned, he lived like a brute, and finished by killing and robbing an old man. He was caught, tired, and condemned to death. They are not sentimentalists there. And in prison he was immediately surrounded by pastors, members of Christian brotherhoods, philanthropic ladies, and the like. They taught him to read and write in prison, and expounded the Gospel to him. They exhorted him, worked upon him. drummed at him incessantly, till at last he solemnly confessed his crime.<sup>366</sup>

What comfort is to me that there are none guilty and that cause follows effect simply and directly, and that I know it – I must have justice, or I will destroy myself. And not justice in some remote infinite time and space, but here on earth, and that I could see myself. I have believed in it. I want to see it, and if I am dead by then, let me rise again, for if it all happens

---

<sup>366</sup> Dostoyevsky, Fyodor, *The Brothers Karamazov*, transl. by Constance Garnett, Modern Library, Random House. Inc., New York, no date, pp. 245-248.

without me, it will be too unfair. Surely I haven't suffered, simply that I, my crimes and my sufferings, may manure the soil of the future harmony for somebody else. I want to see with my own eyes the hind lie down with the lion and the victim rise up and embrace his murderer. I want to be there when everyone suddenly understands what it has all been for. All the religions of the world are built on this longing, and I am a believer. But then there are the children, and what am I to do about them? That's a question I can't answer. For the hundredth time I repeat, there are numbers of questions, but I've only taken the children, because in their case what I mean is so unanswerably clear. Listen! If all must suffer to pay for the eternal harmony, what have children to do with it, tell me, please? It's beyond all comprehension why they should suffer, and why they should pay for the harmony. Why should they, too, furnish material to enrich the soil for the harmony of the future? I understand solidarity in sin among men. I understand solidarity in retribution, too; but there can be no such solidarity with children. And if it is really true that they must share responsibility for all their fathers crimes, such a truth is not of this world and is beyond my comprehension. Some jester will say, perhaps, that the child would have grown up and have sinned, but you see he didn't grow up, he was torn to pieces by dogs, at eight years old. Oh, Alyosha, I am not blaspheming! I understand, of course, what an upheaval of the universe it will be, when everything in heaven and earth blends in one hymn of praise and everything that lives and has lived cries aloud: Thou art just, O Lord, for Thy ways are revealed. When the mother embraces the fiend who threw her child to the dogs, and all three cry aloud with tears, Thou art just, O Lord! then, of course, the crown of knowledge will be reached and all will be clear. But what pulls me up here is that I can't accept that harmony. And while I am here on earth, I make haste to take my own measures. You see, Alyosha, perhaps it really may happen that if I live to that moment, or rise again to see it, I, too, perhaps may cry aloud with the rest, looking at the mother embracing the child's torturer, Thou art just, O Lord! but I don't want to cry aloud then. While there is still time, I hasten to protect myself and so I renounce the higher harmony altogether. It's not worth the tears of that one tortured child who beat itself on the breast with its little fist and prayed in its stinking outhouse, with its unexpiated tears to dear kind God! It's not worth it, because those tears are unatoned for. They must be atoned for, or there can be no harmony. But how? How are you going to atone for them? Is it possible? By their being avenged? But what do I care for avenging them? What do I care for a hell for oppressors? What good can hell do, since those children have already been tortured? And what becomes of harmony, if there is hell? I want to forgive. I want to embrace. I don't want more suffering. And if the sufferings of children go to swell the sum of sufferings which was necessary to pay for truth, then I protest that the truth is not worth such a price. I don't want the mother to



embrace the oppressor who threw her son to the dogs! She dare not forgive him! Let her forgive him for herself, if she will, let her forgive the torturer for the immeasurable suffering of her mother's heart. But the sufferings of her tortured child she has no right to forgive; she dare not forgive the torturer, even if the child were to forgive him! And if that is so, if they dare not forgive, what becomes of harmony? Is there in the whole world a being who would have the right to forgive and could forgive? I don't want harmony. From love for humanity I don't want it. I would rather be left with the unavenged suffering. I would rather remain with my unavenged suffering and unsatisfied indignation, even if I were wrong. Besides, too high a price is asked for harmony; it's beyond our means to pay so much to enter on it. And so I hasten to give back my entrance ticket, and if I am an honest man I am bound to give it back as soon as possible. And that I am doing. It's not God that I don't accept, Alyosha, only I most respectfully return Him the ticket.

That's rebellion, murmured Alyosha, looking down.

Rebellion? I am sorry you call it that, said Ivan earnestly. One can hardly live in rebellion, and I want to live. Tell me yourself, I challenge you – answer. Imagine that you are creating a fabric of human destiny with the object of making man happy in the end, giving them peace and rest at last, but that it was essential and inevitable to torture to death only one tiny creature – that baby beating its breast with its fist, for instance – and to found that edifice on its unavenged tears, would you consent to be the architect on those conditions? Tell me, and tell the truth.

No, I wouldn't consent, said Alyosha softly.

And can you admit the idea that men for whom you are building it would agree to accept their happiness on the foundation of the unexpiated blood of a little victim? And accepting it would remain happy forever?

No, I can't admit it. Brother, said Alyosha suddenly, with flashing eyes, you said just now, is there a being in the whole world who would have the right to forgive and could forgive? But there is a Being and He can forgive everything, all and for all, because He gave His innocent blood for all and everything, You have forgotten Him, and on Him is built the edifice, and it is to Him they cry aloud, Thou art just, O Lord, for Thy way are revealed!

Ah! the One without sin and His blood! No, I haven't forgotten Him; on the contrary I've been wondering all the time how it was you did not bring Him in before, for usually all arguments on your side put Him in the foreground. Do you know. Alyosha – don't laugh! I made a poem about a year ago. If you can waste another ten minutes on me, I'll tell it to you.

You wrote a poem?

Oh, no, I didn't write it, laughed Ivan, and I've never written two lines of poetry in my life. But I made up this poem in prose and I remembered it. I was carried away when I made it up. You will be my first reader – that is,

listener. Why should an author forego even one listener? smiled Ivan.  
Shall I tell it to you?

I am all attention, said Alyosha.

My poem is called The Grand Inquisitor; it's a ridiculous thing, but I  
want to tell it to you.<sup>367</sup>

---

<sup>367</sup> Ibid., pp. 253-257.

## Grand Inquisitor: Part 2<sup>368</sup>

Therefore he devises this idea of the Grand Inquisitor which is meant to be the idea of Antichrist, but based upon the ideas of the Roman Church, and that is all the bad ideas of the Roman Church which produced the Inquisition and this whole idea of calculation, taking over from the true Christianity of the heart. So he produces this very somehow, sort of revolutionary idea of a dictatorship in which people are given bread and circuses with, and maybe even given religion but there's no reality behind it, that is, there's no eternal life, no God. And the people are fooled to keep them quiet....

He came in softly, unobserved, and yet, strange to say, every one recognized Him. That might be one of the best passages in the poem. I mean, why they recognize Him. The people are irresistibly drawn to Him, they surround Him, they flock about Him, follow Him. He moves silently in their midst with a gentle smile of infinite compassion. The sun of love burns in His heart, light and power smile from His eyes, and their radiance, shed on people, stirs their hearts with responsive love. He holds out His hands to them, blesses, them, and a healing virtue comes from contact with Him, even with His garments. An old man in the crowd, blind from childhood, cries out, O Lord, heal me and I shall see Thee! and, as it were, scales fall from his eyes and the blind man see Him. The crowd weeps and kisses the earth under His feet. Children throw flowers before Him, sing, and cry hosanna. It is He – it is He! all repeat. It must be He, it can be no one but Him! He stops at the steps of the Seville cathedral at the moment when the weeping mourners are bringing in a little open white coffin. In it lies a child of seven, the only daughter of a prominent citizen. The dead child lies hidden in flowers. He will raise your child, the crowd shouts to the weeping mother. The priest, coming to meet the coffin, looks perplexed, and frowns, but the mother of the dead child throws herself at His feet with a wail. If it Thou, raise my child! she cries, hold out her hands to Him. The procession halts, the coffin is laid on the steps at His feet. He looks with compassion, and His lips once more softly pronounce, Maiden, arise! and the maiden arises. The little girl sits up in the coffin and looks around, smiling with wide-open wondering eyes, holding a bunch of white roses they had put in her hand.

There are cries, sobs, confusion among the people, and at that moment the cardinal himself, the Grand Inquisitor, passes by the cathedral. He is an old man, almost ninety, tall and erect, with a withered face and sunken eyes, in which there is still a gleam of light. He is not dressed in his gorgeous cardinal's robes, as he was the day before, when he was burning the enemies of the Roman Church – at that moment he was wearing his

---

<sup>368</sup> Taken from the 1980 Survival Course Lecture on Nietzsche

coarse, old, monks cassock. At a distance behind him come his gloomy assistants and slaves and the holy guard. He stops at the sight of the crown and watches it from a distance. He sees everything; he sees them see the coffin down at His feet, sees the child rise up, and his face darkens. He knits his thick grey brows and his eyes gleam with a sinister face. He holds out his finger and bids the guards take Him. And such is his power, so completely are the people cowed into submission and trembling obedience to him, that the crowd immediately make way for the guards, and in the midst of deathlike silence they lay hands on Him and lead Him away. The crowd instantly bows down to the earth, like one man, before the old inquisitor. He blesses the people in silence and passes on. The guards lead their prisoner to the close, gloomy vaulted prison in the ancient palace of the Holy Inquisition and shut Him in it. The day passes and is followed by the dark, burning breathless night of Seville. The air is fragrant with laurel and lemon. In the pitch darkness the iron door of the prison is suddenly opened and the Grand Inquisitor himself comes in with a light in his hand. He stands in the doorway and for a minute or two gazes into His face. At last he goes up slowly, sets the light on the table and speaks.

Is it Thou? Thou? but receiving no answer, he adds at once, Don't answer, be silent. What canst Thou say, indeed? I know too well what Thou wouldst say. And Thou hast no right to add anything to what Thou hadst said of old. Why, then, art Thou come to hinder us? For Thou hast come to hinder us, and Thou knowest that. But dost Thou know what will be tomorrow? I know not who Thou art and care not to know whether it is Thou or only a semblance of Him, but tomorrow I shall condemn Thee and burn Thee at the stake as the worst of heretics. And the very people who have today kissed Thy feet, tomorrow at the faintest sign from me will rush to heap up the embers of Thy fire. Knowest Thou that? Yes, maybe Thou knowest it, he added with thoughtful penetration, never for a moment taking his eyes off the Prisoner.

I don't quite understand, Ivan. What does it mean? Alyosha, who had been listening in silence, said with a smile. Is it simply a wild fantasy, or a mistake on the part of the old man – some impossible quid pro quo?

Take it as the last, said Ivan laughing, if you are so corrupted by modern realism and can't stand anything fantastic. If you like it to be a case of mistaken identity let it be so. It is true, he went on laughing, the old man was ninety, and he might well be crazy over his set idea. He might have been struck by the appearance of the Prisoner. It might, in fact, be simply his ravings, the delusion of an old man of<sup>369</sup>, ninety, over-excited by the auto-da of a hundred heretics the day before. But does it matter to us after all whether it was a mistake of identity or a wild fantasy? All that

---

<sup>369</sup> Ibid 260-1

matters is that the old man should speak out, should speak openly of what he has thought in silence for ninety years.

And the Prisoner too is silent? Does He look at him and not say a word?

That's inevitable in any case, Ivan laughed again. The old man has told Him He hasn't the right to add anything to what He has said of old. One may say it is the most fundamental feature of Roman Catholicism, in my opinion at least.<sup>370</sup> All has been given by Thee to the Pope, they say, and all, therefore, is still in the Popes hands, and there is no need for Thee to come now at all.<sup>371</sup> Thou must not meddle for the time at least. That's how they speak and write too – the Jesuits, at any rate. I have read it myself in the works of their theologians. Hast Thou the right to reveal to us one of the mysteries of that world from which Thou hast come? my old man asks Him, and answers the question for Him. No, Thou hast not; that Thou mayest not add to what has been said of old, and mayest not take from men the freedom which Thou didst exalt when Thou wast on earth. Whatsoever Thou revealest anew will encroach on men's freedom of faith; for it will be manifest as a miracle, and the freedom of their faith was dearer to Thee than anything in those days fifteen hundred years ago. Didst Thou not often say then, I will make you free? But now Thou has seen these free men, the old man add suddenly, with a pensive smile. Yes, we've paid dearly for it, he goes on, looking sternly at Him, but at last we have completed that work in Thy name. For fifteen centuries we have been wrestling with Thy freedom, but now it is ended and over for good. Dost Thou not believe that it's over for good? Thou lookest meekly at me and deignest not even to be wroth with me. But let me tell Thee that now, today, people are more persuaded than ever that they have perfect freedom, yet they have brought their freedom to us and laid it humbly at our feet. But that has been our doing. Was this what Thou didst? Was this Thy freedom?

I don't understand again, Alyosha broke in. Is he ironical, is he jesting?

Not a bit of it! He claims it as a merit for himself and his Church that at last they have vanquished freedom and have done so to make men happy. For now (he is speaking of the Inquisition, of course) for the first time it has become possible to think of the happiness of men. Man was created a rebel; and how can rebels be happy? Thou wast warned, he says to Him. Thou hast no lack of admonitions and warnings, but Thou didst not listen to those warnings; Thou didst reject the only way by which men might be made happy. But, fortunately, departing Thou didst hand the work on to us. Thou hast promised, Thou hast established by Thy word, Thou hast given to us the right to bind and to unbind, and now, of course, Thou canst not think of taking it away. Why, then, hast Thou come to hinder us?

---

<sup>370</sup> Fr. Ss notes in Anarchism on the Grand Inquisitor begin here

<sup>371</sup> Not in Fr. Ss notes

And what is the meaning of no lack of admonitions and warnings? asked Alyosha.

Why, that's the chief part of what the old man must say.

The wise and dread Spirit, the spirit of self-destruction and non-existence, the old man goes on, the great spirit talked with Thee in the wilderness, and we are told in the books that he tempted Thee. Is that so? And could anything truer be said than what he revealed to Thee in three questions and what Thou didst reject, and what in the books is called the temptation? And yet if there has ever been on earth a real stupendous miracle, it took place on that day, on the day of the three temptations. The statement of those three questions was itself the miracle. If it were possible to imagine simply for the sake of argument that those three questions of the dread spirit had perished utterly from the books, and that we had to restore them and to invent them anew, and to do so had gathered together all the wise men of the earth – rulers, chief priests, learned men, philosophers, poets – and had set them the task to invent three questions, such as would not only fit the occasion, but express in three words, three human phrases, the whole future history of the world and of humanity – dost Thou believe that all the wisdom of the earth united could have invented anything in depth and force equal to the three questions which were actually put to Thee then by the wise and mighty spirit in the wilderness? From those questions alone, from the miracle of their statement, we can see that we have here to do not with the fleeting human intelligence, but with absolute and eternal. For in those three questions the whole subsequent history of mankind is, as it were, brought together into one whole, and foretold, and in them are united all the unsolved historical contradictions of human nature. At the time it could not be so clear, since the future was unknown; but now that fifteen hundred years have passed, we see that everything in those three questions was so justly divined and foretold, and has been so truly fulfilled, that nothing can be added to them or taken from them.<sup>372</sup>

Judge Thyself who was right – Thou or he who questioned Thee then? Remember the first question; its meaning, in other words, was this: Thou wouldst go into the world, and art going with empty hands, with some promise of freedom which men in their simplicity and their natural unruliness cannot even understand, which they fear and dread – for nothing has ever been more insupportable for a man and a human society than freedom. But seest Thou these stones in this in this parched and barren wilderness? Turn them into bread, and mankind will run after Thee like a flock of sheep, grateful and obedient, though forever trembling, lest Thou withdraw Thy hand and deny them Thy bread.<sup>373</sup> But Thou wouldst

---

<sup>372</sup> Ibid., pp. 258-261.

<sup>373</sup> Father Seraphim's Notes Continue (From here the acronym FSNC will be used)

not deprive man of freedom and didst reject the offer, thinking, what is that freedom if obedience is bought with bread? Thou didst reply that man lives not by bread alone. But dost Thou know that for the sake of that earthly bread the spirit of the earth will rise up against Thee and will strive with Thee and overcome Thee, and all will follow him, crying, Who can compare with this beast? He has given us fire from heaven! Dost Thou know that the ages will pass, and humanity will proclaim by the lips of their sages that there is no crime, and therefore no sin; there is only hunger? Feed men, and then ask of them virtue! that's what they'll write on the banner, which they will raise against Thee, and with which they will destroy Thy temple. Where Thy temple stood will rise a new building; the terrible tower of Babel will be built again,<sup>374</sup> and though, like the one of old, it will not be finished, yet Thou mightest have prevented that new tower and have cut short the sufferings of men for a thousand years; for they will come back to us after a thousand years of agony with their tower.<sup>375</sup> They will seek us again, hidden underground in catacombs,<sup>376</sup> for we shall be again persecuted and tortured.<sup>377</sup> They will find us and cry to us, Feed us, for those who have promised us fire from heaven haven't given it! And then we shall finish building their tower, for he finishes the building who feeds them. And we alone shall feed them in Thy name,<sup>378</sup> Oh, never, never can they feed themselves without us!<sup>379</sup> No science will give them bread so long as they remain free. In the end they will lay their freedom at our feet, and say to us, Make us your slaves, but feed us. They will understand themselves, at last, that freedom and bread enough for all are inconceivable together, for never, never will they be able to share between them!<sup>380</sup> They will be convinced, too, that they can never be free, for they are weak, vicious, worthless and rebellious. Thou didst promise them the bread of Heaven, but, I repeat again, can it compare with earthly bread in the eyes of the weak, ever sinful and ignoble race of man? And if for the sake of the bread of Heaven thousands and tens of thousands shall follow Thee, what is to become of the millions and tens of thousands of millions of creatures who will not have the strength to forego the earthly bread for the sake of the heavenly? Or dost Thou care only for the tens of thousands of the great and strong, while the millions, numerous as the sands of the sea, who are weak but love Thee, must exist only for the sake of the great and strong? No, we care for the weak too. They are sinful and rebellious, but in the end they too will become obedient. They will marvel

---

<sup>374</sup> Not in Father Seraphim's Notes (From here the acronym NFSN will be used)

<sup>375</sup> FSNC

<sup>376</sup> NFSN

<sup>377</sup> FSNC

<sup>378</sup> NFSN

<sup>379</sup> FSNC

<sup>380</sup> NFSN

at us and look on us as gods, because we are ready to endure the freedom which they have found so dreadful and to rule over them – so awful it will seem to them to be free. But we shall tell them again, for we will not let Thee come to us again. That deception will our suffering, for we shall be forced to lie.

This is the significance of the first question in the wilderness, and this is what Thou hast rejected for the sake of that freedom which Thou hast exalted above everything. Yet in this question lies hid the great secret of this world.<sup>381</sup> Choosing bread, Thou wouldst have satisfied the universal and everlasting craving of humanity – to find someone to worship. So long as man remains free he strives for nothing so incessantly and so painfully as to find someone to worship. But man seeks to worship what is established beyond dispute, so that all men would agree at once to worship it.<sup>382</sup> For these pitiful creatures are concerned not only to find what one or the other can worship, but to find something that all would believe in and worship; what is essential is that all may be together in it. This craving for community of worship is the chief misery of every man individually and of all humanity from the beginning of time. For the sake of common worship they've slain each other with the sword. They have set up gods and challenged one another, Put away your gods and come and worship ours, or we will kill you and your gods! And so it will be to the end of the world, even when gods disappear from the earth; they will fall down before idols just the same. Thou didst know, Thou couldst not but have known, this fundamental secret of human nature, but<sup>383</sup> Thou didst reject the one infallible banner which was offered Thee to make all men bow down to Thee alone – the banner of earthly bread; and Thou hast rejected it for the sake of the freedom and the bread of Heaven.<sup>384</sup> Behold what Thou didst further. And all again in the name of freedom! I tell Thee that man is tormented by no greater anxiety than to find someone quickly to whom he can hand over that gift of freedom with which the ill-fated creature is born. But<sup>385</sup> only one who can appease their conscience can take over their freedom.<sup>386</sup> In bread there was offered Thee an invincible banner;<sup>387</sup> give bread, and man will worship thee, for nothing is more certain than bread. But if someone else gains possession of his conscience – oh! then he will cast away Thy bread and follow after him who has ensnared his conscience. In that Thou wast right. For the secret of man's being is not only to live but to have something to live for. Without a stable conception of the object

---

<sup>381</sup> FSNC

<sup>382</sup> NFSN

<sup>383</sup> FSNC

<sup>384</sup> NFSN

<sup>385</sup> FSNC

<sup>386</sup> NFSN

<sup>387</sup> Not in



of life, man would not consent to go on living, and would rather destroy himself than remain on earth, though he had bread in abundance.<sup>388</sup> That is true. But what happened? Instead of taking men's freedom from them, Thou didst make it greater than ever! Didst Thou forget that man prefers peace, and even death, to freedom of choice in the knowledge of good and evil? Nothing is more seductive for man than his freedom of conscience, but nothing is a greater cause of suffering. And behold, instead of giving a firm foundation for setting the conscience of man at rest for ever, Thou didst choose all that is exceptional, vague and enigmatic,<sup>389</sup> Thou didst choose what was utterly beyond the strength of men, acting as though Thou didst not love them at all<sup>390</sup> -- Thou who didst come to give Thy life for them! Instead of taking possession of men's freedom, Thou didst increase it, and burdened the spiritual kingdom of mankind with its sufferings forever.<sup>391</sup> Thou didst desire man's free love, that he should follow Thee freely, enticed and taken captive by Thee. In place of the rigid ancient law, man must hereafter with free heart decide for himself what is good and what is evil, having only Thy image before him as his guide.<sup>392</sup> But didst Thou not know he would at last reject even Thy image and Thy truth, if he is weighed down with the fearful burden of free choice? They will cry aloud at last that the truth is not in Thee, for they could not have been left in greater confusion and suffering than Thou hast caused, laying upon them so many cares and unanswerable problems.

So that, in truth, Thou didst Thyself lay the foundation for the destruction of Thy kingdom, and no one is more to blame for it. Yet what was offered Thee?<sup>393</sup> There are three powers, three powers alone, able to conquer and to hold captive forever the conscience of these impotent rebels for their happiness – those forces are miracle, mystery and authority.<sup>394</sup> Thou hast rejected all three and hast set the example for doing so. When the wise and dread spirit set Thee on the pinnacle of the temple and said to Thee, If Thou wouldst know whether Thou art. Man seeks not so much God as the miraculous. And as man cannot bear to be without the miraculous, he will create new miracles of his own for himself, and will worship deeds of sorcery and witchcraft, though he might be a hundred times a rebel, heretic and infidel.... Thou wouldst not enslave man by a miracle, and didst crave faith given freely, not based on miracle.... Man is weaker and baser by nature than Thou hast believed him!... By showing him so much respect, Thou didst, as it were, cease to feel for him, for Thou

---

<sup>388</sup> NFSN

<sup>389</sup> FSNC

<sup>390</sup> NFSN

<sup>391</sup> FSNC

<sup>392</sup> NFSN

<sup>393</sup> FSNC

<sup>394</sup> NFSN

didst ask far too much from him – Thou who hast loved him more than Thyself! Respecting him less, Thou wouldst have asked less of him. That would have been more like love, for his burden would have been lighter.... Canst Thou have simply come to the elect and for the elect? But if so, it is a mystery and we cannot understand it.... We have corrected Thy work and have founded it upon miracle, mystery and authority.... Did we not love mankind, so meekly acknowledging their feebleness, lovingly lightening their burden, and permitting their weak nature even sin with our sanction? ...we took from him what Thou didst reject in scorn, that last gift he offered Thee, showing Thee all the kingdoms of the earth. We took from him Rome and the sword of Caesar, and proclaimed ourselves sole rulers of the earth,... but we shall triumph and shall be Caesars, and then we shall plan the universal happiness of man.... all that man seeks on earth – that is, someone to worship, someone to keep his conscience, and some means of uniting all in one unanimous ant-heap, for the craving for universal unity is the third and last anguish of men. Mankind as a whole has always striven to organize a universal state.... Oh, the ages are yet to come of the confusion of free thought, of their science and cannibalism. For having begun to build their tower of Babel without us, they will end, of course, with cannibalism. But then the beast will crawl to us and lick our feet.... And we shall sit upon the beast and raise the cup, and on it will be written, Mystery. But then, and only then, the reign of peace and happiness will come for men. Thou art proud of Thine elect, while we give rest to all. And besides, how many of those elect, those mighty ones who could become elect, have grown weary waiting for Thee, and have transferred and will transfer the powers of their spirit and the warmth of their heart to the other camp, and end by raising their free banner against Thee.... Freedom, free thought, and science will lead them into such straights and will bring them face to face with such marvels and insoluble mysteries, that some of them, the fierce and rebellious, will destroy themselves, others, rebellious but weak, will destroy one another, while the rest, weak and unhappy, will crawl fawning to our feet and whine to us: Yes, you were right, you alone possess His mystery, and we come back to you, save us from ourselves!

...And all will be happy, all the millions of creatures except the hundred thousand who rule over them. For only we, we who guard the mystery, shall be unhappy.... Peacefully they will die, peacefully they will expire in Thy name, and beyond the grave they will find nothing but death. But we shall keep the secret, and for their happiness we shall allure them with the reward of heaven and eternity.<sup>395</sup>

---

<sup>395</sup> Father Seraphim's Anarchism Notes

[The Grand Inquisitor will] lead men consciously to death and destruction, and yet deceive them all the way so that they may not notice where they are being led, that the poor blind creatures may at least on the way think themselves happy.<sup>396</sup>

The Grand Inquisitor says, how can you love humanity? It's just awful, or, loathsome kind of creature, this fallen creature? You can take care of them and give them everything they need, but how can you love them? And Christ is the one who loves humanity.<sup>397</sup>

---

<sup>396</sup> Ibid., pp. 262-264.

<sup>397</sup> Continued from Nietzsche lecture tape.

# Lecture 9

## Revolutions

### Introduction

1. Second half of the 19th century: realism replaces romanticism, scientific replaces utopian socialism, idea of class warfare is pushed by propagandists like Marx, growing industrialism with factory conditions adds to unrest and disturbances. Revolution stops dreaming and calls for action.
2. Here we will see the most radical revolutionary philosophies – but no one of these will entirely reveal to us the theology of the Revolution – we must put them all together and apply the standard of Orthodox Christianity.
3. Activity of the devil becomes ever more evident, and his name now begins to be invoked.<sup>398</sup>

### Revolution of 1848

Produced little results in itself, but raised Red Spectre. Marx's Communist Manifesto came out in Jan. 1848 just before the Revolutions. Revolution started in France February 22 when banquet and demonstrations of reformers prohibited in a few hours the king fled. Social reformers met to plan the Republic then,

“Thus in the space of a few hours the monarchy was swept away and the Social Democratic Republic was proclaimed.

But now the men who had brought about the crisis were faced with the work of reconstruction – a very different matter. For it is one thing to sit at ones desk peaceably writing about the beauties of revolution, it is quite another to find oneself in the midst of a tumultuous city where all the springs of law and order have been broken; it is one thing to talk romantically about the sovereignty of the people, it is less soothing to ones vanity to be confronted with working-men of real flesh and blood

---

<sup>398</sup> Dostoyevsky, Fyodor, *The Brothers Karamazov*, The Modern Library, New York, no date, pp. 673-689, “The Devil, Ivan's Nightmare”; Cf. p. 247: “I think if the devil doesn't exist, but man has created him, he has created him in his own image and likeness.” – Ivan; also cf. Ivan speaking to Smerdykov, p. 638: “You've been there at night, when he came.... Do you know that he visits me?”

insolently demanding the fulfilment of the promises one has made them. This was the experience that fell to the lot of the men composing the Provisional Government the day after the Kings abdication. All advocates of social revolution, they now for the first time saw revolution face to face – and liked it less well than on paper.

The hoisting of the red flag by the populace – described by Lamartine as the symbol of threats and disorders – had struck terror into the hearts of all except Louis Blanc, and it was not until Lamartine in an impassioned speech had besought the angry multitude to restore the tricolore that the red flag was finally lowered and the deputies were able to retire to the Hotel de Ville and discuss the new scheme of government.

In all the history of the Labour Movement no more dramatic scene has ever been enacted than that which now took place. Seated around the council table were the men who for the last ten years had fired the people with enthusiasm for the principles of the first Revolution – Lamartine, panegyrist of the Gironde, Louis Blanc the Robespierriste, Ledru Rollin, whose chief source of pride was his supposed resemblance to Danton.

Suddenly the door of the council chamber burst open and a working-man entered, gun in hand, his face convulsed with rage, followed by several of his comrades. Advancing towards the table where sat the trembling demagogues, Marche, for this was the name of the leader of the deputation, struck the floor with the butt end of his gun and said loudly: Citizens, it is twenty-four hours since the revolution was made; the people await the results. They send me to tell you that they will brook no more delays. They wish for the right to work – the right to work at once.

Twenty-four hours since the revolution had been made, and the New Heavens and the New Earth had not yet been created! The theorists had calculated without the immense impatience of the People, they had forgotten that to simple practical minds to give is to give quickly and at once; that the immense social changes represented by Louis Blanc in his Organisation du travail as quite a simple matter had been accepted by the workers in the same unquestioning spirit; of the enormous difficulties incidental to the readjustment of the conditions of the labor, of the time it must take to reconstruct the whole social system, Marche and his companions could have no conception. They had been promised the right to work, and the gigantic organization that brief formula

entailed was to be accomplished in one day and instantly put into operation.

Louis Blanc admits that his first emotion on hearing the tirade of Marche was that of anger; it were better if he had said of shame. It was he more than any other who had shown the workers the land of promise, and now that it had proved a mirage he, more than any other, was to blame. Before promising one must know how to perform and to perform without delay.

It was apparently Lamartine whom the working-men regarded as the chief obstacle to their demand for the right to work, for throughout his speech Marche had fixed his eyes, blazing with audacity, on those of the poet of the Gironde. Lamartine, outraged by this attitude, thereupon replied in an imperious tone that were he threatened by a thousand deaths, were he led by Marche and his companions before the loaded cannons down beneath the windows, he would never sign a decree of which he did not understand the meaning. But finally conquering his irritation, he adopted a more conciliatory tone, and placing his hand on the arm of the angry workman he besought him to have patience, pointing out that legitimate as his demand might be, so great a measure as the organization of labor must take time to elaborate, that in the face of so many crying needs the government must be given time to formulate its schemes, that all competent men must be consulted....

The eloquence of the poet triumphed, gradually Marches indignation died down; the workmen, honest men touched by the evident sincerity of the speaker, looked into each other's eyes questioningly, with an expression of relenting, and Marche, interpreting their attitude, cried out, Well, then, yes, we will wait. We will have confidence in our government. The people will wait; they place three months of misery at the service of the Republic!

Have more pathetic words ever been uttered in the whole history of social revolution? Like their forefathers of 1792 these men were ready to suffer, to sacrifice themselves for the new-formed Republic represented to them as the one hope of salvation for France, and animated by this noble enthusiasm they were willing to trust the political charlatans who had led them on with fair promises into abortive insurrection. Even whilst Lamartine was urging patience, Louis Blanc, still intent on his untried theories, had retired into the embrasure of a window, where, with Flocon and Ledru Rollin, he drew up the decree, founded on the 10th article of Robespierres Declaration of the Rights of Man, by which the Provisional Government undertook

to guarantee work to all citizens. Louis Blanc was probably the only man present who believed in the possibility of carrying out this promise, yet all ended by subscribing to it, and the same day the decree was publicly proclaimed throughout Paris.

Two days later the National Workshops, which were to provide the promised employment, were opened under the direction of Emile Thomas and of M. Marie. The result was inevitably disastrous, necessary work being insufficient, the workmen were sent hither and thither from one employer to another, useless jobs were devised that necessarily proved discouraging to the men engaged on them, whilst the workers in the skilled trades for whom no employment could be found had to be maintained on an unemployment dole. This last measure, the most demoralizing of all, had the effect of attracting thousands of workers from all over the country, and even from abroad, into the capital.”<sup>399</sup>

---

<sup>399</sup> Webster, *op. cit.*, pp.136-9.

## Workers Were Idealistic

The working-men on their part showed themselves in the main perfectly sane and reasonable, demanding protection from the exploitation of middle-men, and a reduction in the hours of labor to ten or eleven a day, giving for their reason a theory tenable perhaps at a period when working days consisted of fourteen or fifteen hours, but which today has been perverted into the disastrous system known as *Cann*, namely that the longer the day is the fewer workers are employed, and that the workers who are occupied absorb a salary which might be divided amongst a greater number of workers. They also criticized excessive work as an obstacle to their education and the intellectual development of the people.

At any rate, whether sound or not in their political economy, the people of Paris at this crisis showed themselves in no way prone to violence; the people did not wish for bloodshed and for barricades, for burnings and destruction. Reduced to its simplest expression, they asked for two things only – bread and work: what juster demand could have been formulated? And they were ready, as *Marche* had said, to wait, to suffer, to sacrifice themselves not only for their own ultimate welfare but for the glory of France. Misled as they had been by visionaries, illusioned as they were on the benefits of the first French Revolution, they asked for no repetition of its horrors but only to be allowed to work in peace and fraternity.

Citizens... wrote the cloth printers to the Provisional Government at the end of March 1848, we, workers ourselves, printers on stuff, we offer you our feeble co-operation, we bring you 2000 francs to help towards the success of your noble creation.... Let them be reassured those who may believe in a return to the bloody scenes enacted in our history! Let them be reassured! Neither civil war, nor war abroad shall rend the entrails of our beautiful France! Let them be reassured on our National Assembly, for there will be neither *Montagnards* nor *Girondins*! Yes, let them be reassured and let them help to give to Europe a magic sight, let them show the universe that in France there has been no violence in the revolution, that there has only been a change of system, that honor has succeeded to corruption, the sovereignty of the people and of equity to odious despotism, force and order to weakness, union to castes, to tyranny this sublime device:



Liberty, Equality, Fraternity, progress, civilization, happiness for all and all for happiness!<sup>400</sup>

But the government began to push utopian reforms and people in Paris and Provinces began to fear the workers as revolutionaries. Louis Blanc proclaimed the goal of absolute domination of the proletariat. Then a demonstration in favor of Poland led to scene (Webster 150-2)

The revolutionaries..., now legally excluded from the government, were obliged to cast about for a further pretext to stir up the people. This was provided by a revolt in Poland which the Prussian troops had ruthlessly suppressed on the 5th of May, and the working-men of Paris were summoned to assemble in their thousands as a protest against this display of arbitrary authority. Accordingly, on the 13th as procession of 5000 to 6000 people...marched to the Place de la Concorde, shouting: Vive la Pologne! The working-men in the crowd, who had started out in all good faith to agitate, as that had been told to do, in favor of oppressed Poland, were animated by no revolutionary intentions and never dreamt of overthrowing the Assembly elected by universal suffrage. But, as usual, agents of disorder had mingled in their ranks, strangers of sinister appearance ready to side either with police or mob in order to provoke a riot, well-dressed women not of the people were observed inciting the crowd to violence.

At the bridge of the Concorde the procession seemed to hesitate, but Blanqui, now placing himself at its head, cried loudly, Forward! and the whole mass surged towards the palace occupied by the Assembly. The small number of National Guards assembled proved powerless to stem the oncoming tide of 150,000 men and women, which pressed onwards with such force that a number of people were crushed to death at the entrance of the Palace.

It was then that Lamartine, braver than his predecessors the revolutionaries of 1792, came forward out of the Assembly and faced the people. Citizen Lamartine, said one of the leaders, Laviron, we have come to read a petition to the Assembly in favor of Poland...

You shall not pass, Lamartine answered imperiously.

By what right will you prevent us from passing? We are the people. Too long have you made fine phrases; the people want something besides phrases, they wish to go themselves to the Assembly and signify their wishes.

---

<sup>400</sup> Ibid., pp. 141-2.

How true was the word uttered by a voice in the crowd at this juncture: Unhappy ones, what are you doing? You are throwing back the cause of liberty for more than a century!

In vain the men who had raised the storm now tried to quell it. Whilst the crowd pressed onwards into the hall of the Assembly, Thomas, Raspail, Barbes, Ledru Rollin, Buchez, Louis Blanc struggled amidst the suffocating heat of the May day and the odor of massed humanity to make their voices heard. Louis Blanc at the table declared that the people by their cries had violated their own sovereignty; the crowd responded with shouts of: Vive la Pologne! Vive l'organisation du travail! Louis Blanc, attacked with the weapon he himself had forged, was reduced to impotence; it was no longer the theorist who had deluded them with words that the people demanded, but Blanqui, the man of action, the instigator of violence and fury. Blanqui! Where is Blanqui? We want Blanqui! was the cry of the multitude. And instantly, borne on the shoulders of the crowd, the strange figure of the famous agitator appeared – a little man prematurely bent, with wild eyes darting flame from hollows deep sunk in the sickly pallor of his face, with black hair shaved close like a monks, his black coat buttoned up to meet his black tie, his hands encased in black gloves – and at this sinister vision a silence fell upon the crowd. Blanqui, suiting himself to the temper of his audience, thereupon delivered a harangue demanding that France should immediately declare war on Europe for the deliverance of Poland – truly a strange measure for the relief of public misery in Paris! Meanwhile Louis Blanc, with a Polish flag thrust into his hands, was making a valiant effort to recover his popularity. An eloquent discourse on the sovereignty of the people had at last the desired effect, and amidst cries of Long live Louis Blanc! Long live the social and democratic Republic! he too was hoisted on to the shoulders of the people and carried in triumph. But the emotion of the moment proved too great for the frail body; Louis Blanc, his face streaming with perspiration, attempted in vain to address the crowd, but no sound came from his lips and, finally lowered to earth, he fell fainting on a seat.

The dementia of the crowd, urged on by the Clubistes, now reached its height. Whilst Barb's vainly attempted to deliver a speech the tribune was assailed by a group of maniacs, who with clenched fists threatened each other and drowned his voice in tumultuous cries. To add to the confusion the galleries began to break down under the weight of the increasing crowd and a bursting water-tank flooded the corridor.

At this juncture Huber, who had likewise fallen into a long swoon, suddenly recovered consciousness, and, mounting the tribune, declared in a voice of thunder that the Assembly was dissolved in the name of the people.

At the same moment Buchez was flung out of his seat, Louis Blanc was driven by the crowd out on to the esplanade of the Invalides, Raspail fainted on the lawn, Sobrier was carried in triumph by the workmen, and Huber disappeared.

Then followed the inevitable reaction. The troops arrived on the scene and dispersed the crowd, Barb's was arrested. Louis Blanc, with tumbled hair and torn clothes, succeeded in escaping from the National Guards and took refuge in the Assembly, only to find himself assailed with cries of indignation.

You always talk of yourself! You have no heart!

Whilst these extraordinary scenes had been taking place at the Assembly another crowd of 200 people had invaded the Prefecture of Police, where Caussidire, following the example of P'tion on the 10th of August, remained discreetly waiting to see which way the tide turned before deciding on the course he should take. Faced by an angry mob of insurgents the wretched Caussidire, hitherto in the vanguard of revolution, now began to talk of constitutional authority and threatened to run a rebel through the body with his sabre.

With the aid of the Republican Guard the Prefecture of Police was finally evacuated, and throughout Paris the troops set about restoring order. The repression, writes the Comtesse d'Agoult, is without pity because the attack has been terrible – words ever to be remembered by the makers of revolution. The fiercer the onslaught the fiercer must be the resistance, and anarchy can only end in despotism. Even the revolutionary leaders are obliged to admit the reactionary effects of May the 15th, and the people themselves, always impressed by a display of authority, sided with the victors. When on the 16th of May the arrested conspirators leave for Vincennes they hear, ongoing through the Faubourg St. Antoine, the imprecations of the crowd of men, women, and children who, in spite of the extreme heat of the day, follow the carriages with insults in their mouths as far as the first houses of Vincennes.

But this revulsion of popular feeling was only momentary; before long the Socialists had re-established their ascendancy over the people. In the by-elections on June the 5th Pierre Leroux, Proudhon, and

Caussidire were all successful, and the situation was further complicated by the election of Louis Napoleon Bonaparte.

It was now that the Imperialist schemes of the Bonapartistes first became apparent, and that the cry of *Vive Empereur!* was first heard. The leaders of this faction, no less than those of the Socialists, realized that the overthrow of the existing government must be brought about by a popular insurrection, and the usual weapon of class hatred was employed by both with equal unscrupulousness.<sup>401</sup>

When elections held – the majority in Assembly was monarchist! Three days in June, all the parties were in the streets, and National Guards mowed them all down – Then followed the three fearful days of June the 22nd to the 25th. Barricades were once more erected in the streets, and war to the knife was declared on the Republic. As in every outbreak of the World Revolution, the insurgents were composed of warring elements, all resolved to destroy the existing order and all animated by opposing aims. Thus, ...the crowds that took part in the insurrection included, besides the workmen driven by hunger and despair to revolt, a number of honest and credulous people duped by the agitators – Communists, dreamers of a Utopia amongst which each has his system and disagreeing with each other; Legitimists, demanding the restoration of the Bourbon dynasty in the person of the Duc de Chambord; Bonapartistes, partisans of a regency; and finally, the scum of all parties, convicts and wastrels; in a word, the enemies of all society, men vowed by instinct to ideas of insurrection, theft, and pillage.

Against this terrible army the troops,...reinforced by National Guards from all over France, displayed the greatest vigor, and on the 26th of June, after terrible fighting which left no less than 10,000...<sup>402</sup>

10,000 killed in Paris. Revolution spread to Germany, Austria, Italy, England, Spain – but repressed everywhere. Then comes Marx and organized Party of Revolution to make a successful revolution.<sup>403</sup>

...thousand killed in Paris. From there the Revolution spread to Germany, Austria, Italy, England, Spain. There were demonstrations in many places, but almost everywhere it was repressed quite quickly; and it was the fact of the failure of this revolution that inspired Marx. Marx decided now it is time to plan very carefully for a successful revolution in the future and not just have high ideals and make demonstrations.

---

<sup>401</sup>

<sup>402</sup> Ibid., pp. 153-4.

<sup>403</sup> Transcript of lost tape begins

In France itself Napoleon quickly took power and ran an election; everybody, all the men in France voted and there were seven million votes to 700 thousand to make him Emperor, which showed what the people believed when they got a chance to elect. And somebody asked, “Why did you elect Napoleon, what does he have?” “Can I have been with Napoleon in Russia and not vote for [the descendant of] Napoleon?”<sup>404</sup>

---

<sup>404</sup> Cf. Palmer, R.R. and Colton, Joel, *A History of the Modern World*, Alfred A. Knopf, Inc., 1965, p. 476: “When millions were suddenly, for the first time in their lives, asked to vote for president in 1848, the name of Bonaparte was the only one they had ever heard of, How should I not vote for this gentleman,? said an old peasant, I whose nose was frozen at Moscow??”

## Marx and Engels

So now we come to the people, the socialists, the anarchists of the late nineteenth century who prepared the history of the twentieth century.

The first one we will describe briefly is Marx who together with Engels are the ones who laid the foundation for Marxism in Russia. Engels himself was a factory owner and spent his time in England; he owned a factory in Manchester. Marx was a Jewish journalist who apparently didn't do a lick of work in his life, was constantly inspired by revolutionary ideas and thinking about how to make revolution come about. In 1844 the two of them met in Paris in 1847; they joined the Communist League, a small secret group of revolutionaries something like the "Quintets" we read about in Dostoyevsky. According to Engels this little group was actually not much more than the German branch of the French secret societies. This group tried to infiltrate other groups, produced propaganda and worked on the question of evolving a successful system particularly with guns.

In 1848 just before revolution broke out Marx published his *Communist Manifesto* telling all the "workmen of the world to unite,"<sup>405</sup> [and] throw off your chains. In the course of his life, he was never particularly concerned with the workmen – the workmen were always much more conservative. He was only interested in using this group to make them dissatisfied and then to use this dissatisfaction in order to bring about a new government, which would put into effect his principles.

His principles he got from several sources. Of course, the chief one is the French Revolution and the idealistic socialists – only later he was so much against [these] because they were not scientific – but his millennial ideas come straight from them. Then the ideas of the British economists of his time, most of which the British economists later on revised because they were unrealistic; but he took the earlier ones which were later abandoned. Another was German idealistic philosophy, especially Hegel with his idea of the march of God through history, only he took away the God. In fact, they said they found Hegel on his head and they turned him right side up by taking away God; and they made his system of dialectics into a dialectical materialism, that is, explaining everything that happens in the world as the basis of a sort of

---

<sup>405</sup> Marx, Karl and Engels, Frederick, *The Communist Manifesto* New York Labor News Co., New York, 1954, p. 48.

providence? which acts throughout history only without God: some kind of causes which cannot be reversed. That gives Communists their confidence that they are on the side of history, because, simply, things must go that way, that's the way the world works.

These ideas were atheistic, materialistic, extremely naive: science is the answer to everything. The philosophy itself is extremely stupid and there is nothing much worth believing, but his [Marx's] power comes from his passion to overthrow the existing order. And he used as his scapegoat the bourgeoisie, the middle class, whom he saw were making the workers their slaves.

Now revolution enters a new phase: before, it was the bourgeoisie who wanted to overthrow the aristocracy and the monarchy; and now it's the lower classes, supposedly, who want to overthrow the bourgeoisie. He worked to develop the class consciousness so that the workers would hate the bourgeoisie and vice versa; and to a large extent he succeeded, because the very violent scenes of the revolution followed, because these two groups began to distrust each other.

In 1864 a group of labor organizations met in London to form what was called the First International, and Marx took over the leadership and used this to publish his own ideas. Anyone who disagreed with him he fanatically opposed, and he was against everyone including most of the workers because they did not agree with his philosophy. He gradually managed to throw out of this International everyone who was against his ideas. He also hated the peasants. The proletariat he hated; he called them "lumpen proletariat," the ragged proletariat. He had not love at all for anyone. From that time on, especially in the 80's and 90's the various Socialist parties began to organize themselves and develop, and that's when the Russian Communist Party was formed.

## Bakunin

The second of these thinkers is [Mikhail] Bakunin. Marx lived 1818-1883, Engels 1820-1885, and Engels chief function was to support Marx and to agree with his ideas and so forth. Marx was a great intellect. Bakunin is a different sort of thinker. He lived 1814-1876. He came from Russian nobility, was quite intelligent, extremely lazy, spent his days in bed, went to military school for awhile but didn't succeed because he was so lazy. He dabbled in philosophy and became a professional revolutionary. He was constantly borrowing money to go from one town to the next to start a revolution. He became friends with Marx in one of his travels abroad and Marx immediately saw that he had great revolutionary energy because he was very fired up with hatred for the old order, and therefore he tried to use him for his own purposes. "He clearly recognized the value of the Russian as a huge dynamic force to be made use of and then cast aside when it had served his purpose."<sup>406</sup> The one thing to understand is that the power of Marxism lies in hatred, and when Lenin came to power he used complete ruthlessness, no pity, absolutely kill, destroy, have no pity on anybody, no mercy.

There is a description here on how Bakunin when he was still young, twenty-nine years old, and met Marx in 1844 in Paris. "Marx and I are old acquaintances. I met him for the first time in Paris in 1844.... We were rather good friends. He was rather much more advanced than I was, as today he still is," in revolutionary ideas, "not more advanced but incomparably more learned than I am." Marx had studied all these philosophers and systems, but Bakunin was just spontaneous. "I knew nothing then of political economy, I had not yet got rid of metaphysical abstractions, and my Socialism was only that of instinct. He, though younger than I, was already an atheist, a learned materialist, and a thoughtful Socialist. It was precisely at this epoch that he elaborated his first foundations of his present system. We saw each other fairly often, for I respected him very much for his knowledge and his devotion, passionate and serious though always mingled with personal vanity, to the cause of the proletariat, and I eagerly sought his conversation, which was always instructive and witty when it was not inspired by petty hatred, which, alas! occurred too frequently. There was never, however, any frank intimacy between us. Our temperaments did not

---

<sup>406</sup> Webster, p. 174.



permit it. He called me a sentimental idealist, and he was right; I called him a vain man, perfidious and crafty, and I was right also.”<sup>407</sup>

In 1848 the revolution broke out in France, and Bakunin wanted to take part in it. One of his French fellow socialists said about him: “What a man! The first day of a revolution he is a treasure; the second he is only good to shoot.”<sup>408</sup>

He did not care about the ideas of the revolution; he cared only about the energy, the demonic powers which were unleashed. We have a description of how he behaved in the revolution of 1870. First we will quote from that concerning the Revolution of 1848. When he was first in Paris during the Revolution of 1848, he was then sent with a mission to stir up revolution in the Eastern countries. He went to part of western Russia, then was in Prague, then in Dresden where he was finally arrested and was sent by the German-Austrian authorities to Russia. He was placed in the fortress of Saints Peter and Paul and Count Orloff came to visit him and urged him to write a confession of his misdeeds for the Emperor as to a father-confessor. Bakunin complied and Nicholas I read it and said: “He is a brave boy with a lively wit, but he is a dangerous man and must be kept under lock and key.”<sup>409</sup> This was quite realistic. However, he escaped to London and, after the new emperor Alexander II read his confession and saw that he had no repentance, he was sent to Siberia and then he escaped, across Asia and America to London. From then on, that was where he spent most of his time – in London, Italy, and Western Europe.

He founded various secret societies and has as his disciple a certain Nechayev, a young man who was one of the most ruthless nihilists that this time knew. Bakunin had this revolutionary fever and in these 60’s he was surrounded by conspirators of all nationalities, was constantly working of fresh plots, stirring up revolutions everywhere, trying to stir up the Poles to rebel. And Herzen the liberal describes him this way when he saw him in London: “Bakunin renewed his youth; he was in his element. It is not only the rumbling of insurrection, the noise of the clubs, the tumult of the streets and public places, nor even the barricades that made up his happiness; he loved also the movement of the day before, the work of preparation, the life of agitation, yet at the same time rendered continuous by conferences, those sleepless nights, those parleying’s and negotiations, rectifications, chemical ink, ciphers,

---

<sup>407</sup> Quoted in Webster, p. 174.

<sup>408</sup> Ibid.

<sup>409</sup> Quoted in Webster, p. 175.

and signs agreed upon beforehand. And Herzen, who took revolution more seriously, adds that Bakunin excited himself exactly as if it were a question of preparing a Christmas tree....”<sup>410</sup> That is, he is not terribly serious but he has this revolutionary ardor which is very useful to people who want to overthrow governments.

Nechayev, this young anarchist, was at first a disciple of Bakunin. And then Bakunin began to see that he was rather more revolutionary than he had suspected. He helped Bakunin to write what is called the Revolutionary Catechism which says, among other things: “The revolutionary must let nothing stand between him and the work of destruction.... For him there exists only one single pleasure, one single consolation, one reward, one satisfaction – the success of the revolution. Night and day he must have but one thought, but one aim – implacable destruction.... If he continues to live in this world it is only in order to annihilate it all the more surely.”<sup>411</sup>

But about 1870 Bakunin discovered that Nechayev, while pretending to be his most devoted disciple, had all the while been a member of another society still more secret and of which he had never divulged the inner mysteries to Bakunin. Bakunin wrote to a friend: “Nechayev...is a devoted fanatic, but at the same time a very dangerous fanatic, and one with whom an alliance could only be disastrous to everyone. This is why: He was first a member of an occult committee which really had existed in Russia. This committee no longer exists; all its members have been arrested. Nechayev alone remains, and alone he constitutes what he calls the committee. The Russian organization having been destroyed, he is trying to create a new one abroad. All this would be perfectly natural, legitimate, and very useful, but the way he goes to work is detestable. Keenly impressed by the catastrophe which has just destroyed the secret organization in Russia, he has gradually arrived at the conclusion that in order to found a serious and indestructible society one must take as a basis the policy of Machiavelli, and adopt in full the system of the Jesuits – bodily violence and a lying soul.

“Truth, mutual confidence, serious and severe solidarity exist only among about ten individuals who form the sanctum sanctorum of the society. All the rest must serve as a blind instrument and as matter to be exploited by the hands of these ten men really solidarized. It is permitted, and even ordered, that one should deceive them,

---

<sup>410</sup> Webster, p. 176.

<sup>411</sup> Quoted in Webster, p. 190.

compromise them, steal from them, and even if needs be ruin them – they are conspiracy-fodder....

“In the name of the cause he must get hold of your whole person without your knowing it. In order to do this he will spy on you and try to get hold of your secrets, and for that purpose, in your absence, left alone in your room he will open all your drawers, read all your correspondence, and when a letter seems interesting to him, that is to say, compromising from any point of view for you or for one of your friends, he will seal it and keep it carefully as a document against you or against your friend.... When convicted of this in a general assembly he dared to say to us: Well, yes, it is our system. We consider as enemies, whom it is our duty to deceive and compromise, all those who are not completely with us.... If you have introduced him to a friend, his first thought will be to raise discord, gossip and intrigue between you – in a word, to make you quarrel. Your friend has a wife, a daughter, he will try to seduce her, to give her a child, in order to drag her away from official morality and to throw her into an attitude of forced revolutionary protest against society. All personal ties, all friendship are considered by them as an evil which it is their duty to destroy, because all this constitutes a force which, being outside the secret organization, diminishes the unique force of the latter. Do not cry out that I am exaggerating; all this has been amply developed and proved by me.”<sup>412</sup>

Bakunin himself, however, is no one to be criticizing him because his own philosophy is very similar; it is just that he was not quite so thorough as this Nechayev. He wrote in his *Revolutionary Catechism*: “Our task is terrible, total, inexorable and universal destruction.”<sup>413</sup> Again he says: “Let us put our trust in the eternal spirit which destroys and annihilates only because it is the unsearchable and eternally creative source of all life. The passion for destruction is also a creative passion.”<sup>414</sup>

And once when he was asked what he would do if the revolution was successful and the new order of his dreams came into being, he said, “Then I should at once begin to pull down again everything I had made.”<sup>415</sup> In him we see a primordial human will to destroy and to rebel.

---

<sup>412</sup> Quoted in Webster, p. 191.

<sup>413</sup> Quoted in Rose, Eugene (Fr. Seraphim), *Nihilism: The Root of the Revolution of the Modern Age*, Fr. Seraphim Rose Foundation, 1994, Forestville, CA, p. 56.

<sup>414</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 56

<sup>415</sup> Quoted in *Nihilism*, p. 56n: Quoted in E.H. Carr, Michael Bakunin, p. 440.

This is the passion for rebellion which we see even in recent writers like Camus, the existentialist who says that the only thing that proves that I exist is the fact that I have a will to rebel.

Bakunin, when he was praising the Proletariat in 1871, afterwards named the Commune in Paris, he called it “the modern Satan, the author of the sublime insurrection of the Commune.”<sup>416</sup> Again, discussing the loss of the revolution in 1871 he says: “The cause is lost.... It seems that the French, working class itself, are not much moved by this state of things. Yet how terrible the lesson is! But it is not enough. They must have greater calamities, ruder shocks. Everything makes one foresee that neither one nor the other will be wanting. And then perhaps the demon will awake. But as long as it slumbers we can do nothing. It would really be a pity to have to pay for the broken glasses.... Our task is to do the preparatory work, to organize and spread out so as to hold ourselves in readiness when the demon shall have awoken.”<sup>417</sup>

This desire for rebellion, we must understand, is a very deep part of this whole revolutionary movement, not just some accidental part. The revolution is not caused by idle dreamers who just want to blunder their way into a better order of things or to revise the government, the deepest motive for rebellion as we see clearly in these radical thinkers of the last part of the nineteenth century, is really the idea that everything must be destroyed. And they didn’t much think about what was to happen after that. They have this satanic inspiration to destroy.

We see later in art, in 1914, a movement broke out called Dada which is considered very formative for later artists. These artists would glue bits of newspaper advertisements into collages or arrange copies of Old Masters upside-down – just to look bizarre. But there is a meaning behind all this. The philosophy of the art of Dada is summed up in one of their manifestos: “Let everything be swept away; no more of anything. Nothing. Nothing. Nothing.”<sup>418</sup> This is what is called Nihilism, the desire to sweep away God, government, morality, art, culture, civilization – everything, which is what is set forth in the philosophy set forth by Weishaupt and the Illuminati: the complete

---

<sup>416</sup> Quoted in Webster, p. 215 from Documents et souvenirs de L’Internationale, James Guillaume, ii, p. 253. Cf. God and the State, p. 2, quoted in Fr. S’s Anarchism notes: Bakunin and Satan:... “The proletariat of Paris is the modern Satan, the great rebel, vanquished, but not pacified.”

<sup>417</sup> Quoted in Webster, p. 211.

<sup>418</sup> Quoted in Nihilism, p. 56.

overthrowing of civilization. What comes after that as we shall see is something else.

But all this is still philosophy. We must look at how this was put into effect. In fact, if we could not see in the last hundred years how this is put into effect, we would not understand what this philosophy is. We would still think it was an isolated incident of some crazy people. But beginning, especially in 1871, this philosophy began to be put into practice.

When the Napoleonic Empire, the Third Empire was overthrown after the disastrous loss to the Prussians in 1870, the revolution again broke out in France. It broke out first in the provinces. And Bakunin who was in Italy ran as fast as he could to Lyons in the south in order to take part. He and his disciples were the chief ones who were doing this. He borrowed some money, of course, to get there and put himself in the civic center where the new revolutionary government was entrenched and nobody had any clear idea of what they wanted to do. There were public meetings of extraordinary violence taking place in which the most bloody motions were put forward and received with enthusiasm. And this, of course, was what Bakunin loved. "On the 28th of September, the day of his arrival, the people had seized the Hotel de Ville," the civic center. "Bakunin installed himself there; then the critical moment arrived, the moment awaited for so many years, when Bakunin was able to accomplish the most revolutionary act the world has ever seen. He decreed the abolition of the State. But the state, in the shape and kind of two companies of bourgeois National Guards, entered by a"<sup>419</sup> rear door and chased him away. Nevertheless the idea is there to abolish the state.

Then the revolution broke out in Paris and the First International under Marx tried to dictate the progress of the revolution from London. But they were not able to do this very well and so the revolution in Paris took its own course which became more and more violent. The churches were closed and turned into clubs, priests were arrested and killed with great bloodiness and the institutions of the first revolution of 1793 were resurrected. The Revolutionary Calendar was restored, it was proclaimed that this was the year 79 of the new order; the Committee of Public Safety of the Terror was restored; the cross on top of the church of the Pantheon was broken and in its place was put the red flag and the temple was dedicated to "the great men of all ages."

---

<sup>419</sup> Alliance de la Démocratie Socialiste, etc., publiée par ordre du Congrès Internationale de la Haye (1873), p. 21, quoted in Webster, p. 205.

Then there was an obelisk, a great pillar 150 feet high comparable in size to the Washington Monument in the Place Vendome which was originally erected to the memory of Napoleon which had scenes from his great [triumphs] was around it and on top a great statue of Napoleon in a toga. They decided that this was a symbol of the past order and they were going to tear it down. They thought for a long time how they were going to do it. Finally they decided they would simply saw it off at the bottom and pull it over like a tree. It was made of cement and bronze or something and they chipped away on one side, sawed on the other side and prepared the great day when they would bring it down and end the old order. They really had no idea of what would happen, some thought it would cause an earthquake; it weighed thousands of tons. Others said it might break through the ground all the way into the sewers and completely ruin the sewers of Paris. But they decided the idea was worth it anyway. So they put tons and tons of straw to make a soft bed for it and at three p.m. they all came together, stood on the reviewing stand and ordered the ropes to be pulled. They pulled them and at first it didn't work; several people were killed in the process and somebody cried, "Treason, treason." They tried again and finally the whole thing came down and broke into pieces and the statue of Napoleon was broken. And this was a symbol of their triumph over the old order – a completely senseless kind of thing to do but, from their point of view, it was a symbolical act which shows that they are going to be removed from all influences of the past. They arrested the Archbishop of Paris; later on he was murdered.

As the revolution went on it became more and more violent. They even tried to arrest the painter Renoir who was busy sketching some boats on the Seine, and they said, "Aha, spy!" And they immediately arrested him and he was going to be executed immediately because that was the principle: you arrest a spy and immediately execute him. It so happened that the head of the secret police was an old friend of his; and he saw he was being arrested and he embraced him and let him go, otherwise Renoir would never have painted all those paintings so familiar to us. There were many radical painters as for example, Gustave Courbet who was one of the leaders of the Commune and it was one of his ideas to take down this tower because he called it "an insult to artistic sense."

When the Republican army invaded Paris – because at this time there was no more monarchy and no more Napoleon – it was a matter of the Republicans versus the Communards and there was now terrible

violence on both sides; both were butchering each other with great glee. When the Communards saw that the revolution was being lost, they were losing street by street in Paris, they decided that they were going to destroy Paris. So they placed first of all an immense amount of dynamite and gunpowder in the Tuileries, the palace of the kings where Napoleon III was. And it blew it up, whereupon they claimed,

“The last relics of royalty have just vanished.”<sup>420</sup> And then they proceeded to go to the next one. They blew up the Hotel de Ville, a thirteenth century building where the civic center was, and they went to blow up Notre Dame Cathedral but discovered that next door was a hospital for their own people and they decided to spare it.

And then some wild women such as were taking part in the first revolution of 1793, began going through the streets with some kind of flammable material and causing fires. Whole avenues in Paris were burning. At night it looked as though the whole of Paris was in flames (There is, in fact, a book called Paris Burning). One must understand that this is not something exceptional but only a part of that same spirit that Bakunin had, “Let us destroy the old order,”<sup>421</sup> even if they don’t know what is going to replace it. Later on we will see that this spirit did not come to an end in 1871.

The inspiration of the Commune which Marx said was a great deed in the Red Revolution, in fact, he was the chief apologist for the Commune and said, “This is the standard of what we have to do in the future. People are now being aroused and this is what we need to cause the revolution.”<sup>422</sup>

From that time on until 1917 the revolution began to take very violent forms although it was still a matter more or less of hit and miss.

---

<sup>420</sup> Webster, p. 212-213: “The bloody week? of street fighting followed. By the third day the Versailles troops had reached the approaches to the Tuileries, and it was then that the generals of the Commune, Brunel and Bergeret, set fire to the palace and the Rue Royale. ...eight months before that terrible night of May 23, a cartoon had appeared in the shop windows of German towns depicting Paris in flames,... and, beneath, the words: Gefallen, gefallen ist Babylon die Stölze? (Babylon the mighty is fallen, is fallen!) ...The Palace of the Tuileries was reduced to ashes....”

<sup>421</sup> Bakunin, Mikhail A., *God and the State*, 1882: “The old order must be destroyed and replaced by a new one.”

<sup>422</sup> Webster, p. 215: “Marx...now published a panegyric of the Commune entitled *The Civil War in France*, in which he referred to the State as that parasite which exploits and hinders the free movements of society.?...But the measure of Marx’s sincerity in writing his panegyric of the Commune was revealed when his correspondence with his friend Sorge was published in 1906.” Webster’s footnote: “Guillaume, Documents, ii, 192.”

The tsar was assassinated in Russia in 1881; in America, President Garfield was assassinated by a Red revolutionary; in 1901 McKinley was assassinated again by some kind of anarchist. In fact, all the assassinations of American presidents were done by either anarchists or Communists. The President of France was assassinated in 1890 and there were many attempts on princes in Russia and kings and presidents in the West. All with no seeming purpose in mind, just the idea of getting rid of the older order. This is the spirit of which Bakunin was a very strong representative but which now becomes the inheritance of the whole revolutionary movement: destroy the old order.



## Proudhon

There is one more writer, philosopher, anarchist at this time whom we should study briefly because he introduces a few ideas which make this philosophy more comprehensible. This man is [P. J.] Proudhon. He was active in the middle of the century. He took part in the revolution of 1848. To him belongs the famous phrase: "Property is theft,"<sup>423</sup> which he thought was his chief contribution to the revolutionary movement, although actually a very similar thing had been said by Rousseau and by eighteenth-century thinkers.

He is remarkable for at least three things. First, he proclaimed that the revolution is not atheistical, but rather anti-theistical. He said, "The revolution is not atheistic in the strict sense of the word.... It does not deny the absolute; it eliminates it."<sup>424</sup> "The first duty of man," he says, "on becoming intelligent and free is to continually hunt the idea of God out of his mind. For God, if He exists, is essentially hostile to our nature. Every step which we take in advance is a victory in which we crush the Divinity."<sup>425</sup> "God, if there is a God, is the enemy of humanity."<sup>426</sup> Bakunin also said something similar: "If God really existed, it would be necessary to abolish Him."<sup>427</sup> And we see now in Russia after sixty years, the government is not really atheistic, it is anti-theistic; it fights against God.

### Invoked Satan

Bakunin said he was on the side of Satan, the eternal rebel, the first freethinker and emancipator of worlds.<sup>428</sup> Nietzsche proclaimed himself Antichrist. And Proudhon: Come to me, Lucifer, Satan, whoever you

---

<sup>423</sup> Proudhon, *Principle of Right*, quoted in *The Pocket Book of Quotations*, Henry Davidoff, ed., Pocket Books, New York, 1952, p. 302; also *What is Property?*, quoted in *The Worldly Philosophers*, Robert L. Heilbroner, Simon and Schuster, A Clarion Book, New York, 1967, p. 139; Webster, p. 257, says this is "Brissot's axiom."

<sup>424</sup> Fr. Seraphim's *Anarchism* notes cites Proudhon, *De la Justice poursuivie par L'Eglise*, iii, p. 179.

<sup>425</sup> Proudhon, *Système des contradictions économique ou philosophie de la misère* (1846). Prologue, ch. viii, quoted in Lowith, *Meaning in History*, p. 63: "Proudhon says that the first duty of a free and intelligent man is to chase the idea of God out of his mind and conscience incessantly?; for, if he exists, he is essentially hostile to our nature. We attain to science in spite of him, to well-being in spite of him, to society in spite of him: every progress is a victory in which we crush the deity?"

<sup>426</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 64: "God, if he exists, is man's enemy."

<sup>427</sup> Bakunin, *God and the State*, London, 1910, p. 16.

<sup>428</sup> Quoted in *Nihilism*, 72n.: *God and the State*, Michael Bakunin, London, 1910, p. 2.

may be! Devil whom the faith of my fathers contrasted with God and the Church. I will act as spokesman for you and will demand nothing of you.

“Bakunin found himself on the side of Satan, the eternal rebel, the first freethinker and emancipator of worlds.<sup>429</sup> Nietzsche proclaimed himself Antichrist. Poets, decadents, and the avant-garde in general since the Romantic era have been greatly fascinated by Satanism, and some have tried to make it into a religion. Proudhon in so many words actually invoked Satan: Come to me, Lucifer, Satan, whoever you may be! Devil whom the faith of my fathers contrasted with God and the Church. I will act as your spokesman and I will demand nothing of you.”<sup>430</sup> We see here that the revolutionary movement becomes consciously satanic.

The third idea of Proudhon which is very remarkable is that in the end he decided that we should keep Catholicism the way it is, that is, the rites of Catholicism, only we will give them a new meaning. Under the outward guise of Catholicism, we will have the revolutionary message, of equality, of satanism, etc. In this he is, of course, only carrying on the idea of Saint-Simon who called for a new Christianity, that is, keeping the form of the old Christianity but making it something new. And today we see very clearly how socialism and Catholicism are in fact getting closer and closer together. And this profound revolutionary sees that the idea of Communism, of Socialism, of anarchism, is in some way a religious idea which takes the place of religion.

By the end of the nineteenth century we see that the revolution movement has become quite explicitly and openly ruthless and bloody. Already there have been several examples, especially the Commune of 1871, where the idea of universal destruction and ruthless murder have already begun to be put into practice. A person who is very conscious of the currents going on in the world could already by the end of the nineteenth century have said that the twentieth century is going to be something frightful because these things which are ideas are not simply the property of a few crazy people, but are getting into the very blood of the European people and are going to produce some terrible effect when it all filters down to the lowest level, to the common people. In

---

<sup>429</sup> Quoted in Nihilism, p. 72.

<sup>430</sup> Fr. Seraphim's Anarchism notes cite: *Idee general de la revolution*; also *Justice*, III, pp. 433-434 (de Lubac, *The Drama of Atheist Humanism*, Sheed & Ward, 1950, p.173).

fact Nietzsche even said: “When my ideas, the ideas of nihilism penetrate to the last brain of the last person, then there will be such a storm as the world has never seen.”<sup>431</sup>

---

<sup>431</sup> Source for this?

## The Protocols of Zion

There is one last document we should look at in this period of the beginning of the twentieth century before the great revolutionaries of our century, which is a rather controversial document. It is called The Protocols of the Elders of Zion and, because it presents itself in the form of a Jewish document, it has aroused a great deal of dispute. If you read any history book, of the two world wars especially; in fact, any history book written before the Second World War, you will find there an almost universal statement that “The Protocols of the Elders of Zion” are a fabrication deliberately to discredit the Jews, that it is a totally fantastic thing which has no reality to it, and they will point out that either the person who discovered it was himself an agent of somebody and therefore deliberately fabricated them, or else – as at least one source states – that he was fooled by the Tsarist police who simply wanted to invent these in order to make an excuse for eliminating the Jews in the pogroms. There are others who take the document so seriously that they tend to go to the other extreme and they see everywhere a Jewish plot so much so that they can hardly take a step without fainting. We must try to look at this document somewhat objectively to see what is actually in it, how it was found and what is its significance.

From the Orthodox point of view, it is most interesting how it was presented to the world for the first time. It was discovered by a lady, we do not know who, who gave it to the person who printed it and it is supposed to have come from the West and to have been written in French and then translated into Russian. But the person to whom this document was given was a man by the name of Sergei Nilus who printed it together with another document which he had recently discovered, The Conversation of Motovilov with St. Seraphim. He presented these two documents to the world at the same time in order to show 1) what is the truth of Orthodoxy and the acquirement of the Grace of the Holy Spirit, and 2) what is the plot of Satan to overthrow Orthodoxy. It was printed in 1905 (1903)

Nilus himself was a very respected ecclesiastical writer, a popular journalist who went to Optina and even lived there and various other places; and there can be no doubt that he had nothing to do with making up a forgery. He accepted this text as quite legitimate and presented it to the world as a warning. We will see that the text has two new points in it which have not come out in previous revolutionary documents. But apart from these, it is exactly the same as the

philosophy of Bakunin, Weishaupt and all these other thinkers. Some people say it is not a very original document – its plagiaristic, etc. – and probably so, because all these ideas were circulating and this particular document – in fact, we see that one writer [Webster] compares on one side of the page “The Protocols” and on the other side the text of Weishaupt written in 1785. The philosophy is the same. And so, most likely this is a legitimate document which is some kind of notes taken at a lodge of people who happen to be Jews and they present the philosophy in a very Jewish way, just as earlier there were people who presented the revolution as a triumph of pan-Germania and others presented the idea that the whole world would become some sort of French republic, and this took the form of some Jewish Masons or Illuminati who represent the revolution as their plot.

There are some ideas here which are most significant for us. Whether they are actually responsible for the French Revolution as they say, and whether they are so influential, who can say? We have seen that all these secret societies are so small, so split up, so secret, so full of secret signs and handshakes and invisible ink, etc. that who can possibly decipher who is actually responsible for what? Our view is that this is most symptomatic of the philosophy which is going on at this time.

And we shall see later on that this particular document had a definite role to play in Germany.<sup>432</sup> The philosophy which is described in this document is one of absolute ruthlessness in bringing about a revolutionary government and in the means used to bring it about, the using of people (like Marx used Bakunin), utter hypocrisy, killing off your enemies, spreading pornography in order to corrupt the youth, causing revolutions, taking first the side of monarchs, then the side of socialists, then the side of liberals, democrats; taking any side in order to push across your point of view and eventually come to power. They talk about the control of the press, the control of money, etc. Here follow a few excerpts to show the spirit of this document:

- “He who wants to rule must have recourse to cunning and hypocrisy.
- “We must not stop short before bribery, deceit and treachery, if these are to serve the achievement of our cause.” And this very philosophy can be found in the Talmud which says that anything is

---

<sup>432</sup> See pages 297 – 298 and 302 – 308.

possible; you can deceive any non-Jew, a Goi, for your own purposes.

- “The end justifies the means. In making our plans we must pay attention not so much to what is good and moral, as to what is necessary and profitable.
- “With the press we will deal in the following manner...
- We will harness it and will guide it with firm reins; we will also have to gain control of all other publishing firms...
- “All news is received by a few agencies, in which it is centralized from all parts of the world. When we attain power these agencies will belong to us entirely and we will only publish such news as we allow...
- “No one desirous of attacking us with his pen would find a publisher...”<sup>433</sup>

It is interesting here to note that, of all the groups in the world, the Jews are the ones who are strongest in this department, because it is not possible to mention the Jews in even a slightly critical tone without having a representative of the Anti-Defamation League come to visit you. That is why Orthodox publishers are very careful not to say anything about the Jews because they know that someone will come around and begin checking up on them, and if there is something they don't like, they'll start conducting a campaign of slanders and arousing public opinion and all sorts of things against you. There are some people who talk about the “Jewish peril.” Of course, they go overboard about it – like Gerald K. Smith whose main emphasis is the Jewish peril; and he is crazy about it.

- “Our programme will induce a third part of the populace to watch the remainder from a pure sense of duty and from the principle of a voluntary government service. It will not be considered dishonorable to be a spy; on the contrary, it will be regarded as praiseworthy.
- “We will transform the universities and reconstruct them according to our own plans. The heads of universities and their professors will be specially prepared by means of elaborate secret programmes of action...

---

<sup>433</sup> Webster, p. 298.

- “We intend to appear as though we were the liberators of the laboring man.... We shall suggest to him to join the ranks of our armies of Socialists, Anarchists and Communists. The latter we always patronize, pretending to help them out of fraternal principle and the general interest of humanity evoked by our socialistic masonry.
- “In the so-considered leading countries we have circulated an insane, dirty, and disgusting literature.
- “In the place of existing governments we will place a monster, which will be called the Administration of the Super-Government. Its hands will be outstretched like far-reaching pincers, and it will have such an organization at its disposal that it will not possibly be able to fail in subduing all countries.”
- “We shall have an international super-government.”<sup>434</sup>

This is back to Weishaupt, the French Revolution and the idea of internationalism.

- “We will destroy the family life of the Gentiles...
- “We will also distract them by various kinds of amusement, games, pastimes, passions, public houses, etc.
- “The people of the Christians, bewildered by alcohol, their youths turned crazy by classics and early debauchery, to which they have been instigated by our agents ... by our women in places of amusement...
- “The masonic lodge throughout the world unconsciously acts as a mask for our purpose.
- “Most people who enter secret societies are adventurers, who want somehow to make their way in life, and who are not seriously minded. With such people it will be easy for us to pursue our object, and will make them set our machinery in motion.”<sup>435</sup>

Of course, this is the idea behind many of these people and groups, that “we have the real secret society and we are going to manipulate all these other people.” The Communists are constantly infiltrating the

---

<sup>434</sup> Webster, p. 298ff

<sup>435</sup> Webster, p. 300.

anarchists; the anarchists, the socialists; the socialists, everybody else; and nobody can trust anymore; nobody knows who is behind what.

- “We employ in our service people of all opinions and all parties; men desiring to re-establish monarchies, Socialists, etc.
- “We have taken great care to discredit the clergy of the Gentiles in the eyes of the people, and thus have succeeded in injuring their mission, which could have been very much in our way. The influence of the clergy on the people is diminishing daily. Today freedom of religion prevails everywhere, but the time is only a few years off when Christianity will fall to pieces altogether.
  - “We must extract the very conception of God from the minds of the Christians...
  - “We must destroy all professions of faith.
  - “We persuaded the Gentiles that liberalism would bring them to a kingdom of reason.
  - “We injected the poison of liberalism into the organ of the State...
  - “We will pre-arrange for the election of...presidents whose past is marred with some “Panama Scandal” or other shady hidden transaction.”<sup>436</sup>

They go on to talk about their creating a universal money crisis, using the masonic lodges.

- “We must take no account of the numerous victims which will have to be sacrificed in order to obtain future prosperity.”<sup>437</sup>

There are two new things in this whole plan. Of course, they ascribe all this to Jewish and power; and undoubtedly there are Jewish groups like that who think that they are going to conquer the world. The two new ideas in them, however, are: 1) they are not atheistic. They believe in one world religion. They say in the 14th protocol, “When we come into our kingdom it will be undesirable for us that there should exist any other religion than ours of the One God with Whom our destiny is bound up by our position as the Chosen People and through Whom our same destiny is united with the destinies of the world. We must

---

<sup>436</sup> Ibid., p. 300.

<sup>437</sup> Ibid., p. 303.



therefore sweep away all other forms of belief. If this gives birth to the atheists whom we see today, it will not, being only a transitional stage, interfere with our views, but will serve as a warning for those generations who will hearken to our preaching of the religion of Moses, that, by its stable and thoroughly elaborated system has brought all the peoples of the world into subjection to us. Therein we shall emphasize its mystical right..."<sup>438</sup>

Of course, this is in accord with the more profound revolutionaries who saw that the revolution must become religious in the end. Atheism is only a transition in order to get rid of previous religious views.

- "In the meantime while we are re-educating youth in new traditional religions and afterwards in ours, we shall not overtly lay a finger on existing churches, but we shall fight against them by criticism calculated to produce schism."<sup>439</sup>
- The second new ingredient in this revolutionary proposal is that there will be one world monarch. The third protocol reads as follows:
- "Ever since that time we have been leading the peoples from one disenchantment to another, so that in the end they should turn also from us in favor of that King Despot of the blood of Zion, whom we are preparing for the world."
- "It is probably all the same to the world who [is] its sovereign lord, whether this be the head of Catholicism or our despot of the blood of Zion. But to us, the Chosen People, it is very far from being a matter of indifference."<sup>440</sup> We see here that this is already a rival to the Pope as a world ruler.

### **Tenth protocol:**

- "The recognition of our despot may also come before the destruction of the constitution; the moment for this recognition will come when the peoples, utterly wearied by the irregularities and incompetence – a matter which we shall arrange for – of their rulers, will clamor: Away with them and give us one king over all the earth

---

<sup>438</sup> World Conquest Through World Government. The Protocols of the Learned Elders of Zion, transl. from the Russian of Sergei Nilus by Victor E. Marsden, downloaded and reformatted from <http://www.jurai.net/~gaijin/ill.elderzion.html>

<sup>439</sup> Protocol No. 17.

<sup>440</sup> Protocol No. 5.

who will unite us and annihilate the causes of discord – frontiers, nationalities, religions, State debts – who will give us peace and quiet, which we cannot find under our own rulers and representatives.”

- “When the king of Israel sets upon his sacred head the crown offered him by Europe he will become patriarch of the world. The indispensable victims offered by him in consequence of their suitability will never reach the number of victims offered in the course of centuries by the mania of magnificence, the emulation between the Goy governments.
- “Our king will be in constant communion with the peoples, making to them from the tribune speeches which we will in the same hour distribute all over the world.”<sup>441</sup>
- “The supreme lord who will replace all now-existing rulers,” it says in the 23rd protocol, “dragging on their existence among societies demoralized by us, societies which have denied even the authority of God, from whose midst breaks out on all sides the fire of anarchy, must first of all proceed to quench this all-devouring flame. Therefore he will be obliged to kill off those existing societies, though he should drench them with his own blood, that he might resurrect them again in the form of regularly organized troops fighting consciously with every kind of infection that may cover the body of the State with sores.
- “This Chosen One of God is chosen from above to demolish the senseless forces moved by instinct (and not reason, by brutishness) and not humanness. These forces now triumph in manifestations of robbery and every kind of violence under the mask of principles of freedom and rights. They have overthrown all forms of social order to erect on [the ruins of] the throne of the King of the Jews; but their part will be played out the moment he enters into his kingdom. Then it will be necessary to sweep them away from his path, on which must be left no knot, no splinter.
- “Then will it be possible for us to say to the peoples of the world: Give thanks to God and bow the knee before him who bears on his front the seal of the predestination of man, to which God himself

---

<sup>441</sup> Protocol No. 15.

had led His star that none other but Him might free us from all the aforementioned forces and evils.”

All this is deeply in accord with the philosophy of the Talmud, of the desire of the Jews for a Messiah who is of this world; and it is not surprising that there should be some kind of Jewish organization which has this philosophy. The philosophy is actually that of Marx; the ruthlessness, the using of everybody else for its own purpose, the establishing of one world rule – everything except the fact that Marx did not believe in God.

The interesting thing about this document is the historical [significance] it was placed to in the twentieth century. A certain man named Rosenberg who came from Russia to Germany after the Revolution brought this book with him and showed it to Hitler who immediately saw in this something which he could use from two points of view: 1) by showing this to the people, it would enflame their hatred for the Jews – because they are trying to establish a world monarchy; and he could blame all the problems of Germany on them – the currency crisis, the depression, the unemployment, etc. – and say this is a secret society trying to take over Germany, and 2) he admitted the book was very well written, “I will use that as my philosophy to govern.”<sup>442</sup> And so this document became one of the very important sources for the National Socialism of Hitler who placed himself in the place of the world monarch of the Jews.

---

<sup>442</sup> Hitler quoted in Rauschning, *Hitler Speaks*, Thornton Butterworth Ltd., London, 1939, pp. 235-6: “I have read *The Protocols of the Elders of Zion*? – it simply appalled me. The stealthiness of the enemy, and his ubiquity! I saw at once that we must copy it – in our own way, of course.” ... “We must beat the Jew with his own weapon... I saw that the moment I had read the book.” “So you derived inspiration for your struggle from the *Protocols*?? I [Rauschning] asked. “Yes, certainly, down to the veriest detail.... I found these *Protocols* enormously instructive. I have always learnt a great deal from my opponents.” p. 238: Rauschning: “...And what...have you taken over from the *Protocols of Elders of Zion*??” Hitler: “Political intrigue, the technique of conspiracy, organization. Is that not enough?” See also Rauschning, *Revolution of Nihilism*, p. 53: “It would be a great mistake to suppose that so cunning an individual as the German Minister of Propaganda is not perfectly well aware that the atrocity propaganda against the Jews, including the *Protocols of the Elders of Zion* is preposterous nonsense, that he does not see through the racial swindle just as clearly as those compatriots of his whom it has driven out of their country. ...The bases of the philosophy?...have been deliberately concocted for their demographic effectiveness and for the furtherance of the party’s political aims.”

Now we will look at these three great movements in the twentieth century which prove that all these philosophers are not simple idle thinkers; they were speaking of things which were entering into reality – the three great totalitarian systems in the twentieth century.

One of them is not particularly important to us and that is the system of Mussolini, the fascist. It is perhaps not much appreciated that in his youth Mussolini was a Marxist; he took part in many Marxist demonstrations; he talked about the “dictatorship of the proletariat,” the coming of the Communist State, the withering away of the state, and was a typical radical just like any other Marxist demonstrator. When he got a chance to come into power, he saw that by combining various elements of society and giving one message to one and one to the other, he could come to power on a platform which looks a little different; and therefore he developed this fascism which is a romantic kind of socialism and even got the king on his side, made a concordat with the Pope, and therefore became a dictator on a basis which is not absolutely Communism but is based on the same ruthless dictatorship. So, this is not an example of the ruthless Communism as such, but the same kind of man which is produced by Communist philosophy. The fact that he was allied with so-called right-wing forces is only incidental. His idol was Lenin because Lenin was one who had power and took over; and therefore, he based his system on Lenin, that is, the practical system of how to get power.

## Bolshevism

The second great movement, and the greatest, actually, in the twentieth century, which today encompasses almost half the world is Bolshevism. Marxism in Russia, which more than anything persuades us that these ideas all the way from Weishaupt down to the Protocols are very realistic, that the Christian world is indeed being overthrown and something new can be successful. Unlike all the previous revolutions of the last century, this one succeeds for almost sixty years. It is a ruthless extermination of the old order, the destruction of churches, killing of priests on an extent which up to then was unknown. In all the previous revolutions there were only some half million people killed, perhaps a million altogether. Now we come to a place where, according to estimates, perhaps sixty million people were killed directly as the result of the Revolution. And so the idea which we saw expressed in *The Possessed* of killing off a hundred million people is not far-fetched at all. The system of Communism was tempered a bit by the necessities of ruling people and therefore Communism in Russia is not the perfect application of the principles of Weishaupt or Marx. The idea of free love, for example, was tried until it was found to be not too practical and they reinstituted marriage with even some fake kind of ceremony. And they saw that when the people are living like dogs in the streets, it produces a disharmony in society; and you cannot push the revolution forward. So they quickly began to put this into order, that is, reintroducing the idea of marriage, although without any idea of sacrament, of course. And it is common knowledge, as one boy who was in Moscow told us, you can get a girl for as cheap as a cup of coffee. There is no idea of morality whatsoever.

Lenin was a great admirer of Nechayev, the most revolutionary and was motivated by no principles whatsoever except the triumph of Communism. His ideal is first of all to establish the dictatorship of the proletariat according to Marx. According to Lenin this dictatorship is: "a domination that is untrammelled by law and based on violence."<sup>443</sup>

---

<sup>443</sup> Cf. *The Great Quotations*, comp. by George Seldes, Pocket Books, New York, 1967, p. 285: "The revolutionary dictatorship of the proletariat is power won and maintained by the violence of the proletariat against the bourgeoisie, power that is unrestricted by any laws." V.I. Lenin quoted in *The Proletarian Revolution and the Renegade Kautsky*, International Publishers, New York, 1934; also "The dictatorship of the proletariat is nothing else than power based upon force and limited by nothing – by no law and by absolutely no law." Seldes quoting V. I. Lenin, *Complete Works*, (French edition) Vol. XVIII, p. 361.

According to Lenin's ideal, "before the dictatorship of the proletariat comes to an end, the whole of society will have become one office and one factory with equal work and equal pay and there will be no way of getting away from it. There will be nowhere to go."<sup>444</sup>

In Communism we see a very violent revolution whose victims are in the many millions, even when there seems to be no practical necessity for it. And here we should look at one view of Marx and Lenin which points to us what happens to man when he enters the revolution. The violence of the revolution and this love of violence, of burning and destroying – is not only for the sake of overthrowing the old order. There is another purpose. Marx says: "Both for the production on a mass scale of this Communist consciousness and for the success of the cause itself, the alteration of men on a mass scale is necessary; an alteration which can only take place in a practical movement, a revolution: this revolution is necessary, therefore, not only because the ruling class cannot be overthrown in any other way, but also because the class overthrowing it can only in a revolution succeed in ridding itself of all the muck of ages and become fitted to found society anew."<sup>445</sup>

"In revolutionary activity, change of self-coincides with the change of circumstances."<sup>446</sup>

That is, mankind is somehow to be changed. And we know what man becomes in revolution: he becomes a beast, totally gripped by the fever for blood, for destroying. This is something very frightful; the demons are let loose and the person becomes demonized. And this is what Marx wants: that man can become something new, no longer able to love family, country, to have normal morality, to have love for God, to have all those normal things which normal society accepts as standard of action. There will be someone new, completely uprooted, the man of the moment, someone to whom you can tell: "Go out and kill a million people;" and he will go off and do it without even thinking. This is the kind of new man that the Communists want to make.

---

<sup>444</sup> The German Ideology, Part I, Marx and Engels, International Publishers, New York, 1947, p. 84.

<sup>445</sup> Marx And Engels, The German Ideology, Part I, International Publishers, New York, 1947, p. 69.

<sup>446</sup> Ibid., p. 204n.

Of course, this making of a new man is not only the result of Communist activity. We see with the prevalence of radical philosophies, atheist philosophies, the decline of morality, the looseness of philosophy of life in the West where there are no Communists to take over – the same producing of a man who is ruthless, has no contact with tradition, with the past, with God...

One contemporary writer on this subject, Erich Kahler, has said one interesting thing: “The powerful trend toward the disruption and invalidation of the individual...manifestly present in the most diverse currents of modern life – economic, technological, political, scientific, educational, psychic and artistic – appears so overwhelming that we are induced to see in it a true mutation, a transformation of human nature.”<sup>447</sup> We shall leave this until the next lecture when we shall discuss other people who have discussed precisely the question of how human nature is going to be transformed.

---

<sup>447</sup> Kahler, Erich, *The Tower and the Abyss*, George Braziller, Inc., New York, 1957, pp. 225-6.

# Hitler

We will go now to Hitler about whom we won't say too much and then come back to discuss the points in common of Nazism and communism. Hitler's whole system of National Socialism is, without going into the romantic side of it – his love for Wagner, the Twilight of the God, his romanticism – in a word, his system is Bolshevism again with some compromises like Mussolini made in order to gain control of the ruling elements; but basically his philosophy is Bolshevism adapted to a different value scale. In Bolshevism everything is interpreted in terms of economics and class; and there is a class war of the lower class against the upper class. Hitler has the same thing, only instead of a class war he has a racial war: Germany against the world. His system is quite millennial and in fact he called his empire the Thousand Year Reich, the thousand-year empire which is directly from the Apocalypse. He also took Lenin as his model because he was quite ruthless, and his philosophy is no different. He is a typical example of the uprooted man, he has no belief in God, no morality, no higher values and he felt deep kinship to Bolshevism. Like Napoleon he thought of the resurrection of the Roman Empire, but also like Napoleon he recognized that the times were not suited for that...

## **Jews: His plans. Lenin: His Model.**

Felt kinship to Bolshevism. When all but he said: The future belongs solely to the stronger nation.<sup>448</sup>

...happened to be on Mt. Athos he should find in some monastery a document which would give him the right to the Eastern Empire – Roman Empire? he should put it away and save it for a future day. This shows that the idea of a universal monarch is still present although the times are so and so matter of fact that right now it is not useful. But in the future when more romantic ideas become fashionable this idea of the...<sup>449</sup>

...the entire resurrection of the Roman Empire can be very plausible. His relationship to the Jews is most interesting because he used the Jewish question as a scapegoat, like the Bolsheviks used the middle class, the bourgeois. Every time something goes wrong, it's the fault of the bourgeois sabbateurs or the big peasants who were trying to overthrow the government. And therefore you kill off a million more

---

<sup>448</sup> Quoted in Nihilism, p. 77.

<sup>449</sup> Tape begins.



and you're safe for a while. With Hitler this took the form of the Jews and a whole romantic mystical philosophy of race in which the Germans are the superior, superior race, and others – they have a whole hierarchy of them – the Gypsies, Poles and so forth are, go lower and lower. The Russians are somewhere in the middle, they're pretty low. And he was looked at by one person who was close to him, a certain [Hermann] Rauschning, who in the thirties and early forties was writing, he escaped in about 1938. He was an ordinary mayor of Danzig, and at first thought that Hitler was going to save conservatism. But he became very close to [him], had many long talks with him, and began to see that the man is crazy. Might be not crazy, but he has [a] very, very definite philosophy which [is] absolutely unheard of. And he was the one who first came out and began to tell the world what this man is standing for, based on his conversations.

And one conversation he had with him, and he said, "Why are you so upset about the Jews? Why do you have to be so fanatical about the Jews?" And he said, "What characterizes the Jews?" And Rauschning said, "Well, they think they're the chosen people; they're, they have some kind of messiah-complex."<sup>450</sup> He said, "Yes, just that. And what about we Germans? If we are the master race and if we are going to conquer the world, how can we allow that there will be another people who has the idea that they are the chosen people? If the Jews are the chosen people, the Germans cannot be the chosen people. And therefore, we must exterminate the Jews, so that the Germans may take their place. And I will be their messiah," that is, the messiah of the Germans. And he even said one place that, "If you like, I will be antichrist. It's all the same to me."<sup>451</sup> Hitler had the idea, he was a very unreligious person himself, had no God or anything, but like Napoleon,

---

<sup>450</sup> Rauschning, *Hitler Speaks*, p. 238: "But we have been speaking, said Hitler, of the Jew only as the ruler of the economic world empire. We have been speaking of him as our political opponent. Where does he stand in the deeper struggle for the new world era?"

"I confessed that I had no notion.

"There cannot be two Chosen People. We are God's People. Does that not fully answer the question?"

"That is to be understood symbolically?" "Again he banged the table.

"Symbolically? No! It's the sheer simple undiluted truth. Two worlds face one another – the men of God and the men of Satan! The Jew is the anti-man, the creature of another god. He must have come from another root of the human race. I set the Aryan and the Jew over against each other; and if I call one of them a human being I must call the other something else....?"

<sup>451</sup> Source for this?

he was very interested in the religious question. And he said, "After I've conquered the world, I shall then give my greatest contribution to humanity. I will solve the religious question."<sup>452</sup> He didn't say exactly how he was going to solve it. He did say that he would cause to be erected in all high places, high mountains throughout the world, telescopes, and underneath the telescope would be written the inscription, "To the Unknown God." And of course, if he did become world conqueror, he would not very well have been able to resist the temptation to think that he was a god. But the fact that he had this idea of solving the religious question makes him, like Napoleon, one of these forerunners of antichrist. He hated the Western democracies.

By the way, he abolished all secret societies. And for him, everything was a Jewish-Masonic plot. The Masons were not allowed to exist, of course, for the same reason that the Communists destroyed all secret societies and Napoleon destroyed all secret societies: because the one in power does not need any secret society. They only cause, he knew himself, having gone through all kinds of secret societies that these were stirring up discord.

And of course he was fighting against Bolshevism because he recognized that we are the two who are fighting for the supremacy of the world. One of us must conquer it. And when it came to the last days in Berlin, we have his notes preserved from his last days. And he saw that he was going to lose. And then he could not bear the thought that the British and the Americans had defeated him, because he regarded them as effeminate, weak, backwards, out of date. And so he said, as kind of his last testament, "The future belongs solely to the stronger Eastern nation."<sup>453</sup> As though he gave his inheritance to Bolshevism, which shows he recognized there that same kind of power that brought him to power: this primordial revolution that's going to conquer the world and destroy the past.

Hitler said, when he was still coming to power, and had already the thought of world empire, "We may be destroyed, but if we are, we shall drag with us a world, a world in flames."<sup>454</sup> And we see here the same impulse behind the Commune of Paris which wanted to destroy Paris.

---

<sup>452</sup> Hitler's Secret Conversations, p. 117: "The war will be over one day. I shall then consider that my life's final task will be to solve the religious problem. Only then will the life of the German native be guaranteed once and for all."

<sup>453</sup> Quoted in Nihilism, p. 77n: Quoted in H.R. Trevor-Roper, *The Last Days of Hitler*, New York, The Macmillan Co., 1947, p. 82.

<sup>454</sup> Quoted in Rauschnig, Hermann, *The Voice of Destruction*, G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York, 1940, p. 5.

In the last days of the war, when obviously Germany was invaded on all sides and 14-year-old boys were being sent out to fight, the end was obviously near. Germans were fighting on to the last moment.

By the way, we should not think that the Reich of Hitler was to be compared with the Bolsheviks because in all respects Hitler was much more humane. It was possible to talk to the SS, to the Gestapo. It was possible to talk them out of sending you to a prison camp. Could be expect some, to some extent justice from them. And anybody who lived under both Hitler and the Communists, they will tell you there was no choice. They always went back to Germany whenever the battle lines changed. We know many people who were in Germany during that time. And they say that of course it was a kind of crazy place, and Hitler was very strange. Nonetheless, some kind of normal life was still possible; whereas under the Bolsheviks the totalitarianism is absolutely absolute.

So in that sense Hitler is a small imitation of the Bolsheviks; he was still very much compromising with the past. But in the last days of the war, his propaganda minister Goebbels explained on the radio something which sounds very Marxist, as the bombs were falling all around. “—The bomb-terror spares the dwellings of neither rich nor poor; before the labor offices of total war the last class barriers have had to go down.... Together with the monuments of culture there crumble also the last obstacles to the fulfillment of our revolutionary task. Now that everything is in ruins, we are forced to rebuild Europe. In the past, private possessions tied us to a bourgeois restraint. Now the bombs, instead of killing all Europeans have only smashed the prison walls which kept them captive.... In trying to destroy Europe’s future, the enemy has only succeeded in smashing its past; and with that, everything old and outworn has gone.”<sup>455</sup>

So the aim of Nazism, the function of Nazism in world history, is to destroy the past. And the Bolsheviks who were doing the same thing in Russia, when they triumph, their object now is to go throughout the world and destroy this, this past. And they were even organized as in the last days in Germany, some kind of wolfpacks of youths who were to go about and destroy buildings, that is the Germans destroying their own buildings so that the enemy would have nothing to, the past civilization would have no remnant left.

---

<sup>455</sup> Quoted in Nihilism, p. 76n: Goebbels quoted in H.R. Trevor-Roper, *The Last Days of Hitler*, New York, The Macmillan Co., 1947, pp. 50-51.

And now we wonder what is beyond all this. If this is some kind of universal destruction, if old religion, if old art, culture, civilization is to be destroyed, and the very buildings of the past are to be destroyed, what is the revolutionary idea of the future? We see that there's some idea of changing man.

We'll look at two brief quotes from Nietzsche, whom we'll discuss in the next lecture as one of the chief prophets of this new age. He says two things which are most interesting from this point of view. One, he says in his book, *The Will to Power*, "Under certain circumstances, the appearance of the extremest form of Pessimism and actual Nihilism might be the sign of a process of incisive and most essential growth, and of mankind's transit into completely new conditions of existence. This is what I have understood."<sup>456</sup>

Again, he's, when he speaks about his concept of the transvaluation of all values, he says, "With this formula a counter-movement finds expression, in regard to both a principle and a mission; a movement which in some remote future will supersede this perfect Nihilism; but which nevertheless regards it (Nihilism) as a necessary step, both logically and psychologically, towards its own advent, and which positively cannot come, except on top of and out of it."<sup>457</sup>

And we have a very interesting quote from Lenin. And he says, actually giving his ideal of the one factory throughout the world which no one can escape, "But this factory? discipline, which the proletariat will extend to the whole of society after the defeat of the capitalists and the overthrow of the exploiters, is by no means our ideal, or our final aim. It is but a foothold necessary for the radical cleansing of society of all the hideousness and foulness of capitalist exploitation, in order to advance further."<sup>458</sup> And Lenin himself, for all his arguments against the anarchists, is finally forced to admit that the final goal of Communism is exactly the same as the final goal of Bakunin and the anarchists: that is, some kind of absolute anarchy.

In the next lecture we'll go into what this possibly can mean. And it does have a definite meaning in the theology of the revolution.

We'll finish with a brief quote from a poet of our century, W.B. Yeats, Irish poet very much mixed up with occultism, who founded his own lodge of occultism, was very sympathetic at one time to Hitler

---

<sup>456</sup> Quoted in *Nihilism*, p. 91n; *The Will to Power*, p. 92.

<sup>457</sup> Quoted in *Nihilism*, p. 91n; *The Will to Power*, p. 2.

<sup>458</sup> Quoted in *Nihilism*, p. 91n; *State and Revolution*, Vladimir Lenin, International Publishers, New York, 1935, p. 84.

because he seemed to be incarnating some new kind of occult principle. And in fact, Hitler himself proclaimed himself as the first dictator in a new age of magic. Yeats wrote, “ – Dear predatory birds, prepare for war.... Love war because of its horror, that belief may be changed, civilization renewed.... Belief comes from shock.... Belief is renewed continually in the ordeal of death.”<sup>459</sup>

And we’ll discuss in the next lecture this idea that, out of all this destruction which the revolutionaries themselves do not know the meaning of. All they know is they feel like destroying. All past standards are gone. There is nothing more to restrain them. Their passions come out. And they just destroy, kill – with the most frightful thing. In fact, we’ve never had such a bloody century as our own century when this purely senseless brutality is carried on.

And the book of Solzhenitsyn, the Gulag, is must-reading actually for one that wants to understand what the revolution means, how it can be that people who talk about liberty and freedom and brotherhood can have established the most frightful tyranny in the history of mankind, not excluding any of the ancient, Eastern despots or Assyrians or Egyptians or anybody else, the most frightful despotism the world has ever seen, the most bloody regime by people who believe in freedom, liberty and brotherhood, and how it’s quite deliberately accomplished in order to belittle man and destroy him.

The people who make the revolutions ordinarily do not see this – what the thing is beyond. But they all feel that in doing this they are destroying the whole weight of civilization, of religion, of tradition. Once it is destroyed, and we see how it took a long time, from the time of when French Revolution began. And all these revolutions are unsuccessful obviously because there’s too much weight from the past left, too much tradition is left, too much culture and civilization is still left. There’s only when they’ve destroyed everything, and even made man some kind of new creature, some kind of person who is used to violence.

And we see in the West, if you look, children look at television. They see people get killed off every day. They get very callous towards violence, towards bloodshed. The same kind of thing is going on in the free world to make people used to bloodshed, violence – quite callous to it.

And once this kind of person is introduced, then there’s going to come a new religious revelation. And even W.B. Yeats says this is all

---

<sup>459</sup> Quoted in Nihilism, p. 89n: A Vision, William Butler Yeats, 1937, pp. 52-53.

positive. We should love this whole process of revolution and war and destruction because it means a new revolution is being born. And now we'll have to look in the next lecture.... And this new religion, all bound up with the idea of anarchy, the idea of overcoming nihilism, is the end of the revolution, which a few very astute people have seen into and have spoken about.

# Lecture 10

## New Religion

### Introduction

1. Having seen the outward progress of the Revolution of modern times, now we turn to deeper spiritual-philosophical causes of it – what happened in the human soul to make it want Revolution that seems to make so little sense, be so impossible? What is theology of Revolution?
2. End of 18th century is end of Old Order – age of stability, human institutions and art and culture based on at least remnant of Christianity and Christian feeling. Outbreak of Revolution coincides with end of civilization. For 200 years we have been in a new age, a seeking for a new order.

### Crisis of Knowledge – End of Rationalism

1. Since Middle Ages, Rationalism reduces sphere of knowledge as it criticizes every tradition, spiritual realm, myth except outward world.
2. With Hume, reason goes as far as it can go – destroys all certain knowledge even of outward world. He said we can know only what we experience. Thus, against miracles; then, even natural religion.

That the divinity may possibly be endowed with attributes which we have never seen exerted; may be governed by principles of action, which we cannot discover to be satisfied: all this will freely be allowed. But still this is mere possibility and hypothesis. We never can have reason to infer any attributes, or any principles of action in him, but so far as we know them to have been exerted and satisfied. Are there any marks of a distributive justice in the world? If you answer in the affirmative, I answer that, since justice here exerts itself, it is satisfied. If you reply in the negative, I conclude, that you have then no reason to ascribe justice, in our sense of it, to the gods. If you hold a medium between affirmation and negation, by saying, that the justice of the gods, at present, exerts itself in part, but not in its full extent: I answer,

that you have no reason to give it particular extent, but only so far as you see it at present exert itself.<sup>460</sup>

## **No Argument for the Existence of God**

Having thus disposed of the rational basis for faith in the moral governance of the world, Hume went on, in his *Dialogues*, to show that there could not even be any argument for the existence of an all-wise and all-good Creator. There is no necessity of the universe having had a first cause. It is as easy to conceive of it as self-existent and eternal as to assume an external cause with those qualities. There is no analogy between an object in the world, like a watch, and the entire world; we have seen watches made, but not worlds. Order may be as natural as chaos, and hence harmony and universal law need no further reason for their existence, other than that we find them to obtain. From a finite world as effect we could assume at the most only a finite cause. If the universe did indeed have an author, he may have been an incompetent workman, or he may have long since died after completing his work, or he may have been a male and a female god, or a great number of gods. He may have been entirely good, or entirely evil, or both, or neither – probably the last.<sup>461</sup>

## **Holbach Went Further – Materialism**

Is it not more natural and more intelligible to derive everything which exists from the bosom of matter, whose existence is demonstrated by every one of our senses, whose effects we each instant experience, which we see acting, moving, communicating motion and generation ceaselessly, than to attribute the formation of things to an unknown force, to a spiritual being which cannot develop from its nature what it is not itself, and which, by the spiritual essence attributed to it is incapable of doing anything and of setting anything in motion?<sup>462</sup>

## **But Hume Goes Further – Undermining Even Knowledge of Facts**

Man has two sorts of perceptions... distinguishable by their varying liveliness and forcibleness; and there are two sorts of knowledge which

---

<sup>460</sup> Hume quoted in Randall, p. 300.

<sup>461</sup> Randall, p. 301.

<sup>462</sup> Holbach quoted in Randall, p. 302.



correspond to them. On the one hand there is immediate sensation, present experience – what he calls impressions; from these we obtain knowledge of matters of fact. Then, there are our less lively impressions – our ideas – from which we come to know the relations of ideas. Our ideas are without exception derived from our impressions, and the only power of our minds is in compounding, transposing, augmenting, or diminishing the materials afforded us by the senses and experience.<sup>463</sup> Our ideas, then, are more feeble, decidedly secondary – certainly not a source of knowledge in the practical affairs of ethics, politics, economics, which, in a secular outlook such as that prevailing in the eighteenth century, are the principle concerns of man. (No more, of course, can they tell us anything about God or any other such transcendental object beyond the experience of man.) Knowledge of the relations of ideas tells us only about those ideas, not about the primary impressions from which they are derived. Knowledge here is certain – because it is subjective. If we examine the way in which our mind works we can discover how it orders and relates the ideas presented to it; but the subjective working of our mind has nothing to do with that external reality which we seek most of all to know.

Our inquiry, then, into useful knowledge, must have to do exclusively with our impressions,...

“...what we can know about the outer world, ...deal only with what he called impressions, “matters of fact.”<sup>464</sup>

“First of all,” we must acknowledge that we cannot know what things are “in themselves.” We do not have knowledge of the “external entities which are presented to our senses, but only of the images of those things. All we can know is what we perceive and since all external objects must be seen through our senses, all we can know are those objects” not as they are in themselves, but as they are “seen through our senses. What we see is not a tree, but” only “the image of a tree as our sense of sight modifies it in taking it up into its perception. When we back away from it, it is not the tree that becomes smaller but the perception of it in our minds. And when we press our eyeballs in a certain way, it is not the tree that becomes double, but the image of it” which “is all we can know of it.”

---

<sup>463</sup> David Hume, *An Enquiry Concerning Human Understanding*, quoted in Edwin A. Burt (ed.), *The English Philosophers from Bacon to Mill*. New York. Random House, Inc., 1939. pp. 593-4.

<sup>464</sup> Fr. Seraphim’s “Brinton paper” p.2-6 – Text here begins here in a quote, then p. 1 on chill.

So “to begin with...we must realize that even our knowledge of matters of fact has a great deal of subjectivity in it.” But now we must look to see if there’s any objectivity at all in our knowledge.<sup>465</sup>

“...The next question we will ask” about these impressions “is how do we come to know them? Beyond the evidence of the immediate sense-testimony and the memory” of this sense testimony, “there is only” one thing, one “relation,” which is “cause and effect. When confronted with a certain cause, we expect a certain effect; and much of our daily experience is based upon the regularity of this relationship” between causes and effects. “But here again, if we search for certainty we are bound to be disappointed: there is no necessary connection between cause and effect; we infer such a connection through experience of constant conjunction of two events. Thus, whenever I put my hand into a flame, I experience pain; but this will not necessarily happen each...time I do” it, because we have no knowledge that there’s a certain connection between these two events.

And so he says, “The contrary of every matter of fact is still possible; because it can never imply a contradiction, and” it “is conceived by the mind with the same facility and distinctness, as if ever so conformable to reality.”<sup>466</sup> That is, it could happen as far as we know, that I put my hand in the flame and it will not experience pain. “But how then do we infer this necessary connection between cause and effect?” And he says that it’s only “by custom or habit. All inferences from experience, therefore, are effects of custom, not of reasoning. Custom, then, is the great guide of human life. It is that principle alone which renders our experiences useful to us and makes us expect, for the future, a similar train of events with those which have appeared in the past.”<sup>467</sup>

“But what, then, is left” of knowledge and “of the certain, absolute knowledge” which the philosophers of the eighteenth century thought they had? The answer according to Hume: “Nothing,” whatsoever. “Reason is a subjective faculty which has no necessary relation with the facts we seek to know. It is limited to tracing the relations of our ideas”, which “themselves” are already twice “removed from reality. And our senses are equally subjective, for they can never know the thing in itself, only an image of it which has in it no element of necessity and certainty – the contrary of every matter of fact is still possible?”

---

<sup>465</sup> Ibid.

<sup>466</sup> Ibid., p. 598.

<sup>467</sup> Ibid., p. 610.

So he says, “Do you follow the instincts and propensities of nature in ascending to the veracity, the truthfulness of sense? But these lead you to believe that the very perception or sensible image is the external object.” Which, of course, is not true; it is not. It’s only an image in our mind. “Do you disclaim this principle, in order to embrace a more rational opinion that the perceptions are only representations of something external?” But here you “depart from your natural propensities and more obvious sentiments; and” still you “are not able to satisfy your reason, which can never find any convincing argument from experience to prove, that these perceptions are connected with any external objects.”<sup>468</sup> And so, knowledge is dissolved.

And what, then, is the answer? How do we live, according to Hume? And here’s his answer: “The great subverter of...the excessive principles of skepticism is action, and employment, and the occupations of common life. These principles may flourish and triumph in the schools,... But as soon as they leave the shade, and by the presence of the real objects, which actuate our passions, and sentiments, are put into opposition to the more powerful principles of our nature, they vanish like smoke, and leave the most determined skeptic in the same condition as other mortals.”<sup>469, 470</sup>

Well, it’s very nice for him to say because he was a very comfortable English gentleman. He had his fireplace, cozy warm nook, country house. And in fact wrote his history of England and was concerned about practical things; and this philosophy did not upset him terribly. But the poor people who read this and take it seriously and have a real sort of passion to know what they can know and they believe in reason, for them the whole universe is destroyed. In fact, that’s one deep thing in our modern thinkers for the last two hundred years, this sort of despair at ever being able to know anything, which sort of dissolves the fabric of their life....

You’re going to believe in philosophy and sort of start reasoning things through, you want to come to the truth, and you get up against Hume and thinkers like that... [this change which occurred between

---

<sup>468</sup> Ibid., p. 682.

<sup>469</sup> Ibid., p. 685.

<sup>470</sup> Rose, Eugene, “Hume: Philosopher of Common Sense,” Term Paper I, History 117b, Dr. Crane Brinton, Instructor, Pomona College, November 10, 1954, pp. 2-6. This paper was graded by Dr. Brinton: “A good essay, well-written. A.”

eighteenth century and, that is, from the time when Hume criticized reality, that reality is not quite as secure as we thought.]"<sup>471</sup>

And all of a sudden the whole world sort of dissolves and the next thing you know, you are wondering, "Do I, do I exist? Does the world exist?" "What is what?" And you can actually kill yourself if you start thinking like that and take it really seriously. And, of course, people have killed themselves over that. Others have overthrown philosophy and gone up to start burning down buildings because that's something real, you know, action. He says "Action." For him action means sitting around, and smoking his pipe and writing English history. Somebody else, that is, if they don't have that education, that desire, for them action means revolution, burning things up, killing people.

And so, with justice, one of the writers on the philosophy of the Enlightenment has the following thing to say about Hume. Carl Becker is his name. He wrote a book called *The Heavenly City of the Eighteenth Century Philosophers*. And this Carl Becker describes all these philosophers and progress and so forth, and then he comes to Hume. And he says when you read Hume, after reading all the other philosophers, it's as though at high noon of the great age of Enlightenment, all of a sudden there's a cloud, a chill, some kind of a strange thing comes to, you begin to wonder what, I thought everything was just fine, it's all sunny and warm.

"To read Hume's *Dialogues* after having read, with sympathetic understanding, the earnest deists and optimistic philosophers of the early century, is to experience a slight chill, a feeling of apprehension. It is as if, at high noon of the Enlightenment, at the hour of the siesta when everything seems to be so quiet and secure all about, one were suddenly aware of the short, sharp slipping of the foundations, a faint far-off tremor running underneath the solid ground of common sense."<sup>472</sup>

All of a sudden you feel this chill. There's something cold and dark on the horizon about to come up, because the ideas of Hume destroyed reality. No more is it possible to believe, that is, can we simply accept reality the way it is. Throw God out and we will have indefinite progress in this world. And Hume destroyed the idea that the world is stable. He said we can never know the world the way it is because cause and effect is only a part of the custom. And there's no law in

---

<sup>471</sup> From Nietzsche 1980 lecture

<sup>472</sup> Becker, Carl L., *The Heavenly City of the Eighteenth Century Philosophers*, Yale University Press, New Haven, 1970, p. 68.

science. All you have is custom. There's nothing objective or absolute about it. He himself didn't become a prophet of any new religion, but he has left his ideas there. Of course, this would later produce a great earthquake in our own times.

There're a lot of now modern academic historians who like eighteenth century a lot because it's full of optimism. It was the time of great music, Bach and Handel, and the philosophy was also very optimistic. The poetry was very upbeat and everything was very positive. There was nothing but good to come from the future, indefinite progress.

And so this revolutionary age of the eighteenth century preceding the Revolution begins with great optimism and even the people who make the Revolution also begin with great optimism, not realizing that by the end of the century, the most advanced philosophers have just destroyed any possibility for any real knowledge of the external world. And it takes time for deep ideas like that to filter down into the people, but when they do, we'll see it produces disastrous effects.

## Kant

Now we'll come to the thinker who is at this very time, the beginning of the revolutionary age, who stands between this old world of rationalistic philosophy when philosophers still thought they could reason to certain conclusions, even though they kept changing conclusions, and our new age when all of knowledge becomes uncertain. And this thinker has a very key place because he performed what he called, what has been called, the Copernican Revolution of philosophy. And his name is Immanuel Kant, who lived 1724 to 1804.

We already saw that the very beginning of modern philosophy with Descartes had begun not with some kind of outward observation or revelation; it began already with some kind of subjectivism. That is, when Descartes said: "I think, therefore I am," this is the first clear idea and from this, he deduces everything else – the outward world, God and absolutely everything because if there is something, then the world is real. If there's a real world, then there must be a God who created it. And he has clear, distinct ideas about all these realities and thinks he has a nice, tight philosophical system. But it all begins with his own observation of himself, which of course shows how far away he is from Christianity, which starts with God Who created the world and created us. But since they trust reason as the only faculty which can give us knowledge, they cannot start with God because you do not see God.

And so it happens that when these rationalists, particularly Hume, succeed in destroying our knowledge of God, of religion, of the spiritual world and then even of the material world, what is left? And the answer: what is left is the same, some kind of self-awareness. And so the last hope that man has that there is some kind of knowledge rests in his own awareness of himself. And this is what Kant did. He made a Copernican revolution by saying that it is not the mind which revolves around the world, in order to know what it is; it is rather the world which revolves around me, around the mind. We can never know what is out there, the thing in itself, the noumenon he calls it, but we can only know it as it appears to us; and such categories of reality as space and time are not categories of outward reality, but rather, of my mind; that is, I must see them in terms of space and mind. These are the categories which my mind organizes a reality with. And of course, if this is true, there is some kind of knowledge left. Not as reality as it is in itself, but reality as it must appear to me because I have that kind of mind. And so, knowledge is possible. And even knowledge of God is possible because he says that it's based on inward feeling, subjective

feeling, which shows how much he was under the influence of the Pietist movement of his time which was reacting against the Enlightenment rationalism, the deadness of it. But reality in itself is absolutely unknowable. Only what I see is knowable.

We have here observations on this by Heinrich Heine, a German Jew, who came to France because it was too dangerous in Germany and wrote this book on Religion and Philosophy in Germany in 1833 or 4, and got ahold of the feeling behind these thinkers very nicely and communicated what their meaning is. He was trying to interpret German philosophy to the French. And this is what he has to say about Kant:

“I am about to speak of a man whose mere name has the might of an exorcism; I speak of Immanuel Kant.

“It is said that night-wandering spirits are filled with terror at sight of the headman’s axe. With what mighty fear, then, must they be stricken when there is held up to them Kant’s Critique of Pure Reason. This is the sword that slew Deism in Germany.

“To speak frankly, you French have been tame and moderate compared with us Germans. At most you could but kill a king, and he had already lost his head before you guillotined him. For accompaniment to such deeds you must needs cause such a drumming and shrieking and stamping of feet that the whole universe trembled. To compare Maximilian Robespierre with Immanuel Kant is to confer too high an honor upon the former. Maximilian Robespierre, the great citizen of the Rue Saint Honoré, had, it is true, his sudden attacks of destructiveness when it was a question of the monarchy, and his frame was violently convulsed when the fit of regicidal epilepsy was on; but as soon as it came to be a question about the Supreme Being, he wiped the white froth from his lips, washed the blood from his hands, donned his blue Sunday coat with silver buttons, and stuck a nosegay into the bosom of his broad vest.”<sup>473</sup>

He went to Notre Dame to worship Reason and God and even to burn the image of atheism.

“The history of Immanuel Kant’s life is difficult to portray, for he had neither life nor history. He led a mechanical, regular, almost abstract bachelor existence in a little retired street of Königsberg, an old town on the northeastern frontier of Germany. I do not believe that the great clock of the cathedral performed in a more passionless and

---

<sup>473</sup> Heine, Heinrich, *Religion and Philosophy in Germany*, transl. John Snodgrass, Beacon Paperback, 1959, p. 107-109.

methodical manner its daily routine, than did its townsman Immanuel Kant. Rising in the morning, coffee-drinking, writing, reading lectures, dining, walking, everything had its appointed time, and the neighbors knew that it was exactly half-past three o'clock when Immanuel Kant stepped forth from his house in his grey tight-fitting coat with his Spanish cane in his hand, and betook himself to the little linden avenue called after him to this day the "Philosopher's Walk." Summer and winter he walked up and down it eight times, and when the weather was dull or heavy clouds prognosticated rain, the townspeople beheld his servant, the old Lampe, trudging anxiously behind him with a big umbrella under his arm, like an image of Providence.

"What a strange contrast did this man's outward life present to his destructive world-annihilating thoughts! In sooth, had the citizens of Königsberg had the least presentiment of the full significance of his ideas, they would have felt a far more awful dread at the presence of this man than at the sight of an executioner, who can but kill the body. But the worthy folk saw in him nothing more than a Professor of Philosophy, and as he passed at his customary hour, they greeted him in a friendly manner and set their watches by him.

"But though Immanuel Kant, the arch-destroyer in the realm of thought, far surpassed in terrorism Maximilian Robespierre, he had many similarities with the latter, which induce a comparison between the two men. In the first place, we find in both the same inexorable, keen, poesyless, sober integrity. We likewise find in both the same talent of suspicion, only that in the one it manifested itself in the direction of thought and was called criticism, whilst in the other it was directly against mankind and was styled republican virtue. But both presented in the highest degree the type of the narrow-minded citizen. Nature had destined them for weighing out coffee and sugar, but fate decided they should weigh out other things, and into the scales of the one it laid a king, into the scales of the other, a God.... And they both gave the correct weight!"<sup>474</sup>

"Kant proves to us that we know nothing about things as they are in and by themselves, but that we have a knowledge of them only in so far as they are reflected in our minds...."<sup>475</sup>

"Not without reason, therefore, did he compare his philosophy to the method of Copernicus. Formerly, when men conceived the world as standing still and the sun as revolving around it, astronomical calculations

---

<sup>474</sup> Ibid., p. 108.

<sup>475</sup> Ibid., p. 113.



failed to agree accurately, but when Copernicus made the sun stand still and the earth revolve around it, behold! everything accorded admirably. So formerly reason, like the sun, moved round the universe of phenomena, and sought to throw light upon it. But Kant bade reason, the sun, stand still, and the universe of phenomena now turns round, and is illuminated the moment it comes within the region of the intellectual orb.”<sup>476</sup>

“God, according to Kant, is a noumen. As a result of his argument, this ideal and transcendental being, hitherto called God, is a mere fiction. It has arisen from a natural illusion. Kant shows that we can know nothing regarding this noumen, regarding God, and that all reasonable proof of His existence is impossible. The words of Dante, Leave all hope behind!? may be inscribed over this portion of the Critique of Pure Reason.”<sup>477</sup>

But in the end “Immanuel Kant relents and shows that he is not merely a great philosopher but also a good man; he reflects, and half good-naturedly, half ironically, he says: Old Lampe must have a God, otherwise the poor fellow can never be happy. Now, man ought to be happy in this world; practical reason says so; – well, I am quite willing that practical reason should also guarantee the existence of God. As the result of this argument, Kant distinguishes between the theoretical reason and the practical reason, and by means of the latter, as with a magician’s wand, he revivifies Deism which theoretical reason had killed.”<sup>478</sup>

Well, the function of Kant is to make systematic what Hume had done with his criticism, that is, to do away with knowledge of the outer world and with God – in fact, to do away with God entirely. And he restores God only on the basis of our subjective feeling. And that is why all the religious movements from this time on have a new character. Because previously the idea of God is something which different people think they know by various kinds of revelations, even when they are wrong; but it’s about some Being who is out there.

From this time on, a new kind of subjectivism enters into philosophy and religious currents. And now we begin to think about, well, later in this century we have new thought: positive thinking, science of mind, mind over matter – all these things which are to come direct from this philosopher, not because his philosophy itself sort of had direct influence – of course, it did in many places – but because he was expressing what was going through the mind of people at that time: that

---

<sup>476</sup> Ibid., p. 114.

<sup>477</sup> Ibid., p. 115.

<sup>478</sup> Ibid., p. 119.

is, if you accept reason, you must follow him this far that we have no knowledge at all of outward things, and the only knowledge comes through some kind of subjectivism.

And as a result of this, the nineteenth century issues forth in a tremendous outburst of new subjective philosophies. We will look at just one of these which in itself is not particularly important, but it shows what happens when a philosopher takes seriously what this Kant says.

## Fichte

This philosopher is Fichte who lived about the same time as Kant, who died a little bit later. F-I-C-H-T-E. This is what Heinrich Heine has to say about him.

“The question proposed by Fichte is: What grounds have we for assuming that our conceptions of objects correspond with objects external to us? And to this question he offers the solution: All things have reality only in our mind.”<sup>479</sup>

“That idealism pursued to its ultimate consequences should end by denying even the reality of matter,” as Fichte did, “seemed, to the great mass of the public, to be carrying the joke too far. We” Germans “grew rather merry over the Fichtean Ego.” His whole philosophy is concerning the Ego and what it, how it makes reality for itself. “We grew rather merry over the Fichtean Ego, which produced by its mere thinking the whole external world. The laughter of our wits was increased through a misapprehension that became too popular to permit my passing over it in silence. The great mass really supposed that the Ego of Fichte was the Ego of Johann Gottlieb Fichte, and that this individual Ego implied a negation of all other existences. What an impertinence! exclaimed the worthy folk; this fellow does not believe that we exist, we who are much more corpulent than himself, and who, as burgomasters and bailiffs, are actually his superiors! The ladies inquired, Does he not at least believe in the existence of his wife? No! And Madame Fichte suffers this!

“The Ego of Fichte, however, is not the individual but the universal Ego, the world-Ego awakened to self-consciousness. The Fichtean process of thought is not the thinking act of an individual, of a certain person called Johann Gottlieb Fichte; it is rather the universal thought manifesting itself to an individual. As we say, It rains, It lightens, and so on; so Fichte ought not to say, I think, but it thinks, the universal world-thought thinks in me.

“In a parallel between the French Revolution and German philosophy I once compared, more in jest than in earnest, Fichte to Napoleon. But there are, in fact, certain remarkable analogies between them. After the Kantists had accomplished their work of terrorism and destruction, Fichte appeared, as Napoleon appeared after the Convention had demolished the whole past by the help of another sort of Critique of Pure Reason. Napoleon and Fichte represent the great

---

<sup>479</sup> Ibid., p. 124.

inexorable Ego for which thought and action are one; and the colossal structures raised by both men testify to a colossal will. But through the boundlessness of this will their structures soon fall to the ground, and both the Theory of Knowledge and the Empire crumble to pieces and disappear as quickly as they were reared.

“The Empire is now nothing more than matter of history, but the commotion cause by the emperor in the world has not yet calmed down and from this commotion our present Europe draws its vitality. It is the same with the philosophy of Fichte; it has completely perished, but men’s minds are still agitated by the thoughts that found a voice in Fichte, and the after-effect of his teaching is incalculable.”<sup>480</sup> Why? Because now this subjectivism has entered into the mainstream of Western thought.

### **Worship of Self**

From this time on, a person who wished to remain in this mainstream of thought, cannot think of anything, he cannot begin with anything but himself. And as we’ve already seen, this is the age of fantastic egotism in all spheres: the artists, the poets, the philosophers, the political people – they come up with fantastic claims for themselves, as though men had really come to believe that only I exist and everything else is uncertain.

For example, even at the end of the century Gustave Courbet, the painter, could say, “I have no master; my master is myself. There is not, and never has been any other painter other than myself.”<sup>481</sup> And you can talk to any modern painter and he’ll tell you very similar things. He’s all so preoccupied with his own genius, with what he can say, that he just has no, nothing else exists for him. It’s all bound up with his own, his own conception of art and reality. A lot of artists think that way now; they’re very proud. And he sort of expressed it in that way; it’s in accordance with these ideals of Kant: he was the center of the universe. And so, you can say that once God has been dethroned in the eighteenth century, they look for a new god and Kant gave the new god, the new god is...

Student: Demonic?

---

<sup>480</sup> Ibid., pp. 125-6.

<sup>481</sup> Cf. Foucart, Bruno, Courbet, Crown Publishers, Inc., New York, 1977, p. 74: Of four animal pictures submitted to the Salon of 1861, Courbet comments: “The three pictures...have no equals, either in traditional art or in modern art.”

Fr. S: No, well, just myself. Myself.

And so, in the mainstream of Western thought, we see the beginning of the formation of a new deity, the Self. The world previously went around God, and now the world begins to go around the self. And this idea will go very deep into Western man. Therefore, we come to this problem, if there's a new god, what happens to the old God? But if there is this new deity being formed, what happens to the old deity, that is, the God of Christianity, who lived on in some form even in Protestantism and the sects?

### **“God is Dead”**

And we see in the early nineteenth century first appears this idea that “God is dead.” And here we come to what we can call the first dogma of the new religion that is being formed, the religion underlying this revolutionary dream, and this dogma is called “The Death of God.” This phrase that “God is dead,” is a very important concept; it's used by all existentialists nowadays. The phrase “death of God”<sup>482</sup> appears first, as far as we can tell, in the writings of Josef DeMaistre, the great conservative who was defending Catholicism against the revolution, in the early years of the nineteenth century. And he used this phrase to express the idea [the enormity of the] of the rebellion against God in the French Revolution; and he said that the people who are rebelling against society, against Christianity, against the monarchy, against God – they are actually based upon the philosophy that “God is dead,” and want to make a new god. In other words, Christianity is dying, and the new religion is coming to birth. No one even particularly read this phrase. It was not an influential page of his [DeMaistre's] writings. So, it's not because they read him, but they weren't talking about it. Because this idea now begins to enter into the consciousness of European man, the man of the apostasy. The idea that God they used to have is now going away. They were being deprived of God.

---

<sup>482</sup> DeMaistre, Josef, *On God and Society (Essay on the Generative Principle of Political Constitutions and other Human Institutions)*, Henry Regnery Company (Gateway Edition), Chicago, 1959, pp. 84-85: “Although impious men have always existed, there never was before the eighteenth century, and in the heart of Christendom, an insurrection against God.” Also DeMaistre quoting Louis IX, p. 85: “They have waged war against God with His own gifts.”

And we'll see in this same Heine who was a sort of romantic revolutionist how he used – this is about 1833 – this very phenomenon, which he sees still as a process going on. “A peculiar awe, a mysterious piety,” he writes, “forbids our writing more today. Our heart is full of shuddering compassion: it is the old Jehovah himself that is preparing for death. We have known Him so well from His cradle in Egypt, where He was reared among the divine calves and crocodiles, the sacred onions, ibises and cats. We have seen Him bid farewell to these companions of his childhood and to the obelisks and sphinxes of his native Nile, to become in Palestine a little god-king amidst a poor shepherd people, and to inhabit a temple-palace of his own. We have seen him later coming into contact with Assyrian-Babylonian civilization, renouncing his all-too-human passions, no longer giving vent to fierce wrath and vengeance, at least no longer thundering at every trifle. We have seen him migrate to Rome, the capital, where he abjures all national prejudices and proclaims the celestial equality of all nations, and with such fine phrases establishes an opposition to the old Jupiter, and intrigues ceaselessly till he attains supreme authority, and from the Capitol rules the city and the world, urban et orbem. We have seen how, growing still more spiritualized, he becomes a loving father, a universal friend of man, a benefactor of the world, a philanthropist; but all this could avail him nothing!

“Hear ye not the bells resounding? Kneel down. They are bringing the sacraments to a dying god!”<sup>483</sup>

Of course, this is the idea that enters now into these advanced minds who sense very quickly the spirit of the times. What they mean to say is Christianity is dying; a new religion is being born; and, to symbolize a new religion, of course, a new god is being born. But the old God now must die; that is, Christianity, the whole idea of Christianity, centering around the God of Christianity, is now dying off.

---

<sup>483</sup> Heine, p. 103.

# Nietzsche

Later in the century this very idea attained its most powerful [maximum] expression in a very important thinker for us whose name is Friedrich Nietzsche. N-I-E-T-Z-S-C-H-E, who lived 18, I think, 54 to 1900. The last ten years of his life he was insane, [and] finally was found in the streets of Naples, I believe, crying, "I am Antichrist."<sup>484</sup> And they finally had to put him away. His sister and his mother took care of him.

Nietzsche [had] a very romantic temperament very open to all kinds of higher ideas, struggle, sentimental. In his youth he was a Protestant seminary student and came to hate Christianity because he saw in it the principle of weakness which, of course, was true because Luther had taken out of Christianity the idea of struggle and left it something very weak which does not satisfy either the mind or the heart, something which could be totally dry and rational on the one hand, or totally sentimental on the other hand. Nietzsche could see no one who was struggling, no great ascetics, no heroes of Christianity; and from that he concluded that the whole of Christianity was a monstrous farce, a deception practiced upon humanity that does not satisfy the reason which wants Truth; and this is full of superstition because he is full of the idea you can only know what is rational and therefore he rejects everything above the rational; on the other hand, it says nothing to the heart because it becomes so watered down that it is feeble. And he saw it was simply a way of keeping people quiet and satisfied with their lot and he said that was for the herds.

And out of his rejection of Christianity he developed the idea that there are going to be strong people who are going to be ruthless and barbarous and who are going to take over whole countries and rule the world. Of course, Hitler deliberately said, "I am the Superman."<sup>485</sup> [H]e

---

<sup>484</sup> Rose, Eugene, *Nihilism: The Root of the Revolution of the Modern Age* by Eugene Rose, Fr. Seraphim Rose Foundation, 1994, Forestville, CA, pp. 72-73.

<sup>485</sup> Rauschnig, *Hitler Speaks*, pp. 241-243: "Creation is not yet at an end...at all events not so far as the creature Man is concerned.... The old type of man will have but a stunted existence. All creative energy will be concentrated in the new one. The two types will rapidly diverge from one another. One will sink to a sub-human race and the other rise far above the man of today. I might call the two varieties the god-man and the mass-animal.... Man has to be passed and surpassed. Nietzsche did, it is true, realise something of this, in his way. He went so far as to recognize the superman as a new biological variety. But he was not too sure of it. Man is God in the making.... Don't you agree that the process of selection can be accelerated by political means?... The new man is among us! He is here!/? exclaimed Hitler triumphantly.

brought out the sister of Nietzsche, who was still alive 1933, and even got [her] to pose with him and to say, “Yes, you are the Superman my brother was talking about.” And Hitler made her one of the honored members of his realm because he was the Superman that Nietzsche prophesied.

Of course, Nietzsche would have admired his ruthlessness, but would have considered him also part of this same herd mentality because he was looking for some real, tremendous figure, some world leader who was completely ruthless, completely strong, totally removed from all superstitions but a very noble person, because Nietzsche himself was filled with the highest natural instincts for nobility and struggle. He was a great student of Greek literature and one of his first books talks about the Dionysian element in Greece – because until his time people regarded Greece as the home of the classical tradition of the Apollo – and he said no, that Greece was also filled with this striving, this romantic feeling which he symbolized by Dionysius. And that was what he wanted, to be like Dionysius, constantly striving, struggling for something higher.

Here he mentions the changing human institutions, the rise of capitalism, different ideas in morality, enforce the faith you have in evolution. “The concept that an organism reacting to and acting upon a complex environment evolves is now basic. All ideas and institutions are today thought to be primarily social products functioning in social groups and spring from some necessity of effecting some kind of adaptation between human nature and its environment. All the fields of human interest have undergone this general sociologizing and psychologizing tendency. The example of religion and theology will be a sufficient illustration. Whereas the eighteenth century thought of religion and theology as a deductive and demonstrable set of propositions, men now consider religion as primarily a social product, a way of life springing from a social organization of men’s religious experiences, and theology as a rationalization of certain fundamental feelings and experiences of human nature. We no longer prove the existence of God. We talk rather of the meaning of God in human

---

Now are you satisfied? I will tell you a secret. I have seen the vision of the new man – fearless and formidable. I shrank from him!?”



experience. We no longer demonstrate the future life, we investigate the effect of the belief in immortality upon human conduct.”<sup>486</sup>

We see here very clearly that this is the next stage beyond Hume who destroyed all these things; you can no longer believe in those old ideas and this is the next stage which has nothing to do with scientific discovery – this is simply what is in the air. Once reason continues its march, it will end at its own suicide.

But his [Nietzsche’s] ideas are extremely powerful because he caught the spirit of the times and proclaimed a new gospel which he puts in various forms but most powerfully in his book called *Thus Spake Zarathustra*. It was after Zoroaster, that is, a pagan and all this religion of fire-worship, based upon the teaching of Zoroaster, who’s the eighth century B.C or so. He uses this just as a literary device to express a new prophet, who is speaking to the new mankind. He wrote a book called *Thus Spake Zarathustra* which is, Zarathustra, he takes this ancient pagan, actually he was a man who lived and became like a god with this religion, Zoroasterism. And he used him like a “prophet” for this new religion of his. And he was the one who took up this phrase that DeMaistre earlier had used that “God is dead.”<sup>487</sup>

He says in this book, Nietzsche, N-I-E-T-Z-S-C-H-E, in his book *Thus Spake Zarathustra*, this prophet, so-called “prophet” says, “There is no truth. There is no absolute state of affairs, no thing in itself.”<sup>488</sup> And this is what he calls Nihilism.

Here we see quite clearly this idea, “God is dead.”<sup>489</sup> He expressed this in two ways: one by saying, “God is dead,” and one by saying, “There is no truth.” These are two aspects of the same thing. And we see Hume and Kant destroyed both God and the very idea of truth. Now there must be a new god, a new idea of truth. He even says in one place, “You talk always about truth, but what if there is no truth? Then what sweet forbidden flowers grow beside the highway of life.”<sup>490</sup> Which, of course, in our time we’ve tasted those sweet flowers. If there is no God, there’s no death, and it is no immortality, this is what happens. As

---

<sup>486</sup> Source for this?

<sup>487</sup> See footnote No. 20 above.

<sup>488</sup> Nietzsche, Friedrich, *The Will to Power*, Vol. I, in *The Complete Works of Friedrich Nietzsche*, New York, The Macmillan Co., 1909, Vol. 14, p. 6.

<sup>489</sup> Nietzsche, *The Joyful Wisdom*, #125.

<sup>490</sup> Cf. Nietzsche, *The Will to Power*, p. 377: “Of all that was formerly held to be true, not one word is to be credited. Everything which was formerly disdained as unholy, forbidden, contemptible, and fatal – all those flowers now bloom on the most charming paths of truth.”

Nietzsche says, "There is no truth. There is no absolute state of affairs, no thing in itself. This alone is nihilism and of most extreme kind."<sup>491</sup>

Again he says, (asks the question) "What does Nihilism mean? – That the highest values are losing their value. There is no goal. There is no answer to the question Why?"<sup>492</sup> All the questions which the human mind asks, "Why am I here?", "Where does it all come from?", "What's this life about?", "What does it end in?", "Is there life after death?" And he says there's no answer. There's nothing out there. There's no absolute. There's no God. There's no answer to your questions.

Nihilism is this very spirit which animates the revolutionaries: turn everything to nothing. Destroy; let nothing be left. Wipe it all out. And Nietzsche is the philosopher of this. He expresses quite poetically this phenomenon of the "death of God." Kant was very a rationalist, abstract and simply expressed what was in the minds of people at that time, what you must think like if you are to be in the main tradition of Europe. Remember what Kant said? The thing in itself, we can't know what it is, that reality out there. And he says there simply is no thing in itself. There is no truth. There is no absolute. In other words, he's totally influenced by Hume. And he [Nietzsche] sees that Kant does not solve the problem. But Nietzsche was a poet. In fact, he wrote some very lovely poems; these are on the dark side of life, deep mittern, midnight, and this loneliness, and so forth. And he expressed very poetically this new reality in human life, in the life of the people of this apostasy.

He says, "The death of God had begun to cast its first shadows over Europe; and though the event itself is far too great, too remote, too much beyond most people's power of apprehension, for one to suppose it so much as the report of it could have reached them, still"<sup>493</sup> it is coming. And Nietzsche called himself "the firstlings," that is, he and others like him, "the firstlings and premature children of the coming century,"<sup>494</sup> which as he said was to be the century of the triumph of nihilism.<sup>495</sup>

---

<sup>491</sup> Nietzsche, *The Will to Power*, Vol. I, in *The Complete Works of Friedrich Nietzsche*, New York, The Macmillan Co., 1909, Vol. 14, p. 6.

<sup>492</sup> Quoted in Rose, *Nihilism*, p. 68n: *The Will to Power*, p. 8.

<sup>493</sup> *Nihilism* quoting Nietzsche, *The Joyful Wisdom* #343.

<sup>494</sup> Nietzsche, *The Joyful Wisdom* #343.

<sup>495</sup> Source for this? Nietzsche quoted in *The Redemption of Democracy, or The Beast from the Abyss*, Hermann Rauschning, 1941, p. 10: "Our whole European civilization, in an agony of tension that grows from decade to decade, has long been

He says, in another place – because then most people were living ordinary lives, they’re going to work in factories, and literature was flourishing and art and music – he said but this idea what he is describing, the “death of God,” when it filters down to the common people, there will be an upheaval in the world such as was never seen from the beginning until now, because the whole of society will be overthrown.<sup>496</sup>

He puts in the mouth of one of his characters, a mad man, this idea of the universe becoming upside down. The madman proclaims to the people in *The Joyful Wisdom*, “We have killed him (God), you and I. We are all His murderers! But how have we done it? How were we able to drink up the sea? Who gave us the sponge to wipe away the whole horizon? What did we do when we loosened this earth from its sun? Whither does it now move? Whither do we move? Away from all suns? Do we not dash on unceasingly? Backwards, sideways, forwards, in all directions? Is there still an above and below? Do we not stray as through infinite nothingness? Does not empty space breathe upon us? Has it not become colder? Does not night come on continually, darker and darker?”<sup>497</sup>

The thought was, he said, that the earth up until now has revolved around the sun and all of a sudden it’s got loose and it begins to go out into outer space. And people look around and they see that things begin to get darker and darker, and begin to wonder where is up and where is down, what’s right and what’s wrong. They begin to lose their moorings, and begin to get all mixed up. Then you see that everything begins to get darker, as though the world is going out. That’s the concept. Henceforth if there’s no more God, then life becomes entirely different. And frightful possibilities open up.<sup>498</sup>

This is the world of today’s mankind, that is, the ones who are still trying to retain the main tradition of European history and thought.<sup>499</sup>

---

moving toward a catastrophe. What I am telling is the history of the next two centuries. I am describing what will come, what cannot now but come: the rise of Nihilism.”

<sup>496</sup> Source for this?

<sup>497</sup> Nietzsche quoted in *Nihilism*, p. 72n: *The Joyful Wisdom*, #125.

<sup>498</sup> Nietzsche lecture and the Question and Answer lecture

<sup>499</sup> *Ibid.*

# Kafka

This can be very well seen in much of contemporary art. [Franz] Kafka's an interesting person. There've been movies of his stories, but his stories are very powerful because they're understated, and they're such very clear, very nice German – I started to read it in German – very simple, straightforward presented. No complicated language, in very clear language to present a fact which is absolutely horrible. This Kafka's a very interesting writer because he writes all these things in a very matter-of-fact way. It's not as though it's something unusual.

For example, in Kafka's *The Trial*, someone is brought up for trial for a crime he doesn't know what it is; He's not guilty, he doesn't know whether he is guilty or innocent. He's announced to be, "You go on trial tomorrow at 10 o'clock." "On trial? What did I do?" "We don't know. Just show up." And he goes and he finds these very shadowy figures. It's all very mysterious. He doesn't know who his judges are. He doesn't know what his crime is, who his witnesses against him are, what he did. And this is presented in such a matter of fact way that it is as though he is living in a nightmare. And it turns out that apparently just for existing he's guilty. He doesn't know quite how to answer it and they kill him off someplace. And it's just this idea that there's no sense any more, no logic, just that, because there's no more God, you're in a state of being hounded.

Or again, his story called "Metamorphosis," it's an autobiography of this young man lives [who] with his mother, and he wakes up one morning and discovers that he is a big brown bug, you know – six foot high, a big beetle. His mother comes in and sees him and says, "Oh, my, can't let you outside in that shape." And this story is about how he is suffering because he has become a beetle, and he's not bitter about it – that's just the way it is: he's become a beetle, and it's very difficult to get along with his family.

And his mother, his family's sort of just hushing up the matter. "Shhh. Don't tell anybody." "Where's your son?" "Oh, he's resting today. Don't disturb him." And so they're all so embarrassed as they come and discover he's turned into a beetle. And I think he finally ends up crawling and dying on the floor or something. And it's presented in such a matter-of-fact way that, and it's so horrible, this whole idea.

And you say, what's the point? The point is that, just like Nietzsche says, reality became different now; now we don't know whether, are we human, are we not human? Start teaching we come from apes and you begin to say that we have ape-like nature in us; if we have an ape-

like nature, we might have beetle-like nature too. Before anything this lower animal thing begins to enter into our human nature. If there's no more God, then our whole outlook on life becomes free. You can be a beetle, you can be a man going to the stars. You can have advanced civilization. There's all kinds of new possibilities open up. This is what the more recent writers, in the last twenty years or so, call the "art of the absurd."

We also see someone like Eugene Ionesco, the Romanian playwright who lived in Paris, who writes about people turning into rhinoceroses and this whole surrealistic atmosphere. It's all laid, like parodies, sort of allegories expressing how silly the human situation becomes because there's no more God – that life is ridiculous.

Or Beckett even: the whole play takes place in a garbage pail and they're "Waiting for Godot," and they're waiting for some kind of new revelation, and sit there talking about how God is gone and so forth. Also, Camus who talks about rebellion as the only thing in doing leads to the reality of life and the most logical thing for a man to do is to commit suicide.<sup>500</sup> And he finally dies by running his car into a tree.

And this whole world of contemporary art, which is full of loneliness, absurdity, we do not even know what's up, what's down, what Nietzsche says, we become very cold and lonely. One man can be lost in an infinite universe. We don't know what's going on, because the sun has gone out. God is gone. And of course, if you don't believe in God, the world becomes a very miserable place. Indeed, you don't know where you're going, what you're doing, because God gives meaning to everything else in life.

### **"Everything is Permitted"**

This first dogma introduced from the new religion – it's actually preparing for the new religion, that is, the "death of God," there is no God, there is no truth – has several consequences, corollaries. The first consequence is, as Nietzsche says: "There is no God: therefore everything is permitted." The same thing is said by Ivan Karamazov in Dostoevsky's novel, "If there is no immortality, everything is permitted."<sup>501</sup> In fact we'll see that Nietzsche and Dostoevsky were

---

<sup>500</sup> Source for this?

<sup>501</sup> Dostoevsky, *The Brothers Karamazov*, transl. Constance Garnett, Modern Library, no date, Random House, New York, p. 69: Miusov paraphrasing Ivan: "...men believed in immortality.... The whole natural law lies in that faith, and if you were to destroy in mankind the belief in immortality, not only love but every living

thinking exactly on the same wave-length, had exactly the same ideas because they were very, they were both in tune with the spirit of the times. But Dostoyevsky approached it from the point of view of someone who knows Orthodoxy, and Nietzsche approached it as the prophet of this new teaching, because he did not know Christianity. And he considered Christianity to be a doctrine of weakness, the herd mentality.

So, this is all bound up by: if God is gone, there is no truth, there is no eternal life, all that Christian civilization lived on is now gone. It's only a matter of time until its, because if faith is gone, everything built from that faith will disappear. And therefore the revolution becomes logical. So the first consequence is: everything is permitted, that is, revolution, any kind of experiment in morality, government, art. In fact, we'll see in a later [lecture] how the very concept of art suddenly starts to crumble. What is art becomes filled with these very revolutionary, nihilistic ideas.

---

force maintaining the life of the world would at once be dried up. Moreover, nothing then would be immoral, everything would be lawful, even cannibalism.... for every individual, like ourselves, who does not believe in God or immortality, the moral law of nature must immediately be changed into the exact contrary of the former religious law, and that egoism, even to crime, must become, not only lawful but even recognized as the inevitable, most rational, even honorable outcome of his position.”  
“...there is no virtue if there is no immortality.”

## A New Age

The second consequence of the death of God is that there begins to be a new age. Nietzsche says in 1884, “It may be that I am the first to light upon an idea which will divide the history of mankind in two.” As a result, “all who are born after us belong to a higher history than any history hitherto.”<sup>502</sup> Of course, this is the age when God was still meaningful, when Christianity was still alive to some degree. There’s some remnant of Christianity. And the “new age” when God is removed as the center, when Christianity is no longer accepted, that is the age of normal humanity and the age of revolution.

But as a matter of fact he wasn’t so original as he thought because twelve years before this Dostoyevsky already expressed exactly the same idea in the thought of this Kirillov in *The Possessed* who said in one of his prophetic moments: “Everything will be new... then they will divide history into two parts: from the gorilla to the annihilation of God, and from the annihilation of God to the transformation of the earth, and of man physically.”<sup>503</sup> This is the idea of a new paradise coming up. This is Kirillov, the one who thought he had to become god in *The Possessed*.

## Superman

And finally we come to this third consequence of this idea “God is dead,” that is, there shall be annihilation of God, shall be the total transformation of the earth and man physically. Which means Superman, the coming of the Superman. Man is only something which is temporary and has to be superseded because he’s too weak. He’s going to become a Superman.

And what he means by Superman is someone who does not care about Christian morality. If you feel like killing someone, you kill. If you feel like doing anything you please, you do it. If want to [go] conquering the world, you conquer the world, blow people up, however you please, because there’s now a new morality. Of course, Communists did it even moreso.

And you can say, “That’s anti-Christian,” but they say we’re beyond Christians: we have new morality, we have the morality of Nietzsche, that everything in the past belongs to past history. Now there’s a new

---

<sup>502</sup> Quoted in *Nihilism*, p. 92n: Quoted in Henri de Lubac, *The Drama of Atheist Humanism*, p. 24.

<sup>503</sup> *The Possessed*, Part I, Ch. 3, quoted in *Nihilism*, p. 92

transformation in human nature and we are the ones who are first-fruits of this new transformation. Therefore we can do whatever we want to. In order to challenge that, if they have the power, they will squash it. If you want to challenge it, you have to convert them to Christianity, and then they will see their mistake, repent, and a whole new history begins.

And this is how Nietzsche expresses it: “Shall we not ourselves have to become gods merely to seem worthy of it (the death of God)?”<sup>504</sup> That is, the fact that man has killed God.

...[I]f the old God is [dead, the] idea is that there must be a new God. Again Zarathustra says, in Nietzsche’s book, “Dead are all the gods. Now do we desire the Superman to live.”<sup>505</sup> And Kirillov in *The Possessed* says: “If there is no God, then I am God.”<sup>506</sup> And Dostoyevsky distinguishes between the God-man Jesus Christ and the man-god, the new being who is coming up from the earth to become god. Zarathustra says again: “ – I bring you a goal; I preach to you the Superman. Man is something to be overcome. What have you done to overcome him? All things before you have produced something beyond themselves, and would you be the ebb of this great flood? Would you rather go back to the animal than transcend man? What is the ape to man? A jest or a bitter shame. And just that shall man be to the Superman, a jest or a bitter shame. You have traveled the way from worm to man, and much in you is still worm.... Lo, I preach to you the Superman. The Superman is the meaning of the earth.”<sup>507</sup>

At first this seems a fantastic idea. What does it mean, “Superman”? You probably recall what Marx had to say about mankind being changed by means of violence, that is, man himself will be changed to [be] made fit for the new kingdom of Communism.

Contemporary writers such as Erich Kahler talk about all the changes of modern society, both physically and in ideas, are producing what he calls a mutation, some kind of new man. And if, on top of that, we bear in mind the so-called “scientific” idea of evolution which in fact Nietzsche already believed in, we see that this idea of the coming of a new kind of man, of Superman, is not at all some kind of fantasy. It

---

<sup>504</sup> Quoted in *Nihilism*, p. 93n: *The Joyful Wisdom*, #125.

<sup>505</sup> Quoted in *Nihilism*, p. 92 n: Thus Spake Zarathustra.

<sup>506</sup> Quoted in *Nihilism*, p.93 n: *The Possessed*, Part III, Ch. 6.

<sup>507</sup> Quoted in Randall, pp. 585-6.



is a real idea which has been arrived at naturally, logically, by Western man in his falling away from God and trying to find the new religion.<sup>508</sup>

And the next generation comes along and because these ideas are not in a vacuum, someone hears them they begin to act according to them. And, of course, the answer to all these questions can be found in one writer, which is Dostoyevsky. He was thinking about the exactly the same things as Nietzsche, at the same time but a little ahead of him, and he had already the answer. Therefore, if you want to understand these problems very deeply, you read his books. First one is *Crime and Punishment* which describes how someone thought he was going to become Superman by killing off these two useless old ladies, or rather killing off one, and taking money and making himself into a person who's preparing for the future. And he discovers that he has a conscience, that it's not so easy to do something like that. But this is all a fantasy, it's a fantasy world he's living in. The same thing was done in 1920 or so, the famous case where two students....<sup>509</sup>

...novelty and they began to live by it. And if you look at the kinds of crimes which are being performed now, you will see that in the last twenty years especially there's been a great increase in crimes which don't make any sense. That is, people usually in the old days, they could solve murders, almost all murders were solved in the old days because either there was a jealousy a man killing his wife or vice-versa or a lover, or anger, or a fit or a fight in a bar. And now the murders make no sense. There's a few of the old kind, but now there's a new kind of murder, and people are just killing because for the fun of it. And that is very difficult to trace them down. Now most murders are unsolved. They can't find who did it because there's no connection, there's no logical connection. It's not a family member, it's not somebody who got mad at you, just somebody who felt like killing. And this kind of crime is shockingly increasing, it shows society's in a very bad shape. And some make a point of killing a whole set of people, twenty people or more.

So, this is the new morality, *Beyond Good and Evil*. That's one of Nietzsche's works. There're several ideas here, one is beyond good and evil because there's no more morality. The other one is the Superman. Since there's no God, there must be a new man, a new god which is man. And Dostoyevsky wrote about these questions also in his book

---

<sup>508</sup> Kahler, Erich, *The Tower and the Abyss*, New York, George Braziller, Inc., 1957, pp. 225-226.

<sup>509</sup> Leopold and Loeb

called *The Possessed* or *The Demons* in which he describes the mentality of people who were preparing to make the Revolution in Russia. And some of them have very profound ideas. He comes up with the idea that to make mankind happy, you must kill most people, because there's too many people to make everybody happy. Therefore he calculated in Russia, to make Russia a happy country you have to kill a hundred million people. Solzhenitsyn figured out that that was exactly the number of people that were killed because the Revolution lasts 65 years.

That's what was happening in Cambodia when they killed off right away in the first six months, they killed off two million people because there're too many people, too many smart people. Therefore everybody who had been past highschool had to be killed. Therefore all doctors, lawyers, advanced people like that were all killed, except a few who escaped.

Student: Then once these ideas get in the air, its, it's like a poison.

Fr. S: That's right. That's right. You can see from this Raskolnikov. It's very realistic description Dostoyevsky makes in *Crime and Punishment*. This person is possessed by these ideas. And he doesn't have any, any – he's not his own man. He's pushed from one idea to the next, and every times he comes across, all of a sudden he has a good impulse to give somebody some money – it's just out of what's ever left of Christianity in him, because he had a pious mother and pious sister, some kind of Christianity in his background. And he gives some money to somebody and later on he says, "Oh, you fool, you could have used that money to help your project and kill that old lady" or something, get an axe to kill the old lady. He's always reproaching himself because he has some good impulses. He's possessed by these ideas, and has no rest until he finally goes and performs the murder.

And that's [what happens] when we get someone like Raskolnikov from *Crime and Punishment* who reads all these ideas, someone like Nietzsche says the Superman is to come. We have to be overcoming mankind, mankind is too weak.

Actually, if you compare – today's the day of St. Anthony the Great [1980]– the answer to Nietzsche is Anthony the Great because Anthony the Great did overcome mankind, his own human nature. He was like an angel on earth, and these people, thinkers totally lost contact,

because they lost Christianity, they lost contact with these saints. And therefore, they didn't realize that there is a whole family of people who are in this process of overcoming human nature with the grace of God. Not knowing that, he saw that men, human nature by itself is so small and weak, that it's not worth fighting for. Therefore, it has to overcome but by some other, some kind of external thing.

And they jumped upon this idea of evolution because that shows you man was once an ape-like creature who is going to become something else. He's going to come to something higher. And therefore, the present stage is only intermediary stage, nothing particularly important. Therefore, if you kill a hundred million people, there's no particular thing wrong with that. Or in Cambodia when the Communists took over, they killed one third of the population. Nothing particularly wrong, it's just an experiment. And we're heading for some higher state, therefore, its justified. And the only measuring stick is Christianity.

And with the doctrine of evolution, there is found what seems to be a scientific foundation. This very complex question of evolution, which has many aspects: scientific, philosophical, religious, and is one of the key ideas of our times, which requires a great deal of concentration to get all the aspects of it straightened out. We'll have to examine precisely this doctrine of evolution to see what it gives to modern man and give enough to criticize it quite thoroughly so as to see what part it might place in the philosophy of the apostasy? Because this idea is, as it were, a key to understanding the whole revolution, the whole idea of a new age which is coming about through the chiliastic expectations of all these writers we've been talking about. [In our next lecture] we'll talk about it in general terms and also we'll talk about more specifically the one great prophet of evolutionism of our times: who is Teilhard de Chardin, who is most symptomatic of all these chiliastic currents which are going out in the world now.

# Lecture 11

## Evolution

Now we come to this key concept which is extremely important for understanding the religious outlook of contemporary man – the whole outlook, both religious and secular. This idea is an extremely complex one and here we can give only a sketchy outline of the problems involved in this question.<sup>510</sup>

Since the time of Darwin and his *Origin of the Species* – which came out in 1859 and was instantly accepted by many people and soon became very popular, especially with people such as T. H. Huxley, Herbert Spencer, in Germany – there was [Ernst] Haeckel [1834-1919] who wrote *The Riddle of the Universe* and others who popularized the ideas of Darwin and made evolution the very center of their whole philosophy. It seems to explain everything. Of course, people like Nietzsche picked it up and used it for his so-called “spiritual prophecies.” So that the people who are in the main school of Western thought – this rationalism carried as far as you can take it – accepted evolution. And to the present day one can say that it is a central dogma of advanced thinkers, of people who are in harmony with the times. But

---

<sup>510</sup>Tikhon: This section compares the “*rival thought pattern*” of Evolution to Orthodoxy, distinguishing between material/scientific *fact* and scientific philosophy which interprets observed facts. Influenced by **René Guénon**, Fr. Seraphim understood that while science is a legitimate source of knowledge, but a knowledge limited solely to the realm of appearances within nature (Dr. Jean-Claude Larchet, *Patristic Views on the Nature and Status of Scientific Knowledge*). Recognizing that, while there need be no conflict between religion and science if both are properly understood as they answer different questions, it does not follow that it may be assumed a priori that there is not conflict between evolution and Orthodoxy as different kinds of question can and do overlap. Science, providing only the lowest kind of knowledge, is equally the domain of both pagans and Christians, but only the true epistemology of Orthodoxy can provide an adequate foundation for the interpretation of scientific knowledge as science is only distinguished by the philosophy applied to it (Ivan Kirevesky, *Complete Collected Works*, vol 1. Pp.118-119). As Dr. Constantine Cavarnos said, “The theories of biological evolution are philosophical in nature and should be treated as such.” (*Biological Evolutionism*, p.7)“ Evolution must be judged by the criteria of theology. For more information; *A Patristic Perspective on a Crucified Mind: Fr. Seraphim Rose and the Doctrine of Creation* by Jesse Dominick M. Div.

from the very beginning there were people who were arguing about this. There was a Catholic thinker who believed in evolution but not in natural selection which reduced Darwin to despair because the latter discovered that his idea cannot be proved. But especially in the last ten to thirty years there have come out many critical accounts of evolution from the more objective point of view. Most of the books supporting evolution begin already with a certain premise which they assume, the naturalistic outlook and so forth.

But now there is even a whole society in San Diego called the Scientific Creationism Institute which has come out with several good books. They themselves are religious, but they have several books which discuss evolution quite objectively, not at all from any religious standpoint. They say there are two models for understanding the universe: one is the evolution model and one is the creation model. They take the evidence, the history of the earth, the geological layers and so forth, and they try to see which model these fit. And they have discovered that fewer adjustments have to be made if one follows the model of creation – if there was a God who created things in the beginning and if the earth is not billions of years old but only some thousands of years old.

The evolutionary model, on the other hand, requires a good many corrections which can be compared to the old Ptolemaic universe (vs. Copernican) and which is proving quite cumbersome. In fact, some members of this institute travel around to various universities and in the last year or two they have held several debates before thousands of spectators at the University of Tennessee, Texas... Interest has been quite high; and those defending evolution have not been able to give sound evidence in support of it and, in fact, on several points were caught on their ignorance of several recent discoveries in paleontology.

There are then people who are very sophisticated and knowledgeable defending both points of view. Here we won't even discuss the question of atheistic evolution because it is obviously a philosophy of fools and people who can believe, as Huxley said, that if you put a group of monkeys with typewriters they will eventually give you the Encyclopedia Britannica, given enough time, if not millions then billions of years according to the laws of chance. Someone calculated this according to the laws of chance and found that in fact such a thing would never happen. But anyone who can believe that can believe anything.

The more serious dispute is between theistic evolution, that God created the world and then it evolved, and the Christian point of view. Here we must say that the Fundamentalist<sup>511</sup> point of view is incorrect in many instances because they don't know how to interpret Scripture. They say, for example, that the Book of Genesis must be understood "literally" and one cannot do this. The Holy Fathers tell us which parts are literal and which parts are not.

The first misunderstanding which must be cleared away before even discussing this question is one that causes many people to miss the point, and that is that we must distinguish between evolution and variation. Variation is the process by which the people who make various hybrids of peas, different kinds of cats – after fifty years of experimentation they come up with a new kind of cat which is a combination of Siamese and Persian called the Himalayan cat which has long hair like a Persian with the coloring of a Siamese. This had happened accidentally, but it was never able to reproduce itself purely and only now after all these years of experimentation have they come up with a new breed which breeds true – just so there are different species of dogs, different kinds of plants and the very races of men are all quite different: Pygmies, Hottentots, Chinese, Northern Europeans – all different kinds of human beings who came from one ancestor. And so the question of variation is one thing.

"There are undoubtedly many variations within one type or kind of creature and these variations can be erected [expected] by people on scientific principle. But these variations never produce anything new; they only produce a different kind of dog or cat or bean and people. In fact, this is more a proof against evolution rather than for it because no one has ever been able to come up with a new creature or new species. In fact, the different species – and this term is itself quite arbitrary – for the most part are not able to bear offspring and, in the few cases where they can and the mule is produced, it is not able itself to reproduce itself. And St. Ambrose of Milan says: "This is an example to you, O man, to stop meddling in the ways of God. God means for each creature to be separate."<sup>512</sup>

---

<sup>511</sup>Tikhon: "It is commonly asserted that to stand against evolution is a peculiarly American Fundamentalist position, but Fr. Seraphim saw the issue from quite the opposite perspective." (Jesse Dominick, *A Patristic Perspective on a Crucified Mind: Fr. Seraphim Rose and the Doctrine of Creation* .)

<sup>512</sup> Cf. St. Basil, Hexaemeron, 1:2, pp. 6-7: "For, if he had already accepted from God what he should say concerning the liberation of the people, how much more

During the period of the Enlightenment the view of nature, also called the Enlightenment world-view, was quite stable. In fact just before this time the Anglican Archbishop Usher calculated all the years given in the Old Testament and came up with the idea that the world was created in the year 4004 B.C. Newton believed this and the enlightened world-view was in favor of the idea that God in six days created the world and then left it to develop itself and all the species were just as we see them today; and the scientists of that time accepted that.

At the end of the period of Enlightenment, however, as the revolutionary fever began to come on, this very stable world-view began to breakdown and already some scientists were coming up with more radical theories. At the end of the eighteenth century already Erasmus Darwin, the grandfather of Charles Darwin, came up with the hypothesis that all of life comes from one primordial filament which is exactly what is meant today by the theory of evolution. It is not a theory concerning only one species or kind of creature, but the theory that everything comes from some primordial blob or filament, and that this developed into the different kinds of creatures by transmutations.

This new kind of explanation, which he came up with then, is an attempt to continue the spirit of the Enlightenment as utter rationalism and simplicity. As the rationalism entered deeper into the mind, it was simpler to believe, he thought, to explain life as coming from one

---

should you accept what He should say concerning heaven? Therefore, “not in the persuasive words of wisdom,” not in philosophical fallacies, “but in the demonstration of the Spirit and power” (I Cor. 2:4), he has ventured to say as if he were a witness of the Divine work: “In the beginning God created heaven and earth.”

Also cf. St. Basil, *Six Days*, V, 9, p. 166: “What pure and untarnished generations follow without intermingling one after another, so that a thymallus produces a thymallus; a sea-wolf, a sea-wolf. The sea-scorpion, too, preserves unstained its marriage bed.... Fish know nothing of union with alien species. They do not have unnatural betrothals such as are designedly brought about between animals of two species as, for instance, the donkey and the mare, or again, the female donkey and the horse, both being you mingle diverse seeds.”

Cf. also St. Basil *On Belief in the Resurrection*, II, 63, 70, pp. 184-5: “Nature in all its produce remains consistent with itself.... Seeds on one kind cannot be changed into another kind of plant, nor bring forth produce differing from its own seeds, so that men should spring from serpents and flesh from teeth; how much more, indeed, is it to be believed that whatever had been sown rises again in its own nature, and that crops do not differ from their seed, that soft things do not spring from hard, nor hard from soft, nor is poison changed into blood; but that flesh is restored from flesh, bone from bone, blood from blood, the humors of the body from humors. Can ye then, ye heathen, who are able to assert a change, deny a restoration of the nature?”

single living filament instead of the more complicated explanation that God gave being all at once to all different kinds of creatures.

There was one naturalist, Lamarck, who had a definite evolutionary theory just after this, but he had the idea that the changes necessary to account for the evolving of one species into another were due to the inheritance of acquired characteristics; and this could never be proved and has in fact been quite disproved. And so, the idea of evolution did not take hold.

But there was one important geologist at this period of the early nineteenth century who gave a great impetus towards this acceptance of this idea of evolution; and this was Charles Lyell who came up with the theory of Uniformitarianism, that is, that all the changes we see in the earth today are not due to some kind of catastrophes, a sudden flood or something similar, but that the processes we see today have been operating in past centuries, past ages, from the beginning of the world, as far as we can see. And therefore if we look at the Grand Canyon, we see that the river has been eating away the canyon, and you can calculate by taking into account how fast the water flows, how much water there is in it now, the quality of the soil and so on, how long it must have taken to wear away that. And Lyell thinks that if we assume that these processes were always going on at the same rate – this being very rational and given to calculation – we can come up with a uniform explanation of things; and, of course, there is no proof of this; this is merely his hypothesis.

But this, together with the idea which was now gaining sympathy – that species evolve one into the other – if you put these two together, you get the idea that most likely the world is not just a few thousand years old like the Christians seem to say, but it must be very many of thousands or even millions of years old or even more. This begins the greater and greater age of the earth. But, again, this was only a presupposition, a belief that the earth must be very old; it was not proved.

But already this idea was sinking into the minds of men; and when Darwin came up in 1859 with his book with the idea of natural selection as opposed to Lamarck who said that the giraffe was evolved because a short-necked creature stretched his neck to eat the higher leaves and his ancestors had a neck an inch longer, the next one stretched a little more and gradually it became what we know today as a giraffe. This is against all scientific laws because such things don't happen. An acquired characteristic cannot be inherited as, for example,



when the Chinese women had their feet bound their daughters were always born with normal feet.

But Darwin came up with the idea that there were perhaps two longer-necked creatures who survived because they had longer necks and they were joined together because all the rest died off, because of some kind of disaster, and their children did have longer necks because they were – a change had occurred within them, a mutation. This might have been a chance thing at first, but once reproduction between two such like creatures has taken place it continues down throughout the ages.

Of course, this is a guess because no one has observed such a thing to happen. But this kind of a guess struck upon the consciousness of the people; they were like tinder, all ready for it, and this was the spark. The idea sounded so plausible; and the idea of evolution took hold – not because it was proved.

As a matter of fact, the speculations of Darwin were based almost entirely upon his observations, not of evolution, but of variation, because he wondered when he was traveling in the Galapagos Islands why there were thirteen different varieties of one kind of finch and thought that it was because there was one original variety which had developed according to its environment. This is not evolution but variation. From this, he jumped to the conclusion that if you keep making small changes like that, eventually you will have a different species. The problem in trying to prove this scientifically is that no one has ever observed these larger changes; they have only observed changes within a type, within a species.

Let us look then at the so-called “proofs of evolution” to see what kind there are. We are not going to try to disprove, but just to try to see the quality of the proof they use; what is it that seems convincing to people who believe in evolution.

There is a standard textbook of zoology used twenty years ago and it lists a number of proofs. The first of these is called “comparative morphology,” that is, man has arms, birds have wings, the fish have flippers – they even have convincing diagrams which make them look very much alike. Even the moth. The birds have claws and we have fingers and they show how one might have developed into the other.<sup>513</sup> All creatures are shown to have a very similar structure and the different structures are all in different phyla and genera, families and so

---

<sup>513</sup> Fr. S. is showing illustrations from p. 215 of General Zoology by Storer

on. Of course, this is not a proof. This is very logical to one who believes in evolution.

But, as the scientific creationists say, if you believe that God created<sup>514</sup> ... – basic master-plan of creation; that is, that all kinds of creatures have a basic similarity in their plan. If you believe that God created them, these pictures convince you that, yes, God created them in a sort of gradation. If you believe that one evolved into the other, you look at the same picture and say, yes, one evolved into the other. But there is no proof either for or against evolution in this. In fact, people accept evolution on some other basis and then look at this, and this convinces them even more.

Secondly, there is “comparative physiology”: “The tissue and fluids of organisms show many basic similarities in physiological and chemical properties that” are close to the similarities in morphology. For example, “from the hemoglobin in vertebrate blood,” a certain kind of “oxyhemoglobin crystals can be obtained; their crystalline structure... parallels that of vertebrate classification” which is “based on body structure. Those of each species are distinct, but all from [a]” the one “genus have some common characteristic. [Furthermore] those of all birds have certain resemblances” [but differ] different “from crystals obtained from” the “blood of mammals or reptiles.”<sup>515</sup>

This is the same thing as in morphology. If you believe in creation, you say that God made similar creatures with similar blood, and there is no problem. If you believe in evolution, you say that one evolved into the other. In fact, [in] one of the dating systems that has been devised from precipitations from blood, they see that they are similar in each species, something in common [with] those in one genus and quite distinct in birds, monkeys and so forth. And from this they make certain calculations and decide how many years apart on the evolutionary scale these different creatures are. As it happens, their calculations throw everything else off. If this is to be accepted, other dating systems have to be changed; so it is still controversial and it actually proves nothing because you can accept it either as a proof of evolution or of God's creation.

There is a third argument called “comparative embryology.” Textbooks like this, *General Zoology*, used to have these classical pictures which – baby fish, salamander, turtle, chicken, pig, man – and

---

<sup>514</sup> Tape inaudible.

<sup>515</sup> Storer, Tracy I., *General Zoology*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., 1951, p. 216.

they all look very much alike and they gradually evolve differently. Besides, you see that man has so-called “gill-slits” in the embryo. Therefore, this is a remembrance of his ancestry. Ernst Haeckel and the “theory of recapitulation” and “biogenetic law”: “An individual organism in its development (ontogeny) tends to recapitulate the stages passed through by its ancestors (phylogeny).”<sup>516</sup> Today this theory is no longer accepted by evolutionists, that the gill-slits are not gill-slits at all but they are just preparing for what is to be developed in the neck of the human being. So this proof has been pretty well discarded. Again they use the argument that similarity means proof, which it in fact does not.

Another proof which used to be more powerful than it is today is that of vestigial organs. There are certain things, like the appendix in man, which seem to have no function now and therefore must be left over from a previous stage of evolution when he was a monkey or sometime when he used this organ. But more and more these vestigial organs are found to have a certain use; the appendix is found to have some kind of glandular function; so this argument is also losing its weight. And just because we don’t know what a certain organ does, this does not mean that it is left over from some lower form of life.

Then there are the arguments from paleontology, the study of fossils. Of course, the first very convincing thing is the geological strata, as, for example, the Grand Canyon where you see all kinds of strata; and the lower you get the more primitive the creatures seem to be. And they date the strata by what kind of creatures are found in them.<sup>517</sup>

There is a whole story how in the nineteenth century they discovered these strata and how they determined which were older and which were younger; and now they think they have a pretty elaborate system to tell which strata are older and which are younger. But the whole dating system is rather circular because they date – since often these strata are upside-down – they have to have certain readjustments, just like the Ptolemaic system needed certain adjustments to make epicycles, because the planets were not going around the earth uniformly. In the same way, you must make adjustments when you find the strata are upside down. You have to date them by the fossils in them. But how do you know that the fossils in them are in the right order? You know because somewhere else the fossils were in the right way, and you got the system from that. But as you look at it, it is a kind of circular

---

<sup>516</sup> General Zoology, p. 220.

<sup>517</sup> Fr. S. is showing illustration from General Zoology, p. 222 of strata in the Grand Canyon

system; and you have to have faith that this actually corresponds to reality.

But there are a number of flaws in this. For one thing the new creatures come quite suddenly into each strata with no intermediary types. Besides this, as research continues, they are finding animals in the strata which are not supposed to be there, so that now in the pre-Cambrian level they are finding quite advanced squid and all kinds of animals like that which should not be there because they weren't evolved until some hundred million years later. And you either have to change your idea of the squid's evolution or say this was an exception.

But in general there is no proof that these strata were laid down over millions of years. And the creationists who talk about the Flood of Noah say that it is equally conceivable that the Flood of Noah caused exactly the same thing because the more advanced animals would be going on higher ground trying to get away from the flood; the lower marine animals would obviously be the first to be buried; and there would be little [few] remnants of man at all because man would be trying to get on ships and other things to get away.

And there are only very particular conditions which cause a fossil to be left at all. It has to be buried suddenly in a certain kind of mud which allows it to be preserved. The whole idea of the gradualness of these phenomena is being called more and more into question. In fact there is now proof that oil and coal and such things can be made in an extremely short time in a matter of days or weeks. The formation of fossils itself is very much in favor of some catastrophe.

The final thing which is against evolution is that it is hard to say that there has ever been found a single thing which can be called an intermediary species. In fact, Darwin was extremely worried about this. He said, "According to my theory there should be a million intermediary species at least or more and I have never found one. But we will wait until the fossil record is more complete."<sup>518</sup> And today's scientists say that the fossil record is extremely complete; and there are more fossil species known than living species. And still there have not been found more than a couple which might be interpreted as somehow

---

<sup>518</sup> Darwin, Charles, *The Origin of the Species...and the Descent of Man*, Modern Library, Random House, New York, p. 234: "Why then is not every geological formation and every stratum full of such intermediate links? Geology assuredly does not reveal any such finely-graduated organic chain; and this, perhaps, is the most obvious and serious objection which can be urged against the theory. The explanation lies, as I believe, in the extreme imperfection of the geological record."

being an intermediary species. They will tell you about the pterodactyl – this reptile with wings, and say that this reptile is becoming a bird. But why can't you simply say this is a reptile with wings?

And there are certain fossils called “index fossils” which, [when] seen in a certain strata, mean that strata cannot be any older or younger than a certain date because that animal was extinct at that period. And they found one recently that was supposed to be extinct 500 million years ago which is swimming around in the ocean; and because it was thought to be an index fossil, it threw off the whole thing; and that particular layer which was dated according to this extinct fish is no longer correct.

And why is it that certain species evolve and others stay the same as they were? There are many species found in the past which are exactly the same as currently living species. And they have ideas that some are “reprobate” species that don't go anywhere for some reason, and others are more progressive species since they have the energy to go forward. But that is faith, not proof. And so, the fossil species which have been preserved are just as distinct from each other as living species.

Then we have something else which you find in all textbooks of evolution: the horse and the elephant.<sup>519</sup> And there is a great deal of subjectivity involved, just as when you make the Neanderthal man look bent over to resemble an ape. This is imagination, not scientific proof, but something based on one's philosophical idea. And there is quite a bit of such evidence which is either pretty much against evolution or shows that there is no proof one way or the other. And there are some things which are quite remarkable and are unable to be explained by evolution.

Just recently in the last two to three years, they discovered a place in Texas where there are dinosaur tracks and right next to it human tracks; and in one place the human tracks and the dinosaur tracks overlap, which show that these two creatures were living at the same time. The Protestants made a movie about this and show it as a proof against evolution. But one of the scientists who saw this – he was a creationist – said, “Well, this is very interesting, isn't it?” And one man who believed in evolution looked at it and said, “I don't believe it.” He has faith that this didn't happen, that this dinosaur was extinct before man came; and therefore it is impossible to have dinosaur and human tracks together. Or else you make an epicycle in your system to provide some kind of explanation.

---

<sup>519</sup> General Zoology, pp. 226-228, illustrations

The final so-called “proof of evolution” is mutation. In fact the serious scientist will tell you that all the rest is not really proof. But the one proof is mutations. And in fact Randall who wrote this History of Modern Thought – he himself is an evolutionist – says, “At present biologists admit that we do not, strictly speaking, know anything about the causes of the origins of new species; we must fall back upon the scientific faith that they occur because of chemical changes in” the “germ plasm.”<sup>520</sup> He then is sophisticated enough to admit that this is a faith.

There are some like Dobzhansky who say that “I have proved evolution because I have made a new species in the laboratory.” And so, after thirty years of working on fruit flies who multiply very quickly, you can get a whole equivalent of several hundred thousand years of human life in a few decades. He experimented by radiating fruit flies and finally came up with two who had changes – they had no wings or something – and they were no longer able to interbreed with the other kind of fruit fly. And this is his definition of species – that they can’t interbreed; and therefore “I have evolved a new species.”

Well, in the first case, this was done under extremely artificial conditions with radiation; and you have to have a new theory of radioactive waves from outer space in order to justify it. And secondly, it is still a fruit fly. So it has no wings or its purple instead of yellow; it is still a fruit fly and is basically no different from any other fruit fly; it’s simply another variety. So he has actually proved nothing.

Besides that, mutations are ninety-nine percent harmful; and all experiments, including those [by scientists] who have worked on this for many decades, all have proved unsuccessful to show any kind of real change from one kind of creature into another, even the most primitive kind that reproduces itself every ten days. If anything, the evidence in that sphere is for the [tape unclear]<sup>521</sup> of species.

But in the end we have to say that there is no conclusive proof, scientific proof, for evolution. And likewise there is not any conclusive proof against evolution, because even though it might not seem too logical or too plausible according to the evidence, still there is no proof that given a billion or trillion years you might not produce from an amoeba a man or a monkey. A man is more complicated because he has a soul. Who knows? If you have a completely objective mind and don’t consider for a moment what the Holy Fathers say, you might think that

---

<sup>520</sup>Randall, p. 475.

<sup>521</sup> uniformitarianism? stability?

perhaps it's true, especially if there is a God. By "chance," you have no argument at all. The latter – if one were to believe in chance – requires much more faith than to believe in God. In any case, the evidence we have just examined makes sense to you according to what your philosophy is. And the creationist philosophy requires less adjustment of the evidence. And so it is more in accordance with simplistic and uniformitarian presuppositions of modern science.

There is one more thing which has been used as a kind of "proof of evolution"; and that is the dating system: radiocarbon, potassium-argon, uranium decay, fluorine system and so on. These were all discovered in the present century, some of them just recently. They say that this proves the world is really very old. And in one textbook it says this is a revolution in dating because before that we had only relative ideas of age and now we have absolute ideas.

You can test your potassium-argon and come up with the idea that a certain rock is three billion, two billion years old; they allow a margin of error of about ten percent. The fact of the matter is that the great age of the earth was already known supposedly by scientists before these dating systems were developed. And the dating systems already accepted [were based on] the presuppositions which led to the idea that the world was already many millions if not billions of years old. So they are not really revolutionary in dating; they simply fit into an already accepted view. If these new dating systems had said that the world was only 5,000 years old, instead of 3 billion, scientists would not have been accepting them so easily.

Secondly, there are certain basic principles, presuppositions, which these dating systems must have. The carbon-14 system, which traces the radio-active decay of half-life of carbon-14 to carbon-12, requires: 1) that there is absolute uniformity – that the decay rate has always been the same for as long as the process has been going on, 2) that there has been no contamination from outside sources – which they admit does happen, and 3) that the thing being dated has been isolated, buried somewhere and nothing else has been touching it from outside, no organic matter, and finally, 4) that there was no carbon-12 in the first place, it was all carbon-14. All these things are assumptions; they are not proved.

Many people, even among non-evolutionists, will admit that carbon-14 is the most reliable of all the dating systems; even the scientific creationists admit that it has an accuracy back perhaps 2,000 years. It has been tested on certain articles whose age has been determined and

it has proved to be not too far off in most cases. But beyond 2,000 or 3,000 years it becomes extremely dubious. And even those adherents to this system admit that because the half-life of carbon-14 is 5,600 years or so, it cannot be accurate beyond 20,000 or 30,000 years at the most. The other systems, potassium-argon, uranium and so forth claim to [have a] half-life of one billion, three-hundred million years; and, therefore, when they talk about improving the age of old rocks they use these systems.

The carbon-14 system is used only on organic matter, on the fossils themselves; and potassium-argon and uranium systems on rocks. But the same things are true: there must be uniformity throughout the billion years, no contamination from outside. We must assume that it was all potassium in the beginning before it decayed to argon; and all these things you have to take on faith. And if you try to measure anything recent, say only a million years ago, and you take this system with a half-life of a billion years, it is like trying to measure a millimeter with a yard stick; and is not very accurate even assuming it is valid. And there have been numerous cases when they have applied this system to new rocks; and they give them a life of two billion years old. Therefore, the whole thing is very shaky. And it requires that those billion years exist in the first place.

There are other kinds of tests which have been used at various times as, for example, the rate at which sodium is dissolved into the oceans, the rate at which various chemicals are discharged into the ocean. You measure the amount of the elements there are now in the oceans, measure approximately how much of it goes into the sea every year, and from that you come up with a guess of how old the ocean must be; and probably the ocean is as old as the world. They did this with sodium and discovered the world was, say, a billion years old. But it was found that you get different answers depending on which element you use, ranging from lead which gives a life rating of 150 years, others give 5,000 years, some 500 years, some 10 billion – there is absolutely no uniformity.

There are other tests. For example, one tried the rate at which nickel accumulates on the earth in meteorites. By taking approximately the amount of nickel which accumulates in the earth from the meteorites every year and projecting it into the past on the uniformitarian basis, and one person made a calculation that if the earth was 5 billion years old according to the latest guess, there should be a layer of nickel on the earth 146 miles thick. There is another test, the rate of helium which



also gives some utterly fantastic result. Therefore, these tests are very unsure; and some of them make it very dubious that the world could be anything like that, 50 billion years old.

When you come down to it, it depends what your faith is. Some scientists think the earth is very old because so far evolution is unthinkable unless the earth is very old. And if you believe in evolution, you must believe the earth is very old, since evolution does not work on any kind of a short scale. But as far as any scientific proof, there is none whatsoever that the earth is 5 billion years old, or 7,000 years old – it could be either. It depends on what kind of suppositions you start with.

So, evolution is not, in fact, a scientific problem; it is a philosophical question. And we have to realize that the theory of evolution is acceptable to certain scientists, certain people, philosophers, because they have been accepting something like – the presuppositions – the way they have been prepared for it.

Here is another quote or two from this same Randall, who believed in evolution, talking about how much faith enters into this. As we already read: “At present biologists admit that we do not strictly speaking know the causes of the origin of new species. We must fall back on the faith that they occur because of chemical changes in” the “germ plasm.”<sup>522</sup> That is the scientific faith. And if you question the scientist he will say, but anything else is unthinkable – the “anything else” meaning that God created the world 7,000 or 8,000 years ago.

Again, he says, describing the effect of evolution on the world: “In spite of these difficulties, the beliefs of men today have become thoroughly permeated with the concept of evolution. The great underlying notions and concepts that meant so much to the eighteenth century, Nature and Reason and Utility, have largely given way to a new set better expressing the ultimate intellectual ideas of the Growing World. Many social factors conspired to popularize the idea of development and its corollaries.”<sup>523</sup>

“Evolution has introduced a whole new scale of values. Where for the eighteenth century the ideal was the rational, the natural, even the primitive and unspoiled, for us the desirable is identified rather with the latter end of the process of development, and our terms of praise are modern, up-to-date, advanced, progressive. Just as much as the Enlightenment we tend to identify what we approved with Nature, but

---

<sup>522</sup> Fr. S. repeats quote from beginning of lecture: Randall, p. 475.

<sup>523</sup> Randall, p. 475-6.

for us it is not the rational order of nature, but the culmination of an evolutionary process, which we take for our leverage in existence. The eighteenth century could think of nothing worse than to call a man than an unnatural enthusiast; we prefer to dub him an antiquated and outgrown fossil. That age believed a theory if it were called rational, useful and natural; we favor it if it is the most recent development. We had rather be modernists and progressives than sound reasoners. It is perhaps an open question if in our new scale of values we have not lost as much as we have gained.

“...The idea of evolution, as it has finally come to be understood, has reinforced the humanistic and naturalistic attitude.”<sup>524</sup>

---

<sup>524</sup> Randall, p. 478.

## The Orthodox Perspective

Now we must look to see what Orthodoxy says about the questions which evolution talks about, where they touch upon philosophy and theology. According to the theory of evolution, man is coming up from savagery and that is why<sup>525</sup> they show in books the Cro-Magnon man, Neanderthal man – obviously very savage, ready to beat someone over the head and take his meat. This is obviously someone's imagination; it is not based upon the shape of the fossils or anything else.

If you believe that man came up from savagery, then you'll interpret all past history in those terms. But according to Orthodoxy man fell from paradise. In evolutionary philosophy there is no room for a supernatural state of Adam. And those who want to keep both Christianity and evolutionism, are forced to stick some kind of artificial paradise onto an ape-like creature. These are obviously two different kinds of systems which can't be mixed.<sup>526</sup>

What finally begins to happen is that the people who begin to do this, as many Catholics have done in recent decades, they see that they got mixed up and therefore they accept that evolution must be right and Christianity a myth; that the fall of man is only some kind of cosmic

---

<sup>525</sup>General Zoology, p. 765 illus., perhaps other artistic versions

<sup>526</sup>Tikhon: Fr. John Romanides said, "If we begin with philosophical and scientific observations of the material world, it is logically impossible to arrive at a distinction between the creation of the world and its fall. Quite simply, this is because the reality before our eyes presents nature as it is now, after the fall ... it is impossible for natural man to distinguish between the wholly positive creation of the world and the fall of the world. Man cannot know this division except by revelation." (*Ancestral Sin* pp. 449, 489) This distinction, or, rather, the loss of the idea of this distinction, is a predominate source behind modern errors. Natural theology is inherently limited by the truth of the world's fall and any emphasis on a natural theology which does not recognize this world as fallen and sentenced to be burned will unavoidably fall into the chiliastic perennialism that Fr. Seraphim is concerned with refuting. This forms a shared basis for all pagan religion as the natural world becomes either deified or rejected entirely. This regression to paganism is a primary aspect of any Orthodox critique of Evolution which contains a perennial pagan philosophy that reduces all religions and religious history into a progression of evolution into a monadic form where no religion is distinct, but wherein 'forces of nature' are deified universally. Further, atrocities result from the idea that death is natural rather than an unnatural condition of a world that has been made unnatural by the fall. If death is assumed to be natural, then it is assumed to be a system to be controlled by man and man, in hubris, attempts to raise himself above death – godlessly and delusionally thinking he has power over death through the use of death. Evolution philosophically proposes the deification of death as a force of nature and a return to human sacrifice as death worship is the telos of evolution.

immaturity, that the ape-like creatures when they became man, they became some kind of naive human creature and involved in some kind of guilt complex at the same time.

Besides, there was not just one pair but many, which is called polygenism – that man came from many different pairs. Once you give into the idea that we will inspect it rationally – on the basis of our rational naturalistic philosophy of the modern philosophers – then Christianity has to be put away someplace, or made... ..unexamined presuppositions or examined presuppositions. Anyway, it is a realm of very relative truths. And in the teaching of Holy Fathers we have truths which are revealed and truths which are given to us by God-inspired men.

So, we'll look at a few of these things which Holy Fathers say. There is a great deal of material about evolution, although you wouldn't think so. But if you think through what evolution is philosophically and theologically and then look up those questions in the Holy Fathers, there is a great deal of information to be found in the writings of Holy Fathers. But we can't go into much of it right now. Let's just have a few points to see if we can characterize evolution according to patristic teaching.

First, we should make a note that the idea of creation is something which is quite different from the world we see today; it's a whole different principle. And therefore, when we read in a modern Christian evolutionist – in fact, he's a noted conservative Greek theologian, [Panagiotis] Trempeles, supposed to be scholastic, but anyway, he's a conservative – he says that "it appears more glorious and divine-like and more in harmony with the regular methods of God, which we daily see expressed in nature to have created the various forms by evolutionary methods, Himself remaining the first and supreme creative Cause of the secondary and mediate causes to which are owed the development of the variety of species."<sup>527</sup>

We will note here that oftentimes theologians are quite behind the times. And in order to apologize for the scientific dogma, they often come up with things which the scientists have already left behind, because the scientists are reading the literature; and the theologians often are scared that they're going to be old-fashioned or say something which is not in accordance with scientific opinion. So, often a theologian can quite unconsciously fall for an evolutionary idea by not thinking the whole thing through, by not having a thorough-going

---

<sup>527</sup> Orthodox Observer, August 8, 1973.

philosophy, and not being aware of scientific evidence and scientific questions.

But this very idea that he sets forth that creation is supposed to be in accordance with the methods which God uses all the time is certainly nothing patristic about it, because creation is when the world came into being. And every kind of Holy Father who writes about this will tell you that those first six days of creation were quite different from anything else that ever happened in the history of the world.

And even Augustine – who says that this whole thing is a mystery – he says we really can't even talk about it because it's so different from our own experience: it's beyond us. And in the same way we simply cannot project present-day laws of nature back into the past and come up with the creation. Creation is something different; it's the beginning of all this and not the way it is now.

Some rather naive theologians try to say that the six days of creation can be infinitely long periods; they can correspond to these different layers, you know, the geological strata – which, of course, is nonsense because the geological strata do not come up with six easily identifiable layers, or five or four or anything of the sort. There's a whole lot of layers; and they simply do not correspond at all to six days of creation. So that simply is a very weak kind of accommodation.

And as a matter of fact, if you look at the Holy Fathers, even though it looks as though it might be terribly fundamentalistic to say it, they do with one voice say that those days were twenty-four hours long. St. Ephraim the Syrian even divides them into two days, two periods, twelve hours each. St. Basil the Great says, the first day is called in Genesis not the "first day," it's called "one day" because that is the one day by which God measured out the entire rest of the creation; that is, this first day which he says was twenty-four hours long is exactly the same day which is repeated in the rest of creation.

And if you think about it, there is nothing particularly difficult in that idea because the creation of God is something totally outside our present knowledge, and the accommodation of days to epochs doesn't make any sense; you can't fit them together. And therefore, why do you need to have a day which is a thousand years long or a million years long? You don't have a need for that.

And as a matter of fact, the Holy Fathers say again with one voice that the creative acts of God are instantaneous. St. Basil the Great, St. Ambrose the Great, St. Ephraim and many others say, when God creates, He says the word and it is, faster than thought. There's a whole

lot of quotations, but we just can't go into [them]. And there's no one that says creation is slow. There are six days of creation and the Holy Fathers explain this, not that this is some kind of long process, not that man has been evolving from something lower – that idea is totally foreign to any Holy Fathers – but that the lower creatures came first in order to prepare the realm for the higher creature who is man, who must have his kingdom already created before he comes. And even St. Gregory the Theologian uses the phrase that man was made by God on the sixth day and entered into the newly created earth.<sup>528</sup>

There was a whole teaching of Holy Fathers concerning the state of the world and of Adam before the fall of Adam. Adam was immortal, or rather, as Augustine says, he was not created immortal; he was created with the possibility of being either mortal or immortal in the body; and he chose by his fall to be mortal in the body.

The Creation before the fall of Adam was in a different state. About that the Holy Fathers do not tell us very much; it's really beyond us. But certain Holy Fathers of the most contemplative sort, such as St. Gregory of Sinai, do describe what is the state of paradise. And he says it is a state which exists now but has become invisible to us, the same state that was then; and that it is placed between corruption and incorruption so that when a tree falls in paradise, it does not rot away, like we know, but is turned into the most fragrant kind of substance. Of course, this is a hint which tells us this is beyond us, that there's some other kind of law.

We know people who have been to paradise, you know, like St. Euphrosynos, who went to paradise and brought back three apples. Remember that story? St. Euphrosynos, the cook. He's in our kitchen, the patron of cooks. And these three apples were kept for a little while; they divided them up and ate them; and they were very sweet. They ate them like holy bread; which means there's something to do with matter, and yet there's something different from matter. Of course, people now are speculating about matter, anti-matter, what is the source of, root of matter – they don't know any more. And so why should we be surprised that there's some other different kind of matter?

---

<sup>528</sup> Cf. St. Gregory the Theologian, Homily 44, On New Week, Spring, and Commemoration of the Martyr Mamas: "If man appeared in the world last, honored by the handiwork and image of God, this is not in the least surprising, since for him as for a king, the royal dwelling had to be prepared and only then was the king to be led in, accompanied by all creatures."

We know also that there's going to be a different body, a spiritual body. Our resurrected body will be a different kind of matter than the one we know now. St. Gregory the Sinaite says it will be like our present body, but without moisture and without heaviness. And what that is we don't know because unless you've seen an angel, you haven't had experience of that. You don't. Our own bodies are filled with precisely this heaviness.

So, we do not have to make any kind of speculation about exactly what kind of matter this is, because that's going to be revealed to us when we need to know it, in the next life. But it is enough for us to know that paradise, the state of the whole creation before the fall of Adam, was quite different from what we know.

You can speculate if you like whether any creature died before Adam. Adam brought death into the world, so it's very likely that no creature ever died before Adam died, before Adam fell. But that's, the Holy Fathers don't talk about particular points like that, or very little. So it's not for us to speculate. All we know is that world was quite different. And the law of nature we know now is the law of nature which God gave when Adam fell; that is, when He said, "Cursed be the earth for Thy sake." (Gen. 3:17) And, "In pain thou shalt bring forth children." (Gen. 3:16) Before the fall Eve was a virgin. And God made male and female knowing man would fall and would need this means of reproducing.

But there's an element of great mystery in the state of creation before the fall of Adam which we don't need to pry into because we are not interested in the "how" of creation. We know that there was a creation of six days, and the Holy Fathers say 24-hour days – there's nothing surprising about that; that the acts were instantaneous – God wills and it's done, He speaks and it's done. That is, since we believe in God Who's Almighty, there is no problem whatsoever. But how it looked, how many species of creatures there were, whether there were all the different kinds of cats we see or whether there were five basic types or only families or only genera – we have no idea, and it's not important for us to know.

To add to the theory of evolution the idea of God, as some Christian evolutionists do, gives no help at all. Or rather it gives only one help, that is, it gets you out of this problem of finding out where everything came from in the first place. Instead of a great kind of tapioca bowl of cosmic jelly or something, you have God. Well, that's more clear, it's a straight idea. If you have the tapioca jelly in space someplace, it's a

very mystical and difficult to understand. If you're a materialist, it makes sense to you, but that's purely on the basis of your prejudices. But apart from that, given the beginning, God does not help the theory of evolution at all. Because the difficulties in the theory are still there, no matter whether God is behind it or not. So, there's no particular help from the idea of adding God to the idea of evolution.

Another difference between this, the modern philosophy of evolution and Orthodox teaching, is not only the past of man, but the future of mankind. If the creation is one great filament which evolves and is transmuted into new species, then we have one kind of philosophy of the future, which we'll discuss shortly about the evolution of "superman." If the creation is one great hierarchy of being, then we can expect something different. We do not have to expect some kind of changes, some kind of rising up from the lower to the higher.

Concerning the transmutability of species – or "kinds," according to the word used in Genesis because "species" is a very arbitrary concept; we don't have to take that as any kind of limit – the Holy Fathers have a quite definite teaching. And briefly we'll quote a few Holy Fathers about this.

St. Gregory of Nyssa, or rather, he quotes his sister Macrina on her deathbed – remember this conversation we heard about, when she was dying? She talks about this very question, when she's opposing the idea of the transmigration of souls, the pre-existence of souls which was taught by Origen.<sup>529</sup> She says or rather St. Gregory says through her:

---

<sup>529</sup> Tikhon: A classic condemnation of Origen from the 6<sup>th</sup> Ecumenical Council is the Syndodical Letter of St. Sophronius, who was Patriarch of Jerusalem, which was addressed to Patriarch Sergius of Constantiople. In this epistle, St. Sophronius writes a profession of faith in creation, "but they also make myriads of other statements contrary to the tradition of the apostles and our Fathers. *They throw out the planting of paradise, they do not want Adam fashioned in the flesh, they object to the moulding of Eve from him, they reject the utterance of the snake, they forbid the ranks of heavenly armies as they were created to be in the beginning with God, imagining that they resulted from a primordial condemnation and deviation...* they introduce besides total corruptibility of all perceptible things, while alleging the restoration of all rational creatures, angels, human beings, and demons, and again confounding their differences into one mythical unity, when Christ will be different from us in no respect, whom they preach in foolish manner, not with one foul perversion only but giving their neighbor myriads of draughts to drink, and, wretches that they are, deigned to die and poured out the ransom that was his divine blood and laid down his own life as a most divine gift exceeding all worth... But we, because we have been given to drink the rational and guileless milk of right and blameless and well-disciplined faith, have tasted the good word of God, thrust away all their shadowy teachings... These things received them from proclamation which is from apostles



“Those who would have it that the soul migrates into natures divergent from each other seem to me to obliterate all natural distinctions, to blend and confuse together in every possible respect the rational, the irrational, the sentient and the insensate. If, that is, all these are to pass into each other with no distinct natural order secluding them from mutual transition. To say that one and the same soul on account of a particular environment of body is at one time a rational and intellectual soul and that then it is cavered along with the reptiles, or herds with the birds, or is a beast of burden or a carnivorous one, or swims in the deep, or even drops down to an insensate thing so as to strike out roots and become a complete tree producing buds on branches and from those buds a flower or a thorn or a fruit edible or noxious – to say this is nothing short of making all things the same, and believing that one single nature runs through all beings, that there is a connection between them which blends and confuses hopelessly all the marks by which one could be distinguished from another.”<sup>530</sup>

Well, that shows very clearly the Holy Fathers believed in a whole hierarchy of beings. It is not, as Erasmus Darwin wanted to have it, one single filament which runs through all beings – there are distinct natures.

And if we look at one of the basic works of Orthodox theology which is the *On the Orthodox Faith* of St. John of Damascus, we find that before he gives us *On the Orthodox Faith*, he has two books before it which he says are all part of a whole. One is *On the Heresies* which tells exactly what the heretics believed, and why we do not believe that. And the first part of this great work which is one of the standard books of Orthodox theology; it's called *On Philosophy*. The whole thing is called *The Fount of Knowledge*. He begins with philosophical chapters in which he goes into such things as “what is knowledge?”, “what is philosophy?”, “what is being?”, “what is substance?”, “what is accident?”, “what is species?”, “what is genus?”, “what are differences?”, “what are properties, predicates?” And the whole thing is based on the idea that reality is quite distinctly divided up into different beings, each of which has its own essence, its own nature, not one is confused with the other. There is a distinct hierarchy of beings, and he

---

and evangelist, from prophets and the Law, from Fathers and Teachers...”  
(Sophronius of Jerusalem and the Seventh-Century Heresy, p 121-125; translated by Pauline Allen)

<sup>530</sup> *On the Soul and the Resurrection*, p. 454.

said he thinks you have to read this before you can read his book on Orthodox theology, *The Orthodox Faith*.

Student: Who's that is by?

Fr. S: St. John of Damascus, in the eighth century.

You should know there are a number of basic books, by the way, by Orthodox Fathers on this very question. There's one book called *Hexaemeron*, that is, the Six Days, commentaries on the six days of Genesis. There's one by St. Basil the Great in the East, one by St. Ambrose the Great in the West, and other lesser ones. There are commentaries on the Book of Genesis by St. John Chrysostom, St. Ephraim the Syrian, who also wrote treatises on Adam and Eve. And there are many writings on these subjects scattered in the writings of many other Holy Fathers. St. John of Kronstadt also wrote a *Hexaemeron*, about six days of creation.

These books are very inspiring, by the way, because they are not mere abstract knowledge; they very are full of a practical wisdom. He uses a love of nature, and the splendor of God's creation, to give an example for us human beings, and many quaint little examples of how we should imitate the dove, in its love for its fellow, for its mate and so forth, how we should be like the wiser animals and not be like the dumber animals. For example, we can take an example from our squirrels. They're very greedy. We're not supposed to be like that. We're supposed to be gentle like the deer. We have all around us examples like that.

We can see if there are one or two quotes from St. Basil; for example, he says, "Let the earth bring forth. This brief command was immediately mighty Nature, an elaborate system which brought to perfection more swiftly than our thought the countless properties of plants."<sup>531</sup> Elsewhere he says when the trees, "Let the earth bring forth plants," he says "Instantly, swifter than thought, mighty forests arose, and all the different kinds of plants."<sup>532</sup>

And here he has a quote on this very question of the succession of creatures one after the other. He quotes Genesis: "Let the earth bring forth living creatures." This is from the 9th Homily on *Hexaemeron*. "Cattle and wild beasts and crawling creatures." And St. Basil says to

---

<sup>531</sup> St. Basil, *Hexaemeron*, V, 10, p. 82.

<sup>532</sup> St. Basil, *Hexaemeron*, V, 5-6, p. 74.

this: “Consider the Word of God moving through all creation, having begun at that time, active up to the present and efficacious until the end, even to the consummation of the world. As a ball when pushed by someone and then meeting with a slope is borne downward by its own shape and inclination of the ground and does not stop before some level surface receives it, so too the nature of existing objects, set in motion by one command, passes through creation without change, by generation and destruction, preserving the succession of the species through resemblance until it reaches the very end. It begets a horse as a successor of a horse, a lion of a lion, and an eagle of an eagle. And it continues to preserve each of the animals by uninterrupted successions until the consummation of the universe. No length of time causes the specific characteristics of the animals to be corrupted or extinct. But, as if established just recently, nature, ever fresh, moves along with time.”<sup>533</sup>

So that is a statement not of science but of philosophy. This is the way God created creatures, and each one has a certain seed, a certain nature and transmits that to its offspring. When there is some kind of exception, then it’s a monstrosity; it’s an exception. And this does not invalidate the principle of the natures of things, each one of which is quite distinct from the other. If we do not understand the whole variety of God’s creation, that’s our fault, not God’s.

St. Ambrose has a number of quotations on the same line. His *Hexaemeron* is very close to St. Basil’s in spirit.

And now we have another quote from St. Gregory [of Nyssa] which shows a very interesting [thing], that there was in fact a theory something like evolution in ancient times, although, of course, not at all like the present theory. He is combatting the idea of the pre-existence of souls. There’s a second idea which is the opposite idea. St. John of Damascus whose writings, his *On the Orthodox Faith* sums up the theological writings of the earlier Fathers. And he has one statement which says: “Let us not think like Origen and other blasphemers that God created the soul and the body of man at different times. He created them simultaneously.”<sup>534</sup>

But if we read the account of Genesis, it says rightly, [if I be] correct, “He made the body and breathed into it a living soul.” And in fact, the Christian evolutionists said, “Aha, perfect! That means man was something first and then he became human.”

---

<sup>533</sup> *Hexaemeron*, IX, 2, p. 137.

<sup>534</sup> Cf. *Orthodox Faith*, II, p. 235.

Let us see what St. Gregory of Nyssa says about this. “Some of those before our time who have dealt with the question of principles think it right to say that souls have a previous existence as a people and a society of their own.” This is Origen’s idea that the soul “fell down” into our world. “And that among them also there are standards of vice and of virtue, and that the soul there, which abides in goodness, remains without experience of conjunction with the body. But if it does depart from its communion with good, it falls down to this lower life and so comes to be in a body. Others on the contrary, marking the order of the making of man as stated by Moses, say that the soul is second to the body in order of time, since God first took dust from the earth and formed man, and then animated the being thus formed by his breath. And by this argument they prove that the flesh is more noble than the soul, that which was previously formed than that which was afterwards infused into it. For they say that the soul was made for the body, that the thing formed might not be without breath and motion, and that everything that is made for something else is surely less precious than that for which it is made. As the Gospel tells us that the soul is more than the meat and the body than raiment. Because the latter things exist for the sake of the former.”<sup>535</sup>

Surely this is very close, although it’s in a different climate of ideas, still it’s very close to the modern evolutionists’ idea that matter indeed is the first thing and the soul is secondary.

Now he goes on to discuss the second one, after getting rid of, after disposing of the idea of Origen that the souls preexist.

“Nor again are we in our doctrine to begin by making up man like a clay figure, and to say that the soul came into being for the sake of this; for surely in that case the intellectual nature would be shown to be less precious than the clay figure. But as man is one, the being consisting of soul and body, we are to suppose that the beginning of his existence is one common to both parts, so that he should not be found to be antecedent and posterior to himself, if the bodily element were first in point of time, and the other were a later addition. For we are to say that in the power of God’s foreknowledge, according to the doctrine laid down earlier in our discourse, all the fullness of human nature had preexistence. And to this the prophetic writing bears witness which says that God knoweth all things before they be. And in the creation of individuals, not to place the one element before the other: neither the soul before the body, nor the contrary, that man may not be at strife

---

<sup>535</sup> St. Gregory of Nyssa, *On the Making of Man*, chs. 28, 29, pp. 419-421.

against himself by being divided by the difference in point of time. For as our nature is conceived as twofold, according to the apostolic teachings, made up of the visible man and the hidden man, if the one came first and the other supervened, the power of Him that made us would be shown to be in some way imperfect, as not being completely sufficient for the whole task at once, but dividing the work and busying himself with each of the halves in turn.”<sup>536</sup>

Of course the whole reason for an idea of evolution is you do not believe that God is powerful enough to create the whole world by His Word. You are trying to help Him out by letting nature do most of the creating.

There are many other quotes we could have, but we have no time. The Holy Fathers talk quite in detail about the question of what it means that Adam was created from the dust. Some people take the fact that St. Athanasius the Great says in one of his writings, “Adam was created from the dust in the same way that every man is created from the dust.”<sup>537</sup> And they say “Aha, that means that Adam could have been descended from some other creature. He didn’t need to be taken from literal dust. You don’t have to take that part of Genesis literally.” But it so happens this very point is discussed in great detail by many Holy Fathers. And they come up with many different ways of expressing it, and makes it absolutely clear that Adam and Cain are two different kinds of people. Cain was born of man and Adam had no father. Adam was born of the, was created of the dust, directly by the hand of Christ. And many Fathers taught the same: Cyril of Jerusalem, St. John Damascene, St. – many of the Holy Fathers.

So, when we come to questions such as what is to be interpreted literally in Genesis, what is to be interpreted figuratively or allegorically, the Holy Fathers set forth for us very clearly. And St. John Chrysostom in his commentary even points out in certain passages exactly what is figurative, what is literal. And he says those who try to make it all allegory are trying to destroy our faith.

St. Gregory the Theologian – who was noted for being very elevated in his interpretations – [says concerning] the Tree of Knowledge of

---

<sup>536</sup> Ibid

<sup>537</sup> Cf. St. Athanasius the Great, *The Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers*, Second Series, Vol. IV: Athanasius, “Four Discourses Against the Arians, Discourse II,” Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., Grand Rapids, Michigan, 1980, p. 375: “For though Adam only was formed out of earth, yet in him was involved the succession of the whole race.”

Good and Evil, “I think this is a way of saying Contemplation.”<sup>538</sup> Therefore, some people say, “Aha, it means he doesn’t believe in Paradise. He doesn’t believe that there was an actual tree.” Of course, we are told that: the tree is not a real tree.

But a thousand years after him, there was a great Orthodox theologian, St. Gregory Palamas. And he was confronted by Barlaam, the Latinizer. And Barlaam said that the uncreated light was not real divine light, uncreated light was some created light. It is only symbolically called divine. And this St. Gregory applied to him:

“Do we believe because St. Gregory the Theologian says the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil means Contemplation, do we believe that he meant to say that there was no tree?” Of course not; there was a tree, and he believed it. In the same way St. Maximus the Confessor said Moses is a symbol of contemplation, Elijah a symbol of something else. Does that mean that Moses and Elijah do not exist?<sup>539</sup>

And of course, in reading the Holy Fathers we have to know both the fact that one Father comments on the other, and that it is not such an easy thing to find what is literal and what is not literal. One has to read much and get the whole context in which they are speaking in order to see exactly how one is to interpret them. And of course for the most part the things of the book of Genesis are in two levels. That is, there are literal truths, and there are also – many times for our spiritual benefit – some kind of spiritual truths. In fact, there are whole systems of three or four levels of meaning, but [it is] sufficient for us that there are many deeper meanings in the Scriptures; and very seldom is the literal meaning destroyed. Only occasionally.

Well, enough for that subject. We can characterize in general evolution in its philosophical aspect as a naturalistic heresy which comes closest of all to being the opposite of the ancient heresy of the pre-existence of souls. That is, that there’s one kind of soul nature which runs throughout creation; evolution is the idea there’s one kind of material being which runs throughout creation. And the same, both of them destroy the idea of the hierarchy of beings and the distinct natures of each. This was a heresy which was actually lacking in ancient times. Usually Orthodoxy is midway between two errors: between the doing away with the divine nature of Arius, and the doing away with the human nature of Monophysitism. And in this particular

---

<sup>538</sup> St. Gregory the Theologian, Second Oration on Easter, VIII, p. 425.

<sup>539</sup> Paraphrase of passage from Defense of the Holy Hesychasts, OW article #1 on Genesis, p. 292.

case the other heresy was not incarnated in ancient times. And it waited for modern times to make this particular error. But we'll see now much more clearly this philosophical side of evolutionism when we look at a few of the so-called Christian evolutionists.

Question: "Are there any Orthodox scholars?"

Fr. S: Oh, afraid there are. We'll look at one or two now.

In the last few years there've been articles – small articles, some longer articles – in some of the Orthodox press on this very question of evolution. And, in fact, the Greek Archdiocese newspaper, *The Orthodox Observer*, printed several articles which are quite surprising in that they are so far away from Orthodoxy.

One of these articles in the Greek newspaper says that evolution cannot really be a heresy because there are many Christians who believe in it. And it quotes two. These are Lecomte du Nouy and Teilhard de Chardin. So, we'll look for a moment at Lecomte du Nouy; he's supposed to be a Christian who believes in evolution; therefore it can't be a heresy.

He was a widely known respected scientist, mathematician and physiologist, who has written several books on scientific philosophy. He was born in Paris in 1883. He wrote a popular book called *Human Destiny* wherein he sets forth his conclusions about evolution. It turns out he's not too much of a Christian because he believed that man created his own God, who is actually "a formidable fiction."<sup>540</sup> He is very patronizing towards Christianity, and he believes that Christianity has been misunderstood and misinterpreted, but it is still good for the masses, and is a useful tool for man's continuing evolution on a moral and ethical plane. It has no objective, absolute truth, of course. Christ is not God, but He's perfect man. But Christian tradition somehow helps to educate the race towards further evolution. He says that, "We are" now "at the beginning of the transformations which will end in the superior race...."<sup>541</sup>

---

<sup>540</sup> du Nouy, Lecomte, *Human Destiny*, Longmans, Green & Co., New York, 1947, p. 167.

<sup>541</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 177.

“Evolution continues in our time, *no longer on the physiological or anatomical plane, but on the spiritual and moral plane*. We are at the dawn of a new phase of evolution.”<sup>542</sup>

Of course, it is difficult enough to find scientific evidence of evolution; it’s impossible to find evidence for spiritual evolution. But he believes in it. He says, “Our conclusions are identical with those expressed in the second chapter of Genesis, provided that this chapter is interpreted in a new way and considered as the highly symbolical expression of a truth which is intuitively perceived by its redactor or by the sages who communicated it to him.”<sup>543</sup>

By the way Holy Fathers say that Moses heard from God. And one Father even says from the Archangel Gabriel, he received a revelation concerning – in fact St. John Chrysostom says the book of Genesis is a prophecy of the past; that is, he saw an exalted vision of what it was in the beginning. And St. Isaac the Syrian also says that in his state of ecstasy...

St. Isaac...describes how, in men of the highest spiritual life, the soul can rise to a vision of the beginning of things. Describing how such a soul is enraptured at the thought of the future age of incorruption, St. Isaac writes: And from this one is already exalted in his mind to that which preceded the composition (making) of the world, when there was no creature, nor heaven, nor earth, nor angels, nothing of that which was brought into being, and to how God, solely by His good will, suddenly brought everything from non-being into being, and everything stood before Him in perfection.<sup>544</sup> ...into revelation, to vision when a holy man is in a very, ascends to a vision of God.

Messr. Lecomte du Nouy continues: “Let us try...to analyze the sacred text as though it were a highly symbolical and cryptic description of scientific truths.”<sup>545</sup> It is, of course, extremely patronizing that this poor Moses tried his best to get a scientific picture of the way things were, and all he came up with is these sort of images. He explains, this Lecomte du Nouy, that, “The omnipotence of God is manifested by the fact that man,” who is “descended from the marine

---

<sup>542</sup> Ibid., p. 104. [Emphasis in Original]

<sup>543</sup> Ibid., p. 112.

<sup>544</sup> St. Isaac the Syrian, *Ascetical Homilies*, Homily 21, in Russian, Second Edition, Sergiev Posad, 1893, New English edition: Boston, Massachusetts: Holy Transfiguration Monastery, 1984. Quoted in “The Patristic Understanding of Genesis,” *The*

*Orthodox Word*, #154, Vol. 26:5, p. 296.

<sup>545</sup> du Nouy, p. 113.



worms, is today capable of conceiving the future existence of a superior being and of wanting to be his ancestor. Christ brings us the proof that this is not an unrealizable dream, but an accessible ideal.”<sup>546</sup> That is, Christ is some kind of superman, and this is somehow the ideal to which man now is evolving. For this man, we have a new criterion of good and evil which is “absolute with respect to Man. Good is that which contributes to the course of ascending evolution.... Evil is that which opposes evolution.... The respect of human personality is based on the recognition of man’s dignity as a worker for evolution, as a collaborator with God.”<sup>547</sup> “The only goal of man should be the attainment of human dignity with all its implications.”<sup>548</sup>

If you can call this man a Christian, it’s very surprising. He goes on to describe the fact that there are thinking men in all religions, and therefore all religions have a unique inspiration, a spiritual kinship, an original identity. He says, “The unity of religions must be sought in that which is divine, namely, universal in man.”<sup>549</sup> “No matter what our religion, we are all like people at the bottom of a valley who seek to climb a snowy peak that dominates the others. We all have our eyes fixed on the same goal,... Unfortunately we differ on what road to take.... [O]ne day, provided they never stop ascending, they must all meet at the top of the mountain...the road to it matters little.”<sup>550</sup> Of course, the top of the mountain is not the salvation of the soul; it’s not the kingdom of heaven; it’s precisely this chiliastic new age.

Well, that’s one so-called “Christian evolutionist.” He’s not very Christian. He’s in fact a deist.

There’s a second Christian evolutionist. Well, we can make a few miscellaneous comments, taken from this Greek newspaper also. In another issue of *The Orthodox Observer*, this Greek newspaper, Greek Orthodox official newspaper, there’s a priest – in fact a priest who lives in San Francisco, who once visited our bookshop – Fr. Anthony Kosturos. There were two priests came in. One had never heard of *The Philokalia* and a second had never read it but had someone recommended it to him as a good book. He has a question column, and he received a question: “If Adam and Eve were the first humans, where did their son Cain get his wife? Does our Church shed any light on this

---

<sup>546</sup> Ibid., p. 197.

<sup>547</sup> Ibid., p. 133.

<sup>548</sup> Ibid., p. 244.

<sup>549</sup> Ibid., p. 175.

<sup>550</sup> Ibid., p. 180.

question?” Fr. Kosturos replies: “Man’s origin is too far back in history for any person or group to know how man began.” What is Genesis for? “Science is still groping for answers. The word Adam denotes earth. The word Eve,” denotes “life. Generally, and only generally, our traditional theologians take the view that all of us stem from one male and one female....” But “There are others who feel that humankind appeared in clusters, a few here and a few there.... [Our Church’s traditional approach theorizes that mankind emanates from one couple...]<sup>551</sup> No theologian has the definitive answer on the subject of man’s origin and his development.... The dawn of human history is a mystery.”<sup>552</sup>

And later, in another answer to a similar question, he says, “Perhaps there are many Adams and Eves who appeared concurrently in different areas, and then met. How man was created and how man procreated initially is a mystery. Don’t let anyone tell you otherwise. Our Church gives you the opportunity to ponder the subjects you mention and come up with your own speculation about them.”<sup>553</sup>

The answer to the question is very easy: Because Adam and Eve had many children who are not mentioned in Genesis. This is only the basic outline of the story. And, the second, the question was answered in a different column in the same newspaper by a different priest. And then they asked a further question, “How is it that Cain could marry his own sister? Isn’t this against the laws of the Orthodox Church?” Of course, this is the beginning of time, this is in a different law; they’re not living under the law we have now. In those days people lived to be nine hundred years old. Obviously humanity was quite different from what we know it, even physically. And if it’s surprising – no, it shouldn’t be surprising because the world was at its beginning then.

Well, we’ll look for a few minutes at a few recent Catholic speculations on this question because they ask these questions we’ve already looked at a little bit, but you can see what kind of answers they give. There’s one theologian, Karl Rahner, Jesuit, who comes up with a new, the theory of “polygenesis,” that is, that there were many Adams and Eves. He asks two questions: “How is evolution compatible with the doctrine of Adam’s preternatural gifts?”<sup>554</sup> He was immortal. And

---

<sup>551</sup> Kostura’s insert?

<sup>552</sup> The Orthodox Observer, Feb. 6, 1974.

<sup>553</sup> The Orthodox Observer, Feb. 20, 1974.

<sup>554</sup> Summarized in Theology Digest, “Original Sin, Polygenism, and Freedom,” Spring, 1973.

“Can we seriously think that the first man to evolve was capable of the first sin...?” He says, “Scientists prefer to conceive hominization,” that is, the making of man, “as having taken place in many individuals – a population? – rather than in a single pair.” Well, some scientists think and some don’t. It is in the first group of recognizable men, that is, original man which committed the first transgression. He says, “Grace could be offered to the original group and, upon being rejected by that group’s free and yet mutually-influencing choice, be lost to the whole of succeeding humanity.”<sup>555</sup>

He says, “In the first [emphasis Rahner's] man or group such as paleontology reveals to us, how could there have been” such “a degree of freedom sufficiently developed to have made possible such a fateful choice as original sin? How can we attempt to reconcile the supernatural or preternatural paradise-situation of Adam (individual or group) with what we know of the origins of the biological, anthropological, cultural world?”<sup>556</sup>

And he answers his question by saying, “It is not easy to determine precisely where and when an earthly creature actually became spirit and thus free.... We may serenely reckon with the fact that original sin really happened, but at a moment which cannot be more accurately determined. It was sometime within a fairly long time-span during which many individuals may have been already existing and capable of performing the guilty act simultaneously,”<sup>557</sup> so to speak. In other words the whole thing becomes very vague. Obviously the next generation of thinkers is going to do away with some of this double talk.

And so there’s another book, by a Dutch Jesuit, [Stephanus] Trooster, called *Evolution and the Doctrine of Original Sin*. And he sets off forthrightly, “Those who take the scientific doctrine of evolution seriously can no longer accept (the) traditional presentation.” So we must find “an interpretation that is relevant to our times.”<sup>558</sup>

“The proponents of the doctrine of evolution,” he says, “visualize mankind as a reality which, in the course of history, only very gradually matured to achieve a degree of self-realization. Its earliest emergence must be conceived of as fumbling transitional forms appearing next to extremely primitive levels of human existence. Such primitive intermediate forms of human life still must have been

---

<sup>555</sup> Ibid

<sup>556</sup> Ibid.

<sup>557</sup> Ibid.

<sup>558</sup> Trooster, *Stephanus, Evolution and the Doctrine of Original Sin*, pp. 2, 3.

intimately fused with their prehistoric animal state.... But in this evolutionary theory there is no room for a ‘paradisiacal’ existence of this prehistoric man. [emphasis in “Christian Evolutionism”] To place an extremely gifted and highly privileged spiritual man at the beginning of human life on earth appears in complete contradiction to modern scientific thought on this matter.”<sup>559</sup> Which of course is true.

“Acceptance of the modern viewpoint, however, eliminates the possibility of accounting for the genesis of evil in the world on the basis of sin committed by the first man. After all, how could so primitive a human being have been in a position to refuse God’s offer of salvation; how could such a primitive being have been capable of a breach of covenant with God?”<sup>560</sup>

It turns out that he decides that the Fall of man is nothing but what he calls “cosmic immaturity.” Adam actually is not one man; its “Everyman.”<sup>561</sup> And the book of Genesis is “an idealized image”...<sup>562</sup> [.] “of a world without sin,” even though “the author” of Genesis “knows quite well it does not correspond to reality.”<sup>563</sup> He does “not mean to say that the original state of grace of Adam and Eve in all its purity was once upon a time an actual reality in the history of mankind.”<sup>564</sup> Of course, if you believe in evolution, it makes no sense to talk about Paradise. And you’re only fooling yourself trying to combine these two different forms of thinking.

The Catholics in the past have had some problems about knowing when man began, if you accept evolution. And there are different theories depending on whether you think – I don’t know what’s allowed now – but in the old days you were not allowed to believe that man’s soul could evolve from matter. You had to believe that the man was given a soul at a particular moment. At that moment he became man, and therefore he is no longer subject to all those laws of evolution. Obviously this is, you know, sticking in one of these “epicycles” again to make the theory correspond to your own beliefs. Either you believe in evolution, in which case man is a very primitive creature which came from the beasts – it’s a definite view, and the textbooks on evolution will tell you that, that man still has the savage inside of him, and all the

---

<sup>559</sup> Fr. Seraphim is quoting from an unpublished manuscript, “Christian Evolutionism.”

<sup>560</sup> Trooster, p. 18.

<sup>561</sup> Trooster, p. 44.

<sup>562</sup> Emphasis in Chr. Ev

<sup>563</sup> Trooster, p. 54-55.

<sup>564</sup> Trooster, p. 132.

pictures show him evolving from the monkey-like creature – or else you believe that man descended from a being who was greater than we are now, who was actually perfect man in his own way, was not subject to corruption – the Holy Fathers even tell us – did not go to the bathroom, did not have to eat in order to live, he had the Tree of Life; but that it was not the same way we have now, to live in order to eat.

In fact, St. Seraphim has a whole section on the state of Adam, in his “Conversation with Motovilov,” how he was not subject to being injured or hurt; in other words, he was quite invulnerable to the elements, could not be drowned or anything like that. It’s interesting that even in the Middle Ages, Thomas Aquinas, they asked precisely questions like this for him to solve: What was the state, did he go to the bathroom, how was it that he could not be harmed? And he has elaborate explanations. First of all, he does go to the bathroom because we cannot believe that he would be of a different material than we are now. And second, that he was never harmed, and could not be drowned, not because it was impossible, but because God arranged to take all the boulders out of the way, never to have the stream go too high. In other words, He arranged the world just correct so that Adam walked very carefully and never happened to get hurt.

But Orthodoxy believes, as we read in the very first chapter of Abba Dorotheus, he sets forth for us there the image of Adam, the first man, to give us an inspiration of what we have to strive back for; that is, our nature is immortal. We are meant to live eternally in the body; and that’s the way it was in the beginning. And only after falling did we lose that nature and that blessed state in which Adam was beholding God.

And according to Orthodoxy, the state of man in Paradise is his nature. Our nature now is changed; then we were immortal. Now we have been changed into a mortal being, that is, mortal in the body.

And the Catholics teach, on the contrary, that the state of man in Paradise was a supernatural state, that man actually is just like we know him today, but God gave him a special state of grace. And when he fell, he simply fell away from that extra grace which had been added to him. And therefore his nature was not changed. He was the same man, mortal man, but he was given some kind of extra gift in the beginning. But according to Orthodoxy, our very nature was ruined, was changed.

Fr. H:           And that’s the whole crux of the matter.

Fr. S: Christ is the new Adam; and in Him we are restored to our old nature.

Some Fathers like St. Symeon the New Theologian thought it, discussed the question of why, then, did we not immediately become immortal when Christ died and resurrected. And he says so that we would not have to be forced, we would not be someplace like He did not come down from the Cross, that we still must achieve our own salvation. And the creation is waiting for us to achieve our salvation, when it too will rise up to the state it was before the Fall, in fact, even to a higher state.

All that is filled with mysteries; it's beyond us, but still we know enough of it from the Holy Fathers. In fact, St. Symeon the New Theologian has a long quote on the subject, what the state of man was before the Fall, and the whole of creation was, he says, incorrupt and immortal, just like man. And only after the Fall did the creatures begin to die. And when the new world comes, the heaven and the earth, man, the meek will inherit the earth. He said, what earth is that It is this earth you see right here, only it will be burned up and restored so that all the creatures now will be immortal. And that is what the whole creation is striving for, what the creatures are groaning after. When St. Paul said they were subject to vanity, it means they were subject to corruption, through the Fall of man.

## Dobzhansky

We'll look at one more Christian evolutionist before we come to the great prophet of our age. This one is, alas, a Russian Orthodox scientist. His name is Theodosius Dobzhansky and he lives in Davis, California, last we heard. He teaches there genetics. In fact, I think he still has his fruit flies, and is continuing to make experiments to prove evolution. Dobzhansky. D-O-B-Z-H-A-N-S-K-Y. He was born in the year of the canonization of St. Theodosius of Chernigov, in answer to prayer from his parents; and that's why he was called Theodosius. Alas, he became an apostate. He came to America in the twenties and has been an American since that time.

And he's been absolutely prohibited in Soviet Russia, although the Soviet scientists know about him. And once when a film was accidentally presented at one scientific meeting in Russia which showed him on it, all the scientists cheered; and the film was withdrawn because he is non-existent, a non-person because he left Russia. But he thinks like a Communist.

He's so religious that when his wife died, he had her cremated, took the ashes and scattered them in the Sierras. As far as one can guess, he never goes to church; he's quite beyond religion. But for his great Christian evolutionist views, he was granted a doctorate of theology by St. Vladimir's Academy in New York. And he gave an address to, I think it's called, the Orthodox Theological Society of America. It has all the great theologians. Orthodox theologians of all the jurisdictions, except ours, in America listened to him give his talk, which was printed in Orthodox periodical called *Concern*. And it's called "Evolution: God's Method of Creation." In this article, he says that anybody who says anything against evolution is a blasphemer, because that is the way God acts and that's the way it is.

He says in this article, "Natural selection is a blind and a creative process.... Natural selection does not work according to a foreordained plan...."<sup>565</sup> That is, where is God's providence, if you're a Christian? He notes the extraordinary variety of life on the earth, but he says, "What a senseless operation" it would be if God had [were] "to fabricate a multitude of species ex nihilo," from nothing, "and then let most of them die out! ...What is the sense of having as many as two or three million species living on earth? ...Was the creator in a jocular mood" when he did this? Was he "playing practical jokes?" No, he

---

<sup>565</sup> *Concern*, "Evolution: God's Method of Creation," Spring, 1973.

reasons, “This organic diversity becomes, [however,] reasonable and understandable if the Creator has created the living world, not by gratuitous caprice but by natural selection. It is wrong to hold creation and evolution as mutually exclusive alternatives.”<sup>566</sup>

Well, what he means by that it actually makes no difference if you have a God. And he makes two or three million species by means of natural selection. Isn't it just as silly as if He creates them all at once? Doesn't think straight...and there's no plan to it. He says it's all just blind, a blind process.

Of course, he is filled with the usual liberal Christian ideas that Genesis is symbolical, that man's awareness is the cause of the tragic meaninglessness in the world today, and the only escape is for man to realize that he can cooperate with the enterprise of creation willed by God, for participation in this enterprise makes mortal man part of God's eternal design. And he says, “The most gallant and by far the most nearly successful attempt to do this – cooperate with God's eternal design – has been that of Teilhard de Chardin.”<sup>567</sup>

---

<sup>566</sup> Concern, Spring, 1973.

<sup>567</sup> St. Vladimir's Theological Quarterly, Vol. 17, 1973, p. 100.



## Teilhard de Chardin

So, we'll look into now this last evolutionist who is the great evolutionist prophet of our times. Teilhard de Chardin. He died in 1955, about 70 years old I believe.<sup>568</sup>

Student: Buried in New York State.

Fr. S: He was a paleontologist who was present at the discovery of many, most of the great fossil "men" of our century. It was he who took part with two other people in the discovery of Piltdown Man. He discovered the tooth, which was dyed. It's not known whether he had a part in it. One of these men is accused of being the one who fabricated the Piltdown Man; and it's been hushed up that Teilhard de Chardin had anything to do with it. But it's already known in the earlier books that he discovered the tooth.

He was present at the new discoveries of Java Man, which were incidentally all locked up in a closet, in Holland someplace, and not allowed to be examined again. He was present at many of the discoveries of Peking Man, while not at the very beginning. And there's a great mystery there because the leading man who discovered [it] dropped dead in the ditch one day. He [Teilhard] was also present when the fossils of Peking Man disappeared for the last time. And so we have no fossils of Peking Man left, and no casts were made. There's only some kind of drawings and models.

But he is the one who is chiefly responsible for the interpretation of all these findings. As he himself said, "No matter where I went, I continually found just the proof I was looking for."<sup>569</sup> And he fit these together into the evidence for the proof of human evolution, which is so shaky that its, well, we won't go into it now; but one writer has said, "All the evidence for human evolution, all the skulls could be put into a single small coffin."<sup>570</sup> And we just don't know what the relation is of

---

<sup>568</sup>Tikhon: *Theistic Evolution: The Teilhardian Heresy* by Dr. Wolfgang Smith is recommended as a good critique of Teilhard.

<sup>569</sup>Quote from unpublished manuscript (possibly Br. Gleb's paper?), no author, no date of title, blue back, clear cover, p. 2: "In Chardin's words: I had the good fortune, unusual in a scientific career, of happening to be on the spot when...cardinal finds in the history of fossil men had come to light! I am sometimes disturbed when I think of the uninterrupted succession of such strokes of luck that run through my life."

<sup>570</sup>Howell, F. Clark (author of *Early Man*), *New Scientist*, March 25, 1965, p. 798: "One of the prime difficulties is that really significant human fossil skulls are

these pieces to each other.

This man, Teilhard de Chardin, is very remarkable because he is both a scientist and a mystic. And the surprising thing is not so much that he is that way because he was a Jesuit, after all, but that he is quite respected both by theologians, Roman Catholic theologians, and in fact by many Orthodox so-called “theologians,” and by scientists. In fact, this book *The Phenomenon of Man* has an introduction by Julian Huxley<sup>571</sup> who is the son of the, son or grandson, the son of the older Huxley, T. H. Huxley, and is an absolute atheist, an atheist evolutionist. And he agrees with Teilhard de Chardin on everything except when he puts too much religion in. His attempt to reconcile Catholicism and evolution he felt was a little – he can’t agree with everything there – but basically he agrees with his philosophy.

This will bring us into territory which we discussed a little bit earlier. [As] you recall, the earlier scientists in the West, at the revival of modern science, actually the birth of modern science at the time of the Renaissance, were all mystically oriented. They were filled with Pythagorean philosophy. And Bruno himself was quite a mystical pantheist, “The whole world is God,”<sup>572</sup> how God is the soul of the world. Again, we remember Saint-Simon, the socialist prophet, who said the time is coming when not only the social order will be a religious institution, but science and religion also will come together. And no longer will science be atheistic. Well, this is the one they were looking for, the one who brings together science and religion.

Let’s take one more quote from nineteenth-century American philosopher, Ralph Waldo Emerson, who talks about the very same thing: the restoration of unity in man since he faces a situation where

---

exceptionally rare: everything which has been found to date could be tucked away in a large coffin. All the rest must be referred to something else.”

<sup>571</sup> Tikhon: Julian Huxley is most famous for his tenure as the first director of UNESCO. Of note is his book, *The Coming New Religion of Humanism*, which speaks of a “Religion of the Future” without categories of good or evil, , but of desirable and undesirable potentialities to be managed by metaphysician technocrats. The book *Brave New World* by Aldous Huxley is a depiction of Julian Huxley’s idea of the new humanist utopia.

<sup>572</sup> Cf. Bruno quoted in Randall, p. 243: “God must be the single life and soul of this infinite universe; Nature is God in things. The power, the life that animates the whole must be that which lives in each of the parts. And so Bruno passed from Platonism to a mystic pantheism, feeling the pulse of God in every natural force, seeing and adoring his glory in the vast profusion of that universe that can be but his body.”

man's faith has been now divorced from knowledge because of modern enlightenment, and how can we get back together faith and knowledge. He says this in his essay "On Nature": "The reason why the world lacks unity, and lies broken and in heaps, is because man is disunited with himself. He cannot be a naturalist until he satisfies all the demands of the spirit. Love is as much its demand as perception. [Indeed, neither can be perfect without the other. In the uttermost meaning of the words, thought is devout, and devotion is thought. {Emerson}] Deep calls unto deep, but in actual life, the marriage is not celebrated. There are innocent men who worship God after the tradition of their fathers, but their sense of duty has not yet extended to all their faculties." That is, they are not critical about science and philosophy; they do not criticize their own religion. "And there are patient naturalists, but they freeze their subject under the wintry light of the understanding." That is, divorce it from religion. "[Is not prayer also a study of truth – a sally of the soul into the unfound infinite? No man ever prayed heartily without learning something.] But when a faithful thinker, resolute to detach every object from personal relations and see it in the light of thought, shall, at the same time, kindle science with the fire of the holiest affections, then will God go forth anew into the creation."<sup>573</sup> So, he's a prophet of, Teilhard de Chardin, one can say, of a person who discovers science and religion are once more compatible.

Dobzhansky himself summarizes what Teilhard de Chardin tried to do in his books. Teilhard de Chardin describes the stages through which evolutionary development goes. And he uses technical terms, we'll only use a few of them. He says, "...first, there is cosmogenesis, the evolution of inanimate nature, that is, the genesis of the cosmos; second, biogenesis," which means evolution of life. And "third, noogenesis, the development of human thought." And he uses those spheres, the words, the "biosphere," which means the sphere of life; and there's a "noosphere," the sphere of thought. He says the whole of the globe now is being penetrated by a web of thought which he calls the "noosphere."

"Up to here," says Dobzhansky, "Teilhard stands firmly on a foundation of demonstrable facts. To complete his theology of nature he then embarks on prophecy based on his religious faith."<sup>574</sup> He speaks

---

<sup>573</sup> Emerson, Ralph Waldo, *The Selected Writings of Ralph Waldo Emerson*, Atkinson, Brooks, ed., *The Modern Library*, New York, Random House, 1968, 1992, p. 38.

<sup>574</sup> Emphasis in "Christian Evolutionism"

of his conviction, strictly undemonstrable to science, that the universe has a direction and that it could – indeed, if we are faithful, it should – result in some sort of irreversible perfection.”<sup>575</sup>

Dobzhansky quotes with approval this statement of Teilhard de Chardin about what is evolution: “Is evolution a theory, a system or a hypothesis? It is much more – it is a general postulate to which all theories, all hypotheses, all systems must henceforward bow and which they must satisfy in order to be thinkable and true. Evolution is a light which illuminates all facts, a trajectory which all lines of thought must follow. This is what evolution is.”<sup>576577</sup>

That is, evolution becomes in his thought – which many, many people follow, whether they’re Christian, or atheist, or whatever – it is a kind of new universal revelation for mankind. And everything, including religion, must be understood in terms of evolution.

Briefly the teaching of Teilhard de Chardin is this:

“What inspired Teilhard de Chardin, and inspires his followers today, is a certain unitary view of reality, a joining together of God and the world, of the spiritual and the secular, into a single harmonious and all-encompassing process which cannot only be grasped by the modern intellectual, but can be felt by the sensitive soul that is in close contact with the spirit of modern life; indeed, the next step of the process can be anticipated by the modern man, and that is why Teilhard de Chardin is so readily accepted as a prophet, even by people who do not believe in God: he announces in a very mystical way, the future which every thinking man today (save for conscious Orthodox Christians) hopes for.”<sup>578</sup> That is, every person who is in this tradition of rationalism,

---

<sup>575</sup> St. Vladimir’s Theologian Quarterly, Vol. 17, 1973, p. 100.

<sup>576</sup> Concern, Spring, 1973.

<sup>577</sup> Tikhon: Scott Ventureyra comments summarizing Chardin’s *Christianity and Evolution*; “In the earlier conception, God could create, (1) instantaneously, (2) isolated beings, (3) as often as he pleased. We are now beginning to see that creation can have only one object: *a universe*; that (observed *ab intra*) creation can be effected only by an *evolutive process* (of personalizing synthesis); and that it can come into action *only once*: when ‘absolute’ multiple (which is produced by antithesis to trinitarian unity) is reduced, nothing is left to be united either in God or ‘outside’ God. The recognition that ‘God cannot create except evolutively’ provides a radical solution for our reason to the problem of evil (which is a direct ‘effect’ of evolution), and at the same time explains the manifest and mysterious association of matter and spirit.”

<sup>578</sup> Rose, Fr. Seraphim and Young, Fr. Alexey, “Christian Evolutionism,” 1975, unpublished MS., p. 13A.

coming from the age of the Enlightenment, and eventually from the Middle Ages.

“There are two sides to this unitary thought of Teilhard de Chardin: the worldly side (by which he attracts and holds even total atheists),” such as Julian Huxley, “and the spiritual side (by which he attracts Christians and gives a religion to unbelievers). Teilhard de Chardin’s own words leave no doubt that first and foremost he was passionately in love with the world, with the earth.

“He says, The world, its value, its infallibility and its goodness, that when all is said and done is the first, the last and the only thing in which I believe.”<sup>579</sup>

Again he says, “Now the earth can certainly clasp me in her giant arms. She can swell me with her life, or take me back in to her dust. She can deck herself out for me with every charm, with every horror, with every mystery. She can intoxicate me with her perfume of tangibility and unity.”<sup>580</sup> He said, “Salvation was no longer to be sought in abandoning the world, but now in active participation in building it up.”<sup>581</sup>

He was against the old forms of Christian spirituality; he disdained, quote, “All those goody-goody romances about the saints and the martyrs! Whatever normal child would want to spend an eternity in such boring company?”<sup>582</sup> This is a Jesuit priest. “What we are all more or less lacking at this moment is a new definition of holiness.”<sup>583</sup> “The modern world is a world in evolution; hence, the static concepts of the

---

<sup>579</sup> de Chardin, Teilhard, *How I Believe*, p. 11; also *Christianity and Evolution*, Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Inc., New York, A Harvest Book, 1969, p. 99.

<sup>580</sup> de Chardin, *The Divine Milieu*, Harper & Row, Publishers, New York, 1960, pp. 154-155.

<sup>581</sup> Leroy, Pierre S.J., *Teilhard de Chardin: The Man*, p. 22; Cf. de Chardin, *The Divine Milieu*, Harper & Row, Publishers, New York, 1960, pp. 60-61: “Every man, in the course of his life...must build... a work, an opus, into which something enters from all the elements of the earth. He makes his own soul, throughout all his earthly day; and at the same time he collaborates in another work, in another opus, which infinitely transcends... the perspective of his individual achievement: the completing of the world. For in presenting the Christian doctrine of salvation, it must not be forgotten that the world, taken as a whole, that is to say in so far as it consists in a hierarchy of souls – which appear only successively, develop only collectively and will be completed only in union – the world, too, undergoes a sort of vast ontogenesis...in which the development of each soul...is but a diminished harmonic.”

<sup>582</sup> Quoted in Speaight, Robert, *Teilhard de Chardin: A Biography*, Collins, London, 1967, p. 27.

<sup>583</sup> de Chardin, Teilhard, *Human Energy*, Collins, London, 1969, p. 110.

spiritual life must be rethought and the classical teachings of Christ must be reinterpreted.”<sup>584</sup>

Of course, this is a reflection of the overthrowing of the old universe of Newton, and with that he wants to put Christianity into the same category, because it also is bound up with the classical, static way of thinking. Now we have a new way of thinking; and therefore, just as we have a new physics, we must also have a new Christianity.

The most powerful vision of Père Teilhard de Chardin is this idea of spiritualization of the world and worldly activity. He “was not merely in love with the world and all modern progress and scientific development; his distinguishing mark was that he gave these things a distinctly religious significance.”<sup>585</sup> As he even himself writes, “Then is it really true, Lord, by helping on the spread of science and freedom, I can increase the density of the divine atmosphere in itself as well as for me, that atmosphere in which it is always my one desire to be immersed? By laying hold of the earth I enable myself to cling closely to you...

“May the world’s energies, mastered by us bow down before us and accept the yoke of our power. “May the race of men, grown to fuller consciousness and great strength become grouped into rich and happy organisms in which life shall be put to better use and bring in a hundredfold return.”<sup>586</sup>

“I am not speaking metaphorically,” he says, “when I say that it is throughout the length and breadth and depth of the world in movement that man can attain the experience and vision of his god.”<sup>587</sup> “[T]he time is past,” he says, “in which God could simply impose Himself on us from without, as master and owner of the estate. Henceforth the world will kneel down only before the organic center of its own evolution.”<sup>588</sup> “Christianity and evolution are not two irreconcilable visions; but two perspectives destined to fit together and complement each other.”<sup>589</sup> “Evolution has come to infuse new blood, so to speak,

---

<sup>584</sup> Masterpieces of Catholic Literature, Frank Magill, ed., 1964, p. 1054.

<sup>585</sup> “Christian Evolutionism,” p. 14.

<sup>586</sup> de Chardin, *The Mystical Milieu*, Writings in Time of War, p. 138-9; also *Hymn of the Universe*, Harper & Row, New York, 1965, p. 115.

<sup>587</sup> de Chardin, *The Divine Milieu*, Wm. Collins Sons & Co., London, and Harper & Row, New York, 1960, p. 36.

<sup>588</sup> de Chardin, *Human Energy*, p. 110.

<sup>589</sup> Quoted in de Lubac, Henri, *Teilhard Explained*, Paulist Press, New York, 1968, p. 61.

into the perspectives and aspirations of Christianity.”<sup>590</sup> The earth, he says, “can cast me to my knees in expectation of what is maturing in her breast. She has become for me over and above herself, the body of him who is and of him who is coming.”<sup>591</sup>

...Teilhard de Chardin as to what was in back of him. We should keep in mind that he is not at all some kind of exception, some kind of, outside of Roman Catholic tradition. He had some extremely traditional piety. For example, he was extremely devoted to the Sacred Heart of Jesus. And he has the following mystical meditation upon it: “Two centuries ago, Oh God, your Church,” that is, Roman Catholicism, “began to feel the particular power of your heart...” Now we are becoming “aware that your main purpose in this revealing to us of your heart was to enable our love to escape from the constrictions of the too narrow, too precise, too limited image of You which we had fashioned for ourselves. What I discern in Your breast is simply a furnace of fire; and the more I fix my gaze on its ardency the more it seems to me that all around it the contours of your body melt away and become enlarged beyond all measure, till the only features I can distinguish in you are those of the face of a world which has burst into flame.”<sup>592</sup>

A person who is meditating on the “Sacred Heart” next begins to meditate upon evolution, which is a further development of the same direction.

In fact, we didn’t go into the Catholic mystics, but undoubtedly if we looked into them we could find all sorts of parallels to what is happening in this scientific, rationalistic world. They’re all preparing the same thing – chiliasm.

Evolution for Teilhard de Chardin is a process which is building up the cosmic body of Christ in which all things are united with God. His most striking idea, which is actually a kind of new development in Catholic thought, something like the development of the Sacred Heart in piety, is his idea of the “transsubstantiation of the earth,” which he wrote when he was in the Chinese desert, near the Gobi Desert, in the twenties or thirties. And he has a little article called “The Mass on the World.” He celebrates the Mass in this desert. “As our humanity assimilates the material world, and as the Host,” that is, the Roman Catholic Host, “assimilates our humanity, the Eucharistic

---

<sup>590</sup> de Chardin, Teilhard, *The Phenomenon of Man*, Harper & Row, Publishers, New York, 1959, p. 297.

<sup>591</sup> de Chardin, *The Divine Milieu*, Harper & Row, New York, 1965, p. 155.

<sup>592</sup> de Chardin, *Hymn of the Universe*, Harper & Row, New York, 1961, p. 34.

transformation goes beyond and completes the transubstantiation of the bread on the altar. Step by step, it irresistibly invades the universe.... The sacramental Species are formed by the totality of the world, and the duration of the creation is the time needed for its consecration.”<sup>593</sup> In this process of evolution, the “Body of Christ” is being formed in the world. Not the Christ of Orthodoxy, but the “universal” Christ or “Super-Christ,” as he says.

The Super-Christ is defined by Teilhard as the synthesis of Christ and the universe. This “evolving” Christ will bring about the unity of all religions. As he says, quote, “A general convergence of religions upon a universal Christ Who fundamentally satisfies them all: this seems to me the only possible conversion of the world, and the only form in which a religion of the future can be conceived.”<sup>594</sup> Thus, for Teilhard de Chardin, Christianity is not unique truth, but it is rather, as he says, “an emerging phylum of evolution,”<sup>595</sup> subject to change and transformation like everything else in the evolving world.

Even like recent popes, he does not wish to convert the world, but only to offer the papacy as the kind of mystical center of man’s religious quest, a super-denominational Delphic Oracle. As one of his admirers summarizes his view, “If Christianity...is indeed to be the religion of tomorrow, there is only one way in which it can hope to come up to the measure of today’s great humanitarian trends and assimilate them; and that is through the axis, living and organic, of its Catholicism centered on Rome.”<sup>596</sup>

At the same time that the universe is evolving into the Body of Christ, according to Teilhard de Chardin, man himself is reaching the pinnacle of his evolutionary development, which is called Super-Humanity. He says, “If...the evidence obliges our reason to accept that

---

<sup>593</sup> de Chardin, *The Divine Milieu*, Harper & Row, Publishers, New York, 1960, pp. 125-126.

<sup>594</sup> de Chardin, *Christianity and Evolution*, Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Inc., New York, A Harvest Book, 1969, p. 130.

<sup>595</sup> *Masterpieces of Catholic Literature*, p. 1021; Cf. *The Divine Milieu*, p. 15: “Christianity is nothing more than a phylum of love? within nature.” Also Cf. de Chardin, *Let Me Explain*, Harper & Row, Publishers, San Francisco, 1966, p. 104.

<sup>596</sup> Corbishley, Thomas, *The Spirituality of Teilhard de Chardin*, Paulist Press, New York, 1971, p. 100; Cf. de Chardin, *Teilhard, Christianity and Evolution*, Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Inc., A Harvest Book, New York, 1969, p. 168: “Everything goes to show that if Christianity is in truth destined to be, as it professes, and as it is conscious of being, the religion of tomorrow, it is only through the living, organic axis of its Roman Catholicism that it can hope to measure up to the great modern humanist currents and become one with them.”



something greater than the man of today is in gestation upon the earth,...in order to be able to continue to worship as before we must be able to say to ourselves, as we look at the Son of Man, (not ‘Apparuit humanitas, but) ‘Apparuit Superhumanitas,”<sup>597</sup> let Super-Humanity appear. “Humanity would reach a point of development when it would detach itself altogether from the earth and unite with Omega, a phenomenon outwardly similar to death perhaps, but in reality simple metamorphosis and accession to the supreme synthesis.”<sup>598</sup> That is, this new state which is coming. He calls it the Omega Point, the point to which all the creation now is ascending.

“One day, the Gospel tells us, the tension gradually accumulating between humanity and God will touch the limits prescribed by the possibilities of the world. And then will come the end. Then the presence of Christ, which has been silently accruing in things, will suddenly be revealed – like a flash of light from pole to pole.... The spiritual atoms of the world will be borne along by a force generated by the powers of cohesion proper to the universe itself, and will occupy, whether within Christ or without Christ (but always under the influence of Christ) the [place of] happiness or pain designated for them by the living structure of the Pleroma,”<sup>599</sup> the fullness of things. “[T]he climax of evolution is identified... with the risen Christ of the Parousia.”<sup>600</sup> All men, Teilhard believes, must desire this goal, for “it is an accumulation of desires that should cause the Pleroma to burst upon us.”<sup>601</sup> And he says, “To cooperate in total cosmic evolution is the only deliberate act that can adequately express our devotion to an evolutive and universal Christ.”<sup>602</sup> “The unique business of the world is the physical incorporation of the faithful in Christ, who is of God. This major task is pursued with the rigor and harmony of a natural process of evolution.”<sup>603</sup>

Of course, he is completely doing away with all ideas of Christianity which have been hitherto. Christianity is not an individual trying to save his soul; it is everybody in the world evolving by a natural process up to the Omega Point.

---

<sup>597</sup> de Chardin, *Teilhard, Science and Christ*, p. 164.

<sup>598</sup> Speaight, p. 266.

<sup>599</sup> de Chardin, *The Divine Milieu*, Harper & Row, Publishers, New York, 1960, pp. 150-151.

<sup>600</sup> Speaight, p. 337

<sup>601</sup> *The Divine Milieu*, p. 151.

<sup>602</sup> *Science and Christ*, p. 169.

<sup>603</sup> *La Vie Cosmique*, quoted by the ed. on p. 304 of *The Future of Man*.

“Though frightened for a moment by evolution,” he says, “the Christian now perceives that what it offers him is nothing but a magnificent means of feeling more at one with God, and of giving himself more to him. In a pluralistic and static Nature, the universal domination of Christ could, strictly speaking, still be regarded as an extrinsic and superimposed power.” But “In a spiritually converging world, this Christic energy acquires an urgency and intensity of another order altogether.”<sup>604</sup> That is, Christ is not outside saying, “Obey me, come to me;” He is set inside pushing us.

There are a few more of the views of Teilhard de Chardin we should mention. In this pamphlet – here’s a picture of him<sup>605</sup> by the way, very intense thinker – which show his views. Interestingly, he looks for a state which will take us beyond the dead end of Communism. In fact, the three – he wrote this apparently during the war – Communism, fascism and democracy, they’re all fighting each other. He says we must go beyond that. “...[T]he great affair for modern mankind,” he says, “is to break its way out by forcing some threshold of greater consciousness. Whether Christians or not, the men who are animated by this conviction form a homogeneous category—”<sup>606</sup> “The great event which we are awaiting” is this: “the discovery of a synthetic act of adoration in which are allied and mutually exalted the passionate desire to conquer the world, and the passionate desire to unite ourselves with God; the vital act, specifically new, corresponding to a new age of the Earth.”<sup>607</sup>

By the way, you can see how chiliasm’s very strong. The New Age comes out. “In Communism, at any rate in its origins, faith in a universal human organism reached a magnificent state of exaltation.”<sup>608</sup> Perhaps because this is something is heading toward the millennium. “On the other hand, in its unbalanced admiration for the tangible powers of the universe, [communism] has systematically excluded from its hopes the possibility of a spiritual metamorphosis of the universe.”<sup>609</sup> So, if you add spirituality to Communism, it’s the answer.

---

<sup>604</sup> de Chardin, *The Phenomenon of Man*, Harper & Row, Publishers, 1955, p. 297.

<sup>605</sup> *Cross Currents* cover

<sup>606</sup> de Chardin, Teilhard, *Building the Earth*, Dimension Books, Inc, Wilkes-Barre, PA, 1965, pp. 119-120.

<sup>607</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 124-125.

<sup>608</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 27.

<sup>609</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 28.

“We must unite. No more political fronts, but one great crusade for human advancement.... The democrat, the communist and the fascist must jettison the deviations and limitations of their systems and pursue to the full the positive aspirations which inspire their enthusiasm, and then, quite naturally, the new spirit will burst the exclusive bonds which still imprison it; the three currents will find themselves merging in the conception of a common task; namely, to promote the spiritual future of the world.... [T]he function of man is to build and direct the whole of the earth.”<sup>610</sup>

“... [W]e shall end by perceiving that the great object unconsciously pursued by science is nothing else than the discovery of God.”<sup>611</sup> That’s how mysticism comes right into the middle of science. And of course, what’s in science nowadays is losing all of its bearings; it’s become indeterminate, it’s a whole universe of anti-matter, which mixes them up. It all ends in mysticism.

“The only truly natural and real human unity,” he says, “is the Spirit of the Earth.... A conquering passion begins to show itself, which will sweep away or transform what has hitherto been the immaturity of the earth.... The call towards the great union whose realization is the only business now afoot in nature....”<sup>612</sup> He means the universal unity of mankind. “The Sense of Earth is the irresistible pressure which will come at the right moment to unite them” all “in a common passion.”<sup>613</sup>

“The age of nations is past. The task before us now, if we would not perish, is to shake off our ancient prejudices, and to build the earth.”<sup>614</sup>

“...[T]he great conflict from which we shall have emerged will merely have consolidated in the world the need to believe. Having reached a higher degree of self-mastery, the Spirit of Earth will experience an increasingly vital need to adore; out of universal evolution God emerges<sup>615</sup> in our consciousness as greater and more necessary than ever.”<sup>616</sup> We have an “urgent need to find a faith, a hope to give meaning and soul to the immense organism we are building.”<sup>617</sup> This, of course, means this whole modern revolution needs; its lost itself. It finds when it tries to build a new paradise, it destroys

---

<sup>610</sup>Ibid., pp. 34-35.

<sup>611</sup> Ibid., p. 38.

<sup>612</sup> Ibid., pp. 43-45.

<sup>613</sup> Ibid., p. 52.

<sup>614</sup> Ibid., p. 54.

<sup>615</sup> Emphasis in Original

<sup>616</sup> Ibid., p. 59.

<sup>617</sup> Ibid., p. 60.

everything, and what is needed is a religious meaning to it. And this he gives. So all the things in modern life are good. Only add to them this: they're all heading for some kind of spiritual kingdom, new kingdom.

"We cannot yet understand exactly where this will" all "lead us, but it would be absurd for us to doubt that it will lead us towards some end of supreme value."<sup>618</sup> In this he's really, he's a prophet, but he's not really quite sure where it's all going.

"The generating principle of our unification is not finally to be found in the single contemplation of the same truth or in the single desire awakened by something, but in the single attraction exercised by the same Someone."<sup>619</sup> That is, we're striving towards worshipping Someone.

"Therefore, in spite of all the apparent improbabilities, we are inevitably approaching a new age in which the world will cast off its chains, to give itself up at last to the power of its internal affinities."<sup>620</sup>

"[W]ith two thousand years of mystic experience behind us," of Roman Catholicism, "the contact which we can make with the personal focus of the universe has gained just as much explicit richness as the contact we can make, after two thousand years of science, with the natural spheres of the world. Regarded as a phylum of love, Christianity is so living that, at this very moment, we can see it undergoing an extraordinary mutation by elevating itself to a firmer consciousness of its universal value.

"Is there not now under way one further metamorphosis, the ultimate, ...the realization of God at the heart of the Noosphere," the mental world, "the passage of the circles," of all the spheres, "to their common Center...the apparition at last of the Theosphere?"<sup>621</sup> when man and the world become God.

This is very deep in modern man because this is what he wants. All these philosophical, chiliastic, socialistic systems all have as their end the idea that God is thrown out, Christianity is thrown out; the world is divine. The world is somehow the body of God. And man wants to be a god. And now he's lost God, God is dead. The Superman wants to be born; and he's the one who, being a scientist at the same time, is a mystic. That is, he's trying to unite, what we saw, this desire for the Grand Inquisitor, the spiritual side and the scientific side, the union of

---

<sup>618</sup> Ibid., p. 67.

<sup>619</sup> Ibid., p. 111.

<sup>620</sup> Ibid., p. 97.

<sup>621</sup> Ibid., pp. 98-99.

religion and science, and of course a new order which will be political. And he's a prophet of Antichrist.

And so with this, modern rationalism in our time comes to an end. Reason finally comes to doubt or even to deny itself. Science is upset, does not know what is, what it can know, what it cannot know; every place there is relativism. And we saw already this morning about the philosophy of the absurd. And it turns out that going through all those experiments of the apostasy, man cannot develop anything for himself. He tried everything and each time he was confident that he'd had finally found the answer, he overthrew more and more from the past. And always whatever he made was overthrown by the next generation. And now he comes finally to doubting even whether the world exists, whether he, what he is. Many people commit suicide. Many destroy. And what is left for man There's nothing left except to wait for a new revelation. And man is in such a state, he has no value system, he has no religion of his own that he cannot but accept whatever comes, as this new revelation.

Tomorrow we'll take one last look at the prospects for the new revelation. And the striving of mankind for this new revelation.

About Teilhard de Chardin, we can add that his book *The Phenomenon of Man* was published in 1965 in Moscow. The first book of a Christian thinker, except the propaganda volume of the red Dean of Canterbury [Hewlett Johnson], ever to be published in the USSR. After this publication, Fr. John Meyendorff of the American Metropolia wrote the following words:

"The Christocentric understanding of man and the world which, according to Teilhard de Chardin, are in a state of constant change and striving towards the Omega Point, that is, the highest point of being and evolution, which is identified by the author with God Himself, connects Teilhard with the profound intuition of the Orthodox Fathers of the Church."<sup>622</sup>

And Nikida Struve writes, "It should be noted that the chief characteristic of Teilhardism is not at all the acceptance of evolution – this has not been a novelty for a long time among theologians and religious philosophers. The soul of the teaching of the French thinker is a new approach to the problem of the world and creation." Teilhard de Chardin "only sets forth in contemporary language the teaching of the

---

<sup>622</sup> Messenger of the Russian Student Christian Movement, Paris, no. 95-96, 1970, p. 32.

Apostle Paul concerning nature, which is not excluded from the plan of Salvation.”<sup>623</sup>

Fr. H: Pure Orthodox scholar.

Fr. S: And he even says, concerning this “Mass on the World,” where the earth is being evolved into God, he says, “In the Mass on the World,” Teilhard's experiences “were for him something like a cosmic Liturgy, which is invisibly performed in the world. Here is the very heart of the Teilhardian proclamation which restores to us the forgotten, immemorially Christian understanding of the universe and the Divine Incarnation. Precisely it illuminated for Teilhard de Chardin the meaning of evolution as the movement of the whole cosmos toward the Kingdom of God and enabled him to overcome the negative approach to the world which is deeply rooted among Christians.”<sup>624</sup>

Fr. H: Now we see who are our enemies. Metropolia, the first enemy.

Fr. S: And there's a whole article in the Paris newspaper, the Paris, what's it called Vestnik<sup>625</sup> by a Polish Orthodox theologian [Fr. George Klinger] in which he makes Teilhard de Chardin a Father of the Church, in the tradition of the “great Orthodox Fathers” who are Montanus, Joachim of Flores, etc....

[Fr. Seraphim quotes Fr. Klinger on p. 21 of “Christian Evolutionism”:]

Fr. Teilhard speaks much on the cosmic role of Christ, of the Divine Milieu, and very little of the Church. In this case too he converges with tendencies akin to him in Orthodox theology.... In Fr. Teilhard, the Church is identified with the working of Christ in the cosmos.<sup>626</sup> According to Fr. Teilhard, through communion of the Holy Mysteries the world being sanctified becomes the Body of Christ.... These

---

<sup>623</sup> Messenger of the Russian Student Christian Movement, Paris, no. 106, 1972, pp. 110-111.

<sup>624</sup> Ibid.

<sup>625</sup> Messenger, #106, 1972, pp. 111-132.

<sup>626</sup> Messenger, #106, p. 128.

thoughts are possibly the profoundest that have been said in recent years on the question of the central sacrament of Christianity.<sup>627</sup>

---

<sup>627</sup> Messenger, #106, pp. 124-5.

## Anti-Evolution Points

1. Soul can't be evolved – (words, etc.)
2. Paradise — Doesn't fit evolution.
3. Two different kinds of world — before and after the Fall  
(2/3 Adam 900 years old)
4. One Adam vs. Many Adams.
5. Earth and grass before the sun.
6. Rib of Adam.
7. Years — 1,000's vs. Millions:  
Batrichie: real or not?
8. Scripture — Real or Allegorical

*For more on the topic of the origins of man, Fr. Seraphim Rose's book "Genesis, Creation and Early Man" or Hieromonk Damascene's "Created in Incorruption" are recommended.*



# Lecture 12

## Modern Art & Spiritualism

*Now we'll finish by giving some other symptoms of the Revolution and chiliasm which is the central theme of modern age. Some Germans have seen deeply into this.*

### Art: Decline from Humanism to Subhumanism

This writer, Hans Sedlmayr, talks about the history of modern art, especially of the last two centuries, as bringing into Western art, Western culture, entirely new phenomena, which, later on, he'll interpret as to what it means. He discusses first the fact that in the nineteenth century there was no dominant style, but new styles seemed to come every decade or two. And the lack of a style he attributes to the fact that there's no common belief underlying the society. There's no sort of one thing which art is devoted to, as it was in the Middle Ages to the cathedrals.

Then he discusses architecture. And we find that just at the time of the French Revolution, just before, there's this architect LeDoux, who comes up with the scheme for a perfectly spherical building, not only as monuments, but also as a house for a sheriff; and [giving a] completely ordinary thing like that this very extraordinary form. And later on, this dies out because it's practically not possible, and then [it] comes back again just before and during the Russian Revolution in the twentieth century. And there the idea is to overcome the sense of being bound to the earth. This also is a chiliastic idea.

Architecture also becomes unstable and no longer do you see sort of an orderly building coming up from the earth, rising up into the sky; instead it becomes sort of off-balance, as though it's going to fall over.

And finally, there is the idea of building as a machine. A house is a machine for living in, a chair is a machine for sitting in. This is in the twentieth century. And we have this quote from LeCorbusier, one of the great architects supposedly of our times, who even built a convent on these principles, a frightful looking thing. He says, "The heart of our ancient cities with their spires and cathedrals must be shattered to

pieces and replaced by skyscrapers.”<sup>628</sup> And this is that very world which we living in cities must face. And not only does revolutionary philosophy affect us, and revolutionary political systems, but also revolutionary architecture and art.

Secondly he talks about the torso, which for the first time in the middle of the nineteenth century in the sculpture of Rodin – by the way, many of whose sculptures are in San Francisco at the Legion of Honor – the idea of the torso is put into reality. Before then it was only some kind of sketch. But now the complete fragment, totally fragmentary thing, becomes a work of art. It shows that the higher purpose of art has been totally lost.

And now we come to the very striking sphere of painting. And he discusses Goya, who lived at this very time, at, contemporary with Napoleon, the late eighteenth, early nineteenth century. And about him he says this, “The more we study the art of Goya the more intense grows our conviction that,” just “like Kant in philosophy and LeDoux's architecture, he is one of the great pulverizing, destructive forces that bring a new age into being. In Goya's art certain characteristics force their way to the surface, they are symptoms of what have become the decisive trends of modern painting, but there's more to him than that. Court painter though he was, and officially working for the Court, even as LeDoux still worked for the [ancien regime ]” old regime “and dedicated his great architectural works to two monarchs, Goya nevertheless is the embodiment of the new type of the exposed artist in the sense [outlined above].” we've discussed. “The new element in his art has no connection with the public sphere, but derives from a completely subjective province of experience, from the dream.

“For the first time an artist, taking refuge neither in disguise nor pretext, gives visible form to the irrational. The two series” of his called “Suenos (Dreams) and Disparates (Madnesses) are the real keys not only to his own work to but to the most essential thing in modern art. And Disparates? are also the frescoes with which he decorated the walls of his country house, and not a few of his pictures.

“Here for the first time an artist has thought something worthy to be put on canvas, which derives directly from the depths of the dream world and the irrational. Nothing could surely be more mistaken than to suppose that these series were created to improve or instruct the world or to brand some

---

<sup>628</sup> Sedlmayr, Hans, *Art in Crisis*, Henry Regnery Co., 1958, Chicago, p. 111.

politician. The elemental power of these visions would never be understood in terms of so innocuous and idealistic an explanation....”<sup>629</sup>

“Once Hell was a clearly defined province of the world beyond. All the hideous products of the imagination by which the human mind could be tormented were banished into pictures of that place and were thus objectivized. The eruption of Hell into this world was a real and external thing, and it was thus that the painter would portray it in pictures of the tempting of the saints and of those dehumanized human beings that mocked and tormented Our Lord.

“In the other case, however, the one here before us, this world of the monstrous had become part of man’s inner world. It exists within man himself, and this brings us to a new conception of man, in so far as man himself becomes demoniac. It is not merely a matter of his outward appearance, it is that the man himself and all his world have been delivered to a demon empire. Man is on the defensive. It is Hell that has the overwhelming power and the forces that man can marshal against it are feeble and despairing.

“In the visions of [the Suenos]” his dreams and so-called proverbs, “[and Proverbios] we see every disfigurement by which man can be made hideous and every temptation by which his dignity can be assailed; we see demons in human form and beside them bewitched creatures of every kind, monstrosities, ghosts, witches, giants, beasts, lemurs and vampires. Chronos devouring his children seems like a nightmare personified as he squats, a naked giant on the edge of an oppressed world, and yet this Pandemonium of unclean spirits has a kind of raging vitality. These are no creatures of artistic fantasy – these are bloody realities that have been personally experienced.”<sup>630</sup>

“The date of the [Suenos]” “Dreams,” of which several of these are examples, this series of paintings, “is 1792, when the French Revolution had reached its climax. It was at this date also that Goya had a severe illness, the nature of which we do not know. These are the decades when many artists seem to have been possessed by demoniac powers. The sculptor Messerschmidt repeatedly portrays his own face as a hideous grimacing mask, while the ice-cold art of Füssli” in Germany “shows indications of unmistakable hallucination. This is the time when Flaxman saw the devilish face which, for some inscrutable reason, he called The Ghost of the Flea. It is also the age of Mesmer [(1733-1815)], the age when occultism was highly fashionable. It was as though a door had opened in man, a door leading down into the world of the subhuman – the

---

<sup>629</sup> Ibid., p.117.

<sup>630</sup> Ibid., p.118

world which threatens those with madness who have seen too much of it.”<sup>631</sup>

There is a second artist he talks about who is quite the contrary, but also reveals this very similar thing. A painter called Friedrich, a German painter of this time. In his painting,

“The human warmth has gone out of man’s relation to created things. The moon, itself a dead body, coldly reflecting the light of the sun that has set, veiling the world in a shroud, is the chief symbol of this new feeling that man has about them. Man feels himself abandoned by God. He is as much alone in the universe and as unrelated to it, as is the crucifix in Friedrich’s picture, standing in the vast impersonal silence of the mountains.”<sup>632</sup>

The third aspect he talks about in this age is, which is very symptomatic, is the caricature. About this he says, “The caricature was not” totally “unknown in previous epochs,...” but “It is only from the end of the eighteenth century that, starting in England, caricature became widespread and was recognizable as a clearly defined branch of art; it is not till the nineteenth century that, in the work of Daumier,” the French artist, “it could become the main field of activity for an artist of the very first rank. It is therefore not the appearance of caricature as such that constitutes the decisive historical event; but its elevation to the rank of a respected and significant art.

“After 1830 there appeared the periodical *La Caricature*, a publication with a clear political intention. A Walpurgisnacht, Paul Valéry calls it, a Pandemonium, a Satanic comedy, riotous to the point of debauchery. Now pure tomfoolery, now avid with the lust of blood. These words give us an insight into caricature’s spiritual paternity, its essence is a distortion of the human though it occasionally does more, it sometimes invests human nature with the attributes of Hell, for it is in the nature of Hell to create images, by which our human nature is insulted and belied. This distortion may be of the most varied kind. Man, for instance, can be distorted into a mask, and it is significant that Daumier’s work as a caricaturist should begin with that....

“In the main, however, there are two methods which this process of distortion employs – ...one negative, the other positive. The negative method takes from man his dignity and his form, it shows him as ugly,

---

<sup>631</sup> Ibid., p.120.

<sup>632</sup> Ibid., p.123.

misshapen, wretched and ridiculous. Man, the crown of creation, is debased and dethroned – but for all that he” still “retains his humanity.”<sup>633</sup>

But;

“The positive method of distortion makes a wholly different and subhuman creature out of man. In doing so it pulls out the same stops that have always been used by the portrayers of Hell in Western art. Man’s features become a grimace, he is turned into a monstrosity, a freak, an animal, a beast, a skeleton, an apparition, an idol, a doll, a sack or an automaton. He appears ugly, a thing to excite misgiving, an unformed creature, an object grotesque and obscene. His actions assume the character of the nonsensical, the absurd, the insincere, the comic, the brutal and the demonic.”<sup>634</sup>

“The primary impulse behind [it]” this “is doubt or despair concerning man as such, a denial of the goodness or beauty of human nature. The conventional form of caricature is merely a pretext under which this view of man can be freely unfolded.

“In Daumier’s case, [of course] – and this distinguishes him from the much more savage and cynical caricatures of the beginning of the twentieth century – his lack of confidence in man is outweighed by a recognition of his greatness. Daumier saw the grandeur of man as did scarcely any other artist of the nineteenth century. Grandeur and absurdity are merged in him and so beget the tragi-comic.

“When the beginning of the twentieth century was reached, however, that saving balance was to disappear. There was to be a new and supreme flowering of the merciless type of caricature, and one which at heart wholly despaired of man, but now the distorted picture of man that had begun with ineluctable power to take possession of the artist’s mind, was to show itself without disguise in the human types produced by the art of the day, types which strike simple folk as the most terrible of caricatures and which indeed do proceed from the same dark caverns of the soul as does the caricature itself.”<sup>635</sup>

And before this, in the eighteenth century, there is still an ordinary normal idea of man – you paint portraits, that is, somebody pays you, the nobility pay you, you paint their portraits, there’s a function for it, even though it’s not religious, it’s not particularly profound. It’s still art, has a definite place, a function, and you can recognize the human being; and its often very well done. There’s a sense of the three dimensions. This kind of art is perfect in its own way. And now all this is dissolving

---

<sup>633</sup> Ibid., pp.124-5.

<sup>634</sup> Ibid., p.126.

<sup>635</sup> Ibid., p.127.

into by these, the torso, the demonic enters in, the caricature, or else icy coldness. All these are destroying the very idea of painting as some kind of thing related to human beings.

Now he discusses briefly the art of Cézanne and modern painting. “The art of Cézanne[, then,] is a borderline affair. It is a kind of narrow ridge between impressionism and expressionism and in its unnatural stillness prepares for the eruption of the extra human. [Emphasis in original]

“What this leads to is that man – again contrary to all natural experience – is put on one level with all other things. Soon after Cézanne, Seurat was to represent man as though he were a wooden doll, a lay figure, or automaton, and still later, with Matisse, the human form was to have no more significance than a pattern on wallpaper, while with the Cubists man was to be degraded to the level of an engineering model.”<sup>636</sup>

[The painting] of Cézanne was “pure painting” – that is, first the impressionists came and they sort of dissolved things into what is for the moment – no longer any idea of the way things should be or a deeper idea behind it – just the way things appear. If horses are galloping, [it is] with, you can see, all twenty different feet instead of just four feet. And they want to present, just to capture the moment. They are influenced by photography, of this whole idea of reducing art just to this moment. And they were very charming things, some of them. But you can already see that reality is dissolving in them. And Cézanne said that he wanted to take impressionism and make it a classical art. And therefore he took it and sort of froze it, and in fact this man even says that his art is the kind of thing you see when you’re just barely opening your eyes and you’re half asleep. And this is not art, this is but a momentary thing which is very dangerous (from the person) to classical art. And here you can see his landscape which is, it is no longer sort of a landscape, you can still see its landscape, but now its very sort of strange, it’s sort of made geometrical, he said his idea was to make it into something geometrical.

[T]he Cubists simply tried to take reality and to chop it up into pieces and take the separate pieces. Instead of having a face, a whole face, you take your face and take the eye here and the cheek and the mouth and so forth and sort of glue it back together. And it looks extremely weird, as though you’re taking reality apart and then just partly putting it back together again.

---

<sup>636</sup> Ibid., p.134.

The art is divided up actually into two categories: one is the very rationalistic art, which takes piece, things apart and barely puts them together, and the other is very expressionistic: someone gets an idea and distorts like crazy in order to get across his idea. And it eventually ends up that he just stands in front of the canvas like this Jackson Pollock, in front of a twenty foot canvas. He gets inspired, throws paint, and he gets \$10,000 for it. And sometimes it's very, you can, you look, there's a definite pattern. He has some kind of inspiration, because the world has order in it. And a person has sort of, really is interested in art, maybe he can give some kind of pattern to it.

I know one religious painter, in fact I think he's a famous painter now. Went to college with him, Sombach. He said he wanted to paint religious things and how, in order to paint, he looked at the crucifix, he got the idea and then (makes smashing sound) threw things on to it. Comes out some kind of ghastly distortion of Christ on the Cross.

"It is at this point that the behavior of these allegedly pure painters borders on the pathological. They begin to suffer from that diseased condition whose essence is the mind's inability to project itself into the minds of others or into the world outside. When that condition obtains, everything seems dead and alien, men can then only see the outside of things, they are no longer conscious of human life in others.

"It is also at this point that the whole world begins to become unstable, for when things are mere phenomena that have no meaning inherent in them, then they begin to be experienced as things without stability, things fleeting, wavering, bodiless and indetermined. They are solid things no longer.<sup>637</sup> This may explain why those who wish to see a world in flux are automatically driven towards absolute painting, the painting that is innocent of any meaning whatsoever."<sup>638</sup>

"The kind of painting that began about 1900 and dominated the twenties is not only contemporary with modern technicized architecture, it is not only preceded, like the latter, by a kind of prelude around 1800, it has a deep connection with it and all over Europe and beyond was favored and propagated by exactly the same groups, by those namely that were the carriers of the spirit of 1789. The two things go together, despite the fact that the new architecture is so cold and objective and the new painting is so wild and irrational. One reflects the other, despite the fact that painting and building have been wholly separated from each other.

"For a painting no longer helps to give form and character to a particular space, as the decorative fresco of art nouveau still attempted to

---

<sup>637</sup> Usnadze

<sup>638</sup> Ibid., p.134.

do, the picture has become something belonging wholly to itself; it is no longer even a stationery patch on the wall. Rather is its character that of a book, which we open and put away again. Le Corbusier, the theorist of the new doctrines," the architect, "declared that all pictures should be kept in cupboards and that they should only be hung on the walls for a few hours, as the spirit happened to move us. He found the stable picture intolerable.

"This kind of painting was for long a subject of acute controversy – which makes a cool appraisal extremely difficult. Yet the verdict of its most adverse critics is not so damaging as a purely historical interpretation, for this last brings the questionable character of these efforts to light by the simple process of describing them.

"The inner relationship between this kind of painting and the modern building of yesterday is shown first and foremost in their common desire to dissolve the old orders. As there are now buildings in which top and bottom are no longer clearly distinguishable, so there are pictures in which top and bottom can be confused with one another. That is of course a purely external symptom, though it is an extremely eloquent one; it is moreover, something quite unprecedented in the history of painting, unprecedented even in its most daring aberrations and it is an indication of the extra-human, inhuman character of this form of art. In saying this we have really come into possession of the key to the understanding of modernist art in all its phases, for these only really differ in the means employed.

"All the new ways of looking at the world which this modernist art brings in its train are fundamentally extra-human even in an outward and superficial sense. The photography even of the twenties, for instance, is marked by a tendency to avoid the normal view of human personality, and falls back on a few mechanical formulae. It favors pictures taken from above or below and from unusual angles, lighting effects that break up the subject, and distortions as in a distorting mirror."<sup>639</sup>

Of course, in the film you see the same thing. All kinds of experiments to see how you can break up the picture or show different pictures next to each other to make some kind of striking effect.

"In doing this it merely goes along with the essentially extra-human trend in painting which gives clear expression to its spiritual attitude. Every art of course in greater or less degree takes the world that it finds and departs after its own fashion from our normal experience [thereof]" of this "in order [thus] to create it anew, but modernistic art is driven by an ungovernable urge to pass beyond the limits of the merely human.

"This explains how the normal themes of pictures of the mid-nineteenth century take on a kind of [in extremis]" extreme "aspect in

---

<sup>639</sup> Ibid., pp. 135-6.



which man appears to surrender his essential humanity and begins to see things as a man sees them in delirium or in a nightmare, under the influence of drugs, or under that of incipient madness or extreme terror, and these states on the edge of madness produce visions of the most astonishing kind. The visible world, the world of actual forms in portraiture, landscape, still-life and every other kind of painting, even in what is still alleged to be religious art, becomes alien, distorted and horrible. The nature of its ordering becomes unstable and resolves itself into fragments; form disintegrates, becomes fluid and chaotic. In some cases, man and his world are transformed by the rigidity of death; familiar things become strange and living nature becomes nature morte.” – still life.

“It has been said [of]” that “Greek art [that it] was harnessed between two mighty powers which were perpetually at its side and with which it ever had to strive throughout the whole of its existence in order to assert itself at all. These two powers were chaos and death. The new painting, in its maniac desire to shake off the fetters of the merely human, has admitted these powers into art – and with them a third, which the Greeks did not know, and which it was left to the Middle Ages to bring into our lives. That power is Hell. All this, chaos, death and Hell, are antitypes of humanity. The representation of a world which these three powers have distorted is the essential matter [in]” of “the new painting.

“The proximity of art to death and its kinship to the atmosphere of death, the atmosphere that makes all things cold and rigid, is something not without precedent in the history of art, something that is only superficially formulated by the terms Romantic And Romantic Movement. When this phase occurs an exalted nocturnal view of life, of nature and antiquity breaks out of the depths of man’s being – but through it all man’s dignity has been preserved. The proximity of death in the German romantic movement as it is experienced in [Gilly, in] Beethoven, [Kleist,] Holderlin, Novalis, Runge and Friedrich, is tragic, but it is” still “human. In his surrender in art to the now unapproachable sum of things man asserts his law against chaos which for him is a reality that he knows only too well.

“In the modern phase, however, there is combined with the consciousness of death (which in a thousand forms lurks behind all living things, makes its awful presence known in a faded flower, in an empty room – [yes,] even in a still life) there comes now a torturing doubt as to the dignity and the very nature of man. That doubt may

resolve itself into an agonized acceptance of negation or turn to a positive and cynical distortion of his being. Here the proximity of death is no longer tragic, it is something infernal, it is an affirmation of chaos, and it is all the more terrible because there is no province of life that is entirely immune to this eruption of the nether world.

“Once Hell was a clearly circumscribed domain that stood in contrast to a universe that had meaning and reason. But by an almost similar aberration as that which, in the nineteenth century, caused men to see the gleam of Heaven in the natural light which shown down upon all things, so that even a load of hay was transfigured by it,... there now erupt into reality the most terrifying visions from the antechambers of Hell and from all the circles thereof. The coming of these visions was a thing unknown to those who conjured it, but they come for all that, nothing is immune to their influence. Whatever belongs to horror and to night, to disease, death and decay, whatever is crass, obscene, and perverse, whatever is mechanical and a denial of the spirit – all these modes, motifs and aspects of the inhuman take hold of man and of his familiar world. They make of man a ruin, an automaton, a mask, a phantom. He sinks to the level of a louse, an insect. In the various movements of modern painting it is always one or the other of these various anti-human attributes that is underlined. Cubism lays the emphasis on deadness, Expressionism on boiling chaos, Surrealism on the cold demonism of the last icy regions of Hell. Even if the actual works had been lost, the very titles chosen for the pictures by the men who painted them would be sufficient to betray their spiritual home – Fear, Sick City, Dying City, Moribundus, [Mon Portrait Squelettise,]” “My portrait as a Skeleton,” “Plague Above, Plague Below, Plague Everywhere, The Joke has conquered Suffering, The Dunghill, Back Into Nothing.

“The interpretation here adopted may at first sight seem fantastic. Yet, if we look at the matter objectively, we will find that it does just what a theory ought to do, it explains a multiplicity of data which we have till now had to try and understand one at a time, it allows us to recognize all the various -isms from Futurism to Surrealism – they are all in one way or another a flight from the higher reality – as expressions (which only differ from one another on the surface) of the same basic powers, for although human nature in all its manifestations is always essentially one, its denials are many. Such a theory, in a word, allows us to see through all the differences, including the minutiae” details “of technique....”<sup>640</sup>

“...[T]here is, to speak in purely aesthetic terms, a genuine art of the horrible and the infernal, nor is this most dangerous artistic potentiality by any means to be denied. It has lurked behind Nordic art from its very beginnings, for it was Nordic art that produced the image of Christ

---

<sup>640</sup> Ibid., pp. 136-7.

disfigured in death, a thing unknown to the art of Eastern Christianity, as it also produced the picture of Hell. Bosch, Bruegel and Grünewald raised this art of the horrible to the same level that it attained in its most transfigured and exalted forms, while Goya widened its scope without for a moment deserting the province of true art at all – and indeed we find on the threshold of this new art of inward death and Hell a number of artists whose genuine artistic power cannot possibly be denied; Ensor, Munch, Kubin, Schiele are examples.”<sup>641</sup>

“Van Gogh, Munch,” and this Munch we saw this “Cry,” “Seurat,” the pointillist, “all born about 1860, are the first painters in which this new thing is apparent, though they have not yet completely surrendered to it. It is only in Ensor,” this one,<sup>642</sup> “also born in 1860, that it becomes all- pervading. For those born after 1860 it becomes their destiny.

Long before the First World War it revealed the nightmare that was riding Europe in its great cities. After the war a definite artistic decline set in, and it is now that the symptoms of extreme degeneration come into evidence. With the new objectivity? The most dead and banal form is attained. Regarded politically this newest and latest art is the ally of anarchy, psychologically it is the expression of an enormous fear and of a hatred of the human race which men turned against their own persons. The most profound explanation of the artistic abortions which now came into the world phenomena had already been given by Goya, who wrote under the title page of his collection of paintings called [Suenos, El sueño de la razon produce monstruos—]” “Dreams,” “When reason dreams, monsters are born.”<sup>643</sup>

And we see this is when reason comes to the end of the Enlightenment, there erupt into human life, irrational forces which come from the demons. ...Actually it says, “El sueño de la razon produce monstruos.”: the dream of reason produces monsters.

And finally he talks about Surrealism.

“The leading theme of Surrealism is chaos absolute, the movement seizes upon it wherever it can be found – in the dark regions of the world of dreams, in hallucination, in the deranged and irrational character of ordinary life, in that department of reality in which things that have no intrinsic connection with one another have been brought together in a fortuitous, senseless and fragmentary manner, be it in the confusion of a great city or in that of total war or in that of a junk-shop – the junk-shop’s

---

<sup>641</sup> Ibid., p.139.

<sup>642</sup> Fr. S. shows illustration., p. 141

<sup>643</sup> Ibid., p.141.

treasures seem to fill the Surrealists with quite peculiar enthusiasm. Their subject-matter may be loosely defined as the chaos of total decay, not the chaos of creative potentialities, but that of finality, not the chaos of things coming to birth, but that of things finished and done with, not the chaos of fruitful nature, but that of the unnatural – a chaos from which”, as Goethe says, “the very spirit of God Himself could hardly create a worthy world [(Goethe)].”<sup>644</sup>

“There is no gainsaying the [movement’s] power.” of this movement of Surrealism. “Of all the trends of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, apart from the new building, only two [contrived]” managed “to survive the Second World War – positive realism in painting and this same Sous-realism. There are already Surrealist cells in many countries – and not in European countries alone. Compared with it, Expressionism represents an altogether negligible minority.

“No purpose is served by belittling such a phenomenon, nor should one comfort oneself with the pretense that such things are mere extravagances, follies or forms of some strange spiritual gain. Even as early as 1860, Dostoyevsky prophetically recognized in his *People of the Abyss* that such types as those which Surrealism has brought to full flower had inevitably to come into being – given the circumstances in which our society has developed – and in the last resort Surrealism only represents the final acceleration in the downward rush of man and art, that downward rush of which Nietzsche was already aware when in 1881 he wrote [the fragment *Der tolle Mensch*<sup>645</sup>]:

“Are we not continually falling? – backwards, sideways and in all directions? *Do top and bottom still remain?* Are we not wandering through infinite nothingness? Is not the breath of empty space in our faces? Has it not grown colder?”<sup>646</sup> We see here inner connection between philosophy, politics and art....

He makes some conclusions: “...[O]ur diagnosis” of modern art is “further confirmed by the undeniable fact that modern art finds no difficulty in portrayal of the demoniac and of man himself turned [demoniac.]” into a demon, “but” it “finds insuperable difficulty in showing us man as a human being, and” it “fails utterly when it comes to the God-man and the saint.”<sup>647</sup>

---

<sup>644</sup> Ibid., p.142.

<sup>645</sup> EN: Parable of the Madman; from *The Gay Science* 1882

<sup>646</sup> Ibid., p.144. [Emphasis in original.]

<sup>647</sup> Ibid., p.157.

Modern art, “The attraction that is exercised on the artist by the extra-human and the extra-natural by darkness, unreality and the subconscious, by chaos and nothingness has about it all the qualities of an enchantment...” Paul Klee says, “Our beating heart drives ever deeper towards the ultimate ground of things.”<sup>648</sup>

“...[T]he disturbance” of modern art “extends to man in all his different aspects and relationships. There is the disturbance of man’s relation to God. In the sphere of art, this is made more palpable than anywhere else by the nature of the task that now absorbs creative energy – an energy which previously had been absorbed by the temple, the church, and the sacred image. Man’s new gods are Nature, Art, the Machine, the Universe, Chaos and Nothingness.”<sup>649</sup>

Now he talks in general about this whole movement from the time of Enlightenment to now.

“In the pantheism and deism of the eighteenth century a gulf was opened up between man and God. At first the idea of God seemed much [purer]” more pure “than that of a personal God. Our notion of God became divested of what seemed to be an anthropomorphic element, even as that element was expelled from architecture. What happened, however, was that this God of the philosophers evaporated into nature and vanished. While this was happening, something was also changing in the idea of man, which was divested of its theomorphic element even as God had been divested of the anthropomorphic. The result was very different from what had been intended, for man by this process was reduced to the level of an automaton – when he was not reduced to that” level “of a demon.”<sup>650</sup>

“...the loss of God as a reality destroys the original sense of reality as a whole.

“Having lost that sense, man turns into an anti-realist, into an idealist, a being living among phantasms....”<sup>651</sup>

... which opens up the possibility of the devils to come.

Fr. H:       Imagination.

Fr. S:       “...[I]n the radical form of Deism the divorce between God and man arises from the fact that God is relegated into the far distance, so that God and the world begin to be regarded as distinct and

---

<sup>648</sup> Ibid., p.159.

<sup>649</sup> Ibid., p.171.

<sup>650</sup> Ibid., p. 173.

<sup>651</sup> Ibid., p. 176.

wholly separated things. God is the absent God who created the great clock which is the world and duly wound it up. That clock now continues to run according to its own inner laws, which means that the world unfolds itself automatically. This excludes the possibility of any personal relation to God. All mystery is eliminated – indeed, the chief work of one of the protagonists of Deism, Toland, is called *Christianity not Mysteriorious*.” as we already saw...

“...Everywhere spiritual relations now grow cold. Their place is taken by the frigid relations of reason; doubt plays an ever more decisive part, and everything that feels the touch of his coldness is transformed: The world becomes a world machine – man [an homme-machine],”<sup>652</sup>

...a man machine. As this, who was it, Vichy, I think, wrote the book at the time of Voltaire, “[A]nd the state becomes a state machine. LeDoux,” remember the architect who made the round, the spherical buildings, he wanted to make, “who was doubtless an adept in this peculiar type of religious sentiment, asks, as he contemplates the earth: [Cette machine ronde, n’est elle pas sublime]” “This round machine, is it not sublime?”<sup>653</sup>

“Man now becomes as isolated towards his fellows as he is towards God, and as isolated towards nature. He is, as LeDoux himself says, isolated everywhere. We must thus infer that Deism stands at the origin of those varied phenomena which are characterized” above “as a tendency towards the inorganic. Its effect is everywhere deadening and it makes men strangers to God and to each other.”<sup>654</sup> So actually this art does have a religious background; it has a background first of Deism.

Next we have pantheism. And he discusses this in the poet Holderlin at this very time at the turn of the nineteenth century. “The individual figures, part human, part divine,” in whom Holderlin worships “the divine, –” namely “Christ, Heracles and Dionysius – resolve themselves into a nebulous something, that is, so to speak, pre-divine or super-divine.

“This becomes all the clearer with the course of time when Holderlin addresses his Holiest, nature. He prays to something that seems to him older and more holy than the figures of the personal Gods. The great holy thing which Holderlin recognizes in nature is nothing that is close or familiar to man; he cannot, as it were, feel his way into

---

<sup>652</sup> Ibid., p. 177.

<sup>653</sup> Ibid., p. 178.

<sup>654</sup> Ibid., p. 178.

it, he cannot discover himself in it, nor, as the past age was able to do, can he look on nature as a kinswoman and a friend.

“The great holy thing is none of these things, rather it is something that wholly lacks a human character, or even an organic character, a thing that has neither personality nor destiny. It is something that is the very opposite to the nature of man, it is the universal thing, a thing that cannot actually be felt and is infinite. Holderlin likes best to designate it as ‘*stille*’ (quietness or silence), thus contrasting it with the busy activities of men. In order to approach it, man must first destroy himself, he must go to his death.”<sup>655</sup>

And finally he gives a sort of summation of all these destructive, dark influences as they have been in the history of Western art. And although he himself was a lover of art before the Revolution, that is, up to the eighteenth century, in this little history of his, he shows very well that these destructive influences go right back precisely to the moment where we discussed the beginning of the apostasy, that is, the twelfth century.

The first outburst of this demonic elements, he says, occurs in the late Romanesque. “It is in this phase that the sacred world is suddenly endowed to a quite terrifying degree with a demoniac character. Thus in the doorways” of various cathedrals, “the sacred figures have the appearances of corpses and of ghosts, a thing that can in no wise be explained by a certain remoteness from humanity that marks the art of the high Middle Ages. Christ sometimes resembles an Asiatic idol or an Asiatic despot. The Apocalyptic beasts and the angels are all distorted by this demoniac quality. This curious phenomenon cannot be explained in terms of the dual intention that is discernable in much medieval art, the intention to administer a certain awful shock to the beholder and at the same time, by means of the sheer absurdity of the visible symbols [it created], to spur his mind towards purely spiritual contemplation; for directly beside the sacred figures, and in the very midst of them, and indeed scarcely distinguishable from them at all, are images of demons and of demoniac beasts and chimaeras that even invade the interior of the church.

“At the same time the figures themselves begin to acquire a most remarkable and unprecedented quality of instability. Those on the great arch above the door” of the Cathedral “at Vezelay seem positively to be tottering, and look as though they might crash down at any moment

---

<sup>655</sup> Ibid., p. 179.

from the great curve on which they have so precarious a footing. This is the period when figures begin to be tangentially affixed to the frames of the great doors, and it is to this period that belongs the great Wheel of Fortune that lifts a man up and [ineluctably] casts him down, and it is this period also that for the very first time stands architectural forms upon their heads.

“All this is the visible expression of [that volubilitas rerum,] that instability of human affairs, that people have suddenly begun to feel with a peculiar and painful intensity. It is in fact the visible symbol for the dominant mood, the dominant feeling about life and the world.

“In religion the dominant emotion is fear, the principal theme is the Day of Judgment, expressed to the uttermost potential of all the terror that it can inspire. In the crypt-like gloom of the church we can with our mind’s eye see the faithful standing in fear and trembling before God. Never has the [mysterium tremendum]” tremendous mystery “attained such force over men’s minds.”<sup>656</sup>

So, already for some reason art begins to become unstable. Although the main Gothic tradition goes on with its great cathedrals, still he senses here some kind of instability. Why? Because they, at that time they began to realize that they had lost Orthodoxy. And the artist is more sensitive than other people. This begins to come out in him. And when Orthodoxy is lost, the demons begin to come in. And therefore the demons directly inspire the artists.

Then there’s a second period, which is that of Hieronymus Bosch. “In the Romanesque” period “the demoniac world had really not yet achieved a separate life of its own. It is only in the Gothic that light and darkness are divided and the cathedral indirectly brings into being” its “polar opposite to the Heavenly Kingdom, which is shown forth in itself, a Kingdom of Hell,” even “though this [last] remains [essentially]” still “a subordinate thing. [Then]” Thus “as the representational art of the late Middle Ages develops, we begin to get painted representations of Hell. The culminating point of this development is to be found in Hieronymus Bosch who flourished [between 1480 and 1516.]” around 1500.

“Bosch, a contemporary [and actual co-eval] of Leonardo da Vinci, created the world of Hell as a kind of chaotic counterpart to the new cosmic art of the High Renaissance,” which we already saw, this idealistic, chiliastic painting, “and what is entirely new about Bosch’s infernal world is that it has its own creative principles, its own chaotic

---

<sup>656</sup> Ibid., pp.184-5.



structure, its own formal laws, and it is really these that make it into a true counterworld to the worlds of Heaven and earth. It is only since Bosch that we have anything like a picture of Hell made visible.

“There is definite novelty in the very shapes of these creatures from Hell. They are not fallen children of men, who by a simple process of metamorphosis have been turned into beasts of the Devil, but” they are “wholly independent and as yet unknown forms of life, born of the marriage of every conceivable kind of creature, fish, beast, bird, witch and mandrake, the products of a kind of ungoverned cosmic lewdness and debauchery, in which even lifeless things can mingle with the living. All this was something that lay wholly outside the horizons of antiquity.

“New also is the actual scenery of Hell, and we see aspects of the face of this earth which had never before been put on canvas. We see here dark gulfs, empty stretches of earth and sea that seem to tell us how utterly God has forsaken them, the desolation of empty cities, strange hideous places whose vegetation are gallows-trees and wheels of torture, slime and morass. Here are neither sun nor moon, such light as there is comes from vast conflagrations or from the iridescence of strange phosphorescent shapes. Hell can show us the work of human hands, but it is distorted, arid in decay. Above all we see ruins, we see them continually – and in Hell there are also arsenals, a fighting equipment of strange machines, pieces of apparatus that are often meaningless, though sometimes they have a meaning, being instruments of torture, while through the air sail airships, demon manned and demon piloted.”<sup>657</sup>

“So long, however, as the world of Christian belief remained an effective reality” – and at this time it was still real, that is, Catholicism was still real, and even Protestantism had something left of Christianity – “So long...as the world of Christian belief remained an effective reality, the outlook behind such painting must be interpreted as a vision of temptation. The picturing of Hell therefore remained to some extent hemmed in by Christian orthodoxy [stet] and it was thus only to be expected that it should attain its full freedom and develop its most extreme forms when art has finally left the Christian world behind it. It is, therefore, wholly logical that Hieronymus Bosch should have been rediscovered in the twentieth century and should have become one of the original parents of Surrealism.”<sup>658</sup>

“In Bruegel” – and we showed you – “In Bruegel’s work there appears another dominant theme of modern art, the depreciation of man. Man is looked at from the outside; as something distasteful and strange,

---

<sup>657</sup> Ibid., p.186.

<sup>658</sup> Ibid., p.188.

much as we might regard creatures of another planet. Seen thus men appear base, unlovely and perverse, clumsy, inane and absurd – creatures in fact possessing every quality capable of exciting contempt, and this is true not only of the peasant, of whom the late Middle Ages tended rather to take this view, but of man in general. In the art of Bruegel several undercurrents of medieval art unite to form a new picture of man, one which represents him as the very antithesis and negation of holiness, greatness, nobility and wisdom.

“The world of man, the world in which he must act and live, is a world in which all is done wrong, a world of chaos and wholly without meaning. Lurking about him everywhere are the creatures of Hell. Death and madness lie in wait all around him. It is moreover a matter worthy of especial note that Bruegel pays such particular attention to the things which are the special preoccupation of modern psychology and the modern mind in general, for his interest is drawn in a remarkable manner, not towards the peasant alone (the analogy here is with our contemporary concern with the primitive), but” also “to children, halfwits, cripples, epileptics, to the victims of blindness and intoxication, to the mass and to apes. Even quite ordinary things have a spell cast over them that make them look strange to the point of being unintelligible – much as Bruegel’s Beekeepers look like walking tree-trunks – so that a game played by children looks like some weird new manifestation of lunacy.”<sup>659</sup>

“This brief glance at the past makes it clear that what was to become a general disease in the nineteenth century was coming gradually into being right throughout the development of the West and at various times overtly showed certain of its symptoms.”<sup>660</sup>

And he concludes his book by saying, “It may be a somewhat questionable proceeding to designate one’s own age as the turning-point in the history of [the world]” mankind, “nevertheless it is difficult to shake off the feeling that since 1900 a kind of limit has been reached and that we are faced by something wholly without precedent.” In the world’s history. “Beyond this limit it is difficult to imagine anything except one of two things – total catastrophe or the beginnings of regeneration.”<sup>661</sup> Of course, what’s coming seems to be a kind of combination of the two.

---

<sup>659</sup> Ibid., p.192.

<sup>660</sup> Ibid., p.194.

<sup>661</sup> Ibid., p. 207.

# Music

About music, we won't go in; it's too long a topic, but it's enough to mention one great historian of Western music, Alfred Frankenstein, who died a few, some years ago. And he's an expert in the Baroque period, the classical period, the Romantic period, the Medieval music. He's written I believe a long textbook of Western music. And when he comes to the twentieth century he says, "With this I end my history of music."<sup>662</sup> Because after the beginning of the twentieth century there's no longer music in the West. There is something which is entirely on new principles, which cannot be understood by the history of Western music. And therefore he's very much criticized for the fact that he feels modern music is totally outside any kind of tradition. Of course it is. Because we have at this time music, the Romantics who already said as much as they could say. You get in Scriabin a terrible kind of ecstatic music which is some kind of screeching, and beyond that...

Fr. H:       What did he write...?

Fr. S:       He wrote a sort of Black Mass actually.

Fr. S:       Musical Black Mass?

Fr. S:       And beyond this you can't go in the regular, the old idioms of European music. And so they begin these frightful experiments: the twelve tone system, Schoenberg and his frightful operas, he wrote *Verklarte Nacht* when the people are screeching at each other for hours on end; and it's obviously meant to put you in a crazy house. But it very sort of expresses the period, expressionistic, you know, these German Expressionists with their screaming people and frightful horrors – expresses the same kind of feelings. And from that time on, there's all these experiments until you get now that there's concertos for tape, three tape recorders, played simultaneously forwards and backwards at five different speeds, and all these ideas that hurly-churly chant sounds will produce some kind of new wonder.

There's even a textbook of music. It's called, I think it's called *Music Since Debussy* in which he says that the age right now produces no music which is worth anything because it's all experiment. But he said, "Out of all this experiment, perhaps there will come a new Golden

---

<sup>662</sup> Possibly *Since Debussy: A View of Contemporary Music*.

Age, like the age of Bach and Handel”<sup>663</sup> – once all these experiments have been finished. And probably – it’s something to say, something true there because mankind has gotten used to all these things; and therefore it’s possible to reconstruct, if a person is a genius, to take all these elements of disorder and come up with some kind of a new harmony. And there’s already a new harmony which will express the feelings of the people, and will be for Antichrist. And in fact, Thomas Mann has already written a novel about that.

---

<sup>663</sup> Source for this?

## Thomas Mann

Well, we'll say one word about Thomas Mann. He's probably the only great novelist the twentieth century produced. M-A-N-N. He died in 1955 at the age of 80. He was an exile from Germany during the reign of Hitler. Politically he's very boring – he's a democrat – and looks for the reconstruction of humanity after totalitarianism has passed. But in his art he's very sensitive, more like a German, he goes very deep. [Editing in sections from Nietzsche 1980 Lecture] You may recall in one of his books, he talks about young students talking together all night long, they're talking [about] what is reality, what is truth, is there life after death? And in the middle of it they say, "You know, I bet we Germans are the only people in the world except for the Russians who do this kind of thing, just talking all night about what's real, and what isn't real. He recognizes Russians are the ones who expert...

And he wrote several novels which reflect this – from the point of view of, well, an artist looking at the whole of society - - reflect what is going on. He's not a nihilist; he's a humanist who has a very positive outlook on life. But he writes about some of these movements, and sometimes very, very profoundly.

He wrote a book called *The Magic Mountain*, [one] of his best books, which is a description of life in a tuberculosis asylum, clinic in the mountains of Switzerland. And this is supposed to be an allegory of modern European history at the end of the first World War – either the end or beginning – anyway, just in the dawn of our own day. And this is a peculiar kind of place where everybody has all kinds of strange philosophies, which means all the different conflicting philosophies of Europe. And everybody who comes there gets sick, because Europe is sick. It's sort of a parable of everybody who comes in contact with Western civilization absorbs this sickness. You can't escape it. And the place where they're supposed to be curing, that is, Europe, has the ability, the idea that "We are the ones who know everything. We're going to cure you with our Enlightenment." But you go there; you get in mixed up with Europe, and you get sick yourself. No matter how you try, you don't get cured. Nobody goes back alive. They're sort of all killed off by this thing. In fact you cannot go to this, you cannot visit your relatives in this place without getting sick and you have to stay there. [You're] stuck. In other words, they [have] no other philosophy of life to overcome this sickness of Europe.

In fact there's one very interesting scene where they go to the movies. There's a movie. And Thomas Mann gives his perceptions about the film, that the film is a very abnormal thing, a horrible thing because what is sacred to man, his own image, is captured, put independently on a screen and then acts in spite of you and you're hopeless, you're helpless. And the image goes on acting from then on. It's as though a part of your soul has been taken away from you. And he can sit back and watch himself as though he's just kind of a separate being. He's gives his sort of feelings from natural human sense, because he was there at the beginning of motion pictures, 1920's. In Germany was the great flowering of movies. He had a frightful feeling about movie, that it's something demonic. And he says the whole thing is very abnormal, makes him feel very uneasy to see these ghost-like figures on the screen, which have no reality in themselves, only celluloid, some kind of a flickering picture, something that isn't there.

And by the way I had a German professor who the same feeling about telephones. He said, "I can't stand telephones. Whenever I hear it ring and I pick it up, I get terribly afraid. I hear a voice of somebody a thousand miles away and I feel it's demons." It's very interesting how these deep thinkers have feelings like that.

And he [Thomas Mann] then goes into things like séances; [he] deliberately went to a séance to experiment to see if anything happens. And it did. The table moved away from the air or something kind of thing. He was persuaded there's some kind of power there. So he has that also as part of this Magic Mountain. At the end, he has this one very striking scene where someone says, "Let's have a séance, we have somebody here who can conjur spirits." And everybody says, "Oh, wonderful!" And most people are sort of joking about it, "Well, you can believe in all kinds of things, why don't we believe in that Let's try it out." And they all get together, and all of a sudden a spirit begins to grip them, and they see before their eyes some kind of a shape begin to form, to materialize. And when they look, it is the ghost of somebody they all know, a spectre, somebody's father or something all of a sudden appears in front of them all; and they are so frightened by this, that it produces a terrible effect upon them. And this is sort of stuck in there with no sort of statement why, but we know that Thomas Mann in his non-fiction writings was very interested in spiritualism and went to séances and tested them out and took notes about them, and came away convinced that there is some power at work which is producing these

various phenomena. And to a Europe which has no philosophy of its own, and is sick, this begins to become very attractive.

And one of his last novels is called *Doctor Faustus*, which is a description of a musical genius in the modern idiom, as described by an ordinary, young, middle-class student who went to school with this genius. Usually he tells his stories through the third person who's a typical German middle-class person with average values, German values: cleanliness and precision and study, thrift and all these wonderful things the Germans are noted for. And he has such a way of presenting his novels when he talks about these – either spiritualism or anything which is very demonic or extraordinary – he has a way of describing it through the eyes of somebody who is completely normal, and completely matter-of-fact so that you're all the more horrified by what comes out. And just like Dostoyevsky talked about Ivan Karamazov in his vision of the devil as though it's a hallucination<sup>664</sup>, but still he's getting across a very important point. And so you have this completely normal man [whose] fellow student in college is a student in music. So he describes the career of this musician, this composer, as though he's an ordinary man, very talented, but he seems to have some kind of strange things about him, as though he wants something, that he can't be satisfied with ordinary things. He wants more. And he keeps wondering about this. And he notices after he gets out he wants to become a great composer. And he produces tremendous, has some kind of tremendous fits of energy and inspiration, and he comes up with some fantastic new things. He begins composing all kinds of weird things and making up new atonal systems, and fifteen notes instead of eight and all kinds of fantastic new things just because he's driven by some kind of a thing. And finally he produces his masterpiece which is *The Apocalypse*, for I think a thousand voices, fifteen hundred instruments, the most fantastic work of music ever composed – and they actually perform it someplace with a thousand voices. It shows how the devil sort of gave him this tremendous talent to persuade audiences with this gift of his, on the condition that he sell his soul. And he [the narrator] wonders how he got the inspiration for that, and he manages somehow to observe him at work. And then he discovers that there's someone who comes to pay him a visit, that he's speaking to somebody who isn't there. And during these moments of speaking to somebody who isn't there, he gets tremendous inspirations;

---

<sup>664</sup> See Dostoyevsky, *The Brothers Karamazov*, "The Devil, Ivan's Nightmare" pp. 673-689.

[there] begins to open up to him the possibility for going deeper into music and making some kind of musical composition that no one has ever done before. He'll be the greatest composer there ever was. It turns out that it's the devil. He finally sells his soul to this devil in order to gain this ultimate thrill in composing music. And then he gives this to the people and the people say, "This is wonderful; this is the great pinnacle of modern music. Finally modern music has achieved its masterpiece." And it's obvious that the man sold his soul to the devil, like Doctor Faustus. He doesn't say this in so many words, but what he describes is exactly the same thing: the man, for the sake of earthly creation, he has given away his soul. And the demons invade.

So that's another writer who taught, although he's not as profound as Dostoyevsky, but nevertheless he's very aware of a lot of these currents of modern thought.

So we have seen in this book [*Art in Crisis*] how this whole phenomenon we've been studying – the revolutionary world-view of modern man, which means not just the political revolution, the whole new anti-Christian revolution – is something which bursts out not just in the political revolution, and not just in somebody's philosophy, but bursts out quite independently in art and poetry and many other spheres. And it bursts out in art before the Revolution. That is, these schemes for the spheres we saw, and Goya's things, well, Goya's first demonic ones before the Revolution. So, it is not simply being inspired by the political event; it is rather an example of the same force which produced that event is producing also the art. That is, there are inspirations which come undoubtedly from demons. And although we do not see exactly how the demons inspire, it's obvious that this is the work of demons inspiring these artists. And these are not just some kind of crazy people, by the way. It would be very nice if we could say these are crazy people and not typical at all of ordinary people who we see in the supermarket, and therefore we can forget them.

That's the same kind of psychology which tells you that, "Well, it's all right for Russians or the Vietnamese. They want that kind of government; let them have it, and we'll just go on." In fact Solzhenitsyn said yesterday [July 1975], he was in Washington and spoke to a group of senators and congressmen, about a hundred of them, and at the end of this he said, "Here in the vast spaces of this continent, it is difficult to believe what is happening in the world. But, gentlemen, there is no longer to be any safe life. Neither we nor you will have a safe life. May it happen that God will grant you that when you come to



your crisis, you will have such leaders as you had at the beginning of the Revolution, who still believed in human nature and did not mock the idea of good and evil.”<sup>665</sup>

Unfortunately it so happens that this age of humanism which produced even America, the founding fathers, and the art of that century is something which is almost like a utopia now.

We can't go back to it. That was the age half-way between the old Orthodox age and the new age of chaos and revolution. And for a moment there was some kind of harmony and peace, but the process that had been started was already carrying mankind further. And it happens that this process is expressed most clearly in the great revolutionaries and the radical philosophers, and these wild artists.

And so actually we see in them how the demonic bursts into the world. But if that demonic did not already have control over all the people living in the world, these painters would be forgotten. They would not be known; they would not be held up as the examples of great painters. Their revolutions would die out; there would be nobody to follow them. The fact that the majority of people are of the same mentality, are prepared for that which these prophets of the new times, they see. That is why we have such a disordered age. And in fact we can say even the ordinary people who go to the supermarkets and are satisfied with themselves are more, they're worse off than these other ones because the other ones are the ones who are tortured so often they are rebelling against this everyday supermarket mentality of people who are “Oh, everything's all right. Things are going just fine. And the Gulag – it doesn't touch me.” Those kind of people drive to fury these people who are really deep, they want something, they want God. And God has been cut off. And so they go to the devil. But the devil has the grip over the whole world. And that's why they stand out.

---

<sup>665</sup> Source for this?

## Spiritualism

So that brings us to our next subject – Spiritualism and a few more aspects of the disjointed world of our times. This phenomenon of spiritualism [is] very symptomatic in modern times, in the last two centuries. This takes us to the middle of the nineteenth century, the very time when this art is bursting out with its demonic apparitions. And the year is 1848, which is exactly the year of the great revolutions in Europe. As it were, this same demonic power bursts out in one form in the revolutions, in another form all of a sudden begins to make [knocks three times] some kind ofappings, which opens up the possibility to communicate with another world.

These began in Hydesville, New York, near Rochester. And there were two sisters, Falk sisters, who were able to interpret these knockings. And later on, they went through all kinds of, they were accused, accusations of fraud and deception; and one of the sisters confessed that she had done the knocking with her knuckles or something. Later she repented that she'd confessed. And one of them became a Catholic nun, and.... Anyway, it doesn't make any difference what happened to them. The fact is that these knockings begin to break out, and then the mediums began to take over. And within a very short time, the mediums were going to England. England and America are the two basic centers of spiritualism. They began to form their own church, and to this day there are spiritualist temples all over America and England and a few outside.

This is another case where this practical everyday Anglo-Saxon mentality, the same mentality also which is behind the dreams of socialism, like Owen, has a very powerful affinity with this mystical side, with spiritualism. Not with true mysticism, not with any kind of true contact with God, but rather with something bound up with an externalization of some kind of mysticism. Because spiritualism is a contact with some other world which does not depend upon how much one has transformed oneself. It only depends upon how much you have educated your mediumistic faculties. Of course, it is required before you believe in spiritualism that you have totally disbelieved in Christianity, have come to believe a very vague kind of Christianity. You no longer know the difference between divine phenomena and demonic phenomena, and you are prepared to accept anything which proves the existence of something supernatural or preternatural as coming from the spirit – the same mentality as in back of the Pentecostal movement which develops later in the century.

There are many phenomena of this movement. There are tappings; there are sometimes voices. There are apparitions wherein a whole ghost supposedly can be manifested. There are partial manifestations such as a hand will suddenly appear. And Thomas Mann saw a hand being materialized. There is something called “automatic writing.” In fact, I saw one. I once bought a book on spiritualism, and inside there was a little, a sheet of paper with the tiniest, tiniest handwriting. It was impossible for a human hand to write – tiny, tiny – several pages on one page, and it said and began – and very smooth – it said, “This message is not written by a human hand.” And it traces out the message.

And we know this is possible because Madame Blavatsky, the founder of Theosophy, was herself an expert at things like materializing dishes. And they would give her – they would put a piece of paper and lock it inside of some kind of a dish, or some kind of a cabinet. And she would concentrate for ten minutes, and then open the cabinet, and there would be something written on the piece of paper which she had, her demons had come to her help and written it down. Sometimes they can even see a pen come out of nowhere and begin writing with no hand in back of it.

All these are the standard tricks of the devils because they are able to do things like materialize objects and strike people and lift tables. There’s a whole technique which is already in our article on the charismatic movement about how they do this. They get together and get some kind of psychic energy by holding hands. And this involves the sphere of the unconscious, the psyche of man which is a very deep sphere which we don’t know too much about. And there’s a great deal of energy there which can be channeled. And, of course, the main ingredient of these phenomena are the demons themselves who come to the aid of the medium. And a person who is well trained in mediumism, has a certain faculty for it, is able to conjur up demons under the state of being in a deep trance.

Of course, the reason why this is condemned by God is because this is a very dangerous sphere of spiritual realities which are too much for us. When these realities come to the saints, that is, the demons attack the saints, frightful battles go on. But now mankind has become civilized and the demons appear under very civilized guises. And they come up with a philosophy which is so stupid and so contradictory and so much in harmony with what Emerson or somebody else is saying. As soon as Communism comes into fashion, then the Theosophists start talking like Communists, and so forth – just picking up whatever is in

the air. And the spirits give you exactly what any old preacher can give you in a spiritualist temple without any spirits, or in any Protestant church for that matter.

There's one thing which the spiritualists lay great emphasis upon as a proof of the existence of the spirits. That is the scientifically demonstrable fact that whenever the spirits come, the temperature in the room drops several degrees. And they've conducted experiments with thermometers to show that, I don't know, three or five degrees, something like that, the temperature drops in the room when the spirits come. Of course, for us that's conclusive proof that these are devils because the devils are cold, and it comes out even physically. And experiencing a chill in the presence of some kind of demonic phenomenon is not just the imagination.

These new powers are those who are now to give mankind a new religion. And no longer is it to be a religion in which man freely gives his soul to God in obedience. Now man is going to be compelled to believe because there are outward proofs which show that there are spirits. Western philosophy had come to the point where no longer did we believe in God or any kind of otherworldly beings. And now as though from underneath the spiritual reality comes up. This makes it possible...<sup>666</sup>

---

<sup>666</sup> Tape break

## Leads to “Scientific” Approach to Religion

– Steiner, Society for Ps. R., extra-sensory phenomena – especially parapsychology well developed in Russian and other Communist countries. Affinity of atheistic-socialism with occultism-spiritualism. Development of higher senses, higher science – science must end in spiritualism<sup>667</sup>

...Saint-Simon and Teilhard de Chardin and others who dreamed about the reconciliation of science and religion. And from this time on there begin to be formed societies for the scientific study of spiritual phenomena. In England there was the Society for Psychical Research, where Sir Arthur Conan Doyle was a leading representative. And here the distinguished agnostics of Victorian England found their way back to spirituality. And they wrote books about it which are so naive and fantastic, Sir Arthur Conan Doyle and his Sherlock Holmes, detective mentality, pure rationalism is attracted by spiritualism – same thing, the practical mind because the upper reality is closed off. As soon as some kind of spiritual reality enters the realm of phenomena, they fall for it. And they have no standard with which to judge any more. This...

Fr. H: Is that the book?...

Fr. S: The “*Christianity Without Mystery*” has now giving way to actually non-Christianity with mystery.

In our own times we have the various societies for studying extra-sensory phenomena. “Parapsychology” it’s called, at the laboratory at Duke University,<sup>668</sup> [North Carolina].<sup>669</sup> And this science, incidentally, is extremely well developed in the Soviet Union and also other places like Hungary. Because the Soviets are very realistic and open to anything which can be powerful. And since they have found that there is something to extra-sensory perception, there are some kind of

---

<sup>667</sup> Steiner 54

<sup>668</sup> Tikhon: This Laboratory was recently reopened as the non-profit Rhine Research Center, which is named after the founder of the original Parapsychology Laboratory of Duke University, J.B. Rhine. It is no longer affiliated with Duke University.

<sup>669</sup> EN: The text has been corrected to show the real location of Duke University. The transcript mistakenly name Virginia as the state wherein Duke University resides. The University of Virginia also has a parapsychological unit as part of its medical school.

faculties in the human being which seem to be above our ordinary five senses, therefore they're developing them to see if they can't make this into some kind of a weapon for warfare or for making Communism more secure or just for advancing science. There was even an example – unfortunately I've lost the newspaper clipping – but at the Congress of the Communist party in 1955 or 6, there was a woman who got up in Moscow and gave her testimony of how Lenin had appeared to her, and told what was to be voted on at the next assembly, the next Communist Party meeting. And it was recorded and simply accepted.

In this period also we have another interesting example of someone, an English woman who is, has both the socialist and occultist mentality, Miss Annie Besant, who was a woman's rights crusader and socialist who was converted by Madame Blavatsky and became president of the Theosophical Society and ended up by educating the "messiah." That is, the young Indian boy, Krishnamurti, whom by the time he was four years old she proclaimed was going to be the future messiah. Her name is Annie Besant, B-E-S-A-N-T. And he finally grew up and renounced the messiahship, and went around teaching himself. And to this day he teaches, he goes to north of Santa Barbara, there's a camp, Ohai. In Holland there was a place, some kind of summer camp where he goes and gives lectures and he writes books, says he's not the messiah, but he's giving the gospel to the new age. I think he's still alive. Krishnamurti's his name.

This is the age also of the founding of the Theosophical Society by Madame Blavatsky, the Russian medium, who claimed from the very day of her baptism she was the sworn enemy of kings and the church because when she was baptized the priest almost burned to death when a candle fell over and burned his robes up. From her very childhood she had manifested these psychic talents of manifesting objects and so forth.

Madame Blavatsky wrote tremendous big volumes: *Isis Unveiled*. She taught the, [or] she thought she was, teaching Eastern wisdom which she got from the masters in Tibet. And there are very tricky means by which she got revelations: a letter would suddenly be fluttering down into the room. She would read it and there was the latest revelation from the Mahatmas in India.

Fr. H: "Didn't Christian Science come from the same thing?"

Fr. S:       And later on when India, when Tibet was already more explored, the Mahatmas moved into outer space. And now they're on some planet.

Student:     She used to be a circus performer...

Fr. S:       She was definite, she was a medium; she was definitely a well-developed medium. But there were so many of these phenomena that we can't discuss them.

There's one of these people involved with these occult movements who is perhaps more interesting than the others. His name is Rudolf Steiner. He was also a Theosophist and finally kicked out of the Theosophical Society because he was a little too smart. And so he founded his own society called Anthroposophy, wisdom of man. This is his picture. He is rather smarter than most occultists who are usually extremely naive in that most theosophists and spiritualists usually are extremely shallow, simply open to whatever the spirits tell them. He was a man who was more a philosopher. He was a great student of Goethe and found that Goethe was the great mystic of our times who was going to unite religion and science.

And he developed a kind of spiritualism which he thought was scientific; that is, he was looking at the whole of reality, both the outward reality which science examines and the inward reality which he got in visions. He tried to make some kind of synthesis between them. And his writings are still quite seriously studied by all kinds of serious people. He has founded some schools which are still in existence, which teach things like Eurhythmy which is how to move your body and dance in order to somehow acquire spirituality, which seems to give some kind of results. And he has an interesting thing to say about what he was striving for:

"The scientist contemplates matter as complete in itself without being aware that he is in the presence of spirit reality manifesting itself in material form. He does not know that spirit metamorphoses itself into matter in order to attain to ways of working which are possible only in this metamorphosis. For example, spirit expresses itself through a material brain in order that man may by that process of conceptual knowledge attain to free self-consciousness. By means of the brain,

man derives spirit out of matter, but the instrument he uses is itself the creation of spirit.”<sup>670</sup>

And in our days when science has come to a dead end and doesn't see what matter is, finds that it cannot define matter by itself, he wants to come to the rescue and give them a science which is based upon something “higher,” that is, on spiritual reality, which, he says is verifiable in experience. In fact, the cry of all the Theosophists and spiritualists is “Try it yourself.” You can be convinced by your own experience, if you follow the rules for getting in contact with spirits.

Of course, which is against the freedom of Christianity which is the fact that you have faith in God and give up your, give yourself to God Who is above you out of free choice, and not because you've been, it's been proved to you, because you are in contact with some kind of reality which forces itself upon you.

Of course all this spiritualistic phenomena results, just like modern art – with which it is, has much in common, in fact many of these artists have very occult ideas – result in the same kind of a disjointed, fragmentary world where beings all of a sudden pop out of some kind of space, a hand appears all of a sudden; you can materialize objects, you can materialize some kind of ghosts. And this is very much, it's very strange to the normal enlightened, modern attitude of material reality.

I didn't mention here all these cults and so forth which came as a result of this idea of Kant, that the self, the mind is the center of the universe. But there are a lot of them: from Mormonism, the idea that you can now trust your revelations that come to you. And the nineteenth century is full of people who trusted whatever kind of impressions came to them and made a new religion, like Mary Baker Eddy made the Christian Science, and Ellen Wise made the Seventh Day Adventists. William Miller also a Seventh Day Adventist and went out and started the Jehovah's Witnesses – all of them based sort on the fact that they themselves are like a god who has a new revelation. And everybody follows them.<sup>671</sup>

But here's one that happened to be in a magazine here, and one of these cults which calls itself Hindu, actually its Hindu for an American scene. It's the magazine of the Hari-Krishna Movement which is in full-color, very impressive. It's called *Back to Godhead*. 'Course, we see here where the self-centered Western philosophy hooks up with

---

<sup>670</sup> Source for this?

<sup>671</sup> From 1980 Nietzsche lecture, could be dated Winter 1981-82



Hinduism. This movement began in the nineteenth century. Because in Hinduism, you become god. See, you can meditate, chant, and you get into this state here God enters into you, and therefore you literally become a god; your Self becomes a god.<sup>672</sup>

It fits very nicely, Hinduism is just right with the whole philosophy of evolution, with Nietzsche and all the rest. But it's the combination of [Hinduism and these other philosophies]. You can see that when it's in India, I don't know, it's just plain paganism; but when it's on American soil, it fits in with our self-centered, pampered mentality. It's very sensuous. Here you see these young people, miss America or American boys who shave their heads, put on these robes and look like representatives of the new religion. And they're all happy and joyous and chanting. And here's their god, who's very inspiring, isn't he? The great prophet. He died a year or two ago.<sup>673</sup>

And then there's all kinds of various articles and tapes, transcendental sounds. You listen to these sounds: Golden Avatar tape subscription. You get to listen to all kinds of sounds which bring your mind up into heavenly realms. You know, talk about all kinds of contemporary subjects like science. They invite you to have feasts, [a] full-course yoga meal and share chanting with them. There's some kind of ancient text they translate, and news items. And then in the theatre they have Bhagavad-Gita in the form of a play; and all dressed up for hours, they make themselves up in these costumes, stand in front of the mirrors. And when they dance, it looks very sensuous and happy, and look like they're a little bit sexually "off." They sort of get a thrill out of this, shaving their heads and looking like a bunch of weirdos. And they lose themselves in meditating and chanting.

Remember in our Orthodoxy and the Religion of the Future we described their temple in San Francisco, how they just stand there for hours, they're beating the drums and beating the drums and beating the drums. And all around the walls there's these pictures from the Bhagavad-Gita, this sensuous kind of costumes, silky kind of robes. You get into the real state in which you're not present at all; it's like being on drugs. Take a look at these costumes they have.

And then fantastic stories, because nowadays we like science fiction and space fantasies and so forth. So here's a whole story about "The Boar Who Battled for Planet Earth," and you get a whole fantasy story about a cosmic pig who wants to devour earth. That takes care of your

---

<sup>672</sup> Ibid

<sup>673</sup> Ibid

fantasy needs. This is like Brahma, he's greater than all the heavens. So this boar also is much bigger than the earth; he could swallow the earth up if he wanted to. That's the ancient paganism which comes right back into our temporary life. But in the very kind of a self-centered and sensuous, and it's obvious all this, incense and the chanting, the costumes, and you take off your Western clothes and put on these robes, and makes you feel very important, very part of the new, and it's all self-centered... [I]t's adapted to American needs.

And this man here, this is the head, the one who is their guru or their avatar, he was just an ordinary businessman in India. He didn't have any future there at all. He came to America and discovered that here he can make his living at kind of being like a god to all these people. But Americans now are reduced, because those who do not consciously wake up to what Christianity is, and begin to see that in the world there's tremendous evil fighting for souls, could very easily fall into these traps. And therefore those who don't fall for Hari-Krishna fall for some other kind of movement. And various kinds of even Protestant...

Fr. H:        Sometimes they fall for Orthodoxy with all the icons, and the incense

Fr. S:        Also...

Fr. H:        and the canons and all that business. You give them the whole thing, rich no exception.

Fr. S:        Therefore, there has to be a criticism, there has to be an awareness of what is what. What is our religion based on? So there's two big things fighting. One is true Christianity, Orthodoxy, and the other is this new philosophy which most people are not aware of. Most people who go for the contemporary beat, rock'n'roll or various kinds of modern culture, art, music and religion – they aren't particularly aware that they're part of this movement. They just go over to it because that's what's in the air. People around them are doing it; they feel a need for it, and they follow without being conscious of it. But we who are studying this have to be conscious of what's going on.

Any questions on all this so far? Is it clear what they, the combination of ideas [is producing] Hume destroys external reality. Kant restores the Self as the center of reality, mind or the Self as the

center of reality, and then this becomes the new god. This is the new god; the old God is dead.

Fr. H: But for those who are not Orthodox, those who not keeping, not protecting Orthodoxy.

Fr. S: Those who just go along with the times, whatever's in the air.

Fr. H: Right.

Student: Do you think Kant knew this philosophy... progressed the way it has?

Fr. S: Well probably, probably just, yeah, because he's, sort of you can see in, he's actually sort of just expressing the philosophy of it. And that element was already there; therefore, it probably would have gone anyway. He expresses this and so you can see that this is sort of the underlying philosophy of what we're having. Because in himself, he's not, I would say he's less, he's not influential in the sense that people read him and got these ideas, rather, he's symptomatic, expresses what's in the air.

So that's one aspect. Again, there's another aspect which is revealed. We just got this magazine, just as we're talking about the subject, about "Empowering the Self."<sup>674</sup> They seem to be very good people, these scientists called the Spiritual Counterfeits Project in Berkeley. They are some kind of fundamentalists who talk about all kinds of aspects of fake spirituality. And almost everything they write is good. They expose the Maharishi and Scientology and all these cults, everything which is not basic Christianity. They have a whole series of articles on the Self, cosmic humanism, or human potential. See that's also self-centered, [the] human potential movement which is now in our times. They are coming from psychoanalysis and so forth. He talks about several movements here which may be very symptomatic.

Yes, one talks about the human potential movement and he says that some of the basis of, as a condition to faith in human reason, a new view of humanity contributes to the belief in self-transformation. This

---

<sup>674</sup> Available in reprint as *Spiritual Counterfeits Journal*, Vol. 5, No. 1, Winter 1981-82: "Empowering the Self: A Look at the Human Potential Movement." Spiritual Counterfeits Project, P. O. Box 4308, Berkeley, California 94704.

human potential emphasizing what I can, how I can develop myself, how I can discover something better. “Our culture traditionally embraces a Christian view of people as limited creatures, separate from God, creatures who are a curious, paradoxical mix of good and evil qualities. That view is now being challenged by an Eastern/occult concept of humanity implicit in the human potential movement. The basic tenet of this occult world-view is that all is one: the world of matter, the world of spirit, these are the same essence. If all is one, then... differences are illusory. Reality is not what appears to this myriad objects, persons, thoughts, ideas of God, morality or beauty. What appears is merely subjective to each person; the reality is a unity beyond appearance.” You can see Hume, Kant. Then its “only a short step to the conclusion that one creates” one’s own “reality, that is, one perceives what one desires to perceive. Those perceptions are not accurate or inaccurate. They’re merely part of the illusion of reality beyond which lies oneness,” which is “the real reality.”

“If all is one, a person’s existence as part of that oneness is as sacred and powerful as any other part of the whole. God then becomes part of the unity, of which each individual is a manifestation. As persons break out of the grip of illusion,” which is “(reality as perceived in the material world), god-like transcendence, an experience of oneness with the universe may be experienced.... The height of the hierarchy of human needs is the experience of oneness with all things. Persons in essence become God.”

“Patients,” who are being psychoanalyzed, “have within themselves the answers to their own problems.”<sup>675</sup> Within Christianity, you come with problems, and we give you the answers. This is what God commands. You change your life in accordance. According to the new idea, and psychoanalysis is full of that, you have the answer’s within yourself. “Let’s work them out, let’s see how, what your needs are and how we can express your needs.”

Student: That’s sort of on the line of Scientology, isn’t it?

Fr. S: Yeah, yeah, it’s one of these cults. The same – exactly the same thing. The therapist merely provides a climate of acceptance which enables the person to discover those answers from within.

---

<sup>675</sup> SCP Journal, Vol. 5, No. 1, p. 9.

Unlocking universal human wisdom in an individual traditionally has been the role of the shaman or occult priest, now becomes the work of the psychotherapist.

So that's definitely self-worship, you make your own reality and the new reality comes out from within yourself. And if you have some kind of perversions within yourself, then you have to see how you can express them in some way that's not too difficult for society to accept, whether it's right or wrong, they don't say anything. The psychoanalyst doesn't tell you you're right or wrong. If they give you [anything], he's going to give you a value system – that means he's a religion. He has to be scientific; therefore, you have to work it out from within yourself. Therefore, their assumptions are that: humanity is good, that men naturally move towards growth, that all the right values are already inside the individual, don't come from outside, that human potential is unlimited, that most important thing is experience, that you're autonomous, all by yourself. The goal is personal awareness. And as far as the outside world is concerned, everything is relative. You don't know what's, whether there's God, there isn't any God. The only absolute is change. And there's no evil. All the good comes within the individual. "With that set of presuppositions about the nature of humanity, God, and the world, humanistic psychology became the soil in which the human potential movement has flowered. The cultural climate of the 1960's was perfect for this."<sup>676</sup>

"By the 1970's, a human potential movement spreading eastward from California had spawned 8000 different therapies, a system of odds and ends of psychoanalysis, Eastern religions, sexual experimentation, game playing and old-time revivalism."<sup>677</sup>

There was one called Transactional Analysis, an early influential manifestation of human potential thinking. There's a book called I'm OK, You're OK. It was, everything's just fine the way it is. I recall when I was studying Zen that was the thing that was emphasized, that Zen just accepts reality the way it is, doesn't add any values to it. Just accept it the way it is, just the way you are. Just let loose, let go, and God will take over – if you believe in God or the cosmic mind. Just relax, take it easy, and let nature come out. The individual is good and should follow his own experience. "I'm OK, therefore, I do not need to follow any structure or values imposed from without. To free myself

---

<sup>676</sup> Ibid., p. 14.

<sup>677</sup> Ibid., quoting Alvin Toffler, p. 14.

from my parent or conscience.” It’s an idea [that] you’ve been under the tyranny of your parents all this time and now you ought to wake up and become [an] independent, autonomous personality. Well, that fits in because a teenager likes to rebel, wants to assert himself as individual, therefore reject the parent which is the same thing as conscience, and listen to my own desires, believe them to be good. This will result in my growth and the realization of my full potential. The Transactional Analysis textbook asks one to pick up a mirror twice in the day, look into it and declare: I’m OK... just the way I am, I’m perfect...

# Lecture 13

## Antichrist<sup>678</sup>

*“All men alienated from guidance of God's light, will be enticed into submission to the seducer (antichrist).” – St Ignatius Brianchaninov*

And this brings us to the spiritual state of our modern people, not necessarily under the direct influence of occultism or modern art, but still that very state which occultism and modern art expressed.

This we can see by a few pages from a book by another German, who is actually a Jew, became converted to Catholicism, became totally disillusioned with modern Europe and left the cities and went, found himself a place on a lake in Switzerland where last I heard he was still living. His name is Max Picard. He wrote a book called *The Flight from God* which describes how the life of modern man, especially life in the cities, is one of a complete running away from reality, running away from God. After the Second World War he wrote a second book called *Hitler in Ourselves*. Here he very nicely expresses what is the background for all these movements.

“During a trip to Germany in 1932, the head of an influential political party called upon me to ask how it was possible that Hitler had become so much of a figure and had gained so many followers. I pointed to a magazine which was lying on the table and told him to look at it. Page one was filled by a half-naked dancer; on page two, soldiers were drilling with a machine gun, and farther down a scientist was shown in his laboratory; page three featured the evolution of the bicycle from the middle of the nineteenth century to the present day, and a Chinese poem was printed next to that; the following page was divided between the calisthenics of factory workers during a rest period and the writing technique of a South American Indian tribe by means of knotted strings; on the opposite page, Senator So-and-so was depicted in his summer retreat.

“This, I said, is how modern man grasps the things of the world outside himself. Modern man drags all things toward himself chaotically and without cohesion; this proves that his own inner life is a chaos lacking cohesion. Modern man no longer confronts the things of the world as solidly existing, nor do things register in his mind individually; neither does he approach a particular thing by a particular act: modern man with

---

<sup>678</sup> Lecture XII, The New Religion, continued Part D. from outline

his chaotic inner life has a correspondingly chaotic outer world whirling toward him. What is coming is no longer scrutinized; it suffices that anything at all should be coming along. To this disjointed tumult anything or anybody could admix – Adolf Hitler, too: he gets inside a man without his noticing how he got there; from that point on, it no longer depends upon the victim but upon the skill of Adolf Hitler, whether he will merely pass through that man's mind or take hold of it.

“The disjointedness of a magazine, however, seems old-fashioned, almost handmade, compared to the radio. In the radio the business of disjointedness has become mechanized: 6 A.M. calisthenics; 6:10 A.M. recorded music; 7 A.M. news; 8 A.M. Morse-alphabet course; 9 A.M. morning sermon; 9:30 A.M. In the Lake Dwellers' Village; 10 A.M. Beethoven sonata for flute and piano; 10:30 A.M. farming lecture; 10:45 A.M. world news; 11 A.M. Overture to [Wagner's] *Rienzi*—and so on till the Spanish course at 10:10 P.M. and the Jazz hour at 10:30 P.M.

This world of the radio not only is disjointed;”

That's classical radio; that's good radio.

“it produces disjointedness: it presents all things in such a way that they will not hang together from the very start and thus are forgotten one by one even before they have disappeared; from the start they are shrouded in a haze of oblivion. This outer world presupposes that man's mind is no longer capable of perceiving the things of this world in any context – as they are, that is, as they endure, and as they are correlated to one another in their nature –”

Rather ;

“it operates primarily toward the inner discontinuity, toward the disjointedness of man, and with that it works.

There no longer is an outer world which can be perceived, because it is a jumble – likewise, there is no longer in man a mind able to perceive with clarity, because his inner world, too, is a jumble. Therefore, man no longer approaches objects by an act of will; he no longer selects the objects of the external world and no longer examines them: the world is fluid; disjointed objects move past disjointed man. It no longer matters what passes by; what counts is only that something should pass by. Into this line-up anything could sneak, including Adolf Hitler; and one prefers that at least he, Adolf Hitler, should turn up than to have nothing turn up at all. Heil to him; for not only does he march along as part of the jumble, but he also sees to it that the march of the jumble does not stop – he mechanizes the flow of events and things assembly-line fashion and does it better than anyone else.

“The Big City” is the expression of the disjointed as such. In it the disjointed has become stone, nay, concrete. Constantly the lines of the



houses are interrupted by the movings of automobiles, of streetcars and trains which cut through everything like machines. Human figures appear as dissolved into indistinct blots, hurtling back and forth between the walls of houses and of streets like pawns of evil powers. The sky itself seems removed farther from earth than elsewhere, and even the sky has lost continuity with itself, for it is constantly cut through by sharp-silhouetted planes.

From this outer jumble, then, Adolf Hitler could easily sneak into the inner jumble; in this disjointedness he could show himself beside anything because he fitted anything: such as he was, he fitted into anything disjointed.

And as again and again he showed himself in this jumble, he became more distinct than the other parts of the chaos; one got used to him and accepted him as one accepts a toothpaste which turns up again and again in the chaos of advertising pages. Soon he appeared as the only reality in a world wherein everything else manifested itself only to vanish again immediately.

Sorel believes that in a modern democracy it is possible for a handful of men to usurp the tools of power and to establish a dictatorship. That is true. But it is possible only because today everybody is slithering toward anything – and thus one might slide toward the means of power without noticing it, while others notice it even less. One need not make any special effort; one need not fight for the instruments of power – one just grabs them as one grabs at anything else in the chaos wherein one slips. It is merely an accident that this should happen in the realm of politics; in this world of the momentary and the disjointed anything else might be grabbed as well, in [lieu]” place “of politics and dictatorship. Here, there exists no history of power-assumption; no history, no theory, no doctrine counts except the theory and the doctrine of chaos. “Hitler had no need to conquer; everything was preconquered for him through the structure of discontinuity, through the general disjointedness. As a result, such a dictator tries to make up for that sham of *Mein Kampf*,” which he wrote, “which really was not necessary for the assumption of power: now that he possesses power, he strives with all the gestures, with all the big noise of power, and by violence and murder to prove that he is the dictator by his own act and not by an accident of chaos.

“Only in a world of total discontinuity could a nullity such as Hitler become Fuehrer, because only where everything is disjointed has comparison fallen into disuse. There was only Hitler, the nullity, before everybody’s eyes, and in this instable world wherein everything was

changing at every moment one was glad that at least the one nullity, Hitler, remained stable before one's eyes. An orderly world, a hierarchy, would automatically have placed the nullity, Hitler, into nothingness; he could not have been noticed. Hitler was the excrement of a demoniacal world; a world of truth in its order would have pushed him aside."<sup>679</sup>

Again we see the same thing that it is the world, it is we the ordinary people who are living this very kind of life of disjointedness and used to the very phenomena which we see around us – the newspapers, the radio, the television, the movies – everything which is oriented toward pieces which do not fit together. There's no God; there's no overwhelming, underlying pattern to things, no God, no order. And the order which we see in our life is only left over from the previous time when people still believed in God. And that's why Solzhenitsyn can look at America and say, "It's coming here."<sup>680</sup> You are sort of cutoff off; you don't see it. But it's coming here because that's the way, that's what's happening in the world. And of course, Americans are blinded because we're used to having our food...

Fr. H:       We're protected.

Fr. S:       ...and very much cut off from the reality. And the reality that's happening in the world is this here,<sup>681</sup> these crazy people, who are not crazy people, they're expressing what the devil is planning for us next.

In modern art, as we've seen, we see this chaos, this disjointedness on one hand; on another hand, we see, as this man also pointed out, this Sedlmyer, the artificial calmness of the architecture. We look at the modern city and you see these tremendous big skyscrapers, pure – there's one in San Francisco – pure black glass. And I have known people who look at that and say, "Oh, it's beautiful! It expresses the soul; that's what we are striving after." And of course, he's in tune with the times. What it expresses is: no God, everything is cutoff. All that's left is some kind great memorial to what, to blindness. And inside they hang these crazy paintings of someone who goes crazy and puts, or they get paintings by apes, children, primitive peoples and so forth.

---

<sup>679</sup> Picard, Max, *Hitler in Ourselves*, Henry Regnery Co., Chicago, 1947, pp. 27-32.

<sup>680</sup> See footnote Lecture 12.

<sup>681</sup> Fr. Seraphim is possibly holding up the magazine of Hari Krishnas from the first part of the lecture.

Out of this, by the way, in the last few years – well since 1945 especially – there's been a new kind of art movement, which is, this wild Expressionism out of which there begin to come people, that is, shapes. Unfortunately, we haven't got any real examples of it. You can point to a couple there.

Fr. H:        This would be close.

Fr. S:        There's one artist called Francis Bacon. This is very close. It looks like one of Bacon's paintings by Goya. Already he was foreseeing that. There's another one called Giacometti, the Italian sculptor, who has tremendous tall figures, all sort of, they're very much like this one here, some kind of absolute chaos and out of it there begins to come kind of a human form, only it's like this – inhuman, like a mask or misshapen, some kind of a thing like this, all sort of humped over and maybe one arm is missing, or its legs are missing. His face is staring ahead like sort of nothing. There no, no expression, no hope, no despair, just “Uhh.” There're many painters like that now.

But this is, apart from Surrealism, it's the one other constant school of painting which has come out, painting and a little bit of sculpture. And they're simply frightful figures. And he just makes you frightened to look at them, as though they're just disfigured by the war or – just frightful.

Fr. H:        Feeling of raw meat...blood and guts...toilet seat...

Fr. S:        And this also is a part of, its very sort of battered down now, but also there is behind it again this feeling of something coming up, some kind of chiliastic expectation. Maybe now we're going to come at last to a new age. In fact, there's one Catholic artist, about twenty years ago this painter, I forgot his name<sup>682</sup>, but at that time Jacques Mauritian and Gilson and all those Catholic humanists were saying, “This looks like the new iconography for Catholicism.” And you look at it, and its frightful. It's like combin-, well, it's more expressionistic, it's some kind of transfiguration. You see these distorted figures. You can't recognize them as human beings hardly, but all his paintings are religious. So now there's going to be a new religious art.

---

<sup>682</sup> Possibly Eric Gill.

And by the way, they often take religious themes now, and these forms come back, but some kind of demon figures. Like there's one, where I went to college at Claremont, there was one sculptor. I forgot his name, but he had a sculpture of Christ rising. And what it was was the figure of a dead man who was being lifted up. You could see there all distorted still dead but he's now being lifted up by something. In other words probably a demon's going to take over the body. And some people say, "Oh, that's beautiful. It's going back to religio now, that [shows] already he believes in the resurrection." And he believes in what the demons are resurrecting. And the body is distorted and it, you can see its dead, just beginning to come to some kind of distorted life. Or he has another one, a crucifixion which is absolutely a crucifixion by demons, frightfully distorted figure on the cross.

This is perhaps not so strong as a sort of chiliasm, but still it is some kind of indication that out of the nihilism of the wars and revolutions mankind still hopes for some kind of humanism. But now it's what you can call "sub-human."

But there is also very much a current of hope among the few prophets. We've already seen how Teilhard de Chardin is filled with optimism that all this, in fact, he says this Communism and fascism and all (who were victims) is only passing by. Evolution does not regard the individual, only the species. As long as man survives, who cares about the hundred million in the concentration camps? Man will survive and the species will evolve into something higher.

So, we have many prophets. We'll mention only two or three. And this Teilhard de Chardin is one. Another one is a strange figure in the nineteenth century in Russia, his name is Fyodorov, whose writings were almost unknown at that time and were published only after his death in the early decades of the twentieth century, but with whom people like Dostoyevsky and Tolstoy were fascinated and Solovyov also. He had a very strange idea. His writings were not published in English until Schmemmann got a hold of them, and had them translated for his anthology of crazy Russian writings. He has a whole seventy pages of this man, the first time ever in English. He must think it's very significant.

He [Fyodorov] is one you can say is disillusioned with revolutionary ideals, that everything is for the future. Because that means we of today in the present, and people who have struggled in the past, are only the "manure" for the future paradise. And he could not stand that. And therefore, he came up the idea that the task of mankind is to resurrect

his ancestors by means of science. Of course, how this is going to come about we don't know. He says you sort of have the faith and develop science and get ready for the great event when the ancestors will be resurrected, and everybody will enter into this paradise.

And we see today we have the new science of cryogenics, that is, people are letting themselves be frozen in the hope that they will be resurrected in some future day when their disease will be cured. But that very idea is a chiliastic idea – I'm going to be resurrected in the future. I'm going to come back to life – very filled with this secular chiasm. And this man Fyodorov puts this into the form of some kind of prophecy that in the future – this book is called *The Common Task* – the great task of mankind is to resurrect the ancestors. Of course, it's a wild dream but it's very much, you know, this is what the antichrist will resurrect: people, and be able to look like resurrection, will be able to put demons into them and make them walk around again, with walking corpses.

And you notice, by the way, in science fiction literature the same theme occurs. [In] science fiction movies there's some kind of aliens from outer space and they come and take over somebody's body and walk around like zombies. You see these in advertisements for them, these children from outer space, and the children who have been inhabited by some being from outer space with their eyes wide open, staring ahead – same spirit. In fact, the whole of science fiction is entirely chiliastic: superior race, Superman is coming from outer space.

So that's one, Fyodorov, one crazy prophet, but very much in tune with the spirit of the new kingdom in this world, outside of the limits of Christianity, of course, because we believe in the true resurrection not by science but by God Himself.

[D.H. Lawrence] ...thirty or so. And he was filled with this idea of sort of back to the earth paganism. And he gave us kind of almost a philosophical basis for sex, although his novels aren't dirty – well, all except *Lady Chatterly's Lover's* not too good. But what they have in them is this constant emphasis upon earthiness, upon the open expression of sex. And he has these heroes; in one story I read, there was a heroine. He talks about unhappy, in fact – he's married, doesn't have to be too outrageous. He always talks about unhappy marriages because one of them was is very earthy and the other one is very, [does] too much thinking; and this is the disease of modern times, this thinking too much. And therefore, he has this one story about a man and woman who got divorced; the woman ran away or something to the

south seas. So, everything's sunny and bright. South is of the earth. So he goes looking for her, and there's a contrast. She's there someplace on a rock in the south seas, naked, sunning herself and she's all brown and like a goddess. He's all pale – most northern Europeans are absolutely pale and emaciated and effeminate. And she has power because she's of the earth, she's earthy. She believes in fully expressing sexuality. And he has all kinds of inhibitions, you know, "You can't do that, no, no, no." And he presented a very stark contrast between real earthy. He read Nietzsche; he knew that the new Superman's going to be of the earth; that's what Nietzsche said: the new Superman will come from the earth. And, therefore, in all these stories, everything that has to do with Christianity is considered effeminate, weak, like Nietzsche says. Everything to do with paganism is strong. Therefore, he has all kinds of images, especially of black Africa; he loved African gods. And his heroes have these statues, these crude African statues that symbolize their fact that they're awakened from all these prejudices. All the inhibitions of Christianity are thrown off, man becomes free. And then you're able to see there's no particular laws. If you're married or unmarried, it makes no difference. He didn't go into homosexuality. He just thought that the normal sex should be expressed freely.<sup>683</sup>

He even has one horribly blasphemous story, which even before I was a Orthodox I couldn't finish. It's about how Jesus Christ resurrected. Or whether He resurrected or just came down from the Cross and discovered He was a failure. And then he has a love affair with Mary Magdalen and discovers the meaning of life. And it's just expressed so crudely and blasphemously, that it's too much even for a non-Christian. That's the level he's on, but he's a very powerful writer. And he's considered among the great writers. In fact I think I had a course with either six or eight writers and he was one of them. I think Hemingway was even left out, so they went for him. [He's] very important because he's very symptomatic of modern times. But he was an example of this neo-paganism.

And he had a follower, another writer whose called Henry Miller, who is very down to earth. Henry Miller is an American who died a few years ago – he was more than 70 years old ten years ago. He lived in Big Sur and was a typical modern bohemian type, free of all kinds of prejudices and so forth. And in the 1920's, I think, he went to Paris like

---

<sup>683</sup> Insert from 1980 Nietzsche Lecture; Fr. Seraphim also took extensive notes on D.H. Lawrence for his Anarchism book in the 1960's.

a lot of young intellectuals in the West did. And Hemingway went there also. Paris was like the art capital of the world. There you learn about what's really going on in art. He was rather old then, thirty-five or so, when he first woke up to become an artist and went to Paris and began living there as an expatriate and writing these novels. Basically, he was influenced by D.H. Lawrence. [He] woke up to the idea of reality of this world, of earth, of paganism, of sex and all that, and began writing these novels which were banned in America until very recently. They were published in France. In fact, I knew somebody who had a bookstore in San Diego who was arrested for selling it under the counter maybe fifteen years ago. Course since the seventies that's all changed. They can now print it, considered old hat now to.

Well, D.H. Lawrence died about 1930. Henry Miller was still alive in the 60's when I was in down there. I never saw him. My mother lived in Carmel, so I was in that area. But he was still a tourist attraction in those days in Big Sur. He retired down there, sort of had followers around him who believed in the same things.

Well, this Henry Miller was writing, actually they're just pornographic sex novels, all four letter words and sex experiences and everything else is described. These books now are just ordinary; everybody writes like that now. In this way he's [a] typical, enlightened modern man, one step beyond Hemingway, and filled with this anarchic spirit, the very spirit which Fourier talks about: let the passions be unleashed and there'll be paradise.

But this is very interesting because at the same time in Paris, Nicholas Berdyaev met him, or he read his books. And Berdyaev lived in Paris as an exile [and] was very interested in all modern manifestations of culture. And therefore, he read Henry Miller, I don't know how, if he read English or not. But Berdyaev himself is an absolute anarchist, you know. He believes in overthrowing the Church and letting the free spiritual man come forth. And so, he read this American anarchist, Henry Miller, who believes in expressing whatever you have inside of you, any garbage, or whatever you have inside you, you just express it. And he read Henry Miller. I think he only read one book, and he said, "At the end of this book, I feel like my world is dissolving." He says, "Absolute anarchy! The man should be burned!" He couldn't stand it because he said all these passions come out, and it was too much for him because the man is just absolute expression of whatever comes out from your nature. If you once enter into his philosophy, everything begins to dissolve. There is nothing left, you

just dissolve yourself, can't stand it. Berdyaev had some quite accurate observations sometimes. For instance, he went to, to a lecture of Rudolph Steiner in Berlin. And he said he felt like that man is frightful, he is trying to conquer God from beneath. What he saw was accurate, but he himself was also a false prophet.

And he [Henry Miller] lived the kind of life [in which] his passions were unleashed. He could do whatever he want; there's no more restraints. And he was someone like D. H. Lawrence [in his idea that] the sexual passion especially should be liberated and man will be somehow new, renewed, which is all, of course, a rather of a myth which can actually destroy people.

But he also wrote some essays, non-fiction writings, which show that the man is quite aware of things. And he thought rather deeply on what it means to be a modern man, where it's all going, the fact that now [that] all this sexuality is coming out, we are able to be free. The prejudices of the past are being overcome. He believed in astrology, and in all kinds of magic arts, and believed the new age is coming, some kind of Aquarian age when prime ministers will be astrologers and the Renaissance alchemy and so forth will flourish again. He [Henry Miller] got this out of the air, just like Hitler said, "I am the first of the first magicians," I think he said, "in the new age of magic."<sup>684</sup> And he has one article and he talks about the necessity for mankind to be under one world government, and he says, "Who will rule this one world government?" And he said, "The time will come when a man will arise by himself, and he will have such charismatic ability that people by themselves will flock to him and see in him all their hopes for a new religion, the new age of mankind, and just like Napoleon he will become their symbol." And he said, "I feel that every age has a person who represents that age," sort of the age produces a person that represents this age, therefore our age is going to produce a tremendous man, a great new magical political figure, who will come and rule the world, and represent for us all these feelings of the earth, and all these forbidden things that were not allowed to come out before,<sup>685</sup> which

---

<sup>684</sup> Source for this?

<sup>685</sup> From Fr. Seraphim's notes for Kingdom of Man, unpublished book: Miller, Henry, *Remember to Remember*, Grey Walls Press, London, 1952, p. 32: "At the dawn of every age there is distinguishable a radiant figure in whom the new time spirit is embodied. He comes at the darkest hour, rises like a sun, and dispels the gloom and stagnation in which the world was gripped. Somewhere in the black folds which now enshroud us I am certain that another being is gestating, that he is but waiting for the zero hour to announce himself... If the caterpillar through sleep can



seems to be very accurate – another prophecy of Antichrist and some kind of millennium in which the impulses of mankind will be let loose, people will be free of all restraints, of past beliefs of God, of morality and will enjoy the millennium.

And of course, this is a perfect example of this self-worship that Kant let loose on the literary and popular level. And once this was allowed to come out, then, of course, the whole, everything is allowed. And now there is hardly a single movie you can see apparently that's not full of some kind of sex scene.

And it's very interesting how this subject is handled in classical writers. For example, we saw a movie called "Nicholas Nickleby" recently, which has a lot of sex in it, sort of under the scenes, but you have to read it between the lines to get it. It's quite clear what's meant – this decadent nobleman and the girl, and you see the way they look at each other. The whole picture's revealed to you, but its revealed in a

---

metamorphose into a butterfly, surely man during his long night of travail must discover the knowledge and the power to redeem himself." Also, from Remember to Remember: "Frankly, I don't believe that the human race can regress in this manner. I believe that when the crucial moment arrives, a leader greater than any we have known in the past will arise to lead us out of the present impasse." But in order for such a figure to come into being humanity will have to reach a point of such profound despair that we will be willing at long last to assume the full responsibility of manhood. That means to live for one another in the absolute religious meaning of the phrase; we will have to become planetary citizens of the earth, connected with one another not by country, race, class, religion, profession or ideology, but by a common, instinctive rhythm of the heart." Also cf. Miller, Henry, *Wisdom of the Heart*, "The Absolute Collective," New Directions Publishing Corporation, New York, 1941, pp. 85-86: "We stand at the threshold of a new way of life, one in which MAN is about to be realized. The disturbances which characterize this age of transition indicate clearly the beginnings of a new climate, a spiritual climate in which the body will no longer be denied, in which, on the contrary, the body of man will find its proper place in the body of the world. Man's domination over nature is only now beginning to be understood as something more than a mere technical triumph; behind the brutal assertion of power and will there lies a smoldering sense of the awesomeness, the majesty, the grandeur of his responsibility. Is he perhaps just faintly beginning to realize that all the ways of the earth lead to heaven?? "Thus, the complete destruction of our cultural world, which seems more than ever assured now by the impending smashup, is really a blessing in disguise. The old grooves of race, religion and nationality are destined to go, and in their place we shall see, for the first time in the history of man, a community of interest based not on the animal in him but on the human being which he has so long denied... The ideal man must perish, and the ideal man will certainly perish, for the last props of the world are now giving way. Man must open up, prepared to live the life of the world in all its worldliness, if he is to survive"

very elegant way, even in the movie. And there's no stirring of passion, you just see that's life. Therefore, sex as a part of life is presented in a very realistic way. And nowadays how do they present it? You know, they go into all the gory details. So, you have to sit there and watch apparently. Even Anna was taken to the movies by her father, and she had to sit and watch and see this squirming under covers, and imagine what they're doing. Of course, in many places they just take everything off and show you. What does that do? That's called realistic attitude towards life, isn't it? Is it?

Student: Well, it depends how you look at it, your point of view. Even with the classical literature it's not, they were working with more realistic point of view than today.

Fr. S: They just were, they had taboos. They couldn't talk about some things.

Student: It reminds me same thing of the services, Fr. Herman was telling us about the compline...all the time these, it just talks about...that it does it in such a way...

Fr. S: Well, this element has always been part of life, and it's always been expressed. In fact, in the, the Orthodox lives of saints are full of this. In fact, they're quite shocking if you're used to Victorian standards of literature. It's quite open about this subject, but its presented in such a way that it doesn't arouse passion, it just gives you the reality.

And what's happening now, the fashion in the last ten or fifteen years is to produce all this that hasn't been allowed before in such a way that it arouses your passion. And therefore, it does not put across any meaning, that is, it does not tell you how to handle this whole thing because you're so interested in it. Of course, you're going to be watching the clothes come off and so forth. You're going to get all excited and all interested. And what is it going to do for the plot, for the whole meaning of life? It doesn't do anything. It just titillates you, tickles you. And that's what Kant produced.

And the reason why it tickles is why? Because we're self-centered. Everybody looks there and he sees himself. Because in itself, usually sex is a very unsatisfying experience. You don't get these tremendous

experiences you see in the movies or in books. And therefore, you go to the movies and you see: maybe your own body isn't particularly beautiful, but you go there and you see beautiful bodies, ah! And as you're looking at those beautiful images, you're worshipping yourself. It's like looking at yourself in the mirror. And all those inadequacies you have whether in beauty or in sex experience or whatever, it all becomes perfect, if only have someone who's handsome enough and does it so expertly and so forth. You. It's actually like looking at yourself in a mirror and worshipping yourself, the tremendous thrill of it. Because there's no more literature at all, no more higher values whatsoever. And this is definitely a form of self-worship.

Student: Well, it's the same thing as that when you tell us about that desert guy in Arizona, I don't know, Fr. Herman or someone was telling us, you see him looking at the mirror, OK, I look like myself... It's all self-worship.

Fr. S: Yeah. That's a basic category of mistake in spiritual life, to be always looking at yourself. And in modern times that's very characteristic. It's very narcissistic, all our spirituality. And this sort of people who talk about being spiritual, it's usually very self-centered; they're looking at themselves in a mirror. That's right.

And on the lower level, this is where it's affecting contemporary art. I haven't seen these films, although the last one I saw about twelve years ago was bad enough. I think I saw two of them already pretty bad. That means now it is even [more] open. And there's no more, the higher values get drowned in this lower element. And you simply apparently cannot make a film nowadays – unless it's just an outright child's film – unless it has some kind of a sex scene in it. So, you get an "R" and if you get an "R" that means, ahah! this is spicy. Let's go watch that. That's all part of this same cult of self-worship.

And it filtered down from the time of Kant. He wrote about 1790. And now in 1980, two hundred years, this filtered down to this lowest level. And that's the result. That's one aspect which is very prevalent in our society, in fact, every place: advertisements, the whole suggestive element in television. The whole idea is to arouse you, arouse your emotions, arouse your passions and present some kind of a beautiful figure, just like you're looking in the mirror at yourself: I have to have that perfume, I have to have that deodorant...

Dostoyevsky also wrote several interesting pieces. One, I forget where it was, and what book it was, he wrote about a dream of...

Fr. H:       The Raw Youth?

Fr. S:       That's a different, I think it's a different book, there is two of them. One is [the] idea that it's very attractive to our human nature to, if everyone sort of takes their clothes off and does what he likes.

Fr. H:       Baboque.

Fr. S:       Baboque? Because this is the very same thing that Henry Miller feels and Fourier liked, that idea of unleashing the passions. In fact, we'll even see from ten years ago in San Francisco and New York, I don't know, I read in a newspaper, some critics said of the San Francisco, some kind of ballet from San Francisco went to New York, and in one of their dances all the people took their clothes off, and just bounced around the stage for a couple minutes then put their clothes back on. And he said that in that moment I felt such a feeling of liberation, I couldn't explain it, the mysterious feeling of absolute liberation came over me.

Of course, then it was very avant-garde, today now this happens all the time. But this shows again this chiliastic desire now when all restraints are gone then you feel some kind of new liberation coming over you which lasts for a moment but that's all you need. You need only a few years to be in the reign of Antichrist.

And in *The Raw Youth* Dostoyevsky had a very good prophecy about the future, unfortunately we don't have the quote, but it concerns the day when the sun went down, that is, God went out of the life of man. And he said in that day men will all of sudden realize that they are alone, that the sun has gone out of their life, and now they are alone on this planet, and what will happen then? He said men will then be filled with such love for each other and such love for every little piece of grass because they know it's going away. It will always, if it's going, going forever. Only this moment it survives. There's no God, nothing else beyond life. We must grasp this moment and live to the full. And they will huddle together and embrace each other out of loneliness.

"Dostoyevsky's comment on this: Men, having rejected God, worship "Humanity," and love everything Humanity loves; thus even

the Bible, which has illumined men like the sun; though its sense is now lost, one cannot be ungrateful for the favors it has bestowed upon mankind.”<sup>686</sup> Why, then, do they kiss the Bible, reverently listening to the reading from it and shedding tears over it? – This is because, having rejected God, they began to worship Humanity. Now they believe in Humanity; they deify it and adore it. And what, over long centuries, has been more sacred to mankind than this Holy Book? – Now they worship it because of its love of mankind and for the love of it on the part of mankind; it has benefited mankind during so many centuries – just like the sun, it has illumined it; it has poured out on mankind its force, its life. And even though its sense is not lost, yet loving and adoring mankind, they deem it impossible to be ungrateful and to forget the favors bestowed by it upon humanity...

In this there is much that is touching and also much enthusiasm. Here there is actual deification of humankind and a passionate urge to reveal their love. Still, what a thirst for prayer, for worship; what a craving for God, and faith among these atheists, and how much despair and sorrow; what a funeral procession in lieu of a live, serene life, with its gushing spring of youth, force and hope! But whether it is a funeral or a new and coming force – to many people this is a question.

I picture to myself...that the battle is over and that the strife has calmed down. After maledictions, lumps of mud and whistles, lull has descended and men have found themselves alone, as they wished it; the former great idea has abandoned them; the great wellspring of energy, that has thus far nourished them, has begun to recede as a lofty, inviting Sun, but this, as it were, was mankind’s last day.<sup>687</sup> And suddenly men grasped that they had been left all alone, and forthwith they were seized with a feeling of great orphanhood... Never was I able to picture people as having grown ungrateful and stupid. Orphaned men would at once begin to draw themselves together closer and with more affection; they would grasp each other’s hands, realizing that now they alone constituted everything to one another. The grand idea of immortality would also vanish, and it would become necessary to replace it, and all the immense over-abundance of love for Him who, indeed, has been Immortality, would in every man be focused on nature, on the universe,

---

<sup>686</sup> From Fr. Seraphim’s notes for Anarchism book taken from The Diary of a Writer, Dostoyevsky quotes from A Raw Youth, the dream of an idealist of the forties, concerning the future of mankind. Fr. Seraphim is paraphrasing the quote which follows.

<sup>687</sup> Fr. Seraphim’s note: He speaks of the disappearance of the idea of God.

on men, on every particle of matter. They would start loving the earth and life irresistibly, in the measure of the gradual realization of their transiency and finality, and theirs would now be a different love – not like the one in days gone by. They would discern and discover in nature such phenomena and mysteries as had never heretofore been suspected, since they would behold nature with new eyes, with the look of a lover gazing upon his inamorata [beloved]. They would be waking up and hastening to embrace one another, hastening to love, comprehending that days are short and that this is all that is left to them. They would be laboring one for another, and every man would be surrendering to all men all he possessed, and this alone would make him happy. Every child would know and feel that everyone on earth is his father and his mother. Let tomorrow be my last day – everyone would think, looking at the setting sun – but all the same, I shall die, yet they all will remain, and after them, their children – and this thought that they will remain, always as ever loving and [palpitating], as anxious over each other would replace the thought of the reunion beyond the grave. Oh, they would be losing no time to love, so as to quench the great sorrow in their hearts. They would be proud and bold on their own behalf, but they would be timid on each other's behalf; everyone would be trembling for the life and happiness of every man. They would grow tender toward one another, and would not be ashamed of this as at present, and they would fondle each other, even as children. Meeting one another, they would be beholding each other with a deep and meaningful look, and in that look would be love and sorrow....

Isn't there here, in this fantasy, something akin to that actually existent Atheists Church?<sup>688</sup>

Of course, this is very much part of our contemporary mentality. And even all this sexual revolution and so forth, some of its just, you know, looseness but quite a bit of it is people looking for love. They do not find love in God, in the family, in church, in the society. And so they grasp at this ideal of sexual love, which gives a temporary warmth and then fades away to nothing. That also is needed to make a millennium: people who are enlightened, away from any standard. And it will give the appearance, therefore, of a kingdom of love, and the Antichrist will be, he, the one they worship, while worshipping themselves, because their god is themselves.

---

<sup>688</sup> Dostoyevsky, Fyodor, *The Diary of a Writer*, Pt. III, Ch. 7, trans. Brasol, Boris, George Braziller, New York, 1954, pp. 265-267.

And Berdyaev, we've already had quite a bit of, I want to repeat one more quote from him; it is in the article on charismatic movement,

"The world is moving towards a new spirituality and a new mysticism; in it there will be no more of the ascetic world-view. The success of the movement towards Christian unity presupposes a new era in Christianity itself, a new and deep spirituality, which means a new outpouring of the Holy Spirit."<sup>689</sup>

In a way it sums up the whole of the past chiliastic hopes since Joachim of Floris, who was his idol, and inspires people in the present to look for some kind of new age. And if it looks impossible, if the future looks dark and difficult, and tyranny and, and gulag, still somehow when you think of his ideas you can all of a sudden be filled like Rousseau with a great mystic feeling that, yes, there must be something more to reality than some kind of concentration camps. We believe in the future harmony.

And so, Berdyaev says, "The world is moving through darkness toward a new spirituality and a new mysticism.... The new mysticism will not consider this objectivized world as final reality." See, there'll be a new science. The spirit reality will come in. "In it will be revealed the true gnosis... And all the tormenting contradictions and divisions" of modern life which divides man into actual fragments "will be resolved in the new mysticism, which will be deeper than all religions and ought to unite them." It "will be the victory over false forms of social mysticism, the victory of the realm of the spirit over the realm of Caesar."<sup>690</sup> "The final triumph of the realm of spirit presupposes a change in the structure of human consciousness... This can be envisaged only eschatologically."<sup>691</sup>

Of course, evolution comes to the aid of this by saying indeed mankind is evolving to some higher consciousness wherein spiritual reality will be opened.

---

<sup>689</sup> "Nicholas Berdyaev, Prophet of a New Age," *Orthodox Life*, by J. Gregerson, Jordanville, N.Y., 1962, No. 6, quoted in *Orthodoxy and the Religion of the Future*, Fr. Seraphim Rose, St. Herman of Alaska Brotherhood, Platina, California, 1983, p. 22.

<sup>690</sup> Berdyaev, Nicolas, *The Realm of Spirit and the Realm of Caesar*, trans. Donald A. Lowrie, Harper & Brother, Publ., New York, 1952, pp. 181-182.

<sup>691</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 178.

## Solovyov

Now we come finally to one man who is very much part of all these movements. His name is Vladimir Solovyov. In fact, it's probably owing to him more than anyone else that the Russian intelligentsia went off the track, because Kireyevsky tried to call the intelligentsia back to Orthodoxy, and Solovyov was inspired by pantheism, by foreign influences, had a vision of Sophia. In fact, he met Sophia in the desert of Egypt. It's probably that same woman messiah that the Saint-Simonians went to look for in the 1830's. She was staying in the desert there, and he went to the desert and had a vision of Sophia. He was there in 18—, the Saint-Simonians went in 1830's, and Solovyov went in 1880, I guess.

He didn't live long. He died in 1900. He lived about forty-five years or so, probably contemporary with Nietzsche. He was another one of these wild thinkers. He came up with all kinds of fantastic things. The world would be governed by the Pope and the Tsar – the whole world, the world empire of the Tsar and the Pope. And he was full of these new ideas, Sophia as the fourth person of the Holy Trinity, and all these fantastic things that threw off Bulgakov, inspired Berdyaev, Florensky, and all these wild thinkers.

Fr. H: All the Paris School came straight from this Sophia.

Fr. S: Vladika John, in his article on Solovyov and Bulgakov, says that this sophiology is the worship of man, the rejection of the worship of God, and placing in its place the worship of man. But at the end of his life some kind of new spirit came over Solovyov. And he came into complete discouragement over the hope for a world empire – Orthodoxy and Catholicism uniting.

Fr. H: He didn't become Catholic, though; he didn't become Catholic.

Fr. S: Yeah. He received communion in Catholic church for a time.

Student: He did become Catholic?

Fr. S: Yeah. But he didn't consider he had become Catholic. He considered that he was uniting both religions. And in the last year of



his life he was troubled by forebodings of the future. And all of a sudden, he began reading prophecies about Antichrist. And it got so much for him that he told some people that he has very difficult time going to church because he has such a strong feeling that in a very short time all the churches will be closed and the catacombs will be opened up.

Fr. H:        He had some kind of insight, no question.

Fr. S:        And he saw as the end of history, the end of modern life, the end of modern history, the coming of Antichrist. And so, he sat down and wrote a story which was the dialogue of three people. One is some kind of monk who tells us the story of antichrist...

...*Three Conversations on War and Future of Mankind*. In this he makes fun of the Tolstoyian who thinks that we should be peaceful and not resist no matter what happens. At the end of this Three Conversations is a story of Antichrist. Most of the details he gets from Scripture and the Holy Fathers, and a few things he adds a little to himself which are not too good, but the basic story is quite accurate. And he adds into this the things which he himself learned by his own occult experiences and his own awareness of the spirit of his times. So we'll see how this comes out in his...

In a way you can say this is the very close parallel to the legend of *The Grand Inquisitor* of Dostoyevsky.

"There lived at that time a remarkable man – many called him a superman – who was as far from being a child in intellect as in heart. He was young, but his genius made him widely famous as a great thinker, writer and social worker by the time he was thirty-three. Conscious of his own great spiritual power, he had always been a convinced idealist, and his clear intelligence always made clear to him the truth of that which ought to be believed in: the good, God, the Messiah. He believed in all this, but he loved only himself. He believed in God, but at the bottom of his heart he unconsciously and instinctively preferred himself to God.

"...The inordinate pride of the great idealist seemed justified both by his exceptional genius, beauty and nobility, and his lofty asceticism, disinterestedness and active philanthropy. He was so abundantly blessed with gifts from above that he was scarcely to blame for regarding them as special signs of exceptional divine favor; he considered himself as next to God, as the son of God in a unique kind of way." All of this is not too different from these socialist prophets, by the way. "In short he recognized himself for what Christ really was. But this consciousness of his own

higher dignity expressed itself not as a sense of a moral obligation to God and the world, but as a conviction that he had rights and privileges over others, especially over Christ. At the beginning he had no hostility against Jesus. He admitted His messianic dignity and significance, but he sincerely saw in Him merely the greatest of his own predecessors;" (That is how the Saint-Simonians says "the Saint-Simonian transformation of Christianity," in which he's actually greater than Christ.) "his mind, clouded by pride, could not understand Christ's moral achievement and his absolute uniqueness. He reasoned thus: Christ came before me; I come second; but that which in the order of time comes later is essentially prior. I come last, at the end of history, just because I am the perfect and final saviour. The first Christ was my forerunner. His mission was to anticipate and prepare my coming. With this idea in his mind the great man of the twenty-first century applied to himself all that is said in the Gospel about the second coming, understanding by it, not the return of the same Christ, but the replacement of the preliminary Christ by the final one, that is, by himself.

"...This man also justified his proud preference of himself to Christ with the following argument: Christ, in preaching the moral good and manifesting it in his life, was the reformer of mankind, but I am destined to be the benefactor of this partly reformed, and partly incorrigible mankind. I shall give all men what they need. Christ as a moralist divided men into the good and the bad, but I will unite them by blessings which are needed by the good and the bad alike. I shall be the true representative of the God who makes His sun to rise on the evil and on the good and sends rain on the just and the unjust. Christ brought a sword, I shall bring peace. He threatened the earth with the fearful last judgment. But I shall be the last judge, and my judgment will be one of mercy as well as of justice. There will be justice too in my judgment, not retributive, but distributive justice. I will make distinctions between people and give everyone his due."

"In this beautiful frame of mind he waited for some clear call from God, for some manifest and striking testimony to his being the eldest son, God's beloved first-born. He waited, and meanwhile nurtured his selfhood on the contemplation of his superhuman gifts and virtues – as already said, he was a man of irreproachable morality and extraordinary genius. "The righteous and proud man waited and waited for a sanction from above to begin his work of saving humanity – and still the sanction did not come." How many people there are like this, by the way, some people who think they're great geniuses. They're waiting for some demon to appear to them to tell them to go out and teach the world. He waited until he was thirty-three years old. "Another three years passed. And suddenly there flashed through his mind a thought that sent a hot tremor into the very marrow of his bones, And what if.... What if not I, but that other...the Galilean... What if He is not my forerunner, but the real one, the first and the last? But then He must be living... Where is he?..."

What if He comes to me...here, now.... What shall I say to him? Why, I shall have to bow down before Him like the most stupid of Christians, shall have to mutter senselessly like a Russian peasant, "Lord Jesus Christ, have mercy on me, a sinner," or grovel like a Polish country woman! I, the bright genius, the superman! No, never! And instead of the former cold, rational respect for God and Christ there was born and grew in his heart, first, a kind of terror and then a burning, choking and corroding envy and furious, breath-taking hatred. I, I and not He! He is not living, He is not and shall not be. He is not risen, He is not risen from the dead! He rotteth in the tomb, rotteth like the lowest...

"Foaming at the mouth, he rushed out of the house and garden and, leaping and bounding, ran in the black depth of the night along the rocky path... The fury died down, and despair, hard and heavy as the rocks and dark as the night, took its place. He stopped at the sheer drop of the cliff and heard the vague noise of the stream rushing along the stones far below. Unendurable anguish weighed on his heart. Suddenly something stirred within him. Shall I call Him – ask Him what I am to do? And the sad and gentle image seemed to rise before him in the darkness. He pities me.... No, never! He did not, He did not rise from the dead!

"And he threw himself down from the cliff. But something resilient like a water-spout supported him in the air, he felt a kind of electric shock, and some power flung him back. He lost consciousness for a moment and when he came to himself he was kneeling a few steps away from the edge of the cliff. He saw the outline of a figure glowing with a misty, phosphorescent light and its eyes penetrated his soul with their intolerable sharp brilliance.

"He saw those piercing eyes and heard – he did not know whether from within himself or from outside – a strange voice, toneless and, as it were, stifled, and yet clear, metallic, and absolutely soulless as though coming from a phonograph. And the voice was saying to him: You are my beloved son in whom I am well pleased. Why have you not sought me? Why did you revere that other, the bad one, and His Father? I am your god and your father. And that other one, the beggar, the crucified, is a stranger both to me and to you. I have no other son but you. You are my only one, only begotten, co-equal with me. I love you and ask nothing of you. You are beautiful, powerful and great. Do your work in your own name, not in mine. I have no envy, I love you. I want nothing from you. He whom you regarded as God asked of His son boundless obedience, obedience unto death, even the death of the cross, and He did not help Him on the cross. I ask nothing of you, and I will help you. I will help you for your own sake, for the sake of your own dignity and excellence and of my pure disinterested love for you. Receive my spirit. Once upon a time my spirit gave birth to you in beauty, now it gives birth to you in power.

“At these words of the unknown being the superman’s lips opened of themselves, two piercing eyes came quite close to his face and he felt the sharp, frozen stream enter into him, fill his whole being. And at the same time he was conscious of wonderful strength, energy, lightness and rapture. At that instant the luminous outline in the eyes suddenly disappeared, something lifted him into the air and at once deposited him in the garden by the house door.” And this is very similar to many occult experiences.

“Next day not only the great man’s visitors but even his servants were struck by his peculiar, as it were, inspired expression. They would have been still more impressed could they have seen with what supernatural ease and speed he wrote, locking himself in his study, his famous work entitled *The Open Way to Universal Peace and Welfare*.

“...That book, written after the adventure on the cliff, showed in him an unprecedented power of genius. It was all-embracing and all-reconciling. It combined noble reverence for ancient traditions and symbols with broad and bold radicalism in social and political demands and precepts, boundless freedom of thought with the deepest understanding of all things mystical, absolute individualism with ardent devotion to the common good, the most lofty idealism of the guiding principles with thoroughly definite and concrete, practical conclusions. And it was all put together with such consummate art that every one-sided thinker or reformer could easily see and accept the whole entirely from his own particular point of view, without sacrificing anything for the truth itself, or rising above his own self for the sake of it, or giving up his one-sidedness, or in any way correcting his mistaken views and aspirations, or trying to make up for their insufficiency.

No one raised objections against this book, for it seemed to everyone a revelation of the all-embracing truth. It did such complete justice to the past, it passed such dispassionate judgment on every aspect of the present, it brought the better future so concretely and tangibly within reach, that everyone said: This is the very thing we want; here is an ideal that is not utopian, a plan that is not a chimaera. The wonderful writer carried all with him and was acceptable to everyone, so that Christ’s words were fulfilled:

“I am come in my Father’s name, and ye receive me not: if another shall come in his own name, him ye will receive.” Which, by the way, refers to Antichrist. “For in order to be received, one must be acceptable.”

“True, some pious people, while warmly praising the book, wondered why Christ was not once mentioned in it; but other Christians replied: And a good thing too! In the past, everything holy was so bedraggled by all kinds of self-appointed zealots, that nowadays a deeply religious writer has to be very careful. And since the whole book is permeated by a truly Christian spirit of active love and all-embracing benevolence, what more do you want? And all agreed with this.

“Soon after the publication of the *Open Way*, which made its author the most popular man in the world, there was held in Berlin the international constituent assembly of the European States Union.

“The initiated decided to concentrate executive power in the hands of one person, investing him with sufficient authority. The man of the future was elected almost unanimously life-long president of the United States of Europe. When he appeared on the rostrum in all the brilliance of his superhuman young strength and beauty and, with inspired eloquence, expounded his universal programme, the assembly, charmed and completely carried away, in a burst of enthusiasm decided without putting it to the vote to pay him the highest tribute by electing him Roman emperor. The assembly closed amidst general rejoicing, and the great elect published a manifesto beginning with the words, Peoples of the earth! My peace I give unto you, and ending as follows: Peoples of the earth! The promises have been fulfilled! Eternal universal peace is secured. Every attempt to disturb it shall be immediately met with overwhelming opposition. Henceforth there is in the world one central power which is stronger than all other powers, both separately and taken together. This invincible and all-conquering power belongs to me, the plenipotentiary chosen Emperor of Europe and ruler of all its forces. International law is supported at last by sanctions that have hitherto been lacking to it. Henceforth no country will dare to say “war” when I say “peace.” Nations of the world, peace be unto you! The manifesto had the desired effect.

“...Within a year a worldwide monarchy in the exact and proper sense of the term was founded. The seedlings of war were pulled out by the roots. The League of Universal Peace met for the last time and, having addressed an enthusiastic eulogy to the great peace-maker, dissolved itself as no longer necessary. In the second year of his reign the Roman and universal emperor issued another manifesto: Peoples of the earth! I promised you peace and I have given it to you. But peace is only made sweet by prosperity. It is no joy to those who are threatened with destitution. Come unto me, all you that are cold and hungry and I will give you food and warmth. Then he announced a simple and all-inclusive social reform that was already indicated in his book and had captivated at the time all noble and clear minds. Now that the world’s finances and enormous landed properties were concentrated in his hands, he could carry out this reform and satisfy the desires of the poor without appreciable injustice to the rich. Everyone was paid according to his capacity, and every capacity was rewarded according to its merits and results.

“...There was firmly established in all mankind the most important form of equality – the equality of general satiety. That was done in the second year of his reign. The social and economic problem was solved once for all. But though food is of first importance to the hungry, those who have sufficient food want something else.

“Even animals when they have had enough to eat want not merely to sleep but to play as well. This is even more true of men who post panem [after bread] have always demanded circuses.

“The superman-emperor understood what the crowd needed. At that time a great magician surrounded with a halo of strange facts and wild fairy tales came to him in Rome from the distant East.

“This magician, Apollonius by name, unquestionably a man of genius, semi-Asiatic and semi-European, was a Catholic bishop in partibus infidelium [of the infidel lands]. He combined in a marvellous way a mastery of the latest discoveries and technical application of Western science with a knowledge both theoretical and practical of all that is real and significant in the traditional mysticism of the East. The results of this combination were astounding. Apollonius mastered, for instance, the half-scientific and half-magical art of attracting and directing at his will atmospheric electricity, so the people said he commanded fire to come down from heaven. But while striking the imagination of the multitude by all kinds of unheard-of novelties he refrained for a time from abusing his power for any special purposes. And so this man came to the great emperor, worshipped him as the true son of God, and, declaring that in the secret books of the East he had found direct prophecies about him as the last saviour and judge of the earth, offered himself and his art in service to him. The emperor was charmed, accepted him as a gift from above, and bestowing splendid titles upon him, kept the magician permanently at his side. The peoples of the earth, having received from their master the blessings of universal peace and abundant food for all, were also given the chance of permanently enjoying the most diverse and unexpected signs and miracles. The third year of the superman’s reign was coming to an end.

“The political and social problems were happily solved; now there was the religious problem to deal with.” Which both Napoleon and Hitler saw as the crowning of their own career if they had gotten that far. “The emperor himself raised it, at first of all with reference to Christianity. The position of Christianity at that time was as follows. It had considerably decreased in numbers – there were not more than forty-five million Christians on the whole of the globe – but it had pulled itself together morally and reached a higher level, so that it gained in quality what it had lost in quantity. Men who had no spiritual interests in common with Christianity were no longer numbered among Christians. The different denominations had lost about the same proportion of their members,”

And;

“...the hostility between them had lessened considerably, and the differences had lost their former sharpness...”

“During the first two years of the new reign the Christians Attitude towards the emperor and his peaceful reforms was one of definite

sympathy and even enthusiasm. But in the third year, when the great magician appeared, many...began to feel uneasy and to disapprove. The passages in the Gospels and the Epistles about the prince of this world and antichrist were read more attentively than before and excited lively comments. From certain signs the emperor guessed that a storm was gathering, and decided to make haste and clear up matters. Early in the fourth year of his reign, he addressed a manifesto to all his faithful Christians of whatsoever denomination, inviting them to elect or appoint plenipotentiary representatives to an ecumenical council under his presidency. By that time, he had transferred his residence from Rome to Jerusalem. Palestine was then an autonomous state, populated and ruled chiefly by Jews. Jerusalem had been a free city and was now made an imperial one. Christian holy places remained intact, but the whole of the broad terrace, Haram-ash-Sharif, from Birket-Israin and the barracks on one side, and down to the El-Aksa mosque and Solomon's stables on the other, was occupied by a huge new building. It included, in addition to two small old mosques, a large Imperial temple for the union of all cults, and two luxurious imperial palaces with libraries, museums and special accommodation for magical experiments and exercises. The ecumenical council was to open in this semi-temple and semi-palace on the fourteenth of September. Since the Evangelical denomination had no priesthood in the proper sense, the Orthodox and Catholic hierarchs in accordance with the emperor's wish decided, for the sake of uniformity among the delegates, to admit to the council some of their laymen known for their piety and devotion to the interests of the Church. Thus the general number of the council members exceeded three thousand, and about half a million Christian pilgrims flooded Jerusalem and Palestine...

"The opening ceremony was most impressive. Two-thirds of the huge temple dedicated to the unity of all cults were occupied with benches and other seats for members of the council, and one-third was taken up with a tall platform; there were two thrones on it, one for the emperor, and a lower one for the great magician (cardinal and imperial chancellor), and behind them long rows of armchairs for the ministers, courtiers and secretaries of state, as well as longer rows at the sides for a purpose unknown. The members had already celebrated their religious services in the different churches, and the opening of the council was to be entirely secular. When the emperor came in with his suite and the great magician, and the orchestra played the march of united humanity, which was used as the imperial international hymn, all those present rose to their feet and waving their hats called out loudly three times, Vivat! Hurrah! Hoch! The emperor, standing by his throne with majestic benignity stretching out his hand, said in a pleasant and sonorous voice:

Christians of all denominations! My beloved subjects and brothers! From the beginning of my reign which the Almighty has blessed with such

wonderful and glorious deeds, I have not once had occasion to be displeased with you; you have always done your duty in all faith and conscience. But this is not enough for me. My sincere love for you, my beloved brothers, longs for reciprocity. I want you, not out of a sense of duty but from heartfelt love, to recognize me as your true leader in every work undertaken for the good of humanity. And so, in addition to what I do for all, I should like to bestow special favors upon you. Christians, what can I do to make you happy? What can I give you, not as to my subjects but as to my brethren and co-believers? Christians, tell me what is most precious to you in Christianity, that I might direct my efforts to it..."

After hearing the view of the Catholics, he said, "Dear brother-Catholics! oh, how well I understand your view and how I should like to find support for my power in the authority of your spiritual head! That you may not regard this as mere empty talk and flattery, I solemnly declare: in accordance with my autocratic will the chief bishop of all Catholics, the Pope of Rome, is henceforth restored to his Roman see with all the rights and privileges that had ever been given it by my predecessors, beginning with the emperor Constantine the Great. And all I want of you, brother-Catholics, is an inner, heart-felt recognition of me as your only defender and patron. Let those who regard me as such in their heart and conscience come to me here." And most of the Catholics get up and go to the benches.

Then he speaks once again, "Dear brothers! I know that there are among you some who value most in Christianity its sacred tradition, ancient symbols, ancient hymns and prayers, ikons, and holy rites. And what indeed can be more precious to a religious mind? Know then, beloved, that today I have signed the statute and settled large sums of money on the world-museum of Christian archaeology in our glorious imperial city of Constantinople for the object of collecting, studying and preserving all relics of Church antiquity, especially the Eastern. I ask you to elect tomorrow from among yourselves a committee to discuss with me the measures that must be taken in order to make the present manners, customs and ways of living as conformable as possible to the tradition and ordinances of the holy Orthodox Church. Brother-Orthodox! Let those of you who appreciate my action and who can wholeheartedly call me their true lord and leader, come up to me here! ..."

"Then, straight and slender like a white church candle, the Elder John among the Orthodox, stood up and answered gently: Great emperor! Most precious to us in Christianity is Christ himself – He himself, and everything rests on Him, for we know that in Him all the fullness of Godhead dwells bodily, But from you too, sire, we are ready to receive every blessing if only we recognize in your bountiful hand the holy hand of Christ. And here is our straight answer to your question what you can do for us: confess now here before us Jesus Christ the Son of God, who came in the flesh, rose from the dead and is coming again – confess Him,



and we will receive you with love as a true forerunner of his glorious second coming.

But “something evil was” now “happening to the great man.” emperor. “The same hellish storm raged within him as on that fateful night. He completely lost his inner balance, and all his thoughts were concentrated on not losing external self-control and not giving himself away too soon. He was making superhuman efforts not to throw himself with a wild yell at the speaker and tear at him with his teeth. Suddenly he heard the familiar unearthly voice: Be still and fear nothing. He remained silent....

“While the Elder John was speaking, the great magician, who sat wrapped up in a voluminous three-colored cloak that completely hid his red robe of a cardinal, seemed to be doing some manipulations under it; there was a look of concentration in his glittering eyes, and his lips moved. Through the open windows of the temple a huge black cloud could be seen gathering, and soon everything turned dark. The Elder John was still gazing with fear and amazement at the silent emperor; suddenly he drew back in horror and, turning round, cried in a stifled voice: Children, its antichrist! At that moment there was a deafening crash of thunder, a huge ball of lightning flared up in the temple and enveloped the Elder.... When the Christians recovered from the shock, the Elder John lay dead.

“The emperor, pale but calm, addressed the assembly: You have seen God’s judgment. I did not wish for anyone’s death, but my heavenly Father avenges his beloved son. The case is settled. Who would dare to oppose the Almighty? Secretaries! write: “The ecumenical council of all Christians, when the fire from heaven had struck the insane opponent of the divine majesty, unanimously recognized the mighty emperor of Rome and the world as their supreme leader and lord.”

And then the Pope also is struck down and the election is held for a new Pope. “While the election was being held the emperor was gently, wisely and eloquently persuading the Orthodox and Evangelical delegates to end their old dissensions in view of the new great era in Christian history; he pledged his word that Apollonius would know how to do away forever with all the historical abuses of papacy.” The magician is elected Pope. “The Orthodox and Protestant delegates, convinced by his speech, drew up an act of union between the churches, and when, amidst joyful acclamations, Apollonius appeared on the platform with the cardinals, the Greek archbishop and an Evangelical minister presented their paper to him.

Accipio et approbo et laetificatur cor meum [I accept and approve, and my heart rejoices], said Apollonius, signing the document. I am a true Orthodox and a true Protestant as much as I am true Catholic, he added and exchanged friendly kisses with the Greek and the German.

Then he walked up to the emperor, who put his arms round him and held him in his embrace for some minutes.

“Meanwhile curious points of light flitted in all directions about the palace and temple; they grew and transformed themselves into luminous forms of strange beings; flowers never seen on earth before fell in showers from above, filling the air with a mysterious fragrance. Delightful heart-melting sounds of strange musical instruments floated from on high, and angelic voices of invisible singers glorified the new lords of heaven and earth. In the meantime, a terrible subterranean roar was heard in the northwestern corner of the central palace under..., the cupola of souls, where according the Moslem tradition lies the entrance into Hades. When, at the emperor’s invitation, the assembly moved in that direction, all clearly heard innumerable high-pitched and piercing voices – children’s or devils? – calling out: The time has come, release us, saviours, saviours! But when Apollonius, pressing himself close to the wall, thrice shouted something to those under the earth in an unknown tongue, the voices were still, and the subterranean roar subsided.

“...The emperor, together with the Pope, came out on to the eastern balcony,” of the temple “raising a storm of enthusiasm. He graciously bowed in all directions, while Apollonius continually took from large baskets brought to him by cardinals-deacons, and threw into the air magnificent Roman candles, rockets and fiery sprays, pearly-phosphorescent or bright rainbow-colored, that caught fire at the touch of his hand. On reaching the ground they all turned into innumerable different-colored sheets of paper with complete and unconditional indulgences for all sins, past, present and future. Popular rejoicing surpassed all bounds. True, some people said that they had seen with their own eyes the indulgences turn into hideous toads and snakes; but an overwhelming majority were enthusiastic. Public festivities went on for a few more days and the new miracle-working Pope performed things so wonderful and incredible that it would be quite useless to describe them.”<sup>692</sup>

We have here a very realistic picture which needs only a few details corrected perhaps to be in fact a realistic view of a millennium which is possible just about in our time.

So, let us sum up the main points of the new religion which is preparing for the reign of Antichrist. The first is the “death of God,”

---

<sup>692</sup> Solovyov, Vladimir S., *A Solovyov Anthology*, arr. By Frank, S.L., Greenwood Press, Publ., Westport, Connecticut, 1950, pp. 229-246.

which entails the abolition of Christianity, that is, Orthodoxy, but this began in the eleventh century, what we call the apostasy. The “death of God” is a poetical way of saying apostasy. If God is dead, everything is permitted, which means an entirely new order of the universe and the demons come into man’s world. If there is no God, then...

## Summary: Doctrines of the New Theology

1. Death of God – Apostasy
2. All is permitted – irruption of demons.
3. Superman – Sub-man: worship of oneself.
4. Man and world become divine: final deception of devil.
5. World monarchy, new revelation, millennialism — for a brief time.

## The Answer

*To Save Oneself. God is With Us. Ours is the Truth.*

“Bretheren: It is later than you think.  
Hasten, therefore, to do the work of  
God.”